THE

ANABASIS OF XENOPHON;

WITH AN

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE LEARNERS,

ON THE

HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM,

NEW YORK

AS IMPRINTED BY
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

THOMAS CLARK,
EDITOR OF THE LATIN AND GREEK INTERLINEAR CLASSICS.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DESILVER,
NO. 714 CHESTNUT STREET
1869.
Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1860, by

CHARLES DESILVER,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

STERETOTyped by J. PAGAN.
CHARLES DESILVER’S PUBLICATIONS

CAN BE OBTAINED

THROUGH THE FOLLOWING FIRMS:

E. H. Butler & Co.,
H. Cowperthwait & Co.,
Hayes & Olonge, New York.
Sower, Barnes & Co.,
G. G. Evans,
D. Appleton & Co.,
A. S. Barnes & Burr,
Pratt, Oakley & Co.,
Ivison & Philney,
Sheldon & Co.,
Mason Bros.,
Deisher & Froster,
Collins & Brother,
Leavitt & Allen,
S. A. Rollo & Co.,
Evans & Co.,
Brown, Taggard & Chase, Boston.
R. S. Davis & Co.,
Phillips, Sampson & Co.,
Shepard, Clark & Brown,
Bazin & Ellisworth,
Hickling, Swan & Brewer,
Crosby, Nichols & Co.,
J. B. Spalter & Co., Keene, N. H.
Peck, White & Peck, New Haven, Conn.
Moore & Nims, Troy, N. Y.
Phillips & Co., Buffalo, N. Y.
S. W. Haverstick, Carlisle, Pa.
J. R. Weldin, Pittsburgh, Pa.
E. B. Smith & Co., Cincinnati, Ohio.
Applegate & Co.,
Moore, Wildtach, Keys & Co.,
Anderson, Gates & Wright,
J. B. Cobb & Co., Cleveland, Ohio.
J. H. Riley & Co., Columbus, Ohio.
W. B. Keen, Chicago, Ill.
J. R. Dayton, Quiney, Ill.
Stewart & Bowen, Indianapolis, Ind.
Jared Pond, Ann Arbor, Mich.
Combs & Bro. St. Paul, Min.
Fisher & Bennett, St. Louis, Mo.
Amos H. Shults & Co.,
Stevenson & Morris,
E. K. Woodward,
L. & A. Carr, St. Louis, Mo.
Morton & Grieswold, Louisville, Ky.
Webb & Levering,
Maxwell & Co.,
C. S. Bodley, Lexington, Ky.
Cleaves & Vaden, Memphis, Tenn.
S. H. Lamb & Co.,
Chas. W. Smith, Nashville,
W. T. Berry,
Graves, Marks & Co.,
Crum & Son, Vicksburg, Miss.
J. C. Morgan & Co.,
Theo. L. White,
Bloomfield, Steel & Co.,
Pfister & White, Montgomery, Ala.
Middleton & McMasters, Mobile, Ala.
Cushing & Bailey, Baltimore, Md.
Newell & Co.,
J. Murphy & Co.,
T. G. Robertson, Hagerstown, Md.
Andrews & Swartwelder, Cumberland, Md.
Blanchard & Mohun,
J. W. Randolph, Richmond, Va.
Geo. M. West,
A. Mocks,
Geo. R. Ford,
McCarter & Co., Charleston, S. C.
R. L. Bryan, Columbia, S. C.
W. L. Pinkney, Raleigh, N. C.
J. F. Bardwell, Macon, Geo.
J. G. M. Warnock, Savannah, Geo.
E. T. Duffau, Austin, Texas.
W. M. Armstrong & Co., Galveston,
James Campbell, Toronto, C. W.
Geo. Barnes & Co., Portland, C.
Brown & Greig,
B. Dawson & Son, Montreal.
P. Sinclair, Quebec.
J. & A. MeMillan, St. John, N. B.
S. J. McCormick, Portland, Oregon.

And from Booksellers generally throughout the United States and the Canadas.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUES of our valuable School, Medical, Law and Miscellaneous publications, furnished on application, and any book will be sent by mail, postage paid, on receipt of the advertised price.

CHARLES DESILVER has on hand, and can furnish the publications of all other Houses on the most favorable terms.
PREFACE.

This interlinear edition of the Anabasis of Xenophon has been carefully translated by the editor of the Latin and Greek series of interlinear classics. His plan is somewhat peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The uncouth and frequently unintelligible sentences of Hamilton are avoided, while on the other hand the verbal and grammatical meanings are given with an accuracy fully equal to his, if not surpassing it. By this plan the sense of the text is also conveyed more precisely than is done either by the plan of Hamilton or that of Locke—every idiomatic and grammatical difficulty being completely overcome.

The work will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

The use of a few signs and characters, explained on another page, has, in a measure, enabled the author to accomplish what he has above set forth.

THOMAS CLARK.

(iii)
EXPLANATIONS.

The union of two or more words by hyphens denotes, that they together express the meaning of one Greek word; as,

\[ \text{γίγνονται,} \]

are-born.

When two or more words, employed to express a Greek word, are separated by one or more words placed between them, such interposition is denoted by a figure ' prefixed to the word next preceding that interposed, and another figure ' placed before the next succeeding word; as,

\[ \text{οὐτω διατίθεν αὐτῶν} \]

"having so disposed all."

An English word or sentence included within parentheses ( ) is an indication that such word or sentence is not expressed in Greek; as

\[ \text{ἀνέπειτο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως.} \]

used-to-come to him of-the (persons sent) from (the) king.

When a word placed in parentheses is italicised, it shows that the word above it is either superfluous or not to be expressed in English; as,

\[ \text{ἐθαύλετο τὸ δυσφόρεω παιδε.} \]

he-desired (the) both (his) son.

A dash directs the word above it to be omitted in the translation; as,

\[ \text{ὅ Κύρος.} \]

− Cyrus.

Where an italicised word or sentence within parentheses is followed by another word or sentence, also in parentheses, but not in italics, the latter forms the proper reading; as,

\[ \text{ἐτύχανε παρὼν.} \]

happened (being-present) (to-be-present).

When a word or sentence is put in brackets [ ] it serves as an explanation, in the nature of a note; but when the reading thus enclosed is to be used instead of the literal translation, a vertical line ( | ) is placed at the beginning of the reading that is to be changed; as,

\[ \text{ἐξοίκεν.} \]

| might-have (themselves) [might be].

(iv)
TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlinear system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.

MILTON.—We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the praxis thereof in some chosen short book lessoned thoroughly to them, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefullest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read some easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]
JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding." — When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might be Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her, I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overspent this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else, this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or abiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as Æsop's Fables, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day, over and over again, till he perfectly understands the Latin; and then go on to another Fable,
Till he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns, not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, he need not have, till he can read himself Sanctii Minervae.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, pari passu, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

Sydney Smith. — The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand, 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian
system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases. The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the waste of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the usual methods of learning Latin and Greek.

Virgil, Horace, Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, and Xenophon's Anabasis, have already been published on the interlinear plan, and will be succeeded by the other Classics, as speedily as is consistent with accurate preparation, and the importance of the undertaking. Ovid and Homer's Iliad are now in press.

Charles Desilver,

714 Chestnut Street, Philadelphia.
BOOK I — CHAPTER II.

Then the king, and his soldiers, remained five days； and they demanded the gates to his quarters； they were manifestly distressed； for it was not of the nature of Cyrus to pay them off, and he was passing the time by doing so.

'Entaída 'Eptíaza h γυνὴ Ἐυνέσσιας τοῦ Ἐρυάκα τῆς Ἀσίλεως, Κίλικος αὐτοῦ, παρὰ τῶν Ἀσημικῶν, ἄνωμενος, ἄρα ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἔπιν ταῖς θύραις ἐπιτηδεύοντο. But — Cyrus, saying hopes, passed the time； and he was manifestly distressed, for it was not of the nature of Cyrus to pay them off.

'Entaída ἐν παραπάγας εἰς Θύμβρον, οἰκουμένει (making) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (a) peopled town. Here there was, by the road (side) (a) fountain which was called (the fountain of) Midas, the king.
Φρυγαί, ἕφ᾽ ὑπ᾽ Μίδας λέγεται θηρεύεται τὸν of-Phrygia, at which, Midas is said to-have-captured the
Σάτυρος, κεφάλας αὐτῶν οὐν. Ἐνταῦθεν Satyr, having-mixed it [the fountain] with-wine. Hence
ἐξελεύνει δύο σταθμοὺς δέκα παρασάγγεις, he-marches-far two stations (making) ten parasangs,
eἰς Τυρισσόν οἰκομένην πάλιν. Ἐνταῦθεν to Tyrissum (am) inhabited town. Here he-remained
τρεῖς ημέρας, καὶ ἡ Κυλλομα λέγεται δεκατρίην three days, and the Cilician (queen) is-said to-have-requested
Κύρος ἐπιδείξας τὸ στρατεύμα αὐτῆς. of-Cyprus | to-have-shown [to show] | (the) (his) army to-his

Οὖν Βουλόμενος ἐπεδείχα, ποιεῖται He therefore willing | to-have-shown [to show it], makes (a)
ἐξέτασιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν review in the plains of the Greeks and of the
βαρβάρων. Ἐξελεύσεις δὲ τοῖς Ἑλλήνως στρατῷ barbarians. He-orders — the Greeks | so
ταχυτών ὡς νόμος αὐτῶν to-have-been-arranged [so to be marshalled] as (was the) custom for-them
eἰς μάχην καὶ στάσιν, δὲ ἔκαστον in battle, and to-stand (in such order), but (that) each
συντάξαι τοῖς εἰπτοῖς. commander was-to-arrange | the of-himself [his own men]. | 'They-

Οὖν ἐσταχθέναι ἐπὶ τετάρατον. were therefore arranged in fours; [they were drawn up
Μένων μὲν δὲ, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰσὶ four deep]; Menon indeed — and | (the) (those) with him had
τὸ δεξίον, δὲ Κλασσαρχὸς καὶ οἱ ἐκεῖνοι the right, but Clearchus | and the of-him [and his men]
tὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοῖ δὲ τὸ μέσον. the left, the other commanders — the centre.

'Ο Κύρος οὖν μὲν πρῶτον ἐθεώρη σαρμαράρους Cyrus therefore — first reviewed the barbarians
οἱ δὲ παρατάσσον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἱλέας καὶ — and they-marched-past-him drawn-up in troops and
book I. — Chapter II. 28

κατα τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα τοὺς Ἐλλήνας in companies, and afterwards (he reviewed) the Greeks παρελθὼν δὲ ἀρματος καὶ Ἡ Ἐλλήνας ἐφ' riding-by-them in (his) chariot, and the Gelician (queen) in ἀρμαμάξες. Ηταντες δὲ ἔχον χαλκὴ κράνη, καὶ (a) covered-carriage. All — had brazen helmets, and φοινικοὶς χυτῶνας, καὶ πυρινᾶς, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας scarlet tunics, and greaves, and the shields ἐπικεκάθαρμένας. Ψευδή δὲ παρῆλασε πάντας, burned. After — he had ridden past all, συνόμον τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, having-stopped — (his) chariot in front of the phalanx, (and) πέμψας Πίεργα τὸν ἔρημαν παρα τοὺς στρατη- having-sent Piggeres the interpreter to the com- γεωμετρίας τῶν Ἐλλήνων ἐκέλευε προδολέσθαι orders of the Greeks he commanded (them) to thrust-forward ἐκασταλα τὰ δῆλα, καὶ ἐπιχωρήσαν τὴν — (their) arms, and to have moved forward [to move forward] the ἔλην φάλαγγα. Οἱ δὲ προείποιν ταῦτα entire phalanx. The (commanders) announced these τῶι στρατιώταις καὶ ἐπεί οὐδὲ (things) to the soldiers; and after it was sounded with the πυγῇ, προδολλόμενοι τὰ δῆλα, ἐπισέσαν. trumpet, putting-forward — (their) arms, they advanced. Δὲ ἐκ τούτων προέτοιτο ἑβάσσον σὺν καταλ吸引力 And from this going-on more quickly with (a) shock, (a) ὁμός ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις running happened to the soldiers [the soldiers commenced run- ἔδωκα τῶι αὐτομάτωι καὶ τὰς σφηνᾶς. Kai δὲ ning] of — their own accord to the tents. And also πολλὰς φόβος ἀλλοις τῶι βαρβάροις, καὶ (there was) (a) great fear to others of the barbarians, and τῇ Ἡ Ἐλλήνας ἐφηγεν ἐκ τῆς ἁρμαμάξες, καὶ — the Gelician (queen) fled from the Persian-carriage, and οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἑγορᾶς ἐφηγοῦν καταλληλόντες τα — (those) in the markets fled having left behind the
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

Now, de oh "Ελληνες ἠλέθουν εὖ τὰς things-exposed-to-sale; but the Greeks went to the σημαίας τὴν γέλωσιν. Δὲ ὁ Κῖλισσα ἴδον σημαία tents with laughter. (But) the Cilician (queen) having-seen τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύσματος the splendour and the discipline of the army ἐθαύμασε. ἐὰν Κῦρος ἤρθη ἴδων τὸν was-struck-with-admiration. (But) Cyrus was-delighted seeing the φόβον ἐκ τῶν 'Ελλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους. fear (inspired) by the Greeks into the barbarians.

"Ενετείθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς, εἰκοσι. Hence he-marches-forth three stations, (making) twenty παρασάγγακας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς parasaγγas, to Iconium, (the) last town — Φρυγίας. "Εντείθεν ἐμείνε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. of-Phrygia. Here he-remained three days.

"Ενετείθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκανοίας πέντε Hence he-marches-forth through — Lycaonia five σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγακας. Εστεπρετῇ stations, (making) thirty parasanga. He-permitted τοῖς "Ελληνοι διαρράψαντες τὴν πάλιν the Greeks | (to-have-plundered) (to plunder) — this χώραν, ὡς οὐδεὶς πολεμίαν. "Ενετείθεν Κῦρος country, as being hostile. Hence Cyrus ἀποτείμενε τὴν Κίλισσαν τὴν ταχιστὴν sends-away. the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest] ὡς εἰς τὴν Κίλισσαν· καὶ συμπέσεις αὐτῷ road into — Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the) στρατιώτας, οὓς Μένων ἔχε, καὶ αὐτὸν soldiers, that Menon had, and (Menon) himself. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καπ- Cyrus indeed with the others marches-forth through Cap- παδοκίας τέτταρας σταθμοὺς, εἰκοσι πέντε παδοκία four stations, (making) twenty and five παρασάγγακας, πρὸς Δαναὶ οἰκομένην πόλιν, parasanga, to Dana (a) peopled town
μεγάλην καὶ εἰδαίμονα. Ἐν ταῦτα ἐμείναν τρεῖς large and wealthy. Here they remained three
ἡμέρας. ἐν δὲ Κύρος ἀπέκτεινε Πέρσην
days; during which (time) Cyrus put to death (a) Persian
ἀνδρα. Μεγαφέρνην, βασίλειον φοινικιστήν,
and a certain other powerful person of the officers high in command
αἰτιοσάμενος ἐπιθυμεῖν αὐτῷ.
having accused (him) to conspire to him [of conspiring against
’Εντεύθεν ἐπειρῶντο. εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν
Hence they endeavoured to throw themselves into —
Κυλλίαν. δὲ ἡ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς
cilicia; but the entrance was (a) road (only broad enough for a
ἀμαξότος, ἱσχυρὰς ὀρθία, καὶ ἀμάχανος
single) wagon way, very steep, and impracticable (for an)
στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν, εἰ τις ἐκάλει. Καὶ δὲ
army to enter, if any one opposed. And also
Συνέννεσις ἐλέγετο εἰναὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων
Syennesis was said to be on the heights, guarding
τὴν εἰσβολὴν. δὲ δὲ ἐμείνεν ἡμέραν ἐν
the entrance; for which (reason) he remained (a) day on
τῷ πεδίῳ. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραιᾷ ἁγγελος ἴση λέγων
the plain. But on the next day (a) messenger came saying
ὅτι Συνέννεσις εἰς λελοκωσία τὰ ἄκρα, ἐτεί
that Syennesis might be having left (had left) the heights, after
ὡσετο ὅτι τὸ στρατεύμα Μένωνος ἦν ἦδη ἐν
he perceived that the army of Menon was already in
Κυλλία, εἰσώ τῶν ὄρεων, καὶ ὅτι θάνευ
Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he heard (that)
Ταμών ἐξουσα τρήρεις τάς
Tamos having galleys (namely) (those) of (the) Lasos-
δαμονίων καὶ Κύρου αὐτοῦ,
demonians and of Cyrus himself, (and that) he (Tamos) was sail-
ούσας ἄπτε σινίας εἰς Κυλλίαν. Κύρος δὲ οὖν
ing round from Ionia into Cilicia. Cyrus therefore
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

Ascending (on) the mountains, no-one opposing, and he saw the tents, where the Cilicians kept guard. Hence he descended into (a) large and beautiful plain, well-watered, and (being) full of all kinds of trees and vines; and also it bears much sesame and grain, and wine and millet, and wheat, and barley. (A) mountain (chain)—

νυμφόν καὶ ἵππον περιέχει αὐτῷ

strong (by nature and art) and high surrounds it

πάντα ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

en-all-sides from sea to sea.

Descending—through this—plain he proceeds, five and twentypara-s ágyas, (a) large and wealthy city of Cilicia. Here were the palaces of Stratonicea. The citizens of Cilicia, the king of (the) Cilicians; and through (the)

μέσης τῶν πόλεως πει πόταμος ὅνωμα

middle of the city runs (a) river (the) name (of which is)

Κύδνου, εὔρος δύο πλέορον. Oí

Cydnus, (the) breadth (of which is) two plethra. (Theóss)

ἐνοικοῦντες τῆς ταῖς πόλιν εξελίσσον μετὰ

inhabiting—this city deserted (it) altogether with

Συννέσιος εἰς ὅχυρον χωρίον ἐν τῷ ὅμηρον (theóss)

Syene for (a) fortified place on the mountains, except (thése) having—shops; and also (thése) dwelling—
παρὰ τὴν βάλανταν ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσαοῖς,
near the sea at Soli and at Issus,
ἲη τὸν ὕμερας προτέρα Κύρου· δὲ ἐν τῇ ἱπποβολῇ
five days before Cyrus; but in the crossing-over
τῶν ὄρων, τῶν
of the mountains,
ἐις τὸ πεδίον,
eis to pediaion,
ὁ λόχοι στρατεύματος τοῦ Μένονος
two companies of (the)
ἡμερολογία. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν
army — of-Menon
ἀπολογοῦντο. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν
something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had been cut to pieces
ἰπτὸ τῶν Κιλίκων· δὲ οἱ
while plundering] by the Cilicians; but — (others) (that;
ὑπολείψατε, καὶ οὐ δυνάμεις εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο
being-soft-behind, and not being-able to-find the rest (of the)
στρατεύματος οὐδὲ τάς ὅδοις ἐίτε πλανημένοις
army nor the roads after wandering-about
ἀπολέσθαι· οὕτως δὲ οὖν ἦσαν ἑκατὰν ὑπολίται.
to-have-perished; these — therefore were a-hundred heavy-armed-men.
Αἰ τῶν οὐλιδρον τῶν
But the rest (of Menon’s command) after they-arrived, enraged
συστρατιωτῶν δισπασαν
at the destruction — (of their) fellow-soldiers plundered
τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς, καὶ τὰ βασιλεῖα τα ἐν
the — city — Tarsus, and the palaces — in
αὐτη. Κύρος δὲ ἐπει ἐσπασαν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
it. Cyrus indeed after he-entered into the city,
μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννησιν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν· ὅ
sent-for — Syenness (to come) to him;
ἄφη συντρεπταὶ τρίτων ἐλείν εἰς χείρας
but he-said | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands
οὐδὲν
[that never yet before this had he put himself in the power of] any-person.
CHAPTE R III.

'Ενταῦθα Κύρως καὶ ἡ στρατιά ἐμείνε εἰκοσιοί

Hara Cyrus and the army remained twenty
days; for the soldiers said not to go —
πρόσω. Γὰρ ἓδη
farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther]. For already
ιπτότενον ἐναὶ ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
they-suspected [to-go against (the) king; [that they were going
dὲ ἐφασαν ὦν
against the king of Persia]; and they-said (that they) 'were not
μοισιάθηναι ἐπὶ τοῦτον. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος
hired for this (purpose). Clearchus — first
ἐδιάζετο τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτοῦ
endeavoured-to-compel | the soldiers of-him [his soldiers]
ἰέναι οἱ δὲ τε ἐθαλλοῦν αὐτοῦ
to-go; — but — (his men) began-to-pelt him (with stones)
καὶ τὰ ἰσούγια τὰ ἑκείνου,
and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him, [belonging to him],
ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προϊέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε
after he-began to-advance. Clearchus indeed — then
μικρὸν ἔξεφυγε μὴ τῷ καταπετρώθηναι.
narrowly escaped lest the to-have-been-stoned; [stoning to death];
ὑπερορν' ἐπεὶ ἠγνο ὅτι οὐ δυνάσεται
at-length — after he-knew that he 'would not 'be-able
βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιώτων
he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the soldiers
αὐτοῦ. Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἑστῶς
of-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)
ἐδόκησεν πολιν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὁρῶντες
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this
ἐθαυμαζον καὶ ἐσώσασιν· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε
wondered and were-silent; afterwards — he-spoke-to-them
τουᾶδε.
thus.

Ἀνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-
Men soldiers, 'do not 'wonder that 'I griev-
πῶς φέρω τοὺς παροῦς πράγμασιν. Γὰρ
asily 'bear the present (state of) things. | For
Κύρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοί
Cyrus became (a) guest-friend to-me [for Cyrus bound himself to
καὶ ἐτιμήσε με, φεύγοντα
me by the ties of hospitality] and he-honoured me, (an) exile
ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τὰ ἅλλα,
from — (my) country, | and the others, [and also in other
καὶ ἐδώκε μνήμης δαρείους·
and (in particular) he-gave (me) ten-thousand darics;
σος ἐγὼ λαβών, οὐ κατεδέμην ἐμοὶ εἰς τὸ which I having-taken, 'did not 'put-by for-myself for — (my)
ιδιον, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθενυπάθεσα, ἀλλ' ἐδαιμόνων own-private (use), — neither did-I-spend-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it
εἰς ἕμας. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς for you. For first — I-made-war against the
爱国主义ς, καὶ μετ' ἤμαν ἐτιμωροῦν ὕπερ Thracians, and together-with you I-took-vengeance (on them) for
τῆς Ἐλλάδος, ἑξελαίτων αὐτοῖς ἐκ τῆς Χερσονήσου, — Greece, expelling them from the Chersonesus,
βουλομένους ἀφαίρεσθαι τὴν γῆν τῶν (they) desiring to-take-away the land (of) the
"Ελλήνας ἐνοικοῦτας. Ἑσπείρη δὲ Κύρος ἐκάθεὶ Greeks dwelling-there. After — Cyrus called-me
ἐπορεύομεν, λαβὼν ἕμας, ἵνα εἰ τί I-went, taking you (with me), in-order-that if —
δέοντο ὡφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἄνδρ' he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help him | for (those things)
ἐν ἔπαθον εὖ ἐν τῇ ἔξεινον.
of-which I-was-affected beneficially by him [in return for the bene-
"Εσπείρη δὲ ὑμεῖς βούλεσθε οὐ fite I have received from him}. Since however you wish not
συμπορευεσθαι, ἀνάγχε δι' μοι to-accompany (him), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am constrained]
ἡ προδότα ἕμας χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κύρου, either (by) deserting you | to-use the friendship of Cyrus,
ἡ φιλία λαμβάνων
[to preserve the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being
πρὸς ἔξεινον ἱέναι μετ' ἕμας. Εἰ μὲν δὴ false) towards him to-go with you. | If indeed —
ποτόσο δικαιω οἶδα οὐχ I-shall-make just-things I-know not [whether indeed I shall act cor-
αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ἕμας, καὶ οὖν rectly, I know not] I-shall-hold — therefore (to) you, and with
ὑμῖν πείσομαι δ' τι ἄν δέη. Καὶ οὐδεὶς you will-submit-to what — may be-necessary | And no-one
BOOK I. — CHAPTER III.

{oíntote ἔρει, δός ἐγὼ}

shall never have-said, [and no one shall ever say], that. I

ἄγγαγών Ἑλλήνας εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς

having-led Greeks among the barbarians, deserting
toōς Ἑλλήνας εὑλόμεν τὴν φιλίαν τῶν βαρ-

the Greeks took-in-preference the friendship of the bar-

βάριον. Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἵμας οὐ θέλετε πείσεσθαι

barians. But since you do not desire to-obey

ἐμοὶ οὖδὲ ἐπεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἔλοιμαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ

me nor to-follow (me), I will-follow (with) you, and

πείσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δέη. Γὰρ νομίζω

will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. For I consider

ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ

you to-be to-me (and) (my) country, and (my) friends and (my)

συμμάχους, καὶ ἂν μὲν οἷςα σὺν ὑμῖν

fellow-soldiers, and I may indeed 'think (that) with' you (I am)

εἶναι τιμῶσ ὁποὺ ἂν ὦ, δὲ ἂν ἔρημος ὑμῶν,

to-be honoured wherever 'I may be, but being destitute of you,

ἀν οἶμαι οὐχ εἶναι ἰχανός οὔτ' ἂν ὑπελήσαι

'If I may 'think (myself) not to-be competent either — to-help

φίλον, οὔτ' ἂν ἀλέξασθαι ἔχρον. 'Ως οὖν

a friend, or — repel (an) enemy. That therefore

ἐμοὶ λόγος, ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἂν, οὔτο ἔχετε

I am-going, where also you may (be going), then hold-to

τὴν γνώμην.

Taïta

— (this) opinion (that I am determined to go with you). These-things

eîte: ἰδόν τε οἱ στρατιῶται, οἱ τε

he-said [thus did he speak]; and the soldiers, — as-well

ἐκείνου αὐτῶν καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,
of-those of-himself, [as well those of his own command], as the others,

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ὅτι φαίνῃ οὕς

hearing these-things, that he-should-say (that he was) not

πορεύεσθαι παρὰ βασιλέα, ἐπιφέσαν· πλείους ἀ

to-march-forth against (the) king, they-applauded; more than

δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,

two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion,
λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σχευοφόρα ἔστρατον — (their) arms and — (their) baggage com-
topedeúσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κύρος δὲ ἀποροῦν
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus — being-perplexed
te καὶ λυπομένος τοὺς, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέ-
and also distressed at-these-things, sent-for — Cle-
αρχον. ὃ δὲ ἥδε εὐ μὲν ίέναι, λαθρα δὲ archus; who however would not — go, unknown however (to)
tῶν στρατιώτων πέμπτων ἄγγελον αὐτῶ ἐλέγε
the soldiers, sending (a) messenger to-him, he-told (him)
θαρρεῖν, ὡς τούτων καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ to-be-of-good-courage | as these-things being-arranged in the
dεον. 
required-manner; [as those affairs would be satisfactorily arranged]; also
μεταπέμπεσαι ἐκέλευεν αὐτῶν ὁ (he requested Cyrus) to-send (and again) request him
ὁ αὐτῶς ἐφη (to come to him); but he (after being sent for again) said (that be:
on ίέναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῖτα πυγαγῶν τοὺς would) not go. After — this assembling | the
dὲ στρατιῶτας ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς — soldiers of-himself, [his-soldiers] and — (those)
προσελθόντας αὐτῶ, καὶ τὸν βουλόμενον τὸν
having-joined him, and the desirous of-the
ἀλλαυ, ἐλέγε τοιάδε.
other (soldiers to be present), he-spoke thus (to them.)

"Αὐρές στρατιῶται, μὲν δὲ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ
Men soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)
Κύρον ἔχει, οἶτως πρὸς ἡμᾶς, δόσερ τὰ
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —
ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐξεἰνον.
our (affairs do) to him; [the affairs of Cyrus are in the
γὰρ οἶτε ἡμεῖς ἐστι
same relation to us, that ours are to him]; for neither (are) we now
στρατιῶτας ἐκείνου γε εἶπεν ὁ
| (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least after we ' do not
συνεπόμενα αὐτῷ, οἴτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μεταδότης
'follow him, nor (is) he now paymaster

ἡμῖν. Ὅτι μὴντοι νομίζετε ἀδίκεισθαι ὑφ
to-us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured by

ἡμῶν οἴδατε· καὶ ὡστε ὑποτεύχων μεταπεμπτομένου
us I-know; and so-that he sending-for (me)

ἐξελθὼ οὖς ἔλθειν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,
I-will not have-gone, [go], indeed (what is) the greatest,

αἰσχυνομένος, ὅτι σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ
being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of)

ἔφεσομένος αὐτῶν πάντα, ἐκτὸς ὑπεισή
having-deceived him in-all (this), and indeed then-also

dεδιώκει, μὴ, λαθὼν με ἔπιθη
having-feared, lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-inflicted [he may

δίκην, δὲ νομίζει
dict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in which] he-thinks (him-

ἡδικήσθαι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. Οὖν δοξεῖ ἐμοὶ
heed us to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore (this) seems to-me

εἶναι οὐχ ὡς ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ' ἀμέλειν ἡμῶν
to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor to-neglect our

αὐτῶν ἄλλα βουλεύεσθαι ὅ, τι χρή ποιεῖν
selves but to-deliberate | what is-necessary to-do

ἐκ τούτων. Καί ἓς τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ,
from these [next]. And as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here,

δοξεῖ μοι εἶναι σκέπτεται, ὡς μενοῦμεν
it-seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-considered, how 'we (may) 'remain

ἀσφαλέστατα, εἰ τε ἢδη δοξεῖ ἀπείναι, ὡς
the-most-securely, if also (it) now seems (best) to-depart, how

ἀμίμην ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὡς ἐξεῖνεν τὰ
we-may-depart the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the

ἐπιτυχεῖσθαι. γὰρ ἁνεύ τούτων οὐδέν
necessaries-of-life; for without these (necessaries) | (there is) no

ὄφελος οἴτε στρατηγοῦ οἴτε
advantage neither [either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the)

ἵδιωτον.
private-soldier [the commander and private soldier are alike inefficient].
Δ’ ὁ ἄνρο μὲν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ
But the man (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of much (estimation).

ὁ ἄν ς φίλος, δὲ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς,
to whom he may be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter enemy,

ὁ ἄν ς πολέμος ἐχεῖ δὲ καὶ δύναμιν
to whom he may be (an) enemy; he has — also (a) force

καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ναυτικῶν, ὅπως
both foot and cavalry, also (a) naval (one), which (we

πάντες όμοιοι ὄρμωμεν τε κράτα ἐπιστάμεθα καὶ
all alike 'see and also know; and (this is

γάρ δοκοῦμεν μοι καθήσασθαι
not strange) for we seem to me to sit (to be encamped) not indeed

πόρρω αὐτοῦ ὅστε ὡρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις
far from him; Wherefore (it is) time to say what — any one

γινώσκει εἰναι ἀριστον. Εἰς τούτο ταύτα ἐπιαισάτο.
knows to be better. Saying this he finished.

'Ex τοίνυν ό δ' ἀνίσταντο, οἷος μὲν ἔκ
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτοῦ, ἔλεγον τοῦ ἄγιον
of their own accord, (about) saying (intending to say) what they

νωστόν, καὶ οἱ δὲ ἐγκέλευσον ὑπ’
thought (of affairs) and — (others) indeed ordered by

ἔκεινον ἐπιδεικνύντες οία εἰν ὁ ἀπορία
pointing out what might be the difficulty

ἂν τῆς γυναῖκος Κύρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπειναι.
without the consent of Cyrus both to remain and to go.

Δὲ εἰς δὴ προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν
And one namely (of those instructed) pretending earnestly to desire

πορεύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
to proceed as speedily as possible to — Greece,

εἰτὲ, ἀλλος στρατηγὸς μὲν ἐλέοςθαι
said, (that) other commanders — to have been chosen

ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μὴ
as speedily as possible, if Clearchus is not

βοιλέται ἀπαγείν: δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
willing to lead them back; (that) also the necessaries of life
ἀγοράζεσθαι, δὲ ἣν ἂγορὰ ἐν τῷ βαρβαρῷ
were-to-be-bought, for there-was— (a) market in the
στρατευματι, καὶ συσχεινάζεσθαι. δ' ἄ
army, and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and
έλθοντας Κύρον αὐτεῖν πλοῖα, δὲς
( that they), going to-Cyrus, to-ask-for ships, in-order-that
ἀποστέλλονεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταύτα, αὐτεῖν
they-may-send; if however he—do not 'give these, to-ask
Κύρον ἱγμόνα, δοσὺς ἀπαξεῖ διὰ τῆς φιλίας
Cyrus (for a) leader, who will-lead (them) through the friendly
χώρας. Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ἱγμόνα
countries. If however he—does not-even give (a) leader (they are)
συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχιστὴν, καὶ
to-form-themselves-in-order-of-battle — as-speedily-as-possible, and
dὲ πέμψαι προκαταληφθομένους τὰ ὀχρὰ,
also | to-have-sent [hence] after preoccupying the heights, [and also
ὅπως μὴ
to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that neither
Κύρος νίπτε ὁ Κίλικες μὴ καταλαθότες
Cyrus nor the Cilicians | 'may not having-seized-up
φαλάσση—
have-occupied, [may not have anticipated us, in taking possession of these
ἐν ἐχομεν πολλοῖς καὶ πολλᾷ
heights], of-whom [the Cilicians] we-have many-men and much
χρηματίσας ἀνηρπακότες
Ousted mēn δὴ
property having-taken-them-away-from-them. Thus indeed — (In)
tοιοῦτα ἐἵνε· δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος
this (manner) he—spoke; but after this Clearchus
ἐἵνε τοῦτον.
spoke just-so-much.
Μὴ δεῖς ὑμῶν λεγέτω δὲ μὴν ἐμὲ ὁστατη-
'Let no-one of-you 'say that — | I (am) about-lead-
γοντα ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν·
ing-the-army (In) this the command (thereof); [that I
γὰρ ἐνορῶ πολλὰ,
will accept the office of commander]; for I-perceive many-things,
δι' α' τοῦτο οὖ ποιήτεν ἐμοί: δ' οὖν, on-account-of which this 'must not 'be-done by-me; but (let him
ὡς πείσομαι ᾧ μάλιστα δυνατόν, τῷ ἄνδρὶ
say) that I-shall-obey in-as much-as possible, the man,
δ' ἀν ἐλεησῆ, ἵνα εἰδίπτε ὁτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι
whom 'you may 'choose, that you-may-see, that also I-know
ἀρχεῖονα καὶ ᾧ τῆς μάλιστα ἄλλος
to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other
ἄνδρώνων. Μετὰ τούτων ἄλλος
of-men [as well as any other man]. After this another
ἀνέστη ἐπιδεικνύς μὲν τὴν εὐθείαν τοῦ
arose (to speak) pointing-out — the simplicity — (of him)
κελεύωντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὡσπερ Κύρου
advising to-ask — (for) ships, as-if Cyrus 'would
μὴ ποιομένων τὸν στόλον πάλιν,
not 'hereafter 'be-making the fleet return, [order the fleet to re-
'επιδεικνύς ὡς εὐθείας εἴη αἰτεῖν
turn], also showing how foolish (a thing) it-would-be to-ask-for (a)
ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τοῦτον
leader from this (very person) whom we-are-frustrating:
tήν τραχίν. Καὶ δὲ εἰ πυτεύσομεν τῷ
(in) — (his) undertaking. And also if we-shall-confidence in-the
ἡγεμόνος ὁ Κύρος ἀν διδῶ, τὶ καλύπτει Κύρον
leader, whom Cyrus may give, what hinders (that) Cyrus 'may
καὶ κελεύων τὰ ἀξρα προακαλαμβάνειν ὑμῖν;
also 'order the heights | to-preoccupy for-us?
Γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὄνομα δὲν
[to be preoccupied for us]? For I indeed shall-be-reluctant —
ἐμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοία, ὁ δὲ ὑμῖν,
to-embark on (board) the vessels, which he-might-give us,
μὴ καταδίσῃ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τρυπεῖσι:
lest he-should-submerge us (together) with-these — galleya
ἄν δὲ φοβοῖμην ἐπεσθαυ τῷ ἡγεμόνι
'themselves; 'I should indeed 'be-afraid to-follow the guide
ὁ δὲν, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ἐδει
whom he-may-give, lest he-might-lead us (to a place) whence it-'will
to escape; I would wish — —

him; 

without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I

say (that) these (things) indeed are absurdities; but to me

it seems (that) men, who (are) fit, having-gone

to Cyrus with Clearchus to ask him (for) what

he wished to use us; and if indeed the

undertaking be similar (to that) in which kind 'he also

employed — foreign-troops, and that we (should)

follow (him), and (that we might) not be worse (than)

— (those) 'before going up with him; [who before

went up with him]; but if the undertaking may seem greater (than)

the former, and more difficult, and more dangerous,

then that we request either (that) having-persuaded (us) to lead

us (with him), or having been persuaded (by us) (he would allow us)

accompanying him (as) friends, we also may accompany (him)
τοὺς ἄνθρωπος ἐν ἀδιάμομμα
terior

ἀφαλάς, δεύτερο ἀναγγείλαν ἂν
safety; (that) here [they-have-announced [they report] —

τι δὲ ἂν λέγῃ πρὸς ταύτα. δ' ἡμᾶς
what (he) — may say to these (things); and we

ἀξιόσαντας βουλεύονται πρὸς ταύτα.
having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon these (things).

'Εδοξὲ ταύτα,
[It-seemed-good (respecting) these-things, [these propositions were ap-

καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἄνδρας πείστωσι σὲν Κλε-
proved], and having-choosen men they-send (them) with Cle-

ἀρχα, οἱ πρῶτοι Κύρον τὰ δοξάντα
archus, who asked Cyrus [ (respecting) the (things) were-seeming

τὴν στρατιάν.
(ten) to-the army [the questions agreed on by the army]. Who

Οὐ τρόπωνοι, ὅτι ἄκουσέ, Ἀβροκονᾶς ἄνδρα
— answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) man

ἐγνώρων εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ,
inimical (to him) is on the river Euphrates,

ἀπέχοντα διάδεξα σταυροίς. ἐφη ὁ στὶ
being-distant twelve days'-march; he-said (that) therefore he-

λεοῦται ἔλθειν πρὸς τούτον. καὶ μὲν ἂ
hares to-go against this (Abrocomas); and-if — he-were

ἐξεῖ ἔφη χρῆσθαι ἐπιδείκνυτι τὴν δίκην
there he-said (that) he-longed to-have-inflicted — punishment

αὐτῷ δὲ Ἰν φείγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐξεῖ βουλευομένων πρὸς
on-him but if he-retreat, we there will-deliberate about

ταύτα. Οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀξιόσαντες δὲ ταύτα
these-things. The deputies having-heard — these-things

ἀναγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις δὲ τοῖς
announce (them) to-the soldiers; but — (to them)

μὲν ἂν ἰπποι καὶ ἄγει πρὸς
indeed there-was suspicion that he-is-leading (them) against (the)

βασιλέα, δὲ ὀμος ἐδοξεί ἐπευθαί. 
king, but however it-seemed (to them best) to-accompany (him),
CHAPTER IV.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταδίων δέκα
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds two days’-march (making) ten
παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ψάρου, τὸ εἰρὸς
parasanges, to the river Psaros, the breadth
οὗ ἦν τρία πλεῖθρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἕνα
of which was three plethra. Thence he-proceeds one
σταδίων πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
days’-march (making) five parasanges to the river
Πύραμον, τὸ εἰρὸς οὗ στάδιον. Ἐντεῦθεν
Pyramos, the breadth of which (is a) stadium. Thence
ἐξελαύνει δύο σταδίων πεντεκαίδεκα παρα-
he-proceeds two days’-march (making) fifteen
σάγγας εἰς Ἰςοῦς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας,
parasanges to Issus, the last town—in Cilicia,
ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάσσῃ, οἰκουμένῃ, μεγάλῃ καὶ
(situated) on the sea (coast), peopled, large and
εὐφαίμονα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἔμειναν τρεῖς ὡμέρας καὶ
wealthy. Here they remained three days; and
αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆσος ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
the thirty and five ships from Peloponnesus.
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

καὶ παρῆσαν Κύρῳ, καὶ παλιγκόροι τούτου, [arrived at Cyrus' camp], and (the) ad-μεροὶ τῶν στόλων Πυθαγόρας Ἀνδρέας Ἀρείος, Λακεδαίμονιος. While they (were) present (for) Cyrus, [arrived at Cyrus' camp], and (the) ad-

Δῆ τοι Ἡρώδη τοῦ μαχητῆ τοῦ Ἐφέσου, ἡς Αιγύπτιος ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς, having (with him) five and twenty other ships (belonging to) Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναῦς.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας ναucose.  Ἰνδικοὶ ἑπεκτίω ἐν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἑτέρας να下面是小文不完整，请继续。
BOOK I. — CHAPTER IV.

Διὰ μέσου δε τούτων ποταμὸς
Through (the) middle — of these [between these two walls] (a) river

Κάρος, ὅνομα ρείς, εὐρὸς πλῆθρον.
Cærus (by) name flows, (the) breadth (being a) multitude.

Δὲ ἀπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τεῖχων ἦσαν
But the-whole (space between) the walls were

τρεῖς στάδιοι. καὶ παρελθεῖν βίᾳ ἦν οὗ
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible);

γὰρ ἡ παράδος ἦν στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχα καθήκοντα
for the passage was narrow, and the walls reaching

εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, ὑπερθεὶς δὲ ἦσαν ἐλίθαινες
to the sea, above also were impassable

πετραῖ. δὲ πύλαι ἐφευρήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφότεροις
rocks; and (the) passes (had) stood-by (at) each

toῖς τεῖχεσιν; "Ενεκα ταύτης τῆς
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

παράσεῖν Κύρος μετεπιθυμᾶτο ταῖς ναύσις, ὅπως
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that

ἀποθεώσειν ὅπλητας εἰς ἐνα καὶ ἐξω τῶν πυλῶν,
he-might-land heavy-armed-men within. and without the passes,

καὶ βιασάμενος παρελθεῖν τοῖς πόλεις
calling (who) having-forced (a passage) might-pass-through the ene-

μίους, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις
my, if they 'might (yet) 'guard — the Syrian

πύλαις ὑπὲρ ὁ Κύρος ἅπερ ποιήσειν, τοῦ Ἀβρο-
passes which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — Abro-

κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στρατευμα. Δ' Ἀβροχόμας
having (a) great army. But Abrocomes

οὐχ ἐποίητε τούτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύροιν
'did not 'do this, but after he-heard (of) Cyrus

ὄντα ἐν Κιλίκια ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπίθανεν
being in Cilicia having-retired from Phoenicia he-departed
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ως ἑλέγετο τριάκοντα
to (the) king having as it was said thirty
μυριάδας στρατιῶν.

ten-thousands (three hundred thousand) military.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας ἓνα σταῖς:
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one days'.

μᾶς πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυριάνδρον,
march, (making) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)
pόλει τῇ βαλλάττῃ οἰκουμένῃ ἐπὶ
town on the sea (coast) populated by
Φοινίκιον. Ἡ δ' ἐπιφέρου τῷ ἱφρίον,
Phoenicia. It was also (a) sea (for that district of) the country,
καὶ πολλαὶ ὀλυκάδες ἔρυσαν αὐτόν.
and many ships-of-burden arrived there. Here
ἐμεῖναν ἐπὶ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ Εὐνίας, ὁ Ἀραχω
he remained seven days; and (here) Xenaeus, the Arcadian
στρατηγὸς, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεύς,
commander, and Pasion the Megarian, having embarked
ἐλεῖ πλοῖον, καὶ ἐνδέμην τὰ ἄξια
in (a) vessel, and having-shouldered-on-board (their) effects
πλείστουν, ἀπέκλεισαν, ὡς μὲν τοὺς πλείστους
of the greatest (value), they sailed away, as indeed to the most
ἐὐδόκουν φιλοτιμουσάντες
they thought having been made jealous of their honour (the most thought,
ὅτι Κῦρος εἶν τὸν
that they were influenced by jealousy) because Cyrus allowed —
Κλέαρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιῶτας αὐτῶν,
Clearistus to have the soldiers of them, (their soldiers);
τοὺς ἀπελθόντας παρὰ Κλέαρχον, ὡς
(namely) — (those) deserting to Clearistus, as
ἀπολέσαντες πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
departing back to — Greece [when they intended to
καὶ οὗ πρὸς βασιλέα. 'Εκεῖ
return to Greece] and not (march) against (the) king. (a) After
δ' ἦσαν ἄφανεῖς
they were invisible [after their disappearance] (a) rumour
λόγος

BOOK I. — CHAPTER IV.

ὅπως ὅσιος διάκοι αὐτοίς went-through (the army) that Cyrus might-follow them *with (the)
τρώγος καὶ οἱ μὲν εἰσόντω αὐτοῖς 'galleys; and — (some) indeed prayed (that) they (might)
ἀγάφηναι ὡς ἄντις δολίων, οἱ δ' be-taken as being perfidious (men), — (others) indeed
ἀστειροῦν εἰ ἀλώσομαι. √/Δὲ Κύρος pitted (them) if they-should-be-captured. But Cyrus
συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε. Ἐνιαίες καὶ having-called-together the commanders said; Xeniás and
Πασίων ἀπολειπάσας ἡμᾶς ἀλλὰ ye Pasion have-left us; but *let-them at-least be
εἰ μὲν τοῖς ἔπιστάσονται, ὅτι σινέ ἀποδε- well indeed 'assured, that they—have neither
δρακανό, γὰρ οἶδα ὅτι σινε ρεῖναι, ὅτι away (clandestinely), for I-know where they-are-going, nor
ἀποπτηθήσας, γὰρ ἐκ τρώγος ὅστε ἐλεῖν have—they-escaped, for I-have galleys | in-order-to have-seised
τὸ πλοῖον ἐκεῖνον. Ἀλλὰ, μᾶ the ship of-them [to capture their ship]. But, *by
τοὺς θεοὺς οίκος ὅγοις διάκοι αὐτοῖς. οὐδ' the gods not even I will-follow them; nor (shall)
οιδεῖσ ἔρει, ὡς ἐγὼ ἔχω μὲν τις ἀν παρῇ any-one say, that I, as-long-as indeed any-one might stay-with
χρώματι, δ' ἐπειδὰν βοιληταί ἀνυ- (me), make-use (of their services), but after he-may-wish to-
τόν συλλαβὼν αὐτοῖς καὶ κακῶς πουῦ τοῖ leave (me) having-seised them 'I both ill 'treat (them) and
ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα. Ἀλλὰ ἱοντων, despoil (them of) — goods. But let-them-go,
εἶδότες ὅτι εἰδοὶ κακίως they-having-known [they being conscious] that they-are worse
περὶ ἡμᾶς ἡ ἡμείς περὶ ἐκεῖνος. Καίτοι γε towards us than we towards them. Although 'I indeed
ἐγὼ καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας αὐτῶν φρουρούμενα 'have both (the) children and wives of-them guarded
ἐν Τράλλεσι: ἀλλ’ οἰδὲ στερήσωνται
at Tralles; but they—shall not-even be-deprived
tοιτῶν, ἀλλ’ ἀπολήγοντα ἑνεκα τῆς
of-these, but they—shall—receive (them) on-account—of (their)
ἀρετῆς περὶ ἐμὲ πρόσθεν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε
good—conduct towards me formerly. And—| he indeed ‘said
tαύτα.’ ὥστε οἱ Ἑλληνες, εἰ τις καὶ
these; [thus did he speak]; and the Greeks, if any (one) in—fine
ἂν ἀδισμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκούοντες
was disinclined towards the ascent [expedition] hearing
τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἡδον
the noble—conduct of—Cyrus, accompanied (him) with—great—pleasure
καὶ προδισμότερον.
and with—greater—sacri—city—of—mind.

Μετὰ ταύτα Κύρος ἐξελαίνει τέταρας
After these (things) Cyrus proceeds four
σταδίους εἰκοσι παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τῶν
days’—march (making) twenty parasangs to the
ποταμῶν Χάλου, ἄντα τὸ εἴρος πλεῖδρου,
river Chalus, (it) being the breadth ‘of (a) plethrum,
δὲ πλὴρη μεγάλων καὶ τραίων ἱχθίων, οὐς οἱ
and full of—large and three fish, which the
Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεοίς, καὶ οἰκεὶ Εἰων
Syrians considered (to be) gods, and ‘did not ‘permit (any one)
ἀδικεῖν οἰδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δὲ
to—injure (neither them) nor the pigeons. The —
καὶ ἐν αἷς ἐσκινοῦν ἦσαν Παρσὰτιδος
villages in which they—encamped | were of—Parsatis [belonged
δεδουμέναι εἰς ζώνην.
to Parsatis] having—been—given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin—money].

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει πέντε σταδίους τριάκοντα
Thence he—proceeds five days’—march, (making) thirty
παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
parasangs to the springs [sources] of—the river
Δάρδητος τὸ εἴρος οὗ
Dardes the breadth of—which (is that) ‘of (a) plethrum,
Ενταύθα ἦσαν τὰ βασιλεία Βελέσινος τούθι
Here were the palaces of Belesys | the
ἀρχαντὸς Ἦρως, καὶ παράδεισος, πάνυ
having-rulled-over [the ruler] of Syria, and (a) park, 
μέγας καὶ καλὸς, ἔχων πάντα ὑπὸ δραί
large and beautiful, having all, how-much-so-ever (the seasons
φύσει. Δέ Κύρος αὐτὸν ἔξεσθε καὶ κατέκαυσε
produce. But Cyrus 'cut it down and burned
τὰ βασιλεῖα.
the palaces.

'Ενταύθανεν ἐξελαννεὶ τρεῖς σταδίους πέντε-
Thence he-proceeds three days'-march (making)
σκαίδεια παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν νοτοῦν Εὐφράτην
steep path, up the river Euphrates
ὅρια τὸ ἐφόρος στεντάρων σταδίων καὶ
(it) being (there) the breadth of-four stadia; and (there
πόλις αὐτῷ Ἄθακος ἐνόματι ᾧ οὗτο
was a) city there Thapsacus by-name (which) was-inhabited,
μεγάλη καὶ εἰδήμων. 'Ενταύθα
large and wealthy. There
ἐμειναν πέντε ὡμέρας καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμφάμενος
they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἔλεγεν ὦτι ἡ
the commanders of the Greeks, said that the
ὁδὸς ἐγκατέστη εἰς Βαβυλῶνα πρὸς μέγαν
road might-hereafter-be to Babylon against (the) great
βασιλείας καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
king; and he-requests them to-tell these (things)
τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀνακάθειθεν ἐπεσθαν.
to-the soldiers, and to-persuade (them) to-follow (him).

Δ' οἱ ποιόσαντες ἐκκλησίαν
And who having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)
καθηγησθέν ταῦτα. Δέ οἱ στρατιώται
communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers
ἐκαλέσαν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοῖς
were-angry with-the commanders, and told them.
πάλαι εἰδότας ταῦτα
(that) "having already-known these-things, (that they)
κρύτειν· καὶ ἐφασαν
conceal (them from the soldiers); and they-said (that they would)
οὐκ ἔνα, ἐὰν μὴ τις διδᾶ χρήματα αὐτοῖς
not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them
δισπέρ καὶ
tois protérous
also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-
βασιν µετὰ Κύρου
gone-up with Cyrus, [In like manner as had been given to the soldiers,
pαρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ
who had formerly accompanied Cyrus] to the father —
Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἱόντων εἰτὰ μάχην, ἄλλα
of-Cyrus, and this not going to battle, but
τοῦ πατρὸς καλούντος Κύρου.] Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
the father (merely) sending-for Cyrus.] The commanders
ἀπεγελλὼν ταῦτα
reported these (things) to-Cyrus; and who promised
δώσειν πέντε µνᾶς ἀργυρίου ἐκάστῳ ἄνδρι, ἐπαν
to-give five mines of-silver to-each man, when
ἐκωσὶ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν ἐντελῆ µοῦ ὁδὸν
they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their) entire pay
μέχρι ἀν καταστήσῃ τοῖς Ἐλλήνσας πάλαι
until he should place the Greeks back-again
εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ µὲν ἔτι τοῦ Ἐλληνικοῦ
in Ionia. The most indeed — of-the Greek
οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
(forso) 'was thus 'persuaded (to accompany him).

Δὲ Μένον, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τι οἱ ἄλλοι
But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other
στρατιώται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἐφονται Κύρῳ
soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus
ἢ ὅ, συνέλλεξε τὸ στρατευμα αὐτοῦ χωρίς
or not, assembled | the army of-himself [his army] apart
τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.
from-the others, and spoke | these (things) [thus].

"Ανδρες
Men
έαν πεισθήτε μοι, προτιμήσεσθε ἵππο Κύρου
if you might be persuaded by me, you will be honoured by Cyrus
πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατιώτων οὖτε
more (than) the other soldiers (and this) "having neither
κινδυνεύσαντες, οὖτε πονηράντες. Τί οὖν
incurred danger, nor having laboured. What therefore
κελεύω ποιήσαι: Κύρος νῦν δεῖται
do I request (of you) to have done? [to do]? Cyrus now wants
τοῖς Ἑλλήνας ἐπεσθάι ἐτὰ βασιλέα.
the Greeks to accompany (him) against (the) king;
ἐγώ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρήναι
I therefore say (that) you to behave [that it behoves you]
διαβήνας τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην, πρὶν εἶναι
to have crossed the river Euphrates, before [it is]
ὅπλον δὲ τί οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλλήνες ἀποκρυφοῦνται
manifest what the other Greeks will answer
κύρω. Γὰρ ἐν μὲν ψηφίσονται ἐπεσθάι,
Cyrus. For if indeed they should determine by ballot to follow,
ὑμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἰτων, ἄφθαντος τοῦ
(than) you will appear to be (the) cause, [having begun of the
διαβαίνεων, καὶ ὑμῖν
crossing over, [as having first crossed over the river], and to you
ὁς οὖσι προδυναμοῖς Κύρος εἰσεταί
as being most prompt, Cyrus perceive [and acknowledge
καὶ ἁρπαν, καὶ ἀποδοσεῖ. δ' ἐπισταται
the) favour, and will repay (it); but he knows (how to do this)
ἐὰν καὶ τίς ἄλλος
if even also any other (does); [but he knows how to reward a favour,
δ' ἐν οἷς ἄλλοι ἀποψηφίσονται,
as well as any other man]; but if the others should ballot against it,
ἀπαντάτες μὲν ἀπομεν εἰς τοὺς πολεμικούς,
(we) all together indeed [depart to the contrary; return back
καὶ ὑμῖν, ὡς μόνοις πεισθομένοις τιστο-
of you, as alone being persuaded (and as being) most-
τάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φροίμια καὶ
faithful he will use (and employ) both in garrisons and

48

THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

eis loxagias, kai oida. oti wile filoi Kipou
for captaincies, and also I know that as friends of Cyrus
neizevde ouvinos allovn an denerde.
you will obtain whatever else you may require. (The soldiers)
'Alexantas taita, epeidounto, kai diebouan
having heard these (things), were persuaded, and crossed-over
prin touz allovs apokrinadoi. De eitei
before (that) the others answered. But when
Kipos hodo to diasebhtoas,
Cyrus perceived (them) having crossed-over (the river), he not only
hoden, kai pemfas Gloi an kai strateumati
was pleased, but also having sent Glus to the army
eite, 'Kynw mven ou andres, yden ekain
(of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise
imai, de melidei emoi otop kai emeis
you; but it shall be a care to me how also you
epainesthe eme,
might praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],
ha meleti nuigete me Kipou. Oi strateoutai
or no longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers
ontes den en megallon elpisi eichunto aitov
being now indeed in great hopes wished him
eintikodai.
de kai ilegeto
to have been fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he was said
pemfas megaloprepous dora Menou.
de, to have sent in a magnificent manner presents to Menon. And
pousias taita, dieboune.
den kai
having done these (things), he crossed over (the river); and also
an ton allo strateuma suveipeto aitov.
all the other army followed him. And
oudheis ton diasebhtontov ton potamov
no one — (of those) crossing the river
ebrexei anwterw ton musan upo ton
was wetted higher (than) the breasts by the
potamov. De oti Theraceni eileon, ou kata
river. But the Thapsaceni said that this
BOOK I. — CHAPTER V.

ο Ποταμός ού πώποτε γένοιτο διαθατός πεζώ

(the) river never at any-time might-be passable on-foot

εἴ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοῖοις. ο Ἁθρο-

if not [except] then, but (always) in-boats; which Aethro-

κόμας προίον τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κύρος

comes going-before 'had them 'burnt, that Cyrus

μὴ διαδῆ. Δὴ ἐδώκει εἶναι

might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)

θείον, καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ἑπο-

theion, and (that) the river manifestly re-

χωρῆσαι Κύρω ὡς βασιλεύσοντι. Ἐνετεύθεν

ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence

ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἐννέα σταθμοὺς,

he-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)

πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφίκονται πρὸς

pentikonta parasangs, and they-came to

τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀράξεν. Ἐνταῦθα ἠσαν πολλαὶ

the river Araxes. Here there-were many

κῶμαι μεστοὶ σῖτον καὶ ὀίνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν

villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσείσαντο.

three days, and provisioned (the army).

CHAPTER V.

Ἐνετεύθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχον

Then he-marches through — Arabia, having

τὸν ποταμὸν Ἐβράτην ἐν δὲξίᾳ, πέντε

the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five

ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς,

desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and)

τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ

thirty and five parasangs. But in this

τῷ τόπῳ ὡς γὰρ οὐ μὲν πεδίον, ἀλλ' ἐν

— district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely
50  THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

οἷολὰν ὄσπερ θάλαττα, δὲ πληρὲς ἄφθονια,  
level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,

εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ἤλεγχ ἢ καλάμιν  
if indeed also any other (kind) of-underwood or of-reed

ἐντευ, ἄπαντα ἦσαν εὐοίδη ὄσπερ δρόματα—  
was-on-it, all were (as) odoriferous as perfumes;

δ’ οὐδὲν δένδρον ἐντευ.  / Ξένες παντοία  
but no tree was-thereon. / But (here there were) various

θηρία, πλείστων μὲν ἄγριοι ὄνοι, δὲ  
wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild asses, also

πολλοὶ στρωνδοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι—  
dé καὶ οὐσίδες many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also bustard

καὶ δορκάδες ἐντευ— δὲ οἱ ἰστικεῖς ἐνοτε  
and antelopes were-thereon; and the horsemen sometimes

ἐπεικονε ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι  
pursued these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses

ἐπεί τις διώκου, προδραμόντες  
when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-before (some distance)

ἐστασαν· γὰρ ἐπεχον πολὺ θαύτων τῶν  
stood-still; for they-ran much (more) quickly (than) the

ἴσταντες· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεί οἱ ἰστικεῖς πλησίαζον  
and again when the horses might-approach

ἱστοίον ταῦταν. καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν  
they-did the-same (thing); and it was not (possible) to-take

ἐλ καὶ οἱ ἰστικεῖς διαστάντες  
(them) if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals

θηρῶν  διαδιχόμενοι καὶ  
should-hunt (them), (also) succeeding (one another) 'with (fresh) —

ἵσταρα. Δὲ τὰ κρέα τῶν ἁλκοχωμένων ἦν  
'horses. And the flesh 'of — (those) 'caught was

παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δὲ ἀπαλώτερα.  
like the stags' (flesh), but more-tender

Δὲ οἰδεῖς ἐλαφε Στρωνδόν: δὲ οἱ τῶν  
But no-one took (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the

ἱστεῶν διώκαντες  
horsemen having-pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly
Πορεύομενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφὶς — Marching — through this — country they — кои тον ποταμον Μάσκαν, τὸ εἴρος came to the river Mascas, the breadth πλεθρωμον. Ἔνταιθα ἦν μεγάλη (of which is a) plethrum. Here there was (a) large ἐρήμω πόλις, δ’ ὄνομα αὐτῆς Κορσωτής deserted city, but (the) name (to-it) (of it was) Corsote; δ’ αὐτῆς περιήργειν ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα [and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas in (a) κύκλῳ. Ἐντείθεν [the river Mascas flowed round about this city]. ἐμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. they-remained three days and provisioned (the army). Ἐντείθεν ἐξελαίην τρεῖς καὶ δέκα Thence he (Cyrus) proceeds three and ten [thirteen] ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἐνενίκοντα desert stations (or days' march) (making) ninety παρασάγγας, ἔχον τὸν ποταμον Εὐφράτην ἐν parasange, having the river Euphrates on (the)
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

δεξάμενα καὶ ἄφικνενται ἐπὶ Πύλασ. Ἐν τούτοις
right, and he-arrives at (the) Gutes. In those
τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλά τῶν ἵππων ὄπλατο
— stations many of-the beasts-of-burden perished
ὅτω μηδὲν γὰρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος οὐδὲ οἶνον
of hunger; for there-was no grass nor any
ἀλλὰ δενδρὸν ἀλλὰ ἡ ἄπασα χώρα ἦν
(other) (kind of) tree, but the entire country was
ψελθὼν. οἱ δὲ ἐνοικιώτες
bare (being destitute of vegetation); the — inhabiting [the]
ὅρισσοντες καὶ των ὄντως
inhabitants of this desert district] quarrying and fashioning
ἀλέας ὅνους παρὰ τὸν ποταμοῦ, ἤγεν
[grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried
εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπόλων, καὶ ἀντα-
(them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying-
γοράζοντες σίτων ἔξων. Ὅ δὲ σίτος ἐπέλλυτε
in-return corn lived (thereon). — Also corn failed
τὸ στρατεύμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρόσθει
the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)
εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ παρ-
[if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar-
βαρίς Κύρων, τὴν καπνὴν ἀλείρων ἢ
barian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or
ἄλφιτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Ὅ δὲ σίγλος
barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. — The — sigius
δύναται ἔπτα Ἀττικοῖς ὀθολούς καὶ ὑμιοβολόν
is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;
δὲ ἡ καπνὴ ἐγκάθει δίὸ Ἀττικὰς χοῖνας
and the capithe contained two Attic chonices.
Οὖ ὅσοι στρατιώται διεγίργωντο ἐσθίοντες κρέα.
Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh

[therefore the soldiers lived entirely on flesh]. There-were also (some)
τούτοις τῶν σταθμῶν, οὓς ἡλαύνε
of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (so as to make them)
πάνυ μακροίς, ὅποτε βούλοντο διατελέσαι
very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to ar-
η πρὸς ἅπα, ἡ πρὸς χιλών.) Καὶ δὴ
rive] either at water, or at forage.) And indeed
ποτὲ στενωχώριάς καὶ πτηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-
ence-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-
πεῖτον ταῖς ἄμαξαῖς,
of-passage for-the wagons, [a narrow and muddy road appeared,

which was of difficult passage for wagons], — Cyrus stood
σὺν τοῖς ἄριστοις καὶ εὐδαμομενοστάτοις περί
with the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about
αὐτῶν, καὶ ἔταξε Γλούν καὶ Πίγρητα,
him, and ordered Gius and Figres, (that)
λαβώντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, συνε-
having-taken (a part) of the barbarian army, to-extri-
θιβάξειν τὰς ἄμαξας. Δ’ ἐπεὶ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ
cate the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him
ποιεῖν σχολαίως, ὃσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοῖς
to-do (this) tardily, as-if in-anger he-ordered the
κράτιστους Πέρσας περί αὐτῶν συνεπι-
most-distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-acce-
πεῖσαι τὰς ἄμαξας. Ἡ Ἑλλά ἰὴ ἢν θεάσασ-
to the wagons. There then was to-be-

Διὰ τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας. Γὰρ
seen some portion (of) — good-order (and discipline). For
ῥιζαντεῖς τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς, ὅπου ἔσκατος
having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where each
ἐτυχεῖν ἐστιν
happened having-been-standing [happened to have stood] | they-sent-
to,

ὅσπερ τις ἀν δράμου
themselves, [they rushed], as-if | any-one might run [on a race]
περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρανοῦς γνησίῳ,
for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,
ἐχοντες τε τούτοις τοῖς πολυτελεῖς χιτώνας,
having also (on) those — rich tunics,
καὶ τὰς πουλελάς ἀναξιωθῶς, δὲ καὶ ἑνος
and — variegated (breeches, and also some (having)
στρεπτούσις περὶ τοῖς τραχύλοις, καὶ ἔλληνα
claims about — (their) (necks, and) bracelets
περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εἰὼν δὲ εἰσπενδόντας
about — (their) hands; (wrist); directly also having-leaped
σὺν τούτοις εἰς τὸν τελῶν ἐξεχώμασαν
with these (ornaments) into the mud they-brought-out
τὰς ἀμάξας μετεώρους θάττον ἢ ὡς τὸς
the wagons lifted-up quicker than (even-thus) any-one
ἄν φεσσο. Δὲ τὸ σύμπαν Κύρος ἦν ὄλος
might have-thought. And (on) the whole | Cyrus was evident
σπείδον πᾶσαν τὴν ὅδον
hastening all the road, [Cyrus was evidently hastening
καὶ οὖ διατρίβων, μὴ ὅπου ἐκατέργητο
and not delaying, unless where he-halted
ἐνεκα ἐπισυμμοι ἢ τῶν θάλου ἀναγκαίων,
on-account-of provisions or of-some other necessary
νομίζων δόσῳ μὲν ἔκτην ἑλθο
(thing), thinking (that) by-how-much — the-more-speedily he-might-go
tοσοῦτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ μαχεῖσθαι
by-so-much the-more-unprepared (he might come) to-fight
βασιλεῖ, δὲ δοὼ σχολαστέρον
(the) king, and by-how-much the-more-tardily (he might march)
tοσοῦτῳ πλέον στρατεύμα (συναγείρεσθαι
by-so-much the-more (numerous) army is-to-be-collected
βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ᾽ ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-
the king. And also it was to-perceive to-the direct-
χοντι τὸν νοῦν
ing ... the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one
ἡ ἀρχὴ βασιλέως οἰσα
directing his attention to it] the empire 'of (the) 'king (as) being
ἰσχυρὰ μὲν
strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] 'from
πλῆθει χάρας καὶ ἄνθρωπον,
'(the) multitude (and extent of) territory and (the number) of-men,
DE ένταθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῷ Μένωνος
And here the soldiers not-only — of Menon
καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
but also — (those) — of Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

But beyond the river Euphrates, through (the opposite)
toĩς ἐρήμων σταθμοῖς
— desert stations [marches through the desert] there-was
εἰδιαύμων καὶ μεγάλης πόλεως, δὲ ἑνωμα
(an) opulent and large city, and (its) name (was)
Χαρμάνδη. Ἔκ ταίνισ τοι ὁ στρατιώτατος ἡγόραζον
Charmaade. From this (city) the soldiers brought
tὰ ἐπιτίθεντος διαδαίνοντες σχεδιάζον ὅδε.
the necessaries-of-life crossing-over on-temporary-rafts (made) thus;
ἐπίμπλασαν κοῦφον χόρτου διφδέρας ἄς
they-dilled with | light grass [hay] (the) skins, which
ἐίχον στεγάσματα, εἶται συνήγον
they-had (as) covering (for their tents), then they-united-together
καὶ συνέστοτ᾽ ὡς τὸ
(the edges) and | 'drew (them) 'together [sewed them] so-that the
ἐδώρ μὴ ἀντεσθαί τῆς κάρφες· ἐπὶ τούτων
water (could) not (to)-touch the hay; on these
dιδαίνον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτίθεντα, τέ
they-crossed-over, and procured the necessaries, not-only
οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς ἀπὸ
wine made of the fruit — from
tοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σίτου μελίνης· γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν
the palm-tree, but-also corn-of-pannic; for this was
πλείον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
most-plentiful in — (this) country.

DE ένταθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῷ Μένωνος
And here the soldiers not-only — of Menon
καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
but also — (those) — of Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

but weak by-the lengths of-the roads and | in-the
dιστασίας τὰς δυνάμεις, εἰ τις
to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one
ἐποιεῖτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων. √
made — war (against it) by quick (movements).
κι ο Κλέαρχος πράτης τον του something — Clearchus having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —
Μένωνος ἀδίκειν ἐνεβαλε πληγάς
of-Menon to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on him);
δὲ δ ἔλθων πρὸς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ but who having-gone to the army of-himself [to the
ἐλεγε' δ' οί army, to which he belonged] told [what had befallen him]; but the
στρατιώται αὐξάναντες σιχυρῶς ἐκαλέ-
soldiers having-beard (this) were vehemently 'irri-
παινον, καὶ ἄφιξαντο τῷ Κλεαρχῶ. √ √
tested, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And the
αὐτῇ ἡμέρα Κλεαρχῶ, ἔλθων ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἔσει κατασχεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν, of-the river, and here having-inspected the market,
ἀφιππεῖει ἐπὶ τὴν σχησιν ἑαυτοῦ he-rides-away to the tent of-himself [to his own tent]
διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν ὀλίγοις through the army of-Menon, with (a) few
τοὺς περὶ αὐτῶν; δὲ Κιρὸς (followers, namely) (the) (those) about him; but Cyrus 'had
οὕτω ἠχεν, ἄλλα ἐπὶ προσῆλαυνε. δὲ τις not-yet 'came, but still proceeded (on his march); but some-one
τῶν στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχιζὼν ξύλα, ὡς of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood, as
εἶδη τὸν Κλεαρχὸν διελαίνοντα, ἵνα he-saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (at him)
τῇ ἄξινην καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἡμαρτεν 'with — (his) 'axe; and this (soldier) indeed missed
αὐτοῦ. δ' ἄλλος λέκω καὶ ἄλλος, him; but another (throws) 'with (a) 'stone and-also another,
eἶνα πολλοί, χραγής γενομένης / then many, (a) shout (at the same time) having-occurred.
Δὲ δ' καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ, But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge in the army of-himself,
καὶ ἐξῆς παραγγέλλει εἶς
[In his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to
tὰ ὀπλα ἢ καὶ ἐξήλευε τοὺς μὲν ὅπλιτας
— arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men
οὕτω μεῖναι δὲν
of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-
tὰς τὰς ἀστίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα· δὲ αὐτὸς
placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he
λαβὼν τοὺς Ἐράκας καὶ τοὺς ἵππεις,
having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen,
ὁ ἦσαν αὐτῷ εὖ τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ
that were with-him in the army more than
tεκταράχοντα,
forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)
ὅτι τοὺς Μένωνας καὶ Μένωνα
Thracians, proceeded against the (troops) of-Monon, so (that)
ἐκεῖνοι ἐκπεπλήξοντακαὶ Μένωνα
they were-struck (with astonishment, as was) also Monon
αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀρέσχεν ἕπι τὰ ὀπλα. Δὲ
himself, and (so that they) run to — arms. But
καὶ οἱ ἔστασαν ἀποφοίτοντες τῷ πράγ-
also — (some) stood hesitating (about) the af-

ματι.
fair (not knowing what to make of it).

Ὁ δὲ Προκένως, γὰρ ἔτυχε προσώπῳ ὥστερος,
— But Proxenus, [for he-happened approaching last
καὶ τὰς τῶν ὀπλ.
—in order, [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy-
ἐπομενὴ αὐτῶ, ἄγων οὖν
armed-men following him, leading therefore (his soldiers)
ἐξῆς εἶς τὸ μέσον ἁμφότερον
immediately | into the middle of-both [into the space be-
ἐδεῖτο τὰ ὀπλα, καὶ ἐδείτο τοῦ Κλε-
tween both] stood (under) — arms, and required of — Cle-
ἀρχου μιᾷ ποιεῖν ταύτα. Δὲ δὲ
archus not to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus)
ἐχαλέπαινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ δεύσαντος ὅλιγον κατα-
was-irritated, because he having-wanted little to-have-
λενοθηναὶ, πρᾶσι φέρον τὸ πάθος
 been-stoned, (that he, Proxenus) 'ought mildly mention the suffering
αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευε τε αὐτὸν ἐξιστασθᾶν
 of-him [his ill treatment] he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out
ἐκ τοῦ μέσου. (Δὲ Κύρος καὶ ἔν τοὔτῳ ἐπείει,
 from the middle. But Cyrus also at this came-up,
καὶ ἐπιθέτο τὸ πράγμα. δ' εἰδὼς ἔλαβε
 and inquired-into the affair; — (then) 'he immediately took
τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς
 javelins in (his) hands, and with (these)
παροίησα τῶν πιστῶν, ἤκεν ἔλαβον εἰς τὸ
 present of (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening to the
μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ
 midst (of them), and speaks thus. O-Clearchus and
Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλληνες οἱ παρόντες,
 Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,
ἰστε οὖν ὅ τι ποιήσετε. Γὰρ εἰ συνάψετε
 you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-join-in
τινα μάχην ἀλλήλως, νομίζετε ἐμὲ
 any battle with-one-another, [think] (that) I
τε καταστροφὴν ἐν τῇ δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ
 not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (the) (very) day, but-also
ὑμᾶς οὖ πολὺ ἵστερον ἐμοῦ· γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων
 you not long after me; for — our-affairs
ἐχόντων κακῶς πάντες οὕτω
 having badly [for if our affairs go ill] all these
βάρβαροι, οὗ ὅρατε ἑσονταὶ πολεμώτεροι ἡμῖν
 barbarians, that you-see will-be more-hostile to-us
τῶν ὄντων παρὰ βασιλεί.
 (than) — (those barbarians) | being [who are] with (the) king.
Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἄκοιµας ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν
 — Clearchus hearing these (things) | became in
ἐαυτῷ· καὶ ἄμφοτέροι πανσά-
himself; [recovered self-possession]; and both (parties) having-
μενοι ἔδεντο τὰ ὀπλα κατὰ ceased (from strife) placed — (their) arms in (their appropriate)
χώραν.
place.

CHAPTER VI.

Προίόντων ἐντεὶδεν ἰχνα καὶ κόπρος ἱππών proceeding thence (the) footsteps and dung of-horses
ἔφαγεντο· ὁ στίβος ὁ εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὅς appeared; the track indeed was-conjectured to-be about (that)
dισχλίων ἱππών. Οὕτωι προίόντες ἐκαυν καὶ of-two-thousand horses. These going-before burned both (the)
χιλῶν καὶ τῷ ἀλλο εἰ ὑπ' χρήσιμον. Ὅροντας fodder and any-thing else, if (it) was useful. Orontes
de, Πέρσης ἀνήρ τε προσόκας γένει indeed, (a) Persian man not-only being-related by-birth to (the)
βασιλεί, καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος 'king, but also (as respects) — warlike-affairs being-considered
ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν, ἐπιθυμεῖν among the most-distinguished of (the) 'Persians, plots-against
Κύρω, καὶ πρόοδεν πολεννήσας Cyrus, and (with whom) he—had formerly been-at-war,
de καταλλαγεῖς. Οὕτως εἶπε Κύρω εἰ but had-become-reconciled. This (person) said to-Cyrus, if
doῖν αὐτῷ χιλίους ἱππας, ὅτι would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that having-lain-in-ambush
ἀν ἂ κατακανοὶ τοὺς ἱππάς προκατα-
'he would either 'destroy the horsemen burning-down-every-
kαίοντας ἄ ἐλ λο πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἵππωσ, καὶ thing-before-them, or might-take many of-them alive,
καλίσειει ἐπισκότας τοῦ καλείν, would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn, [and would hinder
καὶ ποιήσειει, them from going and burning everything], [and would make, [and would
"οιτε αυτοις ιδοντας το στρατευμα Κυρος

και, that. they having-seen the army of Cyrus

μιποτε δινοντοι διαγγειλαι

would never be-able to-have-told [to tell] (it) to (the)

βασιλει. Δε τω Κυρο χαοισαντι ταυτα

king. But to — Cyrus hearing these (things)

εδοξει ειναι ωφελιμα,

it-seemed to-be advantageous, but Cyrus hearing these propositions

και εξελευεν αυτον

approved of them as being advantageous, and he-ordered him

λαμβανεν μερος παρ εκαστου των ἡγε

to-take (a) part of the troops from each of the com-
mονων. | 'Ο δ' 'Οροντης, νομισας τοις ιππεας

manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen

ειναι ετοιμους αυτω, γραφει επιστολην παρα
to-be ready for-him, writes (a) letter to (the)

βασιλεια, οτι ήξον εξουν πλειστους ιππεας

king, that he-would-come having the-most horsemen

ος δ' αν δυνηται'

that 'he might be-able (to obtain); [that he would come to him with

αλλα εξελευε

the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but he-requested

φρασαν τοις ιππεις εαντου

(him) to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to tell his horsemen]

ηποδεχοσαι αυτον δς φιλιον. Και ενη

to-receive him as (a) friend. And there was [were]

εν τη επιστολη δε επομενηα προσδεθεν φιλιας

in the letter not-only reminiscences of-former friendships

και τιστεως. Διδωσι ταιτην την επιστολην

but-also of-fidelity (to him). He-gave this the letter

πιστω ονδρι, δς ήστο. δε δ λαβον

'to (a) faithful man, as he-thought; but — (he) taking (the letter)

dιδωσι Κυρο. Δε δ κυρος αναγνωσας αυτην

gave (it) to-Cyrus. But — Cyrus having-read, it

ευλαμβανεν 'Οροντην, και συγκαλει εις την

arrests Orontes, and he-convokes ['in the
σκηνήν ἑαυτοῦ τοῖς ἑπτὰ ἀρίστους τεντ [in his own-tent] the seven most-distinguished
of-them Persians — about him; he ordered the
στρατηγοὺς τῶν ᾿Ελλήνων ἄγαγείν ὀπλίτας, commanders of the Greeks to-bring-up heavy-armed-men,
δὲ θεόδαι τοῦτος τὰ ὀπλα περὶ and to-place [to place] these — (in) arms around
τὴν σκηνήν αὐτοῦ. 
Δὲ οἱ ἐποίησαν [the tent of-him [his tent]. And — (they) did
ταῦτα ἄγαγοντες ὡς τρισχλίους ὀπλίτας, these (things) bringing about three-thousand heavy-armed-men.
Δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσε εἰσός Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον,
And also he-called within Clearchus (as) counsellor,
ὅς γὰρ ἐδόξει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις who at-least seemed both to-himself and the others 'to-be
μᾶλιστα προτιμηθὼν τῶν ᾿Ελλήνων. 
Δὲ ἐπεί the most 'honoured of the Greeks. But after
ἐξῆλθεν ἐξηγιγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ he-came-out he-related to — (his) friends the trial —
Ὀρόντου, ὡς ἐγένετο· γὰρ ἦν οἷς
of-Orontes, how it-was (conducted); for there-was no
ἀπόρρητον. 
"Εφη δὲ Κῦρον ἀρχεῖν secrecy (enjoined), He-said — (that) Cyrus began
τοῦ λόγου ὅδε;
the subject thus;
Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἀνδρεῖς φίλοι, ὅπως βου- I-have-invited you (O-men) (my) friends, that de-
λενόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξεω περὶ τούτῳ ὁ Ὀρόντων liberating with you I-will-do respecting this Orontes
tοῦτο ὁ τι δικαίων ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν that whatever just is [that which is just] both before gods
καὶ πρὸς ᾿Ανδρόπων. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὃ ἐμὸς and before men. For first indeed — my
πατὴρ ἕδωκε τοῦτον εἶναι ὑπήκουον ἐμοί. 
father gave this (man) to-be obedient to-me. But

6
ἐπεί ταχείς, ὡς αὕτως ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ
when having-been-ordered, as 'he himself' said, by (his) my
ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων
brother, this (Orontes) made-war-against me (he) having
τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν ᾿Σάρδηι καὶ ἑως προσπολεμῶν
the citadel in Sardis, and I making-war-against
αὐτὸν ἐποίησα
him made (it so) [carried it on so] that (it) seemed (best)
τοῦτο παίσασθαι τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς
to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) the war against
ἐμε, καὶ ἔλαβον δεξιὰν καὶ ἔδωκα,
me, and I took (his) right-hand and gave (him mine in
Metὰ ταῦτα ἔφη, ὡ Ὦροντα ἐστιν
friendship). After these he-said, O Orontes is-there
ὁ τι ἰδίκησα σε; Ἀπερινατό
[what any [any thing in which] I-have-wronged you? He-answered
ὁτι οὐ. Δὲ ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἤρωτα.
that (there-is) not. But — Cyrus again inquired; (did you)
οὐκοῦν ὑστερον, ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, ἄποστας
not-then afterwards, as you yourself confess, having-gone-over
ἔλξεις Μυσίους ἀδερφίμενος οὐδέν ὑπ’ ἐμοῦ
to (the) Mysians, being-injured (in) no (manner) by me,
ἐποίεις κακῶς τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὃ τι
act ill (against) — my territory, [what any-thing
ἔδινα; Ὡ Ὡροντας ἔφη.
[In whatever] you-could? — Orontes said (that he did).
Οὐκοῦν ἔφη ὁ Κύρος ὅποτ’ αὖ ἔγνως
(Did you) not-then said — Cyrus | when again you-knew
τὴν δύναμιν σεαυτοῦ
the strength of-yourself, [when you were aware of the little strength
you possessed against me], coming to the altar —
'Αρτέμιδος, ἔφησα τε μεταμέλειν σοι,
of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only repent ed you,
καὶ, πείσας ἔμε πάλιν ἔδωκας μοι
but-also, having-persuaded me, 'you again 'gave me
πιστά, καὶ ἐλαβὲς παρ’ ἐμοῦ; Καὶ pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me? And ὁ Ὀρόντης ὅμολογει ταῦτα / Τί οὖν, ἔφη — Orontes confessed these (things). (In) what then, said ὁ Κύρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ἵπτ’ ἐμοῦ, — Cyrus, having-been-injured by me, [hast thou been injured by νῦν τὸ τρίτον γέγονας φανερὸς me], (that) now (for the third (time) you-have-been manifestly ἐπιθυμεῖτο μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντου εἰπόντος ὅτι plotting-against me? But — Orontes saying, that ἀδικηθεὶς οὐδὲν. ὁ Κύρος ἠρώτησεν having-been-injured (in) nothing (he did so). — Cyrus asked αὐτοῦ. Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν γεγενηθεὶς ἀδίκος περί him; You-confess therefore to-have-been unjust towards ἐμὲ; Γὰρ ἦ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὅ me? (I confess it) for certainly (there is a) necessity, said — Ὁ Ὀρόντης. Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἠρώτησεν* Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked; ἂν ἔτι οὖν γένοιο πολέμοι τῷ ἐμῷ ἄδελφῳ, Would you yet then become hostile — to-my brother, δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστὸς ἐμοὶ; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο but friendly and faithful to-me? — And he-answered, ὅτι οὐδ’ εἰ γενοίμην, ὁ Κύρος, ἂν ἦτι that neither if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it yet-ever δοξαίμι, σοὶ γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κύρος seem-so, to-you at-least never. On this Cyrus εἶπε τοῖς παροίκισ. ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν said — (to those) present. — (This) man indeed 'has μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δὲ. λέγει τοιαῦτα. Δὲ certainly 'done such-things and he-acknowledges the-same. And ὕμων σοῦ ὁ Κλέαρχος πρῶτος ἀπόφημαι of-you (present) 'do you O Clearchus first declare γνώμην, δ’ τι δοξεῖ σοι. Δὲ Κλέαρχος (your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you. And Clearchus εἶπε τάδε: Ἔγὼ συμβουλεύω τὸν τούτον ἀνδρα spoke thus; I advise (that) — this man
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδῶν ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς be-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as possible), that 'it-may μὴ ἐν μῦκετι δὲν φυλάττεσθαι τούτον, no-longer 'be-necessary to-guard-against this (person), ἀλλὰ ἣ σχολὴ ἡμῖν, κατὰ τὸ εἶναι but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us, | concerning the to-be τούτουν this-one [so far as relates to this man] to-do good (to) those τοὺς ἔνενθ'ος φίλους. Δὲ ἐφη ταύτη — willing (to be) friends. And he-said (that) in-this τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσέδεσθαι. Μετὰ — opinion also the others concurred. After ταῦτα, Κύροις κελεύοντος, ἄπαντες καὶ οἱ those (things), Cyrus ordering (it), all even the συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἐλαβον τὸν ' Ὠρόντην relations (of Oronotes) rising-up took — Oronotes τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ θάνατω. (by) the girdle | as-to death; [in token of his being condemned δὲ εἶτα οἷς προσετάξη ἐξῆγον to death]; but then (those) to-whom it-was-commanded, led αὐτόν. Δ' ἐπεί εἰδον αὐτὸν ὀπερ πρόσδευ him (out). But when (those) saw him who formerly προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, used-to-bow-down (before him), and then (also) they-bowed-down καὶ περ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἄγωτο ἐπὶ θάνατον. (before him) although knowing, that he-might-be-led to death. Δὲ ἐπεί εἰςηνέκη τὴν σχημὴν Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ And then he-was-led to the tent of Aratus, the πιστοτάτου τῶν σχημτοῦχων Κύροι, most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-bearers [ushers] of-Cyprus, μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πάσοις εἰδε ' Ὠρόντην οἰντε after this no-one ever saw Orontes, neither ζῶντα οὐτέ τεθνηκότα, οὐδὲ οὐδεὶς εἶδος living nor having died, | nor any-one having-known ἔλεγεν ὅπως ἀπείδακε· has-said [nor could any one of his own knowledge say] how he-died;
BOOK I.—CHAPTER VII.

§ ἄλλοι εἶκαξον ἄλλως.
[and others conjectured otherwise [some conjectured this, and others that].] But no tomb of-him 'was ever ἐφανη. 'seen.

CHAPTER VII.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας
Hence he-proceeds through the Babylonian (province)
tρεῖς σταδίων δώδεκα παρασάγγας. Δ’ ἐν three days'-march (making) twelve parasanges. And on τῷ τρίτῳ σταδίῳ Κῦρος ποιεῖται, περὶ μέσας the third day's-march Cyrus makes, about (the) middle νίκτας, ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν Βαρβάρων, of-night, a-review of the Greeks and of the Barbarians,
ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ γὰρ ἐδόθη βασιλέα ἢξείν on the plain; for he-thought (that the) king would-arrive εἰς τὴν ἑω ἐπιοῦσαν σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι on the morning coming with the army (and)
μαχοῦμενον ἢ καὶ μὲν ἐξέλευε Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι offering-battle; and — he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command τοῦ δεξίου κέρας, δὲ Μένονα τὸν Θεταλὸν τοῦ of-the right wing, and Menon the Thessalian of-the εἰκόνιον δὲ αὐτὸς διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. left; but he-himself drew-up-in-order-of-battle [the of-himself

Δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἄμα [his own troops]. But after the review [at-the-same-time
τῇ ἐπιοῦσῃ ἡμερᾷ, αὐτόμολοι ἤκοντες with-the coming day, [at dawn of day], deserters coming παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπειγγελλόν Κῦρο from (the) great king informed Cyrus
περὶ τῆς στρατιάς βασιλέως. Δὲ Κῦρος, about (the state) of (the) king. — Cyrus,
συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν
having-assembled the generals and captains of-the
Ἐλλήνων, συνεδριάσας τῆς, πῶς ἂν
Greeks, consulted (with them) not-only, how 'he might
ποιοῦτο τὴν μάχην,
i.e. 'make the battle, [conduct the engagement], but-also he
καὶ αὐτὸς
tharriácov toúáde páriénei. Ὁ Ἐλληνες ἄνδρες,
encouraging thus exhorted (them). O Grecian men,
οἱ ἀπορῶν ἑβραῖοι ἀλλήλων ἄνθρωποι
(it is) not (for) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that)
ἀγὼ ἃμας συμμάχοις, ἀλλὰ νομίζω
I-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking
ἵμας εἶναι ἀλείπτονας καὶ κρείττονος πολλῶν
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many
ἑβραῖοι, διὰ τούτο
(barbarians, 'I for this (reason alone)
προσέλαβον. Ὁν ὅπως ἐπεστε ἄνδρες
'take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be men
ἀξίω τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἡς κέκτησθε καὶ ἐπερ
worthy of-the liberty which you-have-acquired and for
ἵς ἐγὼ εὐδαμονίζω ἃμας. Γάρ εὖ ἵστε,
which I 'esteem you 'fortunate. For 'you well know,
ὅτι ἂν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάνω
that 'I would 'prefer — liberty before all
ὅν ἔχω καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασιῶν.
(that) which I-have, and other (things) numerous

Δὲ καὶ ὅπως εἰδῆτε εἰς
(and greater). But also in-order-that 'you (may) 'know to
οἶνον ἄρσιν ἐρχεῖσθε, ἐγὼ εἴδὼς
what (kind of) contest you-come, | 'I having-known [I knowing
didázw ἃμας. Γάρ τοῦ πλῆθος μὲν πολλὶ,
it well] will-inform you. For the multitude (is) indeed large,
καὶ ἐπίσιμος πολλὴ κρατικὴ ὅ ἂν ἀνάσ-
and they-come-on 'with (a) 'great about; but should you-
χονθὲ τοιαῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
have-sustained this, and (as respects) the other (things)
BOOK I.—CHAPTER VII.

I seem to myself to be ashamed (that) you will know what the men being [born] in (this) country (are of use) to us

De iumw ointov andron, kai
(as soldiers). But you being men (of courage), and

γενομένων ευτύλων,
having become bold (and spirited), (so as to conquer in the ap-

έγιο μεν Ποιός τὸν ιμῶν
proaching engagement), I indeed will make (the) (those) of you

βουλόμενον ἄπειναι οἴκαις ἀπελθεῖν ζηλωτόν
desiring to go home to have departed to return envied

τοῖς οἴκοι· δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἴσσειν πολλοῖς
(by those) at home; but I think to make many hereafter

ἐλέοςαι
[to have taken for yourselves to prefer] the (things to be obtained)

παρ’ εμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν
with me before (those that may be obtained) at home.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγάς, δὲ
Then Gaulites (a) Samian exile, but (a)

πιστὸς
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus being present said; and yet, O

Κύρε τινς λέγοντι, ὅτι νῦν ἱπποχηνίς πολλὰ
Cyrus, some say, that now you promise many (things)

διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ προ-
account of the to be being in such (a state) of—ap-

σιόντος κυνδίνων· δὲ ἂν τι γεννηται εὖ,
proaching danger; but should anything happen well, [but

φασὶ σε οὐ μεμι—
should succeed attend you], they say. (that) you would not have-

ντοῦσαί·
remembered; [that you would not hereafter remember your promises]

δ’ εἴνοι ὕδ’ εἶ μεμνῆσε τε καὶ βούλοιο
—some (also say that) neither if you remember and also may wish

δύνασθαι ἄν ἄπωδοναι ὡσα ἱπποχηνίς. Ὁ Κύρος
will you be able to give what you promise. O Cyrus
ἀκούσας ταύτα ἀλεξέν. Ἄλλις ἦστι ἥμων ὁ ἁνδρέας
hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,
𝗵�이 ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα,
[the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],
μὲν μέχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ
(which) indeed (extends) so far to (the) south where
ἄνδρωποι οὗ δίναντας οἶκεῖν διὰ καῦσα,
men 'are not 'able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,
δὲ μέχρι πρὸς ἀρχαῦν οὗ . διὰ
and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for
χειμώνα. δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἑμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
but the friends of— my brother govern-as-
πούσι πᾶντα. τὰ ἐν μέσῳ τοῖς
satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δὲ ἂν νικήσωμεν θεὶ ἡμᾶς
(northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us
ποιῆσαι τοὺς ἑμετέρους φίλους ἑγκρατεῖς τοῖς
to-make — our friends masters of-those

"Ωστε οὗ δέδοιξα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω
(countries). So that I-'have not 'feared this, lest I-'have
οἶχ τι ὁ δὲ ἐξάστω τῶν φίλων,
not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — 'of (my) friends,
ἂν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω
[should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-'have
οἶχ ἐκανοίς, οἷς δῶ. Δὲ
not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But 'I-will
καὶ δῶς ἐκαστὼ ἡμῶν Ἑλλήνων χρυσῶν
also 'give to-each of-you Greeks (a)
στέφανον. Δὲ οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταύτα,
crown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),
αὐτοὶ ἤσαν τε πολλοὶ προσνομότεροι,
they were not-only much 'more (encouraged and) prompt-for-action,
καὶ ἐξηγεῖτον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ 'αὐτῶν, καὶ τινὲς
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about him, but-also some
(Book I. — Chapter VII.

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσῆσαν ἄξωντες
of the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring
eἰδέναι τι ἐσταυροῖσιν, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν.
to know what (reward) shall be to them, if they should conquer.

Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιστεύετο τὴν γνώμην ἀπαντών,
But — (he) having satisfied the minds of all,

απέστηντε. Δὲ πάντες ὄσσιπερ διελέγοντο
sent (them) 'away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκκελεῖοντο αὐτῶ, μη μάχεσθαι,
(parole) exorted him, not to fight (personally),

ἀλλ' ἀπεστάλεσθαι ὄπου θέλεις
but to place himself behind (the line of battle) of themselves.

Εἰς τὸ τοῦτο καρδὶ Κλεάρχος ἡμετέρῳ τὸν Κῦρον
'At — — this time Clearchus inquired of — Cyrus

πῶς δὲ: Οἴει γὰρ σοι ὁ Κῦρος τὸν
some-how thus; Do you think then (to you), O Cyrus, (that) — (your)

ἀδελφὸν μαχεῖσθαι; Νὴ Δὶ ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος
brother will fight? Yes, by Jupiter, said — Cyrus,

εἰπερ γε ἐστι παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρσατίδος,
if indeed he is (the) son of Darius and Parysatis,

dὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφὸς, ἐγὼ οὖ λήπομαι
and my brother, I 'shall not 'take (possession of)

ταῦτ' ἀμαχεῖ.
these (dominions) without a fight.

Εἰπερὶδα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἑξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) — under arms (the)

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ
number was of the — Greeks ten thousand and

tετραχοσία ἄσησι, δὲ διαχυτῶν καὶ πεντα-
four hundred heavy armed men, and two thousand and

χίλιων πελάσται, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
five hundred targetiers, and (the number) of the barbarians

μετὰ Κῦρον δέκα μυρίάδες,
with Cyrus (was) ten ten thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑικοσὶ δρεπανηφόρα ἁματα. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe bearing chariots. And (the number)
τῶν πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἰναὶ ἐκατόν καὶ εἴκοσι
of-the enemy was-said to-be a-hundred and twenty
μυριάδες, καὶ διακόσια δρεπανηφόρα
ten-thousands, [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing
ἀρματα. Δὲ ἦσαν εξακοσίων ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,
δὲν Ἀρταγέρος ἤρχετο οὗτοι ἦσαν
of-whom Artageres had-the-command; these (horsemen) were
tεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλέως αὐτοῦ.
drawn-up before (the) king himself. But 'of (the)
στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἦσαν τέταρτες
'soldiers of-the king there-were four (being)
ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοί καὶ ἑγεμόνες, ἔκαστος
commanders and generals and leaders, each
τριάκοντα μυριάδων
(having under his command) thirty ten-thousands, [300,000],
Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαρήνης, Γοβρίας,
(Abrosomas, Tissaphernes, Gobrias,
Ἀρβάχης. Δὲ τοῖτων παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
Arbacca. But of-those there-were-present in the battle
ἔνεντάκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἐκατόν καὶ
nine-hundred ten-thousands, [900,000], and a-hundred and
tεντάκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα. γὰρ Ἀβροκόμας
fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for Abrosomas
ἐλαίνων ἐξ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης πέντε
marching from Phoenicia arrived-after the battle five
ἡμέρας. Δὲ οἱ αὐτομολυσάντες ἐκ τῶν
days. And — (those) having-deserted from the
πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλον βασιλέως
enemy (that were) with (the) great king
ηγγέλλον ταύτα πρὸς Κύρων πρὸ τῆς μάχης:
announced these (things) to Cyrus before the battle;
καὶ, μετὰ τῶν μάχην, ὦ ὑστέρειν
and, after the battle, — (those that) thereafter
ἐξεκράθησαν ἡγγέλλον ταύτα.
were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).
And thence Cyrus proceeds one day's-march, (making) three parasanges, with all the army, both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-order of battle; for he thought (that the) king would offer battle that (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the parasanges there was (found) a ditch dug deep, the king's five fathoms, and the depth three fathoms. And the ditch was extended up through the plain to twelve parasanges, just to the walls of Media. Hence (a) was flowing from the river Tigris; and there are four (of them), from the river Tigris; and there are four (of them), breadth (of each is) of the size of a plethron, and very deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail on them; and they-discharge-their-water into the Euphrates, and they-leave (between) each a-plethron, bridges also for they are (thrown) over (them). There was (a) narrow passage along the Euphrates, between the river and the trench about the breadth of twenty feet. This
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

72

δε την τάφρον μέγας βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἄντι — trench (the) great king makes for (a)

ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κύρον προσελαύνοντα.
defence, after he-heard-of Cyrus marching-against

Ταύτην την πάροδον ὀν τε Κύρος καὶ (him). This — passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also

ἡ στρατιά παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἰσὶν τῆς the army went-through, and (so) became within the
tάφρου. Βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ οὐν ἔμαχᾶσκατο trench. (The) king indeed 'did not therefore 'offer-battle
tαύτη τῇ ήμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλὰ ἤχη καὶ ἐσπαν 
on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses

καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵππωροιντων ήσαν φανερά. and of-men retreating were visible.

'Ενταῦθα Κύρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα—There Cyrus having-called Silanus the Ambra-

κώτιν μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρειοὺς, cian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand daries,

ὅτι πρῶτον τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀν' ἐκείνης τῆς because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —

ἡμέρας θυόμενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς day (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king

ου μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμέρων. Κύρος δ' "would not fight (for) ten days; Cyrus then

εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα ἐτι μαχεῖται, εἶ οὖ said, he-'will not' then thereafter 'fight, if he-'will not

μαχεῖται ἐν ταῖς ταῖς ἡμέραις δ' εὰν ἄλγ- 'fight in these — days; but if you-speak-

θεύσης, ὑποχνοιμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. Toúto the-truth, I-promise you ten talents. This

το χρυσὸν τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἰ δέκα ἡμέρα — gold 'he then 'paid, when the ten days

παρῆλθεν. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, βασίλεὺς elapsed. After indeed, at the trench, (the) king

οὐκ ἐκώλυτο το στρατέυμα Κύρου διαβάϊνειν, did not 'prevent the army of-Cyrus to-go-through (it),
BOOK I. — CHAPTER VIII. 81

diáxontas τὸ καὶ αὐτοὺς, ἡδομενος pursuing the (part of the army) opposed-to them, being-pleased, καὶ προσκυνοῦμενος ᾧ ἡ ἥσαν βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν and being-saluted now as king by — (those) ἀμφ' αὐτῶν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξῆλθ' ἦν διότειν, about him, nor (yet) was 'he thus led-away to-pursue (the enemy), ἀλλὰ ἔχον συνεπεφαραμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν but keeping drawn-up-in-close-order the band of-the ἐξακοσίων ἵππων σύν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελείτο δὲ τι six-hundred horsemen with himself, he-carefully-watched what βασιλεὺς ποιήσει γὰρ καὶ ἂν ἂν αὐτῶν (the) king would-do; for 'he well 'knew (him) ὅτι ἔχον μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. that he-kept the-centre of-the Persian army. 

Καὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων And also all the commanders of-the barbarians ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν ἡγούντο, occupying the centre of-their (command) led (them thus νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ into action) thinking thus also to-be — the-most-secure ἦν οἱ ἱσχύς αὐτῶν ἢ ἐκατέρωθεν, if | the strength of-them [their strength] should-be on-either-side, καὶ, εἰ χρῆσον παραγγείλαι τι, τὸ and, if they-should-want to-order any-thing, (that) the στρατεύμα μᾶς αἰσθάνεσθαι ἡμῖν οὕτωs στρατεύμα μᾶς αἰσθάνεσθαι ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι. Καὶ army may perceive in-half (the) time. And δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχον τότε μέσον τῆς army even-indeed (the) king having then (the) centre of-the στρατιάς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο ὅµως ἐξώ [army of-him [of his army] was nevertheless beyond (the) εἰσώνυμοι κέρατοι τοῦ Κύρου. 'Εστεί δὲ οὕδες left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-one ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ αὐτῷ οὐδὲ fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (nor) (or) τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἐμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ, — (those of his own troops) drawn-up before him,
ἐπέκαμαντεν  ὡς  εἶς  κινδυνεύον.
he-commenced-wheeling-round as for-the-purpose-of surrounding.

Ἐνδὲ ὁ Κύρος δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὅπως ἦν
Then indeed Cyrus, fearing lest having-got in-the-rear
κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἐλληνικόν ἐλαύνει ἄντιος·
he-might-cut-to-pieces the Grecian (forces), moves-on against

καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἐξακόσιοις
(him); and having-charged with the six-hundred (horsemen with
νικᾷ τοὺς τεταγμένους πρὸ βασιλέως,
him), conquers — (those) drawn-up before (the)
καὶ ἐκτραπεῖ εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἐξακοσίους,
and turns into flight the six-thousand (horsemen
καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτείναι
guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed

τῇ χειρὶ ἐαυτοῦ Ἀρταγέρσου
| with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagares

τὸν ἀρχιναρτιοῦ αὐτῶν. Δὲ ὡς ἢ τροπὴ ἐγένετο,
the commander of-them. But as the rout occurred,
καὶ οἱ ἐξακόσιοι Ἐλληνος, διασπείρονται
also the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus, are-dispersed

ὁμήραντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν· πλὴν πάνυ
having-rushed-on | to the pursuing; [In pursuit]; except (a) very

ὁλίγοι κατελείφθησαν ἀμφ' αὐτῶν,
few, (that) were-left about him, (and who were)

σχέδον οἱ καλούμενοι δομοτράπεζοι. Ὡν
nearly-all — (those who) are-called table-companions. Being

δὲ σὺν τοῖς, καθορῶ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ
therefore with these, he-sees (the) king and the

στῆφος ἀμφ' ἐκείνων, καὶ εἰδὼς ὁ ἅσι
dense-body-guard around him, and immediately he-‘did not

ἡτίσετο ἀλλ' εἶπόν, ὅρω τὸν ἄνδρα, λέει ἐπ' ἁ
‘restrain-himself, but saying, I-see the man, he-rushed on

αὐτῶν· καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέφον, καὶ
him; and strikes at — (his) breast, and

τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς Κτήσιας δ
wounds (him) through the breast-plate, as Ctesias the
ιατρός φησί, καὶ αὐτὸς φησί ίασθαι
physician says, and (moreover) he-himself says (that) he-healed

τὸ τραύμα. Δὲ τις παίοντα
the wound. But some-one, (while he was) striking (at the king)

ἀκοντίζει αὐτὸν βιαίως παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν
hits him violently ἦν (a) javelin under the

ὀφθαλμὸν· καὶ ἐνταῖδα καὶ βασιλείς
eye; and there (then were) both (the) king

καὶ Κύρως μαχόμενοι, καὶ οἱ ἄμφι
and Cyrus fighting, and — (those likewise) about

αὐτοὺς ἐπὲρ ἐκατέρων·
them (were fighting), for each (of their own chiefs);

ὅπως μὲν τῶν ἄμφι βασιλέα ἀπέθνησον
how-many indeed — (of those) about (the) king died

Κτεσίας λέγει. γὰρ ἦν παρ’ ἐκείνῳ.
(in battle) Ctesias tells (us); for he was about him;

δὲ τε Κύρως αὐτὸς
[for he attended the king's person]; and not-only Cyrus himself

ἀπέδονε, καὶ ὅτι, οἱ ἀριστοὶ τῶν
died, but also eight, the most-distinguished (persons) —

περὶ αὐτῶν, ἔκειντο ἐπὶ αὐτῶ. Δὲ
(of those) about him, lay (dead) on him. But

'Αρταπάτης, ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σχημα-
Artapates, the most-faithful to-him — (of his) sceptre-

τοῦχων θεράτων, λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κύρων
servants, is-said, after he-saw Cyrus

πεττωχότα, κατατηρήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱππου
fallen, (that) having-leaped from (his) horse

περιπέεσειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασί
to-have-thrown (himself) on-him. And — (some) indeed say — (that)

βασιλέα κελεύσαν τυχε ἐπιφάξαι
(the) king ordered some one to-have-killed [to kill]

αὐτὸν Κύρω, οἱ δὲ σπασάμενοι
him (lying) on-Cyrus, — but (others say, that) having-drawn

τὸν ἄκυστην, ἐπιφάξανδου ἐαυτὸν. γὰρ
—the scimitar, he-killed himself; for
Thus now indeed died Cyrus, a man being not-only of all the Persians existing since Cyrus the elder, princely, but also the most-worthy to-reign, as is-agreed-to by all — [those] appearing to-have-been in (the) experience of Cyrus [those inti-
mately acquainted with Cyrus]. For indeed first, being yet (a) boy, when he was-educated both with — (his) brother and with the other boys, he was-thought (to be) the best son of all in-all-things. For all the sons of Persians — eminent-in-rank, are-educated at the gates of (the) king; [in the royal palace]; there one may
καταμάθησις μὲν πολλὴν σωφροσύνη
learn indeed much (of the) wisdom-of-temperance-and-
νηπιάς, δ' ἐστι οὖν ἄκοιχοι οὖν ἰδεῖν
modesty, but it is (possible) neither to-hear nor to-see
οὐδὲν ἀσχολήν. Δ' οἱ παιδεῖς καὶ θεώται τοὺς
any-thing base. But the boys both see (those)
τιμωμένους ἵππο βασιλέως καὶ ἄχοινους,
honoured by (the) king and hear (thereof),
καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμωμένους· ὅστε εἰς ὑς
and (in like manner of) others being-disgraced; so that straightway
οὗτος παιδεῖς μανθάνουσι τε ἄρχειν καὶ
being (yet) boys they-learn not-only to-govern but also ἄρχεσθαι. Ἐν θα Κῦρος μὲν ἔδοξει πρῶτον
to-be-governed. There Cyrus indeed seemed first (of all)
eἶναι αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἠλιαστῶν, τε
to-be the-most-moderate — (of his) equals-in-age, (and) not-only πείδεσθαι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον
to-obey the elders but also much more (readily than)
τῶν ἵπποδεστέρων ἔαντον· δ' ἔπειτα
— (those) more-inferior (to) him (in rank); and next then ἄριστα.
φιλοπότατος, καὶ χρησθαι τοῖς
he was most-fond-of-horses, and was able to-use (or manage) the ἵπποις ἀριστά.
τῶν ἰκρων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον,
horses in the best (manner). And they-discerned him tigable (in) the operations for — war, [in warlike exercises],
τε τοξικῆς καὶ ἄκουσεσθαι. Ἐτεί —
ot-only (those) of-archery but also (those) of-throwing-the-dart. When δὲ ἐπρεπε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ, ἢν καὶ φιλοθρόπατος,
indeed it became — (his) age, he was both most-fond-of-hunting, καὶ μέντοι φιλοκυνήσατος πρὸς
and even most-fond-of-danger-and-adventure (in encounters) against τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οίχ ἐπέσεν ὄρκουν
wild-beasts. And once he did not 'bear (a) she-bear
THE ANABASIS OF XERXES.

...ἐπιφερομένων, ἀλλὰ συμμαχῶν
(when) attacking (him), | but falling-together [but in the at-
καταπαύσεως ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱπποῦ,
tack and conflict] he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,
καὶ μὲν ἐποδὲ τὰ
cali, τὰς
[and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds] and,
ἄπειλας δὲ εἰχε φανερὰς,
de tēleus
scars of-which he-had visible (on his body), but at-last
κατέκαυς, καὶ μὲντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτον
he-killed (the bear), and indeed he-made the (person) first
βοηθήσαντα μαχαίριτον πολλοῖς.
coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy-by-many.

'Επεί δὲ καταπαύσεως ἵππο τοῦ πατρὸς
When indeed he-was-sent-down 'by — (his) father (as)
σατράτῃς Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας
satrap of-Lydia and also of-the Great
καὶ Κασπαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς
and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander
πάντων, οἷς καθήσετι ἀνδρίζεσθαι εἰς πεδίον
of-all, to-whom it-appertains to-be-assembled in (the) plain
Κασταλόου, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι
of-Castolus, first indeed he-showed himself | that
ποιοῦν περὶ πλείστον,
he-'made (it) for 'himself very-much, [that he held it of the great-
eἰ σπειραίτω τῷ καὶ εἰ τῷ
est importance to himself], if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and
εἰ συνδοτο τῷ καὶ εἰ τῷ
if he-made-an-agreement — (with any one), and if — (to any one)
ιπόσχοιτο τι ψευδεσθαι μηδὲν. Καὶ γὰρ
he-promised any-thing, to-deceive (in) nothing. And —
οὖν μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιστευόμεναι αὐτῶ ἐπιστέενον
therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him, confided
δ' οἱ ἀνδρεῖς ἐπιστέενον.
(in him) as-also (in like manner did private) — men confide
καὶ εἰ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύρου
(in him); and if any-one became hostile, Cyrus
BOOK I. — CHAPTER IX.

σπεισαμένον ἔποιευε ἀν
having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident (that) he would (have to)
pαθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπουδὰς. Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ 'suffer nothing contrary to the treaty. Therefore when
ἐπολέμησε Τισσαφέρνης, πάσας αἱ πόλεις he-waged-war (against) Tissaphernes, all the towns
ἐκούσας εἰλικτοῦ Κύρου ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν voluntarily chose Cyrus before Tissaphernes except (the)
Μιλησίων: δὲ αὐτοὶ ἐφοδοῦντο αὐτῶν ὅτι oih Milesians; but they feared him, because he did not
ἡδειν προέσανα τοὺς φεύγοντας. Γὰρ wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles]. For
καὶ ἐπεδείκνυτο ἐργάζετο 'he also showed 'by (his) deeds, and said, that
ἀν οὐ ποτὲ προοίτο εἰπεὶ ἀπαξ ἐγένετο 'he would not ever 'desert (them), when once he became (a)
φιλος αὐτοῖς, οἷς εἰ μὲν γένοιτο ἔτι μείον friend to them, nor if indeed they should become yet less
δὲ πράξεις ἔτι κάκων.
(in number), and should-suffer (a) yet worse (condition than they
Καὶ εἰ τῖς ποιήσεσθε αὐτῶν τι ἄγαθόν were in). And if any-one should-do him any-thing good
ἡ κακὸς, ἢν δὲ φανερὸς πειράματος or bad, it was indeed evident (that he was)
νικᾶν καὶ δὲ τίνες ἐξέφερον striving to-conquer (in these respects); and also some used-to-mention (a)
ἐυχὰται αὐτοῦ, ὡς εὐχαριστίᾳ ζήν τοσοῦτον χρόνον, wish of him, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time,
ἕστε ἀλεξέμενος, νικῶν καὶ τοὺς until 'he, requiring (them), 'might-excel both — (those)
pοιοῦντας εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς. acting well and — (those acting) ill (to him).
Καὶ γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλείστου ἐπεδύσησαν And — therefore truly the-most (of men) desired
τροέσαναν αὐτὸ ἐνι ἀνδρὶ γε τοῦ ἐφ' ἡμῶν to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our (time)
καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα
— (their) property, — (their) towns, — and the bodies
εώτων.
of-them — [and their persons].

Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν τις εἰπὼν οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὡς εἰς τοὺς
Νυν indeed — can any-one say — this, that he let the
κακούργους καὶ ἄδικους καταγελάν, ἀλλ’
evil-doers and unjust deride (his authority), but
ἀφειδέστατα πάντων εἰτιμωρεῖτο. 
most-unwarily of-all (men) he-punished (transgressors). — And
ἡν πολλάξις ιδεῖν,
it was often to-see, [and there were often to be seen], — or
τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς, παρὰ
the trodden roads [on the frequented roads] mem
στερεομένους καὶ ποδῶν, καὶ χειρῶν καὶ
deprived — of-feet, — (or) of-hands, — (or)
ὀφθαλμῶν ὥστε ἐν τῇ ἄρχῃ Κύρου ἐγένετο
of-eyes; so-that in the dominion of-Cyrus it was
καὶ Ἑλλην καὶ βαρβάρω, μηδὲν
(possible) 'for both Greek and barbarian, 'doing nothing
ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἄδεις, ὅποι τις ἤθελεν,
'wrong, to-travel fearlessly, withsoever one wished,
ἐξοντι δὲ τι προχρονί.
(and) having (with him) whatever he-might-proceed-with (that suited
'Ωμολόγησο γε μέντοι
his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged — indeed (that)
tιμᾶν διαφέροντας τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον.
he-honoured very-much — (those) good for war

Καὶ
[those having a disposition for, and skilled in, military affairs]. And
μὲν πόλεμος ἢ μήν αὐτῶν πρῶτον
indeed [(a) war was to-him first [his first war was]
πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσίους· καὶ οὖν αὐτῶς
against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself
στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς
leading-an-army into these — places, (those) whom
€ώρα ἐδελοντας κινδυνεύειν τούτοις he-saw willing to-encounter-danger (in his service) the-same καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας ἡς κατεστρέφετο, (also) he-made rulers 'of (the) 'places which he-subjugated, δὲ ἐπετα καὶ ἐτίμα δόρους ἀλλη. and moreover 'he also 'honoured (them) with-rewards in-another (man-

Ωστε μὲν τοὺς ἄγαθους φαίνεσθαι appear
εἰδαμονεστάτους, δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς (to be) the-most-fortunate, but (that) the bad [cowards]
ἀξιῶσαι εἶναι δούλους τούτων, were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the) slaves of-these (brave

Ταγαρθύν ἦν πολλὴ ἀφοσία αὐτῷ men). Therefore there-was (a) great abundance to-him

τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπως τις [Cyrus] of-those willing to-encounter-danger, when any-one

οἴοντο Κύρον αἰσχρήσεσθαι.
might-think (that) Cyrus would-perceive (him).

Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἰ τις γένοιτο In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become

φανερὸς αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἐπιδείκνυεσθαι, apparent to-him (as) desiring to-show (this vir-

περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν τούτοις (persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-gain

ἐκ τοῦ ἄδικου. Καί γὰρ οὗ τε πολλὰ ἄλλα by — injustice. And therefore — not-only many other

διεχειρίζετο δικαίως αὐτῷ, καὶ ἔχρισατο (things) were-administered justly for-him, but-also he-had-the-use-of

ἀληθῶς στρατεύματος. Γὰρ (a) real army, (and one worthy of the name). For

καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λόχαι οἱ ἐπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον also generals and captains | sailed to him

οὐ ἔνεκα χρημάτων, [came to him from other countries] not on-account of-money,
κύρων χαλώς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.
(μηνιαία)
(ανεξαρτήτως)

άλλα μὲν εἰ τὶς γέ, αὐτῶ
(μηνιαία)

προστάχαντι τι ὑπηρετήσειν χαλώς
(διάπολος)

οἶδεν

πώποτε εἰσε τὴν προσνυμίαν

το-νό-νεν (αὐτός) δι-δι-
(αὐτός)

ἀχάριστῳν. Τοῦγαρὸν δὲ κράτιστοι ὑπη-
(περί)

οὖν ἐλεχθῆσαν γενόμενοι

εἴρηται εἰς τὸ κύρος ἡγουμένοι

ἐλέχθησαν γενόμενου γενόμενος

εἰς τὸ κύρος ἡγουμένοι

οἰκονόμου εἰς τὸν

"πώποτε εἰσε τὴν προσνυμίαν
to-no-one (acting thus) did—he ever 'permit —(his) avarice
(axaristos). Toygaron δὲ κράτιστοι ὑπηρε-
(to go) unrewarded. Therefore truly | the-best servants-and-
tai pantos ἔγγου ἐλέχθησαν γενόμενοι
officers of-every work (or undertaking) were-said to-be

κύρων.
to-Cyrus [the best talents for all affairs were at the command of Cyrus].

Εἰ δὲ ὁμή τινα δίνα δεινόν οἰκονόμου εἰς τοῦ
If also he-saw any-one (being) (a) skilful manager | from —

doxaiou,

καὶ κατασκευάζοντα, τε
justice, [consistent with justice], and improving-the-land, not-only

χώρας, ἢς ἀρχοῦ, καὶ ποιοῦντα προο-
'of (the) 'country, which he-governed, but-also making (an) increased-

όδους ἀν πώποτε ἀφείλετο οὐδένα
produce (therefrom) 'he would never 'take-away any-thing (from

ἀλλ' ἐς προσεδίδου πλείως ζωτε
such a person), but always (rather) he-added more; so-that

καὶ ἐπόνου ἴδεος, καὶ ἑκτῶς θαρράλεος,
— (men) laboured cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὐτῷ δὲ τις ἐπέπαυσε ἱστατα ἑκτῶς
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal (it)

κύρων. γὰρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φθοῦν
from-Cyrus; | for he-was-manifestly not envying [for he manifestly

τοῖς φανεροῖς πλούτουσιν, ἀλλὰ
did not envy] — (those who) openly acquire-riches, but

πειράμενος χρηστῶς
toīs χρήματος was-endavouring to-use (or put into circulation) the wealth

πειράμενος χρήσις
τῶν ἀποχρυστουμένων. Ὁσοὺς φίλους γε μὴν
of-those concealing (it). As—many friends 'as — indeed
ποιήσατο, καὶ γνώνη διντάς εὖνος,
he-might-make, and knew (them as) being well-disposed (to him-
καὶ πρίνεις εἶναι ἰκανοὺς συνεργοὺς,
self), and might-judge (them) to-be fit co-operators,
ὅτι τοις θυμόμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζονται,
[in-whatever wishing he-might-happen to-accomplish], he-is-acknowledged
τοῦς πάντων γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος
by all to-have-been certainly the-best (and most skilful)
θεραπεύειν. Γὰρ
to-cherish (such friends, and attach them to himself). For
καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐνεκα οἴψερ αὐτὸς
also (for) this same (reason) on-account of-which he-himself
ὅτεν δεῖσθαι φίλων ὡς ἧχον συνερ-
thought (that) he-needed friends (namely) that he-might-have co-o-
γοὺς, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειράτο εἶναι κράτιστος συνεργός
rators, and he-himself endeavoured to-be the-best assistant
τοῖς φίλοις ὅτου τοῦτον αἰσθάνοντο
'to — (his) 'friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive
ἐξαστον ἐπιμελοῦντα.
each-one (was) desiring (to effect).

Δὲ μὲν οἷς γε ὃν εἰς ἀνήρ
And indeed I-think | (that) 'he-at-least being one man [that he
ἐλάμβανε πλείστα δῶρα
received the-most presents, (and this)
οἱ πολλὰ ἀνετά διεδίδον τοῖς
many (reasons); but these (presents) he-distributed to —

φίλοις μᾶλλον 
(his) 'friends very-much (excelling) certainly (in this respect)
πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκαστον,
all (men), looking to the manners of-each,
καὶ ὅτοι ὡς ἐκαστον μᾶλλον 
and (to that) of-which he-saw each-one the-most needed.
Καὶ δὲν τὶς πέμπων κόσμον ἐκάλεσεν, ἵνα ὡς εἰς τὸ σώματι αὐτοῦ, τὸ ἐνεπηρετεῖν τὸν πόλεμον, ἵνα ὡς εἰς καλλιμπισμὸν, καὶ ἐν περὶ τούτων ἐκφάνεν λέγειν, ὅτι μὲν περὶ τούτων ἐκφάνεν λέγειν, ὅτι μὲν τὸ σῶμα ἐαυτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ δύνατο τοῦ ἐσεῖδήναυι the body of-himself could not be-able to-have-been-adorned

πᾶσι τούτοις, [that his own person could not be adorned] with-all these (presents), ἰδίου φίλων καλῶς κεκοσμημένοις but he-might-think (that) friends (having-been) handsomely adorned μεγίστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ. Καὶ μὲν τὸ (to be) the-greatest ornament to (a) 'man. | And indeed the μικὰν τὰ μεγάλα to-superpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and indeed that τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα εἰς he should greatly surpass] — (his) friends (in) doing good (to)

οὐκ ἔχειν θαυμαστῶν, ἐπειδὴ γε ἐὰν καὶ δύνατοτέρος nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also the-most-able;

δὲ τὸ περιέχαι τῶν φίλων [but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel] — (his) friends τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προσβηγμοῖσαι — in-kind-attention, and | the to-be-eager [his eagerness]

χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἐμοιγε δοξεὶ εἴναι to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least, seem to-be μᾶλλον ἄγοντα. Γὰρ Κύρος πολλάκις ἐπιμελοῦσα more admirable. For Cyrus often sent ἡμιδεεῖς βίους οἶνον, ὅπως λάβοι πάνυ half-empty jars of-wine, whenever he-might-receive (any) very ήδων, λέγων, ὅτι οὐκ ἐν ηθοῖν δὴ πολλοῦ sweet (and fine-flavoured), saying, that never-yet truly 'for (a) 'long χρόνου ἐπιτυχοὶ ἠδιοῦν οἶνῳ τούτῳ time did-he-meat with-finer-flavoured wine (than) this;
οὖν ἔπεμψε τοῦτον σοι, καὶ δεῖται σον εκπειν therefore he-sent this to-you, and herequests of-you to-drink
tοῦτον τὴμερον σὺν οἷς φίλοις μάλιστα. this to-day with those-whom you-love most.
Πολλάκις δὲ ἠπέμπε ἡμιβρώτους χήνας, Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten geese [parts of geese],
καὶ ἡμίσει ἄρτων, καὶ ἀλλὰ τουαῦτα, κελεύων and halves of loaves, and other such (things), ordering
tὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν. τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν. (when he presented them); Cyrus
Κύρος ἤσθη τοῦτος. οὖν βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι was-delighted with these; therefore he-wishes also you to-taste
tοῦτων. Ὁποιον δὲ χιλὸς εἰς πάνω ὑπάνως, of these (same). Whenever indeed fodder was very scarce,
δὲ αὐτὸς ἐδύνατο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν and he was able to-procure-it | through the to-have
πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐτιμέλειαν, [by having] many servants and through — (his) care,
dιαπέμπτων τοὺς φίλους ἐξέλευε sending-it-about (among) — (his friends he-ordered (them)
ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλὸν τοῖς ἄγουσι to-throw this — fodder to-the horses | carrying
τὰ σῶματα ἑαυτῶν ὡς the bodies of them [carrying their persons], so-that (the horses)
μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς φίλους ἑαυτοῦ πενώντες. / Ei 'may not ' carry the friends of-himself hungering. / If
δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοντο, καὶ πλείστοι — indeed at-any-time he-might-proceed (anywhere), and many
μέλλοιεν ὑψεῖσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους might-be-about to-see (him), calling-to — (his friends
ἔσπονδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς διηλοίη ὡς he-held earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those whom
τιμᾶ. Ὑπετε ἐγώγον ἐξ ὧν άχοιώ κρίνω he-honoured. So-that I-at-least from (that) which I-hear judge
οὐδένα ὤπε 'Ελληνον οὔτε βαρβάρον
(that) no-one either of (the) 'Greeks or 'of (the) 'barbarians
πεφιλήσας ἦπιο πλειόνων. Δὲ καὶ τὸδὲ to-have-been-loved by more (persons). And also this τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπῆει (is a) proof of-this-same (thing), no-one indeed deserted πρὸς βασιλέα παρὰ Κύρου, ὄντος to (the) king from Cyrus, he-being (as a subject no δούλου. πλὴν ὁΡοντας better than a) slave (of the king); except Grontes (who) ἐποδειχθησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εἴπε αὐτὸν attempted (it); and truly this (Grontes) speedily found him, δὲν ὥστε εἰναι πιστὸν οἱ φιλανθερον Κύρῳ whom he-thought-to-be faithful to-himself, more-friendly to-Cyprus ἡ ἔαντω· δὲ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ βασιλέας than to-himself; but many deserted from (the) king πρὸς Κύρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο πολέμιοι ἄλλοις, to Cyrus, after they-became hostile to-one-another, καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τοι οἱ μάλιστα ἀγαπόμενοι and these indeed — (persons) the-most beloved ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες δυνὴν ἀγαθὸν by him (the king), thinking (that) being brave (men) παρὰ Κύρο, δὲν τυχόνανει ἀξιωτέρας τιμής under Cyrus, — to-obtain more-worth duly honour (and reward) ἡ παρὰ βασιλεί. Δὲ καὶ τὸ γενόμενον than from (the) king. And also — (that) happening αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου μέγα to-him at the end — 'of (his) 'life (is a) great τεκμήριον, δότι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς, καὶ ἑδύνατο proof, that — he was brave, and could ὅμως κρίνειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὐνοὺς rightly judge — (those) faithful (to him), and well-disposed, καὶ βεβαιός. Γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἀποδημήσαντος, πάντες and steadfast. For he dying, all οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ’ αὐτὸν ἀπέθανον — (his) friends and table-companions with him died μαχόμενοι ἐπὶ Κύρον, πλὴν Ἰρμιοῦ· οὗτος fighting over Cyrus, except Arius; this (person’
Δὲ τεταγμένος ἐστι γεγανέν

Indeed, having been stationed, he happened to be stationed on the left, commanding the cavalry; but when he learned of Cyrus having fallen, he fled having also (with him) the entire army which he commanded.

CHAPTER X.

Ἔνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτίμηται

There indeed the head of Cyrus is cut off, and also the right hand. But (the) king, and — (those soldiers) with him, pursuing falls on the Cyrean camp; [on the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers) metὰ Ἀρισέους οικέτα ἵστανται ἄλλα φεύγουσι with Ariesus no longer stand but flee through the camp of them [their camp] to the station, whence they had started (last); and there were said to be tετταρεῖς παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.

Four parasangs of the road [and which was said to be four parasangs distant]. But (the) king and — (those) with him not only plunder — other (things, which were) many, but also he takes the Phoenian (woman), the concubine of Cyrus, and (who) was said to be,
σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν. Δὲ ἡ νεώτερα ἡ Μιλοσία, wise and beautiful. But the younger (concubine) the Milesonian 

ληφθεῖσα ἵππω τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα (woman), having-been-taken by — (those) about (the) king,

ἔφευρεν ἑγώνη πρὸς τῶν escapes | naked [in her under garments] to (those of) the

Εἰλήνων, οἱ ἔχοντες ὀπλα ἐκνυσὶν ἐν Greeks, who having arms happened (to be stationed) among

τοῖς σχευοφόροις καὶ ἀντιτάξεντες the baggage-train; and having-been-drawn-up-against (the Persians)

ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀπαλαχῶν, δὲ they-killed many indeed of — (those) plundering, but

οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέδωσαν· γε μὴν —(some) also of-themselves died; at-least indeed they—did

οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέδωσαν· γε μὴν not 'see, but also saved this (woman), and

οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέδωσαν· γε μὴν other (things), whatever were within (the lines) of-them,

καὶ κρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι, πάντα ἐκωσαν both property and men, all were-saved.

Εὐταῦ θα βασιλέως καὶ οἱ Ἑλλήνες There not-only (the) king, but also the Greeks

dιέσχον ἀλλήλων ὡς τριάχων οὐδείς, oֹ were-distant from-one-another about thirty stadia, the

μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς Χαντ' αὐτοῖς, (Greeks) indeed pursuing — (those opposed) against themselves,

ὡς νικόντες πάντας, δ' οἱ δ' ἀπαλαχῶντες, ὡς as conquering all, but the (Persians) plundering, as

ὥστε νικῶντες πάντες. Δ' ἐπεὶ μὲν οἱ Ἑλλήνες now conquering all. But when indeed the Greeks

νότον, δι' ἐλευει ὅποιος σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι perceived, that (the) king with — (his) army

меча ἐν τοῖς σχευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς might-be among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king

οὗτοι Τισσαφέρους, δι' οἱ Ἑλλήνες on-the-other-hand heard from-Tissaphernes, that the Greeks
κυρίως τὰ καὶ αὐτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες
might-be-conquering the (army) opposed to-them, and pursuing,
οὖχονται εἰς τὸ πρόσδεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
you advance to—(a distance) forward, there truly (then)
βασιλεὺς μὲν τε θεοὺς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,
the) king indeed not-only | collects — (those) of-himself,
καὶ συντάττεται: δὲ δὲ
[collects together his forces], but also draws-them-up-in-line; but —
Κλέαρχος καλέσας Πρὸξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιάσατος,
Clearchus having-called Proxenus, for he was the-nearest,
ἐθεουλεύετο, εἰ πείρατον τινας, ἢ
consulted (with him), if they-should-send some (of the troops), or
πάντες ίοιον ἁρφότοις ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
all should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (to) the camp.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλι
During this (time) also (the) king was again
δῆλος προσώπων, ὡς ἔδοξεν ὑπακοὴν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ
evidently approaching, as it-seemed from-behind. And indeed the
Ἑλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς
Greeks having-faced-about prepared-themselves, as-if (the king)
προσώποντο καὶ δεξίομενοι ταύτην. δὲ δὲ
were-advancing and-also receiving (him) in-that (direction); but the
βασιλεὺς μὲν οὖν ἦγε ταύτην,
king indeed 'did not lead (his troops) in-that (direction),
δὲ ἦν παρηλθὲν ἐξω τοῦ ἐκφυγοῦ
but (by the way) in-which he-had-passed beyond — (their) left
κερατος, ταύτην καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἀναλαβὼν
wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with
καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ αὐτομάλθοστας
him) both — (those) in the battle, having-deserted
κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, καὶ Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ τοὺς
to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —
σὺν αὐτῷ. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν
(those) with him. For — Tissaphernes 'did not
ἐγγυνεν ἐν τῷ πρῶτῳ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διήλασε κατὰ
'flee in the first encounter, but charged against
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

τοὺς Ἑλλήνας πελάτσας παρά τὸν ποταμὸν* the Greek together along the river;
δὲ διελεύθην μὲν κατέκαυσε στάντες, but charging-through (the ranks) he indeed 'killed no-one
οἱ δὲ Ἑλλήνες διαστάντες but the Greeks standing-apart (and making a passage) struck
καὶ ἵππων κινοῦσιν αὐτοῖς - (them with their swords) and threw (their javelins) at-them;
'Επιστὰρας δὲ Ἀμφιπόλιτης ἱρίᾳ τῶν πελ-
Episthenes — (the) Amphipolitans commanded the tar-
ταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.
getera, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able com-

Δ’ οὖν Ἰσσαφῆριν οὖν, ὡς ἔγγον μεῖον, mander). But — Tissaphernes therefore, as having | less
ἀπηλλάγη, μὲν οὖν ἀναστρέφει
[the worst], was-forced-to-depart, indeed he 'does not return
πάλιν, δὲ ἐφίκουσας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶν again, but having-arrived at the camp — of-the
Ἑλλήνων, ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ δὴ Greeks, there he-meets-with (the) king, and —

συντακτάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ὑμοὶ πάλιν.
(them) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-marched together back (again).

Δ’ ἐπεὶ ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εἰσόδουμον πέρας τῶν But when they-were opposite the left wing of-the
Ἑλλήνων, οἱ Ἑλλήνες ἐδεικνύει, μὴ προσάγονεν
Greeks, the Greeks feared, lest they-might-lead
πρὸς τὸ πέρας καὶ against — (that) wing [ lest they would attack that wing] and
περιστεραζομένοις ἄμφιπολοι πελατάκαθεν surrounding (them) on-both-sides they-might-cut
αυτοὺς . καὶ ἔδιδει αὐτοῖς ἀναστάσειν τὸ them 'off; and it-seemed (best) to-them to-fold-back the
κέρας, καὶ πονησαόσαι τὸν ποταμὸν ῥισοῦσιν. wing, and to-place the river in-the-rear.

Ἐν ὡς δὲ ταύτα ἐδούλευοντο,
In (the time) in-which indeed (that) they-were-planning (this manœuvre),
καὶ δὲ βασιλεὺς παραμενὼν
and now—indeed (the) king having-changed (his line)
εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν
into the same form (that) he-placed (it) fronting the
φάλαγγα, ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον συνήκει μαχοῖ
phantax, | just-as — (at) first he-might-have-come fight-
μενόν. Δὲ ὅσι οἱ
ing [just as he came at first to offer battle]. But as the
"Ελληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε ἐγγὺς καὶ παρα-
Greens saw (them) being not-only near and—also drawn-
ταχυμένους, αὖθις παμανίσαντες ἐπήσαν ἐτι
up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-пеан they advanced yet
πολὺ προσμύτερον ἦ τὸ πρῶτον. Δὲ
much more—eagerly (and spirited) than — before. But
αὖθις οἱ βάρβαροι οἱκ ἐδέχοντο, ἄλλ᾽
again the barbarians 'did not 'receive (their attack), but
ἐφευρεν ἐξ πλέον ὅ τὸ
they-fled from a-greater (distance from them) than (they did) —
πρῶτον: οὐ οἱ ἐπεδίωκαν μέχρι τιμῶς
before; but — (the Greens) pursued (them) to a-certain
κόμης. οὐ ἐνταῦθα οἱ "Ελληνες ἔστησαν. Γὰρ
village; but there the Greeks haled. For
ἡν γῆλοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κόμης, ἐφ᾽ οὗ ibi there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)
ἀμφὶ βασιλεά, ἀνεστράφησαν, μὲν
about (the) king, stood-faced-about, (there-were) indeed
οἰκεῖοι, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπληκήθη
no-longer (any) foot-soldiers (there), but the hill was-filled
τῶν ἱππεῶν, δοτε μὴ γνυνόσκειν τὸ
with-the cavalry, | so that they-'did not 'know the (thing
ποιμένων.
that) was-doing [so that they knew not what the infantry might
Kaὶ ἔφασαν ὅταν τὸ βασίλευον
be doin] And they-said (that) they-saw the royal
σημεῖον τίνα χρυσῶν ἀετῶν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ
standard a-certain golden eagle elevated on
πέλατης.
(a) shield.
'Εστι δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔχοντες ἐνταῦθα:
When indeed also the Greeks proceeded thither,
οἱ ἵππαι δὲ καὶ λείπουσι τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὴν ἔτη
the horsemen indeed also leave the hill, not however as
ἀλλοι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοτεν,
collected in a body, but others in other-direction, [but dispersed in
δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐφιλοῦτο τῶν
different directions], and the hill was (gradually) thinned of the
ewitness. δὲ τέλος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. Ο
horsemen; but at last also all departed.—
Κλέαρχος οὖν οἵς ἀνεβιβάζει ἐπὶ τὸν
Clearchus therefore did not march on (to the
λόφον, ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτῶν πέμπει
hill, but having halted under [at the foot of] it he sends
λύκιον τὸν Συρακούσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
Lycius the Syracusan and another on the hill,
καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τα ἐπὶ τοῦ
and he orders (them) having-viewed the (things) on the
λόφου αὐτῶν ἑπαγγεิλαί τί ἐστι. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος
hill to-report what is (there). And — Lycius
ηλασε τε καὶ ἴδων ἑπαγγ.
rode on — (to the hill) and seeing (the state of affairs) brings
γέλαι ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δὲ
γελai that they flee to the utmost-of-their-ability. And
σχέδον ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν θλιος καὶ
nearly when these (things) were [happened] (the) sun also
ἐδύσατο. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔκτισαν,
set. And there the Greeks halted, and
θέμενοι τα ὡς ὅπλα ἀνέπαινον τα καὶ ἀμα
placing — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time
μὲν ἐδαύναζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοὶ φαινότο
indeed they were surprised that Cyrus nowhere appeared
οὖν ἄλλος οὖσίς παρεῖν αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ

nor 'did (any) other one 'come from-him. For

ηδεσαν οὖν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἄλλ' εἰκαζὼν
they-knew not (that) he was-dead, but they-supposed (him)

ἡ οἰχεωδαί διώκοντα ἢ προκειλθακέναι
either to-go-away pursuing (the enemy) or to-have-pushed-on-before

καταληψόμενον τί. Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐθούλειντο
about-to-seize some (post). And they deliberated

eἰ μείναντες αὐτοῦ ἁγοντο ἐνταῦθα τὰ σχενο-
if remaining there they-should-bring thither the baggage-

φόρα, ἢ ἀπώλεις ἔπλ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔδοξεν
train, or return to the camp; it-seemed

αὐτοῖς οὖν ἀπέλειν, καὶ ἀφεκνοῦνται ἐπὶ
to-them therefore (best) to-return; and they-arrived at

τὰς σχηνὰς ἀμφὶ δόρτηστον. Τούτῳ ἡγέτε τὸ
the tents about supper-time. Such was the

tέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας. Δὲ καταλαμβά-
end indeed of-this — day. But they

νοσι τε τὰ πλείστα τῶν ἀλλών χρημάτων
find not-only the most of — (their) other things

dιηρπασμένα, καὶ τί σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν
plundered (or destroyed), but-also whatever food or drink

eἰ ἦν καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ
there may-be; and the wagons full-of wheat-flour and

οἶνον, ὡς Κύρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἦν εἰ ποτε
wine, which Cyrus provided, that if ever

σφόδρα ἐνδεικνύοντο τὸ στράτευμα, διαδοὴν
vehement want should-seize the camp, he-might-distribute

τοῖς Ἔλληνσιν, αὐταὶ ἅμαξαὶ δὴ Ἰσαν
(them) to-the Greeks, these wagons — were

τετρακόσιαι δὲ ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε
four-hundred as they-said, and these then

οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διηρπασαν. "Ωστε οἱ πλείστοι
—(those) with (the) king plundered. So-that the most

τῶν Ἔλληνων ἦσαν ἄδειπνοι. δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
of-the Greeks were supperless; but also they-were
ἀνάριστοι: γὰρ ἤ̣ πρὶν τὸ στρατεύμα
without-dinner; for indeed before the army
καταλύσαν πρὸς ἀριστόν βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.
halted for dinner (the) king appeared.
Οὕτως οὖν μὲν διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν
Thus therefore indeed did-they-pass that
νύκτα.
night.
BOOK II. — CHAPTER V.

πρὶν παθεῖν to-have-anticipated (in inflicting injury) before suffering (any)
δίκησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς oúte méli-
have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend-
λοντας οὖσ’ αὖ βολομένους οὐδὲν ing nor moreover wishing (nothing) (anything) 'of (the)
tοιοῦτον. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς τοιαύτας 'kind.
Thinking therefore (that) — such-kinds-of
ἀγνωσσόμενας ἃν παθεῖσαι μάλιστα συνονοσίας,
misunderstandings may be-made-to-cease most-of-all by-meeting-together,
ζηκα, καὶ βοίλομαι διδάσκειν σε, ὡς σὺ
I-come (then), and am-desirous to-inform you, that you 'do
οἰκ ὃς ὅστε αὐτοὶς ἤµιν. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ
not rightly 'mistrust us. For indeed first and
μέγιστον, οἱ θεοὶ théon κολύοντι
principally, the oaths (taken in the name) 'of (the) 'gods' forbid
ἡμᾶς εἶναι πολεμίους ἄλληλοις: δότις δὲ τούτων
us to-be enemies to-one-another; whoever indeed of-these
σύνοιδεν αὐτῶ παρημεληκός, τοῦτον
is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (these things), this-one
ἐγὼ ἄν οὖσον' εἰδαμονίσαμι. Γὰρ τὸν
I could never (esteem) happy. For (from) the
πόλεμον θεῶν οǐδα οἰκ, οὖσ’ ἀπὸ ποιου
hostility 'of (the) 'gods' I-know not, neither | from [with] what-degree
ἄν τάχους οὖσ’ ὅτι τις φεῦγων ἄν ἀποφυγοι,
— of-speed nor where any-one fleeing may escape,
οὖσ’ εἰς ποιον σχότος ἄν ἀπωδραίη, οὐδ’ ὅπως
neither into what darkness 'he might 'flee-away, nor how
ἄν ἀποσταίη εἰς ἔχων χαιρόν,
'she could 'retreat into (a) fortified place (and escape from
γὰρ πάντα πάντα ὑποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ them), for everywhere all (is) subject to-the gods, and
οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσιν πανταχῶς πάντων ίσον. Οὖν the gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus
γιγαντικῶ δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ de-I-think truly indeed respecting the gods, and also
do-I-think truly indeed respecting the gods, and also
τῶν δραυν., παρ' οἷς ήμεῖς, συνέδεμεν, — (respecting) oaths, with whom we, having-concurred κατεδέμενα τὴν φόλιαν· δὲ τῶν (with one another), have-deposited — (our) friendship; but — ἀνθρώπων ἐγὼ νομίζω σὲ ἐν τῷ παρόντι of-all-human-things I consider you at the present (time) εἶναι μέγιστον ἄγαδον ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ to-be the-greatest good to-us. For indeed with you πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς every — road (is) easy, and every river διαβατός, οίκα ἁπάτη ἕν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· passable, (there is) no want indeed of-the necessaries-of-life; δὲ ἀνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς μὲν διὰ σκότους but without you (our) entire — route — (will be) through darkness (γὰρ ἐπιστάμεθα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς (for we-know nothing of-it), and every river δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ὁχλος (would be) difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be) φοβερός, δὲ ἐρημία φοβερῶτατον. γὰρ terrible, but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (thing); for ἐστὶ μεσθ' πολλῆς ἁπάτης. Δὲ εἰ it-is full of-every want (and difficulty). But if δὴ καὶ μανεντες καταχείναιμεν σὲ, ἂν ἡ truly 'having even 'become-mad we-should-kill you, would τι ἅλλο καταχείναντες τὸν εὐερ- any-thing else (happen) having-slain — (our) bene- γέτην ἀγωνίζομεν πρὸς βασιλεὰ factor, (but that) we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king τῶν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον; δὲν καὶ δὲ δὴ δὲν the greatest avenger? of-how-many, and indeed truly how-great ἐπιλίκος ἄν στερίζομαι ἐμαυτόν, εἰ ἐπεχειρήσαμι expectations 'I should 'deprive myself, if I-should-attempt ποιεῖν σὲ τι κακόν, τεῦτα λέξω. Ἔγω to-do you any harm, this I-will-tell (you). I γὰρ ἐπεδύμηςά Κύρον γενέσθαι φίλον μοι, therefore desired Cyrus to-become (a) friend to-me
Νομίζων τόν τότε εἶναι ἴκανότατον
thinking (him) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt
ποιεῖν εὖ δὲ βούλοιτο· δὲ νῦν ὃρο
to-do good to-whom he-wished (to do so); but 'I now 'see
σὲ ἔχοντα τέ τὴν δύναμιν καὶ χώραν Κύρου,
you having not-only the power and territory of-Cyrus,
καὶ σύζοντα τὴν ἄρχην σεαυτοῦ, δὲ τὴν
but-also retaining the government of-yourself; but the
δύναμιν βασιλέως, ἢ Κύρος ἔχοντο
power of (the) 'king, which Cyrus experienced (as)
pολεμία, ταύτην οὖσαν ξύμμαχον σοι.
hostile, this (power) being (now an) ally to-you.
Δὲ τούτων οὖν τοιοῦτων, τίς
But these (things) being in-this-manner, (is there) any-one (who)
οὖτω μαίνεται, ὅστις οὖ βοιλεται εἶναι
is so 'mad, who 'would not 'wish to-be (a)
φίλος σοι; ἄλλα μὴν (γὰρ ἔριδ καὶ τάτα
friend to-you? But truly (for I-will-mention also those
τὸν οὐδὲν εἰσὶ μείν), γὰρ μὲν οἶδα
to-things from which I-have hopes, (that); even you will-
δεσθαι εἶναι φίλον ἡμῖν), γὰρ μὲν οἶδα
desire to-be (a) friend of-us), for indeed I-know of (the)
Μυσσεύοις δυντας λυπηροὺς ἤμιν, ὅσς νομίζω
'Mysians being troublesome to-you, whom, I-am-of-opinion (that)
σὺν τῷ παροῦσῃ δυνάμει ἄν παρασχέῃν
with the present (Grecian) force, 'I could 'reader
ταπεινοὺς ἤμιν· δὲ καὶ οἶδα Πισίδας
'tame submissive to-you; so also I-know (that the) Pisidians (annoy
δὲ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἀλλὰ ἐνη
dὲ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἀλλὰ ἐνη
you); and also I-hear (that) there-are many other nations
τοιαῦτα· ἄ οἷμαι ἄν παίσαι άιλ
like-these (two mentioned) whom I-think (that) 'I might 'prevent ever
ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ἰμετέρᾳ εὐδαμονίᾳ. Δὲ
disturbing — your happiness. But (as respects the
Αἰγύπτιοις, οἷς νῦν γιγνώσκω ἤμιζ
Egyptians, against-whom 'I now 'know (that) you
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

μάλιστα τεσσαράκοντα, οίχ ὀρθὸς ποία
have been very much excited, I do not see what
συμμάχοι δυνάμει μᾶλλον χρησάμενοι
auxiliary force (which) having been rather used,
δὲν κολάσασθε τῆς
you might punish (them better than) — (with the force)
οὐσὶς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ. Ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐν τοις ἔτει being now with me. But truly among — (those) at least
οἰκοῦν πέρι σὺ, εἰ μὲν βούλοι εἶναι (who) dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to be (a)
φίλος τῷ, ὡς ἄν εἶναι μέγιστος friend — (to-any), that you might be (the) greatest (possible);
δὲ εἰ τις λυτοῖν σε, ἄναστρέφοις ὡς but if any-one offend you, you-might-deal (with them) as (a)
δεσπότης, ἕχων ἡμᾶς ἑπτάτας, οἱ ἄν master, having us for-assistants, — (for) we would
ὑπηρετοῖμην σοι οὐκ ἑξεκα τοῦ μισοῦ serve you not on-account-of — (our)
μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἦς, alone, but also (on account of) the gratitude, which,
οὐδέντες ἢν σοῦ, ἄν δικαίως ἔχομεν σοι. having-been-saved by you, we might justly have to you.

"Εμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐπέθυμομένα πάντα ταῦτα I indeed — considering all these (things),
τὸ δὲ ἁπάστειν ἦμιν doxei einaiv [the you to-distrust us [your distrusting us] seems to be
οὐτὸς θαμαστὸν, δέστε δὲν ἡδιστ καὶ ἀκοίσαι so wonderful, that I would most gladly even have-heard
τὸ ὅνομα τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινός λέγειν, the name (of him) — (who) is so skilled to-speak,
δέστε λέγων πείσαι σε ὡς ἡμεῖς ἐπιθυμολεγοῦμεν that speaking to have-persuaded you that we are-conspiring
σοι. Κλεαρχός μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαίτα. against you. Clearchus indeed therefore spoke in this manner;
δὲ Τισσαφέρνης αὕτη ἀντιμείφθη ἦδε· but Tissaphernes replied thus (as follows):
'Αλλά μὲν, ὡς Κλέαρχε, ἰδομαι ἄκουών
But indeed, O Clearchus, I am delighted hearing (the)
φρονίμους ἄγους σου γὰρ γνώσεις ταύτα,
judicious discourse of you; for knowing these
εἰ βουλεύοις τι κακῶν ἐμοί,
(your sentiments), if you were to plan anything evil against me,
ἀμα ἄν δοξεῖς μου καὶ εἰ διναὶ κακόνους
at the same time 'you would appear to me even to be evil-minded
σαντῶ: Δ' ὡς ἄν μάθῃς, δοτὶ ὑμεῖς ἄν οὐδὲ
to yourself. But that you may learn, that you do not
δικαίως ἀποτύπτετε οὕτε βασιλεῖ οὕτ' ἐμοί,
justly mistrust either (the) king or me,
ἀντάξονσαι. Γὰρ εἰ ἔμοι ἔσην ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς
li. ten-in-turn. For if we wished to destroy you
νῦντερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἄπορεῖν πλῆθους ἵππεαν,
whether do we seem to you to want (the) multitude of cavalry,
ἡ πεζὸν ἢ ὑπάλλεως ἐν ἦ ἄν εἴημεν ἰκανόν
or of infantry or warlike equipments by which we might be able
μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δὲ οὐδὲς χίνδυνος
indeed to injure you, and (there would be) no danger
ἀντιπάσχειν; Ἀλλὰ ἄν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἄπορεῖν
to undergo-in-return? But might we seem to you (as) wanting
χωρὶς ἐπιτήδειαν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ὑμῖν;
places suitable to attack you? (Are there not) indeed
tοσαῦτα πεδία ἢ ὡς ὑπάρχεται φίλα ὑμεῖς διαπερνόντεσθε
so many plains, which not being friendly you pass-through
σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ,
de ópate tosaútta with much labour (and difficulty) and do you see
ὅτι ὑπάρχει πορευτέα ὑμῖν,
the many mountains being to be crossed by you, [that are to be crossed by you],
α έξεστι ὑμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι
which it is allowed us after having previously taken possession of them
παρέξειν ἄπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ τοσοῦτον ποταμοὶ,
to render impassable to you, and are there (not) so many rivers,
ἐφ' ἄν έξεστιν ὑμῖν ταμεῦς ὑμᾶς
at which it is allowed us to regulate (and determine)

13.
διότι εις ἣμαιν ἀν βουλήμεθα μάχεσθαι; δέ
with-how-many of-you we might 'wish to-fight? and
εἰ ἂν αὐτῶν οὐ δὲ ἀν οὐδὲ διαβαίνετε
are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which 'you could not 'cross
παντάπασι, εἰ ἦμεν μὴ διαπερεύομεν ἦμαι.
at-all, if we 'did not 'cross 'you 'over.

Δ' εἰ ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἐπιτάμεθα, ἀλλὰ
But if in all these (things) we-should-fail, but (then)

γέ τοι τὸ πῦρ ἐστι προτοῦν τοῦ παρποῦ
| fire is better (than) the fruit

(at least) — — [fire is master over the produce of the soil]; (for) burn-
καίσαντες ὑμᾶς ἀν δυνάμεις Ἀντιτάξαμα λυμέων
ing which we would be-able to-oppose famine
ὑμῶν, ὑμᾶς, οὐδὲ εἰ εἰς τὸν ἄγαδον
to-you, against-which 'you, neither if you were ever-so brave,
ἀν δυνάμεθα μάχεσθαι. Πῶς οὖν ᾧ
could you-be-able to-contend. How-then therefore if, having

τοσοῦτος πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολέμειν ὑμῖν
so-many means [for the to-wage-war with-you], [for

καὶ μηδένα τούτων ἐπαύινον
waging war with you], and none of-these dangerous

ὑμῖν, ἐνεταὶ ἀν ἐν παντσί τούτων ἐξελοίμεθα
to-us, now-that 'we should of all these 'select

τούτων τὸν τρόπον, ὡς μὲν μίνος ἀδεθὴς
this — manner, which indeed alone (is) impious

πρὸς θεῶν, δὲ μίνος αἰχμῶς πρὸς ἀνθρώπων;
before (the) gods, and alone (is) disgraceful before men?

Δὲ ἂντι παντάπασιν
But it-is altogether (the part of men) perplexed-by-difficulties,
καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐχομένων ἀνάγχη, καὶ
and destitute-of-means, and held by-necessity, and

τοῦτων ποιητῶν, οὕτως ἐξελοῦσι
these (being) wicked (by nature), who desire

πρά τε τι τε δὲ ἐπιορκίας πρὸς θεῶν
to-effect any-thing not-only by perjury to (the) gods,
BOOK II. — CHAPTER V.

καὶ ἀπυστιᾶς πρὸς ἀνδρότους. Ἡμεῖς, ὁ Κλέαρχος, but—and perfidy to men. We, O Clearchus, ἑσμὲν οὐχ οὔτε οὔτως ἀλάχιστοι οὔτε ἡλίκιοι. are not (neither) (either) so inconsiderate (nor) (or) foolish.

"Ἀλλὰ τι δῆ, ἐγὼν ἀπολέσαι ἤμας, But why truly, it—being—allowed (as) to—have—destroyed you, | did—*we oὐχ ἡλικὸν ἐπὶ τοῦτο: [why did we not attempt it]? | did not 'go' to this? [why did we not attempt it]? know

εἰ, ὅτι ὁ αὐτίος τοῦτον ἐμὸς ἔρως, ἐμὲ well, that the cause of—this (was) my desire, | me τὸ γενέσθαι πιστῶν τοῖς Ἔλλησι, the to—become [for becoming] (a) faithful (friend) to—the Greeks, καὶ ὁ Ξενικὸς Κύρος ἄνεβη πυτικῶν and with—which foreign (force) Cyrus went—up trusting (them)

διὰ μισθοδοσίας, τοῦτῳ on—account—of (the) pay—given (them), with—this (force) (it is for)

ἐμὲ καταβῆναι ἰσχυρὸν δ' εὐρεγείας. me to—go—down strengthen on—account—of benefits (bestowed

Δὲ δοσα ἡμεῖς ἑστε on them). But (as respects) how—many—things (in which) you are χρήσιμοι μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἰπάς τα, useful to—me you 'have indeed even 'mentioned — (some of them),

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἢγὼ οἶδα, γὰρ μὲν ἔγωστι but the greatest (of all) I—myself know; for indeed it—is—allowed μόνω βασιλεῖ ἐχειν τὴν τίμαν ὃ ὁδη ἐπὶ alone 'to (the) 'king to—have the tiara upright on τῇ κεφαλῇ, δ' ἱς, τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ, the head, but perhaps, — (that) on the heart, ἕμον παρόντων, καὶ ἔτερος ἄν εὑπετῶς you being—present (and assisting), even another may easily ἔχων. have (so.)

Εἶπών ταῦτα ἐδοξῆ τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγειν Saying these (things) he—seemed to — Clearchus to—speak ἀληθῶς καὶ εἶπεν. Οὐκ οὐν, ἐφη, the—truth; and he—said: (Are) not (those) therefore, he—said,
οὖν, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν ἵππαρχοντων
who, such-great (inducements) to friendship existing
ἡμιν, διαβάλλοντες πειρώνται ποιήσαι ἡμας πολε-
to-us, calumniating endeavour to-make us ini-
μίους εἰσιν ἄξιοι παθεῖν τα
mical (to one another) are (they not) worthy to-suffer the
ἐκχατα; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἐφη ὅ
extreme (of punishment)? And I indeed at-least said —
Τισσαφέρνης, εἶ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
Tissaphernes, if you as-also the generals and the
λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἐλθεῖν μοι ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεί,
captains 'will come to-me in — (a) public
λέγω τοὺς λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμὲ, ὡς
(manner), I-will-mention — (those) telling me, that
οὐ ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοὶ.
you are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me.
Δὲ ἐγὼ, ἐφη δ Ἐρίλεων, ἄξω πάντας,
And I, said — Clearchus, will-bring (them) all,
καὶ καὶ δὴ λόγῳ σοι, δὴν ἐγὼ ἁρών
and 'I in-return 'will-declare to-you, whence I hear (reports)
περὶ σοῦ. Εἰς τοῦτον δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσα-
perí sou. 'Ex tou'tou dè tōn lōgon o Tissa-
φέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε τε phernes treating-him-in-a-friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only
μὲν ἔξελεν χαὶ τὸν ἐπωνομαζότω
indeed requested him to-remain, but-also made-him (a)
σύνδετον. Δὲ τῇ ἱστερίᾳ ὁ Κλάρχος, companion-at-supper. But on-the-following-day — Clearchus,
ἐλθὼν ἔπει τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἢν δὴ λόγος τὴ going to the camp, was evidently not-only
οἴσαρε, τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ἢν πάνυ φιλικὰς thinking (that) — Tissaphernes was very kindly
dιαχείλω, καὶ ἀνήγγελεν ὁ ἔξελεν
affected (towards him), but-also announced what he
ἔλεγεν, ἐφη τε χρὴναν ἔναι παρὰ
had-mentioned; he-said (that) not-only (those) ought to-go to
BOOK II. — CHAPTER V.

Τισσαφέρνην, οὓς ἔκλεψε, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων Tissaphernes, whom he-called, but-also (those) of-the Greeks, οἱ ἄν ἐλεγχῶσι διαβάλλοντες, who might be-convicted (as) calumniating (their countrymen), αὐτῶν τιμωρηθήναι ὡς ὄντας προδότας καὶ (that) those are-to-be-punished as being traitors and κακονοὺς τοῖς Ἐλλησι. Δὲ ἵπποπτευε Μένων evil-disposed to-the Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἶδος αὐτῶν was the calumniator, even having-known him (as) συγγεγεγεμένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ’ Ἀριαίον, having-been-with Tissaphernes (in company) with Arisias, καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιθουλεύοντα, both (as) forming-a-party against-himself, and (as) intriguing, ὅπως λαβὼν τὸ ἀπαν στρατευμα πρὸς ἕαντον so-that having-secured the entire army for himself ἦ φίλος Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέ- he-might-be (a) friend to-Tissaphernes. But also — Cle- αρχος ἐθούλετο τὸ ἀπαν στρατευμα ἐξειν τὴν archus wished the entire army to-have — γυνῶμην πρὸς ἕαντον, καὶ τοὺς παραλυ- (their) minds for him, and — (those) molest-pοῦντας εἶναι ἐκποδῶν. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν στρατιωτῶν to be removed-away. But some of-the soldiers ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ, πάντας τοὺς λοχα- spoke-in-opposition to-him, [Clearchus], (that) all the cap-gοὺς καὶ στρατηγοὺς μὴ ἴναι, μηδὲ tains and generals 'should not 'go, (and that) neither πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ ὁ Κλεαρχος κατέτεινεν should-they-trust Tissaphernes. But — Clearchus contended ἵσχυροι ἦστε διεπράξατο μὲν πέντε στρατηγοὺς vehemently until he-obtained indeed five generals dὲ εἶχοι λοχαγοὺς ἴναι. ὁ δὲ καὶ τῶν and twenty captains to-go (with him); and also (some) of-the
other soldiers about two-hundred followed
as-if (going) to market.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-
When indeed they were at the gates of — Thess-

φέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοί μὲν παρεκλήθησαν εἰςω, 
phernes, the generals indeed were-invited within,

Πρόξενος Βοιώτων, Μένων Θεσσαλός, 
(there were) Proxenus (the) Boiotian, Menon (the) Thessalian,

Ἀγιας Ἀρχας, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σω-
.Agias (the) Arcadian, Clearchus (the) Lacedemonian, (and) So-

κράτης Ἀγαίος δὲ οἱ λοχαγοί ἐμενον ἐπὶ 
erates (the) Achaean; but the captains remained at

ταῖς θύραις. Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὑπερον, ἀντὶ τοῦ 
the gates. Not long indeed after, at the

αὐτοῦ σήμειον, τῷ οἱ ἐνδον ἐνελαμβάνοντο 
same signal, not-only — (those) within were-seized;

καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεχόμεθαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα 
but also — (those) without were-killed. And after this

τινὲς τῶν ἱππέων ἑλαύνοντες διὰ 
some of-the cavalry 'of the' barbarians, riding through

τοῦ πεδίου. ὡσὶν Ἑλληνι ἐνενυχάνουν, ἢ 
the plain; whatever Greek they-might-meet, either

δούλῳ ἢ ἑλευθέρῳ ἐκτείνουν πάντας. Δὲ οἱ 
slave or freeman they-killed (them) all. But the

Ἑλλήνες ὑδραίνες ἐὰν τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν 
Greeks observing from the camp — (this)

ἱππασίαν αὐτῶν τῷ Ἐθάιμαχον, καὶ ἤμφερον 
riding-about of-them 'were not-only 'astonished, but also doubted

ἐπὶ τοῦ ἔποιον, πρὸς Νίκαρχος Ἀρχας ἦσε φεύγων, 
what they-were-doing, until Nicarchus (an) Arcadian came fleeing,

τετραμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ 
being-pierced in the belly, | and having the

ἐντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσίν, 
intestines in — (his) hands, [and holding back the intestines with his
καὶ εἶπεν πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. Ἔξ τούτο
hands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon this
ὅδε οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὑπλα πάντες
indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms all
ἐκπεπληγμένοι, καὶ νολίσοντες
being-struck (with consternation), and thinking (that)
αὐτοὺς αὐτίκα ἤξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
they 'will immediately come against the camp.
Oἱ πάντες δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον, δὲ Ἀριάδνος καί
— All indeed 'did not 'go, but (only) Aриδνος and
Ἀρταγύζος καὶ Μῆδραδάτης, οἱ ἤσαν πιστότατοι
Artaguyzos and Mithradates, who were the-most-faithful
Kύρω δὲ ἐρμηνεύσες τῶν Ἑλληνων ἔφη καὶ
to-Cyprus; but the interpreter of the Greeks said (that) also
ὁρᾶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέρους σὺν αὐτοῖς,
he-saw the brother of Tissaphernes with them,
καὶ γιγνώσκειν. δὲ καὶ Ἀλλοὶ Περσῶν
καὶ (that) he-knew (him); and also others 'of (the) Persians

eἰς τριάκοσιον τεκορακίσμενον ἕκτηνο
-to-the-number-of three-hundred equipped-with-arms accom-
λούσουν. Οὕτως ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκελεύνον, εἶ
panied-them. These, when they-were near, requested, if
ἐὶν ἡ τις στρατηγὸς ἡ λοχαγὸς τῶν
there-were either any general or captain of-the
Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγέλωσι
Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-may-deliver-a-message
τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. Μετὰ ταῦτα στρατηγοί
from (the) king. After this (the) generals
τῶν Ἑλληνων μὲν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ
of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orhomeneian, and
Σοφαίνετος Στυμφαλίως, ἐξέλθον φυλαττόμενοι,
Sophaínestos (the) Stymphalian, went-forth guarded

Ἑνορφῶν ὁ Ἀθηναῖος δὲ ξὺν
(and with precaution), Xenophon (the) Athenian (went) also with
αὐτοῖς, ὅπος μάζω τὰ περὶ Προξένου·
them, that he-might-learn — (something) about Proxenus;
(Χειρίσσοφος ὤν ἔτυγχανεν ἀπὸν ἐν τῇ
(Chreasophus — happened being-absent [was absent] at a
κώμῃ ἐν ἄλλῳ ἐπισκέψεσθαι.) Δὲ ἐπεὶ
village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But when
ἐστησαν εἰς ἐπιθυμούν, Ἄρα ποιεῖ τάδε·
they-stood in hearing (distance) Arius spoke thus:
κλέαρχος μὲν, ὃς ἄνδρες Ἑλληνες, ἐπεὶ τε
Clearachus indeed, 0 men Greeks, since he not-only
ἐφάνη ἐπικρατῶν, καὶ λίθων τὰς σπονδάς
'appeared committing-perjury, but also breaking the truce,
ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέφνηε· δὲ
has-received — (his) just-punishment, and died; but
πρόξενος καὶ Μένων, διὶ καθήγειλαν τὴν
Proxenus and Menon, because they denounced the
ἐπιθυμίαν, εἰς ἐν μεγάλη τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
plot, are in great honour. And the king
ἀπαιτεῖ ὑμὰς τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ φησίν εἰς
demands of-you — (your) arms; for says-he | to-be
αὐτοῦ ἐπείπερ ἦσαν Κύρου
of-him [they are his] | because they were of-Cyrus [because they be-
τοῦ δούλου ἔκεινον.
longed to Cyrus] the slave (and subject) of-himself.
Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ
To this the Greeks answer (for
Κλεύκωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένων ἔλεγε). Ὅ | Ἱραία
Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): 0 Arius,
κάκιστε ἄνδράσσων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δοσὶ ὑπὲρ μοῖχον
most-wicked of-men, and the others as-many-as were friends
μὲν οὐκ ὀνομάσαντες νομίζων τοὺς
of-Cyrus, do—'you not respect (neither) (either) (the) gods
οὐτ' ἄνδράσσωσι, οἵτινες ὀλίγοντες νομίζων τοὺς
(nor) (or) men, who having-sworn to-consider —
αὐτοὺς μικροὺς καὶ ἐξέθροις ἤμισιν,
those friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you),
προδότας ὑμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ὄρεωστατῳ
betraying us with Tissaphernes the most-godless
ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ΠΑΝΟΥΡΓΟΤΑΤΩ, ΑΠΟΛΩΛΕΙΧΑΤΕ ΤΕ ΤΟΥΣ
AND ALSO MOST-CRAFTY, YOU-HAVE-DESTROYED NOT-ONLY THE
ΑΥΤΟΥΣ ΑΝΔΡΑΣ, ΟΙΣ ΖΩΝΤΕ, ΚΑΙ ΠΡΟΔΕΔΩ-
VERY-SAME MEN, TO-WHOM YOU-SWORE, BUT-ALSO DESERTING-AND-BE-
ΚΟΤΕΣ ΗΜΑΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΆΛΛΟΥΣ
TRYING US THE OTHER [US, WHO ARE LEFT] HAVE-COME
ΕΦ' ΗΜΑΣ ΞΙΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΕΜΙΟΙΣ; ΔΕ Ο' ΑΡΙΑΙΟΣ
AGAINST US WITH — (OUR) ENEMIES? BUT — ARISIAS
ΕΙΝΕ; ΓΑΡ ΚΛΕΑΡΧΟΣ ΦΑΝΕΡΟΣ ΕΓΕΝΕΤΟ ΠΡΟΣΘΕΝ
SAID: FOR CLEARCHUS EVIDENTLY WAS BEFORE
ΕΠΙΒΟΛΕΙΧΩΝ ΤΙΣΣΑΦΕΡΝΕΙ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ΟΡΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ
PLOTTING-AGAINST TISSAPHERNES AND ALSO ORONTES AND
ΗΜΙΝ ΠΑΣΙΝ ΞΙΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΤΟΥΤΟΙΣ. ΕΠΙ ΤΟΥΤΟΙΣ
AGAINST US ALL WITH — THESE. AFTER THIS
ΕΞΕΝΟΦΩΝ ΕΙΠΕ ΤΑΔΕ; ΚΛΕΑΡΧΟΣ ΜΕΝ ΤΟΙΝΨ, ΕΙ
XENOPHON SPOKE THUS: CLEARCHUS INDEED THEREFORE, IF
ΕΛΝΕ ΤΑΣ ΣΠΟΝΔΑΣ ΠΑΡΑ ΤΟΥΣ ΟΡΧΟΥΣ ΕΧΕΙ
HE HAS-BROKEN THE TRUCE CONTRARY TO — (HIS) OATHS HE HAS
ΤΗΝ ΔΙΚΗΝ; ΓΑΡ ΔΙΚΑΙΟΝ ΑΠΟΛΛΥΩΤΟΙ
— (HIS) JUST-PUNISHMENT; FOR IT-IS JUST TO-DESTROY
ΤΟΥΣ ΕΠΟΡΧΟΥΝΤΑΣ; ΔΕ ΠΡΟΞΕΝΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΜΕΝΟΝ
— (THOSE) PERJURING-THEMSELVES; BUT PROXENUS AND ALSO MENON
ΕΠΕΙΤΕΡ ΕΙΣΙΝ ΜΕΝ ΥΜΕΤΕΡΟΙ ΕΙΕΡΓΕΤΑΙ, ΔΕ ΥΜΕΤΕΡΟΙ
SINCE THEY-ARE INDEED YOUR BENEFACTORS, AND OUR
ΟΥΣ ΣΤΡΑΤΗΓΟΙ, ΠΕΜΨΑΤΕ ΑΥΤΟΥΣ ΔΕΥΡΟ; ΓΑΡ 
GENERALS, SEND THEM HITHER; FOR (IT) IS CLEAR,
ΟΤΙ, ΟΝΤΕΣ ΥΕ ΦΙΛΟΙ ΑΜΦΟΤΕΡΟΙΣ, ΠΕΙΡΑΣΟΥΝΑΙ
THAT, BEING AT-LEAST FRIENDS TO-BOTH (PARTIES), THEY WILL-ENDEAVOUR
ΞΩΜΟΒΟΛΕΙΕΙΝ ΤΑ ΒΕΛΤΙΣΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΗΜΙΝ ΚΑΙ ΗΜΙΝ.
TO-ADVISE THE BEST BOTH FOR-YOU AND FOR-US.
ΠΡΟΣ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΟΙ ΒΑΡΒΑΡΟΙ ΔΙΑΛΕΓΘΕΝΤΕΣ ΠΟΛΙΝ;
AFTER THIS THE BARBARIANS, HAVING-CONVINCED FOR-A-LONG
ΧΡΟΝΟΝ ΆΛΛΟΙΟΙΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΗΣΟΝ ΑΠΟΧΡΙΝΑΜΕΝΟΙ ΟΥΔΕΝ.
TIME WITH-ONE-ANOTHER, DEPARTED, HAVING-ANSWERED NOTHING.
CHAPTER VI.

Oι στρατηγοί μὲν δὴ, οὕτω ληφθέντες,
Τὸν γεγένητο, καὶ πᾶς
ἀνήκησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τὰς
were-taken-up to (the) king, and having — (their)
κεφαλὰς ἀποτυμήσαν τιτελεύτησαν· εἰς μὲν
heads 'cut-off died; one indeed
αὐτῶν Ἐλεάρχος ὁμολογομένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν
of them Clearchus by-general-account of all —
ἐγκλητῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ, δόξας
(those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of him, having-appeared
γενέσθαι ἄνηρ καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς
to-be [seemed to be] (a) man both extremely addicted-to-war
καὶ φιλοπόλεμος.
and fond-of-military (affairs and enterprises). For also truly
καὶ μὲν ἥν πόλεμος τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις
as-long-as indeed there-was war with the Lacedaemonians
πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε.
against the Athenians, he-remained (with the Lacedaemonians).
Δὲ ἔπει εἰρήνη ἐγένετο πείσας τὴν πόλιν
But when peace took-place having-persuaded the city
αὐτοῦ ὡς οἱ Ἐθναϊκοὶ
of-himself [having persuaded Sparta, his city,] that the Thracians
ἀδικοῦσιν τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, καὶ διαπραξάμενος
were-committing-injuries on the Greeks, and having-obtained
ὡς ἑδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἑφόρων
as-well-as he-could from the Ephori (the means to carry
ἐξεπλεῖν ὡς πολεμικόν τοῖς Ἐθναίσιν
on the war) he-casted as about-making-war against the Thracians
ὑπὲρ Ἐπορονήσου καὶ Περίνθου. Δὲ ἔπει οἱ
above (the) Chersonese and Perinthus. But when the
Ἑφόροι πως μεταγνώντες, αὐτῷ ὄντος
Ephori having some-how 'changed-their-minds, he being

...
BOOK II. — CHAPTER VI. 

ηδὴ ἔγω, ἔπειρόντο ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν
now without (their jurisdiction), they endeavoured to turn him

ἐξ ᾿Ισθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οἰκεῖον πειθεται,
"back from (the) Isthmus, there he did not any longer obey,

ἀλλὰ πλεῖον ὥρατο εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον
but sailing (away) he proceeded to (the) Hellespont.

Καὶ ἐκ τοῦτον ἐδανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν τελῶν
And for this he was-Condemned-to-death by the magistrates

ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὡς ἀπεξῆς.
in — Sparta, as being disobedient.

Δὲ δὲ ἦν ἡδή
But being now (an)

φυγάς, ἔρχεται πρὸς Κύρου, καὶ μὲν ὅποιος
exile, he goes to Cyrus, and indeed by what

ἀλγοὺς ἐπεισε Κύρον γέγραση
discourses (and means) he persuaded Cyrus has been-written

ἄλλῃ, δὲ Κύρος δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίων
in another-place; and Cyrus gave him ten-thousand

δαρεικοῦς. Δὲ ὁ λαβὼν οὖν ἐτράπετο
darics. And who taking (this sum) did not turn-himself

ἐπὶ ὑσθοίων, ἀλλὰ συλλέξας στρατευμα ἀπὸ
to idleness, but having-collected (an) army with

tοῦτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμησε τοῖς Θρακίς,
this same — money, he made war with the Thracians,

καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχης, καὶ δὴ ἐφέρε καὶ
and not only conquered (them) in battle, but also took away and

ἡγε ἀπὸ τοῦτον τοῦτος, καὶ διεγένετο
led away from this country all things, and he continued

πολεμῶν, μέχρι Κύρος ἐδείξῃ τοῦ στρατεύματος
fighting, until Cyrus needed — (his) army;

δὲ τότε ἀπῆλθεν ὃς αὐτῷ πολε—
and then departed (to go to him) that (he might be) again making-

μήσων ἐν ἑκένω.
war with him.

Δοξῆ μοι ταῦτα οὖν εἶναι ἑγα
It seems to me (that) these therefore were (the) occupations

φιλοπολέμου, ὡστις ἔγον μὲν ἑχειν
of one fond of war, who when it was allowed-him indeed to have
eirhēnν ἀνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης, αἱρεῖται peace without shame and detriment, he chose
πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἔδόν ραθυμεῖν, to make war, and when it was allowed him to lead a life of indolence,
βοώλεται πονεῖν ὡστε πολεμεῖν, he wished to undergo severe labour so as to be engaged in war (with its
dὲ ἔδον ἔχειν χρήματα toils and adventures), and when it was allowed him to have riches
ἀξίνδυνος, αἱρεῖται πολεμῶν πονεῖν ταῦτα without danger, he chose making war to make these (riches)
μείονα. δὲ ἔξεινος ἤδελε δαπανῶν εἰς πόλεμον less. But he desired to spend his money in war
ὡσπερ eis παιδικὰ ἢ eis τινὰ (he might have spent it) on (a) beloved object, or on any
ἀλλην ἵδινην ὁτιω μὲν ἦν φιλοπόλεμος. other pleasure; so 'fond indeed was he'
of war.
Δὲ αὐ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικὸς ταύτῃ, ὅτι And again he appeared to be fitted for war in this, that
tε ἦν φιλοκινδυνος, καὶ ἀγων ἐπὶ τοὺς not only he was fond of danger, but also marching against the
πολεμίους,
enemy,
[but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],
καὶ ἑμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς, καὶ εἰ̇ν τοῖς δεινοῖς both by day and night, and in danger (was)
φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες prudent and self possessed, as (those) being present (with him)
pανταχοῦ πάντες ὁμολόγουν. Καὶ δ' ἐλεγέτο in any place all confessed. And also he was said
eἰναι ἀρχικὸς, ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοὺ to be qualified for commanding in as much as he could be from —
tοιοῦτον τρότου, οἰνον κάθεινος εἶχεν. Γὰρ such (a) disposition, as even he had. For
μὲν ἦν ἰκανός, ὡς καὶ τις ἄλλος, φροντιζειν, indeed he was capable (more) than even any other, to take care,
ὅπως ἦ στρατία ἐξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτοῦ, καὶ how the army would have provisions for itself and
παρασκευάζειν ταύτα· δὲ καὶ ἰκανὸς ἐμπο-
το-procure the-same; and also (he was) capable to-im-
ήσαε τοῖς παρούσιν, ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἶναι πειράτειν.
press on — (those) present, that Clearchus was to-be-obeyed.
Δὲ τούτο ἐποίη ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι χαλεπὸς·
And this he-effected from — (that) to-be severe;

[This he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at he-was
στυγνός, καὶ τῇ φωνῇ πραξὶς ἔτε
gloomy-and- stern, and in — (his) voice harsh; he not-only
ἀει ἐκόλαξέ ἐσχαρός, καὶ ἐνίστη ὄργῆ, ὡς
always punished severely, but also sometimes in anger, so (that)
καὶ ἐν ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ ὅ ἐκόλαξ
even he sometimes repented himself. And also he-punished

Γνῶμη· γὰρ ἀγεῖτο ἀχολᾶστον
according-to-rule (or on principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined
στρατεύματος εἶναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. Ἀλλὰ καὶ
army to-be (of) no use. But even
ἐφασαν αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δὲ τὸν
they-said (that) he (used) to-say, that it-becomes the
στρατιώτην φοβείσθαι τὸν ἀρχοντα μᾶλλον
soldier to-fear — (his) commander more
ἡ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλει ἡ φυλάξειν
that the enemy, if he would either keep
φυλακὰς, ἡ ἀφεξεσθαί φίλων, ἡ
guard well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or
λέναι ἀπροφασιστῶς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. Μὲν
go without-hesitation against the enemy. Indeed
οὖν ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
therefore in dangerous-and-frightful-circumstances (the soldiers)

σφόδρα ἡθελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ
were exceedingly willing to-listen-to (and obey) him, and
οἱ στρατιώται οἱ γροῦντο ἄλλον.
the soldiers did not wish-for another (commander);

γὰρ καὶ ἐφασαν τότε τὸ στρυγμὸν ἐν τοῖς
for indeed they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the
προσώπος α'τού φαίνεσθαι φαινόμενον, καὶ
countenance of-him appeared cheerful-and-animated, and
to ἀλεπόν ἔδοξει εἶναι ἐφρομένην πρὸς—(his)
severity seemed to-be what-was-strong-in-courage against
τοὺς πολεμίους ὡστε εἰραίνετο
the enemy so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative of)
σωτήριον, καὶ οἷκέτι ἀλεπόν. Δ' ὤτε
saving-and-protecting, and no-longer severe. But when
γενοίητο ἐξω τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ ἔξειν
they were out-of—danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them
ἀπείναυ πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομένους
to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-commanded, [as
πολλοὶ ἀπελευθοῦν αὐτόν· γὰρ εἰρεθεν οὐχ
soldiers], many left him; for he-had no
τὸ ἐπιχαρι, ἂλλ' ἦν ἄεὶ ἀλεπός
agreeableness (or manners), but he was always stern
καὶ ὠμός ὡστε οἱ στρατιώται διέξειντο πρὸς
and unfeeling; so-that the soldiers were-affected towards
αὐτόν ὡστε παιδες πρὸς διδασκαλον. Καὶ
him as boys towards (their) teacher. And
γὰρ οὖν οὐδὲποτε εἶρεθεν ἐπομένους
therefore 'he never 'had (those) following (him)
φιλία καὶ μὲν εὐνοία. δὲ
through-friendship (or) even indeed being-well-disposed-towards-him; but
οὕτως ἴτησαγμένοι ὑπὸ πόλεως,
those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the) state,
ἡ κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεισδάκτου, ἡ τινὶ ἄλλῃ
or being-compelled by — want, or any other
ἀνάγκη παρείσχαν αὐτῷ ἐχρηστὸ
necessity, might-be-with him, he-made-use-of (as) 'being
σφόδρα πεισμένοις. δὲ ἐπεὶ ἥραντο νικᾶν
extremely 'obedient. And when they-began-to-conquer
ἐκ καὶ αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἢ ζην ἦν τὰ πολεμίνα
under him the enemy | now were the doings
μεγάλα τοὺς στρατιωτὰς
great | the opportunities were then great] 'for the
'soldiers
BOOK II.—CHAPTER VI.

\[\text{σὺν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους: γὰρ τὸ τὸ ἔχειν with him to-be useful-and-good; for not-only the to-have}
\]
\[\text{θαρραλέως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν, confidently against the enemy was-present (to them),}
\]

[for they had a perfect feeling of confidence, in their minds, against the]
\[\text{kai τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν enemy], but-also [the to-fear [the fear of] punishment}
\]
\[\text{παρ' ἐκείνου ἐποιεῖ αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους. Toioiōs from him made them well-disciplined. Such}
\]
\[\text{μὲν δὴ ἦν ἄρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο οὐκ ἐδέλειν truly — was-he commanding; but he-was-said not to-wish}
\]
\[\text{μάλα ἄρχεσθαι ἄλλων. Δὲ ἦν, ὅτε ἐτέ-much to-be-commanded by-others. And he-was, when he-}
\]
\[\text{λεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντάχοντα ἐτη. died, about — fifty (years of) age.}
\]

Πρὸξενὸς δὲ ὁ Βοιωτιος δὲν εἴδους μὲν

Proxenus indeed the Boeotian (when) being just indeed (only a)

μειράκιον, ἐπεδύμει γενέσθαι ἄνηρ ἰκανός youth, desired to-become (a) man capable

πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν to-perform — great-thing; and through this-same —

ἐπιθυμίαν ἐδοξεὶ ἄργυρων Γοργία τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. desire he-gave money to-Gorgias the Leontian

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκεῖνο,

(for instruction). When indeed he-had-been-with him (some time),

νομίζοσας εἶναι ἦδη ἰκανὸς καὶ ἄρχειν, having-thought (himself) to-be now qualified both to-command,

καὶ ὅν φίλος τοῖς πρῶτοι and, being (a) friend to-the first (or chief men, that) he—might

μὴ ἐπιτάσσειν εὐεργετῶν, ἥδεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς not 'be-inferior in-conferring-benefits, he—went on these-same —

πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ καὶ ἔτεω κτήσεσθαι doings (expeditions) with Cyrus; and thought to-acquire

ἐκ τοῦτων μέγα ὁνομα, καὶ μεγάλην δύναμιν, from this (a) great name, and great power,
καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. Δ' ἐπιθυμῶν τοσοῦτον
and much money. But desiring these-same (things)
σφόδρα, καὶ αὖ εἰχεν ἐνδηλοῦν, ὅτι
vehemently, he also on-the-other-hand 'had (this) evident, that 'he
ἀν δέλοι κτάσθαι οὐδὲν τούτων μετὰ ἀδικίας,
might 'wish to-acquire nothing of-these (things) by unjust-means,
ἀλλὰ ἦτο τούτων δεῖν τιγχάνειν σιν
but he-thought (that) such-things ought to-be-acquired by
τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ,
just and honourable (means), but without these
μὴ. 'Ην δὲ δυνατὸς ἀρχεῖν καλῶν μὲν
not (at all). He-was indeed competent to-command orderly —
καὶ ἀγαθῶν: μεντοὶ-οἱ ἰκανὸς ἐμποιήσαι τοῖς
and good (men); however not capable to-impress the
στρατιῶτας ἐαυτῷ οὐτ' αἰδὸ οὔτε
soldiers of-himself (neither) (either) with-respect (nor) (or)
φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ἡξιωνετῶ τοῖς
fear, but he-was even more 'in-awe (of) — (his)
στρατιῶτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχήμενοι
soldiers, than those 'under (his) 'command (were of)
ἐκεῖνον: καὶ ἢν φανερὸς μᾶλλον φοβούμενος
and he-was evidently more 'fearing
τὸ ἀπεχθανεῖται τοῖς στρατιῶτασι,
[to the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers, [the hatred
 objectForKey] of his soldiers], | than the soldiers the to-disobey him
Δὲ ἦτο ἀρχεῖν
[than his soldiers were to disobey him]. And he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient
πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν καὶ δοξεῖν εἶναι ἐπαυεῖν
for — commanding, and to-seem to-be (so) to-praise
μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ ἐπαυεῖν
indeed — (him) acting well, but not to-praise
τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν μὲν τὸν
(him) acting-improperly. Therefore indeed of — (those)
οὑντων οὐ μὲν καλοὶ τε κἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν
with-him — (such) indeed (as were) orderly and also-good were
εύνωι αὐτῶ, δὲ οἱ ἄδικοι ἐπεβουλευν
attached to-him, but — (such as were) wicked plotted-against (him)
ὅς ὄντι εἰμεταχειρίστω. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέθνησεν ἦν
as being easily-managed. And when he-died he-was
ὅς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν.
about thirty years (of age).

Δὲ Μενών ὁ Θεσσαλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν ἐπιθυμοῦν
But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed desiring
ισχυρὸς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμοῦν ἄρχειν ὅταν
vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command so-that
λαμβάνω τελείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμοῦν τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα
he-might-take more, and desiring to-be-honoured in-order-that
περδαίνω τελείω· ἔθουλετο τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος
he-might-gain more; he-wished — most-of-all to-be (a) friend
tοῦς δυναμενοις, ἵνα ἄδικων μὴ
to-the powerful, in-order-that acting-unjustly | he-might not
διδοῖν δίκην.
'd give justice [he might not be punished]. | Towards indeed the
κατεργάζομαι ὅν ἐπιθυμοῖ, ὥστε
to-accomplish [for accomplishing] of-what he-might-desire, he-thought
συντομοτάτην ὅδον εἶναι τε διὰ τοῦ ἐπιθυμεῖν,
the-shortest way to-be not-only through | the to-perjure,
καὶ ψεύδομαι καὶ ἐξαποτάν
[perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood] and | to-deceive [deceit];
ὅ ἐνόμισε τὸ ἀπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἶναι τὸ
but he-considered — sincerity and — truth to-be the
αὐτὸ τῶ ὑλικῶ. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερὸς στέργων
same with — folly. And indeed he-was evidently having-seduction
οὐδένα, ὅτω δὲ φαίνετε εἶναι φίλος,
to-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed to-be (a) friend, against-this-one
ὁ γίγνετο ἐνδήλος ἐπιθουλεύων.
he-was evident (as) plotting (mischief). And indeed
κατεγέλαι οὐδενὸς πολεμοῦ, δὲ ἀεὶ διελέγετο
he-derided no enemy, but 'he always 'conversed
τῶν πάντων συνόντων ὡς κατα-
— with-all (those) | being-about-him [his associates] as-if ridi-
γελών. Καὶ μὲν τοὺς κτήματα τῶν
culing (them). And indeed against-the property of — (his)
πολεμίων oίχ ἐπεθούλεμεν, γὰρ ἦτο
enemies he-formed no 'designs, for he-thought (it)
eἶναι χαλεπῶν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν φυλα-
to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those) guard-
tοµέων; δὲ μόνος ἦτο εἰδεναι ὅν
ing (lit); but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it) being
κόστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφυλακτα.
easy to-take the unguarded [but he thought that
he alone knew that it was easy to take the unguarded property of friends].
Καὶ ὅσοις μὲν αἰσθανότο ἐπιφόροις καὶ ἄδικοις
And as-many-as indeed he-might-perceive perfused and unjust
ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εἰ ἐπίλυσινον,
he-feared as well armed (against him), but the
δὲ τοῖς ὃς ἦτοι καὶ ἁγιοίς ἀληθείαν ἐπιφάνετο
he alone as weak-persons. And as any-one prides-himself on
θεοσθείαι, καὶ ἁληθείαι, καὶ δικαιότητι, οὕτω
religion, and truth, and justice, so
Μένων ἡγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἔχασταιν, τῷ
Menon prided-himself to-be-able — to-deceive,
πλάσασθαι θειδῆ, τῷ διαγελᾶν φίλους· δὲ
to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends; and (that)
tὸν μὴ πανούργον
—he who was) not ready-to-do-any-thing (of a villainous nature for his
ὅτι ἐνομίζειν εἶναι τῶν ἰππα-
own advantage) he always 'considered to-be of-the un-
deύτων. Καὶ πάρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει
and ignorant). And with whom indeed he-endeavoured
πρωτεύειν
to-have-the-first-place 'in (their) friendship, these-same he-thought
κτῆσασθαι διαβαλλων τοὺς
it-to-become-him to-gain-over (through) plotting-against —
BOOK II. — CHAPTER VI. 167

πρότους. Δὲ τὸ παρέ-
(those who had been) first (in their favour). And | the
χεσθαί τοῖς στρατιώτασ πεισδένους
(soldiers obedient
keep [the keeping of] — (his)
ἐμπρανάτο ἐκ τοῦ συναδικείν αὐτοῖς.
he effected from the to-do-wrong with-them [by participating
in their evil deeds]. Also he claimed to be honoured and
courted,
ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὃτι ἄν δύνατο καὶ ἐδειλοῦ
showing that he might be-able and might-wish
ἀδικεῖν πλείστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν. εὐεργεσίαν,
to-injure the-most. And he called it (a) favour
ὅποτε τις ἀφίστατο αὐτῷ, ὅτι χρώ-
(on his part), when any one deserted him, that (while) making-
μενὸς αὐτῷ ὀικὸς ἀπόλεσεν αὐτῶν.
use of him he did not destroy him.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ
And indeed truly (were) it allowed (to speak) respecting the
ἀφανῆ αὐτοῦ ἂνδειςθαί, δὲ ἀ
private (affairs) of him one might say what is not true, but what
πάντες ἵσαν ἐστὶ τὰδ'. Ὡν ἐτὶ ἠραῖος
all know is this. Being yet in the prime of youth
διερράγετο παρὰ Ἀριστιππῷ μὲν στρατηγεῖν
he obtained from Aristippus to command (of)
τῶν ξένων. δὲ ἐγενέστο, ὅπερ ἦτι ἠραῖος,
the foreign mercenaries; and he became, being yet in the bloom of youth,
oἰσχεῖστατος Ἀριάω, ὅτι βαρβάρῳ, ὅτι
most intimate with Ariesus, he being (a) barbarian, for he

ξέτο καλοῖς μειραχίοις. δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε
(having one) 'delighted in beautiful youths; and he himself had
Θαρύπαν παρικά, ἀγένειος ὅ
Tharypas (a) favourite, (a) beardless youth — (having one)
γενεώστα. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποδύνησ-
having a beard. But (his) fellow officers being put-
κόντων, ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξύν
to death, because they fought against (the) king with
Κύρως πεποιηκός ταίτα ὁικ.querySelectorAll .
Cyrus (though) he-having-done the-same ὑπὸ ὄικασ did not μὴν "die; μὴν "die; μὴν "die;

δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
but after the death of the other generals
timorφθηκε τὸ βασιλέως ὀμόβλεψ ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ having-been punished by (the) king he-died, not ὁσπερ κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
like Clearchus, and the other generals, "having τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποφεύγεντες, (ὁσπερ δοξεῖ εἶναι — (their) heads cut-off, (which seems to be
tάχιστος θάνατος,) ἄλλα ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς (the) speediest death,) but living having-been-tortured
evianthōn ὡς πονηρός, λέγεται (during a) year as (a) malefactor, he-is-said "to (have)
tυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς. met — (with his) end.

Δὲ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρχάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαῖος,
But Agias the Arcadian, and Socrates the Achean,
καὶ τοῦτω ἀπεθανεῖτην. Δὲ οὔτ' οὐδεὶς
also these-two died. But neither 'did (no-one) (any-one)
κατεγέλα τούτων ὡς παρὰν ἐν πολέμῳ, οὔτ' 'deride these as cowards in battle, or
ἐμέμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δὲ ἄμφω reproached them (in regard) to friendship. And both ἤστην ἄμφι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη were about five and thirty — years ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.
from (their) birth.
BOOK III. — CHAPTER I.  

CHAPTER I.

"Οσα μὲν δὴ, οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπαξαν, ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς μάχης, ἀναβάσει τῆς μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς στοιχείας τῆς μάχης, (their upward-march — with Cyrus until the battle), καὶ διὰ ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησε, τῶν καὶ τῶν προσδεχόμενων τῷ πρὸ πρὸς τὸν λόγον τοῦ τοῦ πρὸς τὸν λόγον τοῦ καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιώτων ἕττον λογίσατο, παρέχοντας συνειλημμένοις ἔθνεσιν, οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔθνες. ἡμᾶς ὑπολόγισσαν, οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔθνες ὅταν ἦσαν ἐπὶ τάς θύρας τῆς τῶν συνεπόμενων αὐτοῖς ἔσχατη πολλά καὶ ἑξῆς (around) ἐπὶ τάς τῆς δή ἐν πολλῇ ἄφορῳ, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, διότι truly in much perplexity, reflecting indeed, that ἦσαν ἐπὶ τάς θύρας τῆς βασιλείας, δὲ κύκλῳ they were at the gates of (the) king, and in (a) circle ἀντίθετοι ἔσχατη πολλά καὶ ἑξῆς (around) them there were everywhere (a great) many both nations καὶ πόλεις πολέμων, δὲ οὕτως ἦσαν ἕμελλεν καὶ πόλεις πολέμων, δὲ οὕτως ἦσαν ἕμελλεν and towns hostile (to them), and no-one hereafter would παρέξειν ἄγοραν, δὲ ἀπείρον τῆς προδοτικῆς market (for them), and they were distant from — Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἦ μύρια στάδια, δ' Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and
there was no guide (for) the road, and impassable rivers intervened in (the) midst of — (their) road homeward, and also the barbarians having come-up with Cyrus had abandoned them, and they were left alone, indeed εὑροντες οἱ δενάδενα ἕπτεα σύμμαχον — (nor indeed) (and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary,

οὕτως ἦν εὐθηλον, ὅτι ναῦκτες 

so that it was very evident, that defeating (the enemy) they would indeed 'kill no-one, but they being-defeated,

οὐδές 

Indeed 

ὅν λειφθείη. "Εννοούμενον not-one (of their number) would be left (alive). Reflecting ταῦτα, καὶ εὑροντες ἔσυμος, on these (things), and having (themselves) dejectedly, and being disheartened, few indeed of them tasted food εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν, δὲ ὄλιγον ἀνέκαυσαν — (for) — (that) evening, and few kindled (a)

πῦρ, δὲ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἤλθον ἐπὶ τὰ fire, and many 'did not go to the (place of)

ὄπλα ταῦτα τὴν νίκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαύουντο arms (during) that same — night, and they went to rest ὅπου εὑροτος ἐνύχασεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι κα

where each happened (to be), not being able to:

θεύδειν ὑπὸ λίπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων,
sleep for sorrow and (the) desire (for) country,

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παῖδων, οὐς ἐνύμιζον οὐπότι

parents, wives, children, whom they thought never

ὑπέστην ἐτο. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες to see more. Thus indeed — disposed 'they all

ἀνεπαύουντο.
'Ἡν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τῆς Ἐνοφόνικ τῆς Ἐνοφόνικ
There was — in the army a certain Xenophon (as)

Ἀνθρακίος, ὡς ἂν οὖν στρατηγὸς οὖν Λο-
Athenian, who being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-
χαγός, οὖν στρατιώτης, συμπελλών, the
tain, nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the)

ἄλλα Πρόξενος μετεπέμψα τὸν αὐτὸν
expedition, but Proxenus sent for him

οἰκοδέ, ὡς ἄρχαῖος ξένος. δὲ ἐπισχυῖτο
from home, he being (an) old guest-friend; and he promised

αὐτῷ, ὁ Ἐλείσιος, ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον Κῦρῳ,
him, if he should come, to make him (a) friend to Cyrus,

διὰ αὐτὸς ἐφη νομίζειν πρεστῆς οὖν whom he said (that) he considered better to himself (than)

τῆς πατρίδος. ὁ Ἐνοφόνικς μέντοι ἀναγνώριος
— (his) country. — Xenophon indeed having-read

τὴν ἐκστολήν, ἀνακοινοῦσα Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-
the letter, consults Socrates the Athen-

νομισάω περὶ τῆς πορείας. Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἐποιο-
about the journey. And — Socrates having-

teúças μὴ οἷον ἐπαιτίον τι feared lest — 'they (might) - discriminate (him) in-some (manner)

πρὸς τῆς πόλεως εἰς γενέσθαι φίλον with — (his) government if he were to-become (a) friend

Κῦρῳ, ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἐδόθη προσφύγοις συμπελεμῆσαι to-Cyrus, because — Cyrus seemed zealously to-have-assisted

τῶν Ῥαχεδομονίων ἔτι τὰς Ἀθηναίους, συμβουλεύει the Lacedaemonians against the Athenians, he advised

τῷ Ενοφόνικῳ, ἔλθοντα εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοι-
— Xenophon, (that) having-gone to Delphi, to-con-

νόσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Δὲ ὁ Ενοφόνικι
suit the gods about the journey. And — Xenophon

ἔλθον εὐφρενῶς τῶν Ἀπόλλων, τίνι θεῶν going inquired-of — Apollo, to which 'of (the) gods

θύειν καὶ εὐχόμενος
[and he should sacrifice and pray] (that) 'he
καὶ ἅθανὼ σειστα ἂν, ἰην might 'go the road, [that he might perform the journey], which ἐπινοεῖ, κάλλιστα καὶ ἁριστα, καὶ πράξας he-intends, most-honourably and most-successfully, and having-performed χαλῶς σωθεὶν. Kāi (it) successfully | might-be-saved [might return in safety]. And ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἀνείλεν αὐτῷ θεῖν — Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him] to-sacrifice 'to (the) θεοῖς οίς ἔδει. 'Εστι δὲ γὰρ πάλιν, gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone back λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. Δ' (to Athens), he-tells the oracle to — Socrates. And ὁ ἀκούσας ζήτατο αὐτῷ, ὅτι οὐ πρὸς τοὺς who hearing (it) blamed him, that he-did not first ὑπὼν τοῦτο, πῶς ἔλη πάνω αὐτῷ πορεύοντας inquire this, whether it-were better for him to-go-forth ἢ μὲν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς πρίνας εἰς ἅπαν ἵπτεν, or to-remain, but himself having-decided | (that) it-is-to-be-gone, ἐπινδάνει τοῦτον ἦν αὖν [that he would go], he-inquired this how 'he might πορεύοιν κάλλιστα. Ἐστι μὲντοι, ἐκεί. proceed to-the-best-advantage. Since however, said-he, ἢ ποιοῦν ὑπὸ σεις, καὶ ποιεῖν ταῦτα you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do these (things) ὡς ὁ θέος ἐκεῖνος. Ὁ Χερσοφῶν μὲν δέ as the god directed (you). — Xenophon indeed — oὐτω, θυατερος oīς ὁ θεός ἀνείλεν, therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods) that the god told-him-in-reply, ἐξέπληθα, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Προξένου καὶ Κύρου set-sail, and finds Proxenus and Cyrus ἐν Σάρδει, ἣτις μέλλοντας ὀρμάν τὴν ὀδὸν in Sardis, 'being now 'about starting-on-the-way ἀνω, καὶ συνεται ἡ Κύρῳ. Δὲ τοῦ Προξένου upward, and he-was-presented to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus προσημουσάνον, καὶ ὁ Κύρος συμπροσβέσθαι αὐτῶν being-very-desirous, and — Cyrus joined-in-the-desire for-him
BOOK III. — CHAPTER I.

Αργον. Ἔκεῖ ἦτο, ἔπειταν τάχιοτα ἢ στρατεύετο to remain. And he-said that, as soon as the expedition

αὔετο εὖθεῖς ἀποπλημαίνειν αὐτόν.

may-be-ended (that) he-1 would directly send him back.

Debe ἐλέγετο οἱ στόλος εἶναι εἰς

It also was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)

Πισίδας.

Pisidians.

Μεν δὲ ἐστρατεύετο σωμας ἐξαματυνθέης

He indeed truly joined the-expedition being thus deceived,

οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γὰρ οὐ ἦδεν τὴν
not by Proxenus (for he-1 did not know, (that) the

δριμὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ ἄλλος
movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any) other

οἷδεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου) ἐπει
(one) (one) of the Greeks except Clearchus; when

μεντο θελόντων εἰς Κυκλιάν, ἔδοξει ἦδη εἶναι
however they-had-gone to Cilicia, it seemed now to-be

σαφῆς πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἰς ἐπὶ βασιλέα
manifest to-all, that the expedition was against (the) king:

Debe φοβοῦμενοι τὴν ὅδον, καὶ ἤμιστοι
But fearing the (length of the) road, and likewise

ἀχώντες τοις πολλοὶ δι’
unwilling (to proceed farther, yet) the greater-part (of them) through

αἰσχύνῃ καὶ ἄλλῳ πάντας ἄλλῳ καὶ Κύρου συνῆ-
shame both (as respects) one-another and Cyrus accom-

κολάθεσαν καὶ εἰς ὅν Χενοφόν ἦν,
accompanied (him); and one of whom Xenophon was.

Debe ἔπει ἦν ἀπορία,
But when (all) was perplexity-and-anxiety, he was-troubled-and-grieved

μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο
indeed with the rest, and he-1 was not able

καὶ θειόθεν ἐδράξειν μικρὸν ὑπὸν εἶδον
to-sleep; but having-got (a) little sleep | he-saw (a)

ἐναρ. Ἐδοξεν αὐτῶ, βροντῆς
vision [he had a dream]. It seemed to-him, (a) thunder (storm)
γενομένης, οικητὸς πεσείν εἰς τὴν θέρας, having-occurred, (that a) thunder-bolt fell on — (his) pa-
tρώγαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τοῦ ἡμι-
termal house, and from this it was all lighted-
πεσαί. Δὲ περίφοδος εἴδης ἁνευρέσθη, καὶ ά
up. And frightened 'he immediately 'awoke, and 
tὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔχρισεν πὴ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ἄν ἐν 
the dream indeed he-judged somewhat favourable, (because being in 
πῶνος καὶ κυνόνοις, ἐβοή ἰδείν μέγα 
pawos and wolves, he-heard he-see a great 
trouble and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great 
φῶς ἐκ Δίως.' δὲ καὶ πὴ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι 
light from Jupiter); but also he was somewhat alarmed (because 
tὸ ὄναρ ἐδόξασε αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Δίως μὲν 
the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was) indeed 
βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐδόξασε λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ, 
king, and the fire seemed to-shine all-around, (a) 
μὴ οὗ δύνατο ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας 
est he should not be able to-depart from the territory 
τῆς βασιλείας, ἀλλὰ εἰργοῦτο πάντοτεν ὑπὸ 
of the king, but should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by 
tινῶν ἀπορῶν. 
some (great) difficulties.

'Ὅποιόν τι ἐστι μὲντοι ἰδείν τὸ τοιοῦτον 
What-kind-of thing it is indeed to-see — such (a) 
· ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων 
dream, it is-allowed to-perceive from the (things) occurring 
μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Eἰδής 
metà to oñar. For it-happened thus. Indeed 
ἀπειδὴ ἁνευρέσθη ἐννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπεύτητε 
after he was-awakened (thus) thought first indeed occurs 
αὐτῷ τί κατάχειμα; ἢ νυὲ δὲ προβαίνει· 
to-him: why am-l-lying-down? the night indeed is-passing-away; 
δὲ ἂμα τὴν θήμερα εἶει 
an other (break of) day (it is) probable (that) 
τοῦ γοῦ πολέμιοις ἔζειν. Εἴ δὲ γενομένη 
the enemy will-come. If indeed we-shall-get
BOOK III.—CHAPTER I. 177.

αδι σπουδαὶ ἦσαν οὕσωτε ἐπαινοῦμεν μὲν the truce was (in existence) never ceased —
οἰκτείρων ἦμας, δὲ μακαρίων βασιλέα καὶ pitying ourselves, but considering-as-happy (the) king and
τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαδεώμενος μὲν ὄσιν — (those) with him, having-gone-through indeed so-great (a)
χῶραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἶνον ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ τὰ territory of-them, and what they-might-have, as indeed the
ἀφίζοντα ἐπιτήδεια, οὕσως δὲ θεράποντος,
epious provisions, so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants, δὲ ὅσα πλὴν, δὲ κρυσῶν, δὲ and how-great (a number of) cattle, and (quantity of) gold, and (of)
ἐσθήτα. δὲ αὐτῷ ὁπότε ἐν εὐκομὴν τὰ raiments. But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-the
τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετείχ ἦμαν (condition) of-the soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us
μὲν οὐδενὸς πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἰ indeed of-nothing of-all — (these) good (things), —
μὴ προφαίμεδα, δὲ ῔δειν ὀλίγους unless we-bought (them), and (when that) I-knew (only) few
ἐχοντας ἐτι οἴνου ἐνομοῦμεθα, δὲ (of us) having yet wherewith we-might-buy, and (that our)
ὀρχους ἔδει κατέχοντας ἦμας πορίζοντοι τὰ oaths now restraining us to-procure —
ἐπιτήδεια ἀλλος ποις ἢ ὀνομημένοις· σὺν provisions (in) any-other manner than buying; therefore
λογιζόμενους ταῦτα, ἐνοπλοὶ ἐφοδοῦμεν τὰς considering these (things), 'I sometimes feared the
τρωκαὶ μᾶλλον ὁ νῦν τῶν πόλεμον. truce more than (I) now (do) the war.
'Επει μεντοί ἐκείνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπουδας, δοξεῖ Since however they have-broken the truce, it-seems
μοι καὶ ὧν ὑς ἐκείνων καὶ ὁ ἰμετέρα to-me (that) both the insolence-of-themselves and — our
ὑποψία λέλυσαν. Γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ xείτας mistrust is-ended. | For in (the) middle [for between us] lie
now these — good-things (I have mentioned), (as) prizes,

whoever of us may be the better men; and

the gods are judges of the contest, who, (as is) — proper and just,

will be with us. For indeed these (our enemies)

have committed perjury against them (the gods); and we seeing

many good things, firmly abstained from them, on account of — (our) oath (to) the gods; so that it seems

to me (that) it has been allowed us to go to the contest with

much greater confidence than these. And moreover

we have better able (than) theirs to bear —

cold, and heat, and labour; and also we have

with (the help of) the gods better minds; and

— (these) men (being) both more vulnerable and exposed,

to death (than) we (are) if the gods, as — before,

should grant us victory. But therefore others even

meditate on these same (things), for (the sake) of the

gods, lest we not wait (for) others to come to

and exhorting (us) to — (these) most noble deeds.
ΤΑΪΤΑ ΜΈΝ Ό ΕΛΕΞΕ. ΔΈ ΟΙ ΛΟΧΑΓΟΙ.

These (things) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; but the captains, hearing these (things), all requested (him)

ΦΩΝῌ ΒΟΙΩΤΙΔΩΝ. ΘΌΝΤΟΣ ΕΠΕΝ,
in — (his) speech resembling a Boeotian; and this (person) said,

ὅτι ΦΙΛΑΡΟΙΝ, ὅς ΛΕΓΕΙ ἈΝ ΤΥΧΕΙΝ
that he-speaks-nonsense, who says (that) he might obtain

σωτηρίας ἄλλος πως, ἦ πείσας
safety by-any-other means, than having-persuaded (the)

ΒΑΣΙΛέ, ΕΙ ΔΥΝΑΤΟ ΚΑΙ ἈΜΑ ἩΡΧΕΤΟ
king, if he could, (to grant it); and at-the-same-time he began

ΛΕΓΕΙΝ ΤᾲΣ ἈΠΟΡΙΑΣ. ΧΕΝΟΦΩΝ ΜΕΝΤΟΙ ὩΠΟ-
talk (of) the difficulties. Xenophon however having-

ΛΑΒΌΝ ΜΕΤΑΞ' ΕΛΕΞΕΝ ὙΣ. ΤΩ ΘΑΥ-
taken-him-up in-the-midst (of his speech) spoke thus: O most-

ΤΩΝ ΛΟΧΑΓΩΝ, ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΣΤΡΑΤΗΓΩΝ
and bravest of-the captains, and of-the commanders

ΔΕ ΧΩΒ, ΕΙ ΜΈΝ ΊΜΕΙΣ
and indeed you

ΘΕΙΟΜΑΣ ΘΕΙΟΜΑΣ ΕΠΙ ΤΑΪΤΑ,
will give-the-start to these (things), am-willing

ἘΨΕΙΔΑΙ ΙΜΩΝ. Θ EI ΊΜΕΙΣ ΤΆΤΤΕΤΕ ΜΕ ΊΜΕΙΔΑΙ,
to-follow you; but if you appoint me to lead,

ΟΥΔΕΝ ΠΡΟΦΑΣΙΟΜΑΙ ΤῈΝ ἩΛΕΙΑΝ, ΑΛΛᾳ
even think-myself to be-of-sufficient-age to keep-off — harm from

ΕΜΑΝΤΟΥ.

myself.
μασώτατε ἄνδρας, σὺ δὲ γε οἱδὲ ὁρῶν γυνῶ-
men, you indeed — neither seeing under-
σχεις, οἴδε ἄνθρωπον μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἡσύχα
stand, nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you-were
ἐν ταύτῃ τούτως ὅτε βασιλεὺς,
in the-same (place) with-these (here present), when (the)
king,
ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἀπέθανε, ἀεὶ μέγα φρονήσας ἔπι
after Cyrus died, ‘being greatly ‘elevated-in-mind at
τούτῳ, πέμπον ἐκέλευε τα ὡπλα παραδίδοναι.
this, sending he-ordered the arms to-be-given-up.
Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἴμειος οὐ παραδόθητες, ἀλλὰ ἐξοπλισθήσειν,
But when we not giving-them-up, but
being-armed,
ἐξοκαυτεῖτε παρασκευήθησαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὖν
going-forth encamped-opposite him, what did-he not
ἐποίησαι, πέμπον πρόσθετας, καὶ αἰτῶν σπουδᾶς,
‘do, sending ambassadors, and requesting (a)
truce,
καὶ παρέχων τα ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε ἐτυχεὶν σπουδῶν;
and supplying the provisions, until he-obtained (a)
truce?
Δ’ ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ,
And when on-the-other-hand the generals and
καὶ ἐξερευνηθέντος, ἡλθον εἰς λόγους
captains, ‘he made-investigation, they came to
as you indeed (now) advise, went to (a) conference
αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὄπλων, πιστεύσαντες ταῖς
with-them without (their) arms, trusting to-the
σπουδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἑκεῖνοι παρέμενοι, κεντοῦμενοι,
truce, ‘are not now they ‘beaten, goaded,
ἰδοῦμενοι, οἴδε δύνασθαι οἱ γνήμους ἀποδεικνύοντες,
insulted, not able the wretched-men to-die,
καὶ οἷς μᾶλθ᾽ ἐρωτεῖτε τούτοις; Πάντα δὲ σὺ
and I-think greatly desiring it? · All which you
εἰδὸς φής τούς μὲν κελεύοντας
having-known (yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (us)
ἀμυνοῦμαι φλισαῖν, δὲ κελεύεις ἰόντας
to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (us) going
πάλιν πείθειν; ἔμοι δὲ, δό ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ
again to-try-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men, it-seems
BOOK III. — CHAPTER I.

μήτε πρὸς ἑαυτόν τὸν ἀνδρόπον

(that we ought) neither to-admit this — man
eἰς ταῦτα ἡμῖν αὑτοῖς, τε ἀφελομένοις

into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-from (him)
tὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναδέντας σκέψῃ, χρῆσθαι

— (his) captaincy (and) lying-on (him) baggage, use-him
ὡς τοιοῦτω. Γὰρ ὦτὸς παταισχύνει καὶ τὴν

as such. For this-man disgraces both — (his)
pατρίδα, καὶ πᾶσαν τήν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι ὦν Ἑλλην,

country, and all — Greece, that being (a) Greek,
ἐστι τοιοῦτος.

he-is such (a character).

Ἐντεῦθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ἵππολαθὼν

Thenoe Agasias (the) Stymphalian having-taken-up
ἐἶπεν. Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε ουδὲν παν-

(the discourse) said: But to-this-man at-least nothing at-
τάσας προσέκει οὕτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὕτε τῆς

all belongs either of — Boeotia, or of —
Ἑλλάδος, ἐπει ἐγὼ εἰδὼν τὰ ὅτα

Greece, since I perceived (that) — (his) ears
τετρυπημένων ὡς ὁπερ Λυδῶν. Καὶ εἶχεν

were-bored as (a) Lydian. | And it-had (itself)
οὕτως Οὗν μὲν ἀπῆλασαν τοῦτον.

so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they—drove him 'away.

Δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἰδντες παρὰ τὰς τάξεις,

But the others going to the (different) ranks (and
διὸ ποὺ μὲν εἰς στρατηγὸς
divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be (a)
σώδος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρατηγὸν. δὲ ὁπόθεν

saved, they-called-up the general; but where
οἴχοντε, τὸν ὑποστρατηγὸν. δὲ ὁποὺ αὐτῷ

he-had-perished, the lieutenant-general; but where again
εἰς λοχαγός, τὸν λοχαγὸν. Ὅπειρ δὲ

there-might-be (a) captain, the captain. When indeed
πάντες συνηλθοῦν ἐκαθέσαντο εἰς τὸ πρὸς

all came-together they-seated-themselves in the front

16
τῶν δυνῶν: καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
of-the (place) of-arms; and the generals and captains
συνελθόντες ἐγένοντο τοὺς ἀντὶ ἔκατον.
assembling were — (in all) about a-hundred.

"Ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, ἤσαν σχέδων."
[When indeed this was, [when this occurred], it was near
μέσα νύκτες. "Ἐνταῦθα Ἐρώνυμος Ἡλεός,
mid night. There Hieronymus (the) Elian,
ἀν προσβάτατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου, ἵρχετο
being the-oldest of-the captains of-Proxenus, commenced
λέγειν ὅσοι: Ὡ ἀνδρεῖς στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ,
to-speak thus: O men generals and captains,
ἐσθέν ἦμιν ὀργίσα τὰ παρόντα
it-seemed (proper) to-us seeing the present (state of our affairs),
καί συνελθέναι αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρακαλέσαι ἤμας,
both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-on you
ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἰ δυναίμεθα
(to join us) in-order-that we-may-determine if we-can
τι ἁγαθὸν. Δ', ἐφη,
on-something good (and advantageous to ourselves). But, said-he,
σὺ, ὁ Χενοφῶν, λέξον ἀπερ καὶ
' do you, O Xenophon, 'relate what (you have) even (said)
πρὸς ἤμας.
to us.

"Εκ τούτου Χενοφῶν λέγει τά dé. "Ἀλλὰ δὴ
On this Xenophon speaks thus: But truly
μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ταῦτα, ὅτι βασιλεῖς
indeed ' we all 'know this, that (the) king
καὶ Τισαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἦμιν οἷς μὲν
and Tissaphernes have-seized-upon (all) of-us whom indeed
ἐδυνήθησαν' δὲ δὴδὴν ὅτι ἐπιθουλεύσαναι
they-could; and (it is) evident that they-are-plotting
τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὡς ἀπολέσωσιν, ἣν δύναμται.
against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-us-to-death, if they-can.

Δὴ γε οἷμαι πάντα ποιητέα ἦμιν, ὅς
But at-least I-think every (thing) is-to-be-done by-us, that we-may
BOOK III.—CHAPTER I.

μὴ ποτὲ γένώμεθα ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους, never get into (the power of) the barbarians, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐξείνοι, ἂν δυνώμεθα but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it) ἐφ' ᾨμῖν. 'Επιστασθε [(may fall) into us [may fall into our hands]. Know εὖ τοίνυν, ὅτι ὑμεῖς, ὅντες τοσοῦτον ὅσοι νῦν well therefore, that you, being so-many as now συνελθαίνατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καυρόν. have-come-together (of you), have the-greatest opportunity (of distinguishing yourselves). For all — these sol-
tιναί βλέπουσιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, κἂν μὲν ὁ ὅρος dier look to you, and—if indeed they-see ὑμᾶς θύμιος, πάντες ἔσονται κακοὶ. δὲ εἰ τὲ you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if not-only ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ φανεροὶ παρασκευαζόμενοι ἢτε ἐπὶ you yourselves appearing prepared go against τοὺς πολέμιους, καὶ παρακαλέιτε τοὺς ἄλλους the enemy, and-also exhort the others ἵστε εὖ ὅτι ἐξονταί ὑμῖν, καὶ πειρά-
to the same) know well that they-will-follow you, and will-en-
σονται μειὼσαι. Δὲ ποι ἴσως ἐστι καὶ deavour to-imitate (you). And — perhaps it-is even δίκαιον ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τῷ τούτῳ. (that) we should-differ somewhat from-these (soldiers).

Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐστέ στρατηγοὶ, ὑμεῖς ταξιαρχοὶ For you are generals, you (are) taxiaruchs καὶ λοχαγοὶ· καὶ ἄτη οἰρήθη ἢν, ὑμεῖς ἐπιλειπόντεστε and captains; and when peace was, you had-a-greater-portion τούτων καὶ χρήματι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν (than) these both of-riches and honours; and now τοίνυς, ἐπει ἐστὶ πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἄξιον therefore, when there-is war, it-is-proper (that) you excel αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἁμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους, these, (and that you) be superior not-only to-the multitude,
καὶ προσθολεῖτε καὶ προσελθεῖν τούτων,
but-also to-plan-and-device and to-labour-and-exert-yourselves for-these,

ην ποιει δεπ. Καὶ νῦν μὲν πρῶτον
if any-where it-may-be-needed. And now indeed in-the-first (place)

οἶμοι . οὐκ ἄν μέγα οὐησαί τὸ στρατευμα,
I-think (that) you may greatly benefit the army,

eἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε, ὅπως στρατηγὸι καὶ λοχαγοὶ
if you-take-care, that generals and captains

ἀντικατασταθῶσιν ὡς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν
be-chosen as speedily-as-possible in-place-of — (those)

ἀπολωλότων. Γὰρ ἀνεῖν ἀρχόντων οἴδεν οὔτε
we-are-deprived-of. For without commanders nothing either

καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν ἄν γένοιτο, ὡς μὲν εἰπεῖν
honourable or good can happen, as indeed to-speak

οὐδαμοῦ, δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολε-ιν-comprehensive (language), no-where, but truly in — warlike-

μιχις παντάπασι. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ ἐποίησα δοξαί
affairs not-at-all. For indeed — order appears

σῶζειν, δὲ ἡ ἐποίησα ἦδον ἀπολολέσκε
to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order has already 'destroyed

πολλοὺς. Δὲ ἐπεὶ διὰ καταστάσεως τοὺς ἀρ-
many. And after you-have-appointed the com-

χοντας, δοσοὺς δεῖ, καὶ ἦν συλλέγετε
manders, as-many-as it-is-proper (to appoint), and if you-assembled

καὶ παραδιδόμενη τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιῶτας, ὠμοι
and encouraged the other soldiers, I-think

ἄν οὐκ ὑπήσατε πάνυ ἐν χαιρώ. Γὰρ
that you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For

νῦν μὲν ἵσως καὶ ἵμείς αἰσθάνασθε, ὡς ἄδυμως
now indeed likewise even you perceive, how dispiritedly.

μὲν ἡλικίαν ἤτι τὰ ὁπλα, δὲ ἄδυμως
indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how) dejectedly

πρός τὰς φυλακὰς, ὡστε, ἐχόντων
they went on — guard, so-that, having (themselves)

οὔτω γ’, ὥστε ὄρα. oúx oída.
so at-least, [while they are in this state of mind], I-do not 'know.
for what any-one might use them, 'should any-thing be-required either by-night or even by-day. But if any-one should-turn the thoughts of-them, that they-'may not μόνον' ἐννοοῦνται, τί πεισοῦνται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί alone ... 'contemplate, what they-will-suffer, but also what ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι. Γὰρ δὴ they-will-do, they-will-be much more-inspired. For truly ἐπίστευσέ, δ γὰρ ἑστὶν οὕτω πληθὺς οὕτω ἵκνης you-are-aware, that it is neither multitude nor strength ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ποιήσαι νίκας. which in — war | are-making victories; [produce victories]; ἀλλ' ὑπότεροι, σὺν τοῖς δειοί δὲν but which-ever, with the (assistance of the) gods being ἐργομενεστέροι ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἵσων ἐπὶ τοὺς more-resolute — in-mind may-go against the πολεμίους, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι enemy, (as) for the most-part the adverse (enemy) οὐ δέχονται τούτους.

'can not receive them [can not sustain their attack].

Δ' ἔγγυε, δ' ἀνδρες, ἐντεῦθεν μας, καὶ τοῦτο, But I—at-least, O men, have-considered, also this, διί ὑπὸ τινός μὲν μαστείους θην ἔκ παντὸς τρόπου that those-who indeed desire to-live | by all means ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὕτω μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ [at any rate] in — warlike-affairs, these indeed (as) for τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκοντι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς· the most-part die wretchedly and also dishonourably δὲ ὑπὸ τινός μὲν ἐγνώκασι θάνατον εἶναι κακῶν but those-who indeed have-known death to-be common πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἄνδρας, ἀγωνίζονται δὲ to-all, and inevitable to-men, contend-in-battle — περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν, [for the honourably to-die, [for an honourable death],
ὅρῳ τούτους μᾶλλον πως ἀφικνομένους εἰς τὸ
I-perceive these rather somehow arriving at —
γῆς, καὶ, ἣς ἂν ζῶσιν διάγοντας
old-age, and, as-long-as 'they may 'live passing (their time)
eἰδαμονέστερον. Καὶ ἃ καταμαθόντας
more-happily. And which (things) having-understood
νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γὰρ ἐσμὲν ἐν τοιούτῳ παιρῷ)
'it now 'becomes us (as we-are in such (a) state)
eἰναι τε ἁγαθοὺς ἅρδας αὐτοῖς καὶ
(that) we-be not-only brave men ourselves but-also
παρακαλεῖν τοὺς ἄλλους. Ὁ μὲν εἴπων
exhort the others (to be so). Who indeed saying
ταῦτ' ἐπαύσατο.
this ceased (speaking).
Δὲ μετὰ τούτων Χειρίσοφος εἶπε: 'Ἀλλὰ μὲν,
But after this Chereisophus said: But indeed,
ὁ Χειρίσοφων, πρῶτον ἐγίγνοσθον σε μόνον
O Xenophon, before-this I-knew you only
τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἠκούσαν εἶναι 'Αθηναῖον. δὲ
so-much, as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian; but
νῦν καὶ ἐπανεῖν σε τε ἐφ' ὦς λέγεις καὶ
now 'I even 'praise you not-only for what you-say but-also
πράτεις, καὶ ἂν βουλοίμην ὅτι εἶναι
(for what) you-perform, and could wish that there-were
πλείστους τοιούτους· γὰρ ἂν εἰπ̄ τὸ κοινὸν
many such; for 'it would 'be — (a) general
ἀγαθὸν. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὅ
good. And now, said-he, let-'us not 'delay, O
ἄνδρες, ἂλλ' οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντες ἀπελθόντες
men, but — (those) wanting commanders having-retired
ἡδὴ αἰρεῖσθε· καὶ ἐλομένου ἢκετε
now to-choose (them), and having-elected (them) 'let (them) 'come
eἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἀγετε τοὺς
to the middle of-the camp, and bring —
αἱρεθέντως· ἐπιτια συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεῖ τοὺς
(those) chosen; afterwards we-will-call-together there the
διόλους στρατιώτας. Δ’, ἐφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ
other soldiers. But, said he, 'let also Tolmides the
χηρὺς παρέστω ἦμιν. Καὶ ἂμα εἰσάγε ταῦτ’,
herald 'be-present with-us. And at-the-time he-was-saying this
ἀνέστη, δῶς τὰ δέοντα μὴ μέλλωντο,
he-rose-up, that the (things) necessary 'might not 'be-delayed,
ἀλλὰ περαινοῦτο. Ἐκ τούτων ἡρέθησαν ἄρχον-
but be-executed. On this they-chose (as) comman-
τες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχον Τιμαίων Δαρδανεὺς,
ders, in-place-of — Klearchus Timasion (the) Dardanian,
δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους Ξαντίκλης Ἀχαίος, δὲ
e and in-place-of Socrates Xanticles (the) Achsean, and
ἀντὶ Αγίου Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἀντὶ
in-place-of Agias Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and in-place-of
Μένωνος Φιλίσιος Ἀχαίος, δὲ ἀντὶ Πῳοζένου
Menon Philesius (the) Achsean, and in-place-of Proxenus
Εὐνόφων Ἀθηναῖος.
Xenophon (the) Athenian.

CH A P T E R II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμερα, τε ἡμέρα
When indeed (the officers) were-chosen, not-only 'was (the) day
σχεδὸν ὑπεφαίνε, καὶ οἱ ἀρχοντες ἡχον εἰς τὸ
just 'dawning, but-also the commanders had-come to the
μέσον, καὶ ἐδοξεὶ τοὺς στρα-
middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (necessary) to-them, senti-
λαχας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-
λachas katasstyantas, synergalein touqs stra-
νεῖλαις, ἐπισκόπειν τοὺς στρα-
neilaias, episkopein touqs stra-
νιῶτας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιώται
when indeed also the other soldiers
συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος πρῶτον
came-together, Cheirisophus the Lacedemonian first
μὲν ἀνέστη, καὶ ἔλεγεν ὡς· Ὡ άνδρες στρα-
indeed rose-up, and spoke thus: O men sol-
τιότα, τα παρόντα μὲν χαλεπά,
diers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are fraught-with-difficulties,
ὀπότε στερόμεθα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν,
since we are deprived of such men (our) generals,
καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρατιωτῶν· δὲ καὶ
and (also) of (our) captains, and soldiers; and also
πρὸς ἐκτὶ οἱ ἄμφι Αρίσαν, οἱ
of · (those) moreover (namely) — (those) with Arisaea, who
δινοῦσι πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι, προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.
being formerly (our) allies, have deserted us.
Debe διώκει τε έλθειν έκ τῶν παρόντων.
But likewise it becomes (us) not only to get-out of — (our) present
ἀγαθοίς ἀνδρας, καὶ μὴ iφίστη-
brave men, but also to not give
σαυμάτω περίπολος ὡς, ἢν μὲν δυνάμεια,
up, but to endeavour that, if indeed we can,
νικάντες καλός, σωκράτη.
conquering honourably, we may save ourselves; but if not,
ἀλλὰ χεὶ ἀποδώσωμεν καλός, δὲ μηδέποτε
yet at least let-us-die honourably, and never
γενόμεθα ξύντες ἵπποχείριοι
we being living [while we live] putting-ourselves-in-the-hands-of
τοὺς πολεμίους. Γὰρ οἶομαι ἃν ἡμᾶς παθέειν
the enemy. For I think that we would suffer
τοιαύτα, οἶα οἱ Θεοὶ πολίτειαν τοὺς
such-things, as 'may the gods 'do to — (our)
ἐξόρησι. Ἑπὶ τούτω Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομενώς
enemies. After this one Cleanor (the) Orchomenian
ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὡς· Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὥς ἀνδρεὺς,
rose-up and spoke as follows: But indeed, O men,
ὅρατε την ἐπιθυμίαν καὶ ἁσθενίαν βασιλέως,
you see the perjury and impiety ·of (the) ·king,
δὲ ὁρᾷ την ἀπίστιαν Τισσαφέρνους, δοτις λέγων
and you see the faithlessness of Tissaphernes, who saying
ὅς εἶν τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ ἄν
that he was not only (a) neighbour of the Greeks, but also would
BOOK III. — CHAPTER II.

ποιήσαντο περὶ πλείστου σῶσαι ἦμᾶς, καὶ make-it of much (account) to-have-saved us, and

αὐτὸς ὄμοσας ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς he-himself having-sworn to these (things) to-us, he

δοὺς δεξιάς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε having-given (the) right-hand, he having-deceived (us) took

touς στρατηγοὺς, καὶ οὐδὲ ἡδεσθῇ (prisoners) — (our) generals, and neither has-he-respected

Δία ξένων, ἄλλα γενόμενος καὶ Jupiter (the god of) hospitality, but having-become also (a)

ὀμοτράπεζος Κλεάρχω, αὐτοῖς τούτοις table-companion to-Clearchus, by-these same (means)

ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολύλεξεν. 'Aριάους having-deceived — man he-destroyed (them). Arisus
dὲ, δὲν ἦμεις ἢδέλομεν καθιστάναι βασιλέα, καὶ also, whom we wished to-have-constituted king, and

ἐδόκαμεν καὶ ἔλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδόσειν we-gave and received pledges not to-betray

ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὕτως, οὕτω δεῖσας τοὺς θεοὺς one-another, (yet) even this-one, neither having-feared the gods

οὗτε ἀιδεσθέσεις τεῦχητα Κύρων, τιμώμενος or having-respected (the) departed Cyrus, (though) honoured

μᾶλλον ὑπὸ Κύρων γίνοντος, νῦν in-the-highest-degree by Cyrus (while) living, 'having now

ἀποστάς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἐκεῖνον, 'gone-over to the bitterest-enemies of (Cyrus) himself,

πειράται ποιεῖν κακῶς ἦμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρων. he-endevours to-do ill to-us the friends of-Cyrus,

'Αλλὰ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσασιντο τούτους. But indeed may the gods 'repay these (men);

δὲ δὲν ἦμᾶς ὀφέλεται ταῦτα μὴ ἔτει but it-becomes us seeing these (things) never more

ἐξαπατήθηναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἄλλα, μαχομένος to-be-deceived by these (men), but, fighting
κράτιστα ὡς ἂν δυνάμεια, πᾶσχειν
in-the-bravest (manner) that 'we may 'be-able, to-bear
τοῦτο δὲ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς.
that which may seem (proper) to-the gods.

'Εκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνισταταί, ἐσταλμένος ἔπαι
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped for
πόλεμον ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο, νοµίζων, εἴτε
war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking, that-if
οἱ θεοὶ διδοὺν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον
the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful ornaments
πρέπειν τῷ νικᾷν,
became | to-the to-conquer [victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (that he
εἶτε δὲ
became

te-leuτάν, ἔχειν ὀρθῶς,
was, to-die, | to-have (itself) properly, [it would be well] (that
ἔστων ἀξιώσαστα τῶν καλλίστων
he should think) himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful
ἐν τούτως τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς
(equipments, and) in these to-meet — (his) end;
ὅτε τὸν λόγον ἠρχετο ὡδὲ.
but — (his) speech be-began thus: Indeed not-only the perjury
καὶ ἀποστάς τῶν βαρβάρων Κλέανθος μὲν
but-also (the) perfidy of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed
λέγει, δὲ οἶμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπιστασθε. 'has (just now) 'mentioned, and I-think you also, are-aware-of-it.
Εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεθα πάλιν ἵναι διὰ
If indeed therefore we-deliberate | again to-go through
 phíλιας αὐτοῖς
friendship with-them [of again coming to terms of friendship with them]
ἀνάγκη ὑμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἀδύναμον,
(it is of) necessity (that) we (must) have much mistrust,
καὶ ὀρθῶς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, οἷα
and handsomely (as) they (must) have much mistrust,
'having also 'seen — (our) generals, what (they)
πεπόλεμασιν, οἱ δὲ πάστεως αὐτοῖς ἔστων
suffered, who through faith in-them 'put themselves
ἐνεχείρισαν: εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς
'into-their-hands; if however we-intend with — (our)
BOOK III. — CHAPTER II. 191

ὅπλοις τε ἐπιθείναι δίκην αὐτοῖς
arms not-only | to-impose justice on-them [to inflict punish-
ἐν πεποιήκασι, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
ment on them] (for that) which they-have-done, but-also (for) the future
ἴσαν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν
to-go through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them, with (the help of)
τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδες σωτηρίας.
the gods there were many and fair hopes of-safety.

Δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τίς πτάρνωται. Ἔ
But he saying this some-one sneezes; and
οἱ στρατιώται ἄκουσαντες πάντες μιᾷ ὄρμῃ
the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one impulse
προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεὸν· καὶ Ἑσενοφῶν εἶπεν:
worshipped the god; and Xenophon said: (As)
"Επει δὴ μὴν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας, οἶνον δὲ
while we were-speaking about safety, (an) omen
τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοξεὶ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες,
of — Jupiter the Preserver appeared, it-seems to-me, O men,
ἐξάσθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ ἔσεσθαι σωτήριον
that we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-
(that) we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-
μα, ὅπου πρῶτον ἄφικαμέθα εἰς φίλιαν χῶραν,
first we-arrive in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνπευξάσθαι θύσειν τοῖς ἀλλοις
and also (that) we-vow-together to-sacrifice hereafter to-the other
θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ ἔφη, ὅστις
the gods according-to (our) ability. And he-said, to-whomsoever
ταῦτα δοξεῖ ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ
this seems (right) hold-up — (your) hand. And

ἀπαντεῖ ἀνετειναν.
καὶ ἐπαινόσαν. Δὲ ἔπει τὰ
[And when the (things) (their) vows and sang-a-peon. | And when the (things)
τῶν θεῶν ἔχειν καλῶς,
of-the gods had (themselves) well, [and when the religious

ἥρχετο πάλιν ἄδει
ceremonies were duly performed], he-commenced again thus:
ἡ ἔτυχεν εἴναι πολλαὶ καὶ
I-happened (to be) saying that there were many and
καὶ ἡ σωτηρίας. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν
fair hopes to us of safety. For first indeed
ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπειδεῖν τοὺς ὀρκους τῶν θεῶν,
we have truly observed the oaths of the gods,
πολέμου τε
[our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy have not-only
ἐπωρεύσας,
perjured (themselves), but also have broken the truce
καὶ τοὺς ὀρκους. Δὲ ἔχοντων
and—(their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves)
οὕτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς εἶναι ἑναντίως
thus, it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to be against
τοὺς πολέμους, δὲ συμμάχους ἢ μὲν, οἰκεὶ εἰς
(our) enemies, but auxiliaries to us, who are
ἐκάνοι, ὅταν ἐμβληθοῦσα καὶ ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς
 competent, when they will both speedily to make the
μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ εἰπετός σῶζειν τοὺς μικροὺς,
great, little, and easily to save the little,
κἂν ὤσι ἐν δεινοῖς. Δὲ ἐπετα,
although they may be in dangers. But (next) after (this),
(γὰρ ἀναμνήσεως ἢ μὲν τοὺς πιθανούς τῶν
(for I shall remind you even (of) the dangers of—
ἐμετέρων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδήτε ὡς
ancestors, in order that you may perceive that
τοὺς θεοὺς οἱ ἀγάδοι σωζοῦσα καὶ ἐκ πάνω
the gods the brave are saved even from the greatest
δεινών·) γὰρ μὲν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν
indeed (the) Persians and—(those) with
αὐτoῖς ἐμπειδεῖν παμπληθεῖσθαι στήλος, ὡς
them coming with (a) numerous host, as making
τὰς Ἀθηνᾶς ἀφανιστῶν αἰώνιος,
Athena's disappearing again, (but the) Athenians
BOOK III. — CHAPTER II.

τολμήσαντες ὑποστήναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.

daring to-withstand them conquered them.

Καὶ εἰς ἁμένου τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὑπόσους τῶν

And having-vowed to Diana (that) as—many of-the

πολεμίων ἀν καταχάνοιην τοσοῦτος χιμαιρᾶς

enemy as ‘they might ‘kill so-many she-goats

καταστῆναι τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ εἰχόν οὐχ

they—would—sacrifice to—the goddess, (but) when they—had not (a)

ἐξιγνάς εὑρεῖν,

sufficient—number to—find, (they could not find a sufficient number],

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας καὶ

it—seemed (good) to—their—sacrifice five—hundred every

ἐνιαυτῶν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποδύονοιν.

year, and also even now they—sacrifice (them). (Afterwards)

ὅτε Ἐξέχαν ὑπερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίδ—

when Xerxes after—this, having—collected — (that) innumerable

μακρὰν στρατιάν, ήλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ

able army went against the Greeks, and

τὸ ὅμετεροι πρὸγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους

then — our ancestors conquered the ancestors

tοῦτων, καὶ κατὰ ἱκὴν καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν.

of—these (barbarians), both by land and by sea.

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὃν ἦστιν τὰ τρόπαια οὖν,

(The) proofs indeed of—which are the trophies (to—see,

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύρων ἢ ἔλευθερία τῶν

[to be seen], but the—greatest witness (is) the liberty of—of the

πόλεως, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε

states in which you were—born and bred;

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἀνδροπον δεσπότην;

for you—worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν

but the gods (only). Of—such ancestors indeed

ἔστε. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἐρῶ τοῦτο,

are—you. I indeed certainly at—least ‘will not ‘say this,

ὡς ὑμεῖς κατασχύνετε αὐτούς. ἀλλ' οὕτω πολλαὶ

that you disgrace them; but not—yet many
μέρας, ἄφ᾽ οὖν ἀντιπαρά-
days, | from which [since] having-been-drawn-up-in-order-of-battle-
μενον τούτοις τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἐχεῖνων,
against these — descendants of-those (barbarians),
ἐνωτέρες αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίονος
you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-numerous (than)
ἀμοῦν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ τότε μὲν
yourselves with (the assistance of) the gods. And then —
δὴ ἤτε ἄγαδοι ἄνδρες περὶ τῆς βασιλείας
truly you were brave men | (contending) about the kingdom
Κύρου*. δὲ νῦν, ὅποτε
of-Cyrus; [contending to elevate Cyrus to the throne]; but now, when
ὁ ἄγας ἐστιν περὶ τῆς ἵματος σωτηρίας, δὴν ηὐκ,
the contest is about — your-own safety, it certainly
προσέκει ἵμας πολύ, καὶ ἐναι ἀμείνονας καὶ
'becomes you much, both to-be more (brave) and
προσθυμοτέρους. Ἄλλα μὲν καὶ νῦν πρέπει
more-daring. But certainly it even now 'becomes
ἐναι βασαλεωτέρους πρὸς τοὺς πολέμιους.
(you) to-be more-confident-and-daring against the enemy.
Γὰρ μὲν τότε ἄντε ἀπειροῦ αὐτῶν, τε δραύτες
For indeed then being inexperienced of-them, and seeing
τὸ ἁμετρον πλήθος, ὥσπερ ἔτομπατε σὺν τῷ
the immense multitude, however you dared with the
φρονήματι πατρίῳ ἕναι εἰς αὐτοὺς. δὲ
spirit derived-from-your-ancestors to-go against them; but
νῦν, ὅποτε καὶ ἡδὲ ἔχετε πείρας αὐτῶν, ὅτι
now, when you even already 'have experience of-them, that
θέλουσι καὶ ἄντες πολλαπλάσιον
ey-wish even (though) being many-times (more numerous
μῆν δέχοσθαι ἵμας, τί ἄτι
not to-receive you (attacking them), how then
προσήκει ἵμαν φοβεῖσθαι τούτοις; Μὴ δὲ μέντοι
does-it-become you to-fear these (men)? Nor indeed
δέξητε ἔχειν τούτο μελόν,
think to-have this less, [nor think this to be a disadvantage],
eit oi Kypetoi, pròsdev tautomévou sin òmiou, if the followers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us, 


vín afesthskasi. Gár éti oútou eis (have) now deserted (us). For also these (men) are 


kakíones tov òmiou kattarmévous òphi òmiou. more-cowardly (than) — (those) defeated by us. 


Goi òmiou kathn ypi katekantites òmiou. For indeed they fled to them deserting us. 


Dé poló kreítton órnav tois thelontas And (it is) much better to-see — (those) wishing 


drēxen phugíz tautomévous sin tois polemíous, to-commence flight arranged with the enemy; 


hê ev vê hêmetéra tácsei. Dé eit òmiou than in — our ranks. But if any-one of-you 


admei, óti mèn eisiv ouk èpseis òmiou, is-disheartened, that indeed there are no horsemen to-us, [that 


Dé polloi pàreis tois polemíous, we have no cavalry], [but (that) many are-present to-the 


enemy,

enómênèthe óti [but that the enemy have a large force of cavalry], consider that 


oi múroii èpseis eisiv oudev állo h múriou — ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-thousand 


ándrapoi: gáp mév oudeis pástote ùndhavên èn men; for indeed no-one ever died in 


makh eis evthei eis eis laktos eis ùndw battle (neither) (either) bitten — (or) kicked by 


Istpou, dé oí ándres eisiv oí pouoúntes o ti (a) horse, but the men are (those) who do whatever 


án génntai èn taivs máxous. Oixouv hmeis ésmen may happen in — battles. Therefore we are 


épì poló afalestérou ókrmatos ge tov òstevon on (a) much safer vehicle (than) at-least the cavalry; 


gáp mév oí kremantai èfì òstevon, phobóumevou for indeed — (those) hang on horses, fearing 


oiv òmiouv múvou, allá xai to kattapasein' not us alone, but also the to-have-fallen; [falling];
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

8 ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς
but we having-gone on (the) ground [but we marching on the
παίσομεν μὲν πολύ ἵσχυρότερον ἢν τις
ground] shall-strike indeed much more-violently if any-one
προσιθή, δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον τευξόμεθα ὅτου θυμιά-
approach, and much more shall-we-attain-the-aim which we-de-
μεθα. Δὲ ἐνὶ μόνῳ οἱ ἰσχεῖς προέχονοι
sired. But in-one (thing) alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of
ἡμῶς. φεύγειν ἐστιν ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῶς.
us: to-flee is safer for-them than for-us.

Εἶ δὲ ὅτι ἀφρείτε μὲν τὰς μάχας,
If indeed truly you-are-confident-and-courageous — for — battle,
δὲ ἀχθεσθε τοῦτο, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνης σφήκετι
but you-are-troubled at-this, that Tissaphernes 'will no-longer
ἡγησεται ὑμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει
'guide you, nor 'will (the) king 'provide (you s)
ἀγορᾶν, σκέπασθε πότερον κρεῖττον ἔχειν Τισσα-
market consider whether (it is) better to-have Tissa-
φέρνην ἱγμόνα, ὃς ἐστι φανερὸς ἐπισθελετών
phermes (as) guide, who is evidently plotting-against
ἡμῶν, ἡ ἄνδρας οὗ ἡμεῖς λαβόντες ἂν
we, or (the) men whom, we having-seized-them, may
κελεύσωμεν ἵναισθαι, οἱ εἰσορροί ὅτι, ἢ ἡ ἁμα-
order-to-guide (us), who will-know that, if they-
tάνωσι περὶ ἡμῶς, ἁμαρτάνοντι περὶ τὰς
err with-respect-to us, they-err with-respect-to the
ἡμᾶς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ τὰ
lives and bodies of-themselves. But (as respects) —
ἐπιτήδεια τότερον κρεῖττον ἱνεῖσθαι ἐκ τῆς
provisions whether (it is) better to-purchase from the
ἀγορᾶς, ἣς οὕτω παρεῖχον, μικρὰ μέτρα
market, which these (people) provide, small measures
πολλοῦ ἀργυροῦ, μὴ δὲ ἐτὶ ἔχοντας τοῦτο,
for-much money, neither yet having this (money),
ἢ, ἢπτερ κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους
or, if we-are-victorious, to-take them, using
οὔτως μέτρῳ ἔκαστος ἄν βούληται. Εἰ δὲ such measure (as) each might wish. If however
μὲν γινώσκετε ταῦτα indeed you-know these (things respecting guides and provisions)
ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς ποταμοὺς that (it would now be) better, but think the rivers
eἰναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἴγνοι αὐτή, to-be (a thing) impassable, and think (yourselves) to—be
μεγάλως ἕξαπατηθῆναι διαβάτες, greatly 'misled crossing (them), consider
εἰ ἄρα οἱ βαρβάροι καὶ πεποίηκασι whether the barbarians 'have (not) even 'done (a)
μορφατον. Πάρ μὲν πάντες οἱ ποταμοὶ, most-foolish (thing). For indeed all the rivers,
eἰ καὶ δει ἄποροι πρὸς τῶν τηγῶν, if even they—may be impassable at—a-distance from — (their sources),
προοίμισθα πρὸς τὰς τηγάς γίγνονται διαβατοί (but) going to the sources they—become passable,
οὗτος βρέχοντες τὸ γόνα. Εἰ δὲ μὴ δι ποταμοῖ not—even walking the knee. If indeed neither the rivers
dιοίξοντας, τε μεδείς ἵματων φανεῖται should—differ (in their breadth), and no guide appear
ἡμῖν, οὗ δὲ ἄπειρον ἢμῖν γε. Γὰρ to—us, nor thus is—there—to—be—discouragement to—us at—least. For
ἐπιστάμεθα Μυσοὶς, οὗς ἂν οἱκ βαίημεν we—know (that the) Mystians, whom 'we should not 'assert
εἰναι βελτίως ἴμων, οὐ, βασιλέως to—be braver 'than (our—selves), who, (the) king (being)
ἄχοντος, αἰχούσι πολλάς τε καὶ εἰδαίμονας καὶ unwilling, inhabit many also both rich and
μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλεὺς large cities in the country 'of (the) king;
ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαίτως we—know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in—like—manner;
δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἰδομεν Λυκάονας, ὥστι and also we—'have ourselves 'seen (the) Lycaonians, that
καταλαβόντες τὰ ἑρμινά ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις παρ-
σείζοντας the fortified-places in the plains they-en-
pοίνται τῇν χώραν τοῦτον. Καὶ ἂν joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed ἔγγυε ἄν ἐφην ἦμας χρῆναι μὴ ἦναι I-at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be φανεροὺς ὦρμιμενοὺς οἰκαίς, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ-
appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting-
ἀξιόθαυμος ὧς οἰκήσοντας που αὐτοῦ. ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking-up-our-abode some-where here.

Γὰρ οἶδα διὶ καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἄν δοιξ πολλοῖς For I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many ἰημένος Μυσίων, ἄν πολλοῖς ὀμηροὺς guides *to (the) *Mysians, and would (give) many hostages τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν (to them) *(to) the to-send-away *(to send them away) without-treachery and γὰρ ἀν ὀδοποιήσεις αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλοντο also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished ἀπελευθέρως οὖν τεθρήπτως. Καὶ οἶδ᾽ ὅτι γὰρ to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that he also would ἑποίει ταῦτα *τριζάσμενοι ἦμιν, εἰ ἐκάρα *do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw ἦμας παρασκευαζόμενος μὲνεὶν. *Ἀλλὰ γὰρ us making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for ἐκδοικα, ὑπὶ ἄν ἀπαξ μάθωμεν ζην ἄργοι, I-fear, lest we may once *have-learned to-live idle, καὶ βιοτείνειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὀμηλείν and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate *with (the) καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένους *handsome and *large women and virgins *(of (the)

Μῆδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μὴ, ἅσπερ οἱ *Mades and also *(of (the) *Persians, (that) lest, like the ἱωτοφαγοι, ἐπιλατώμεθα τῆς ὀδοῦ οἰκαίς. *Doxei *we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems  

οὖν μοι εἰναι εἰκὸς καὶ δικαίων πρῶτον therefore to-me to-be proper and just first
πειράσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς
to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to
tοὺς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδείξει τοὺς Ἑλλησίων,
the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks,
ὅτι ἔκοντες πένονται, ἔξον αὐτῶι ὅραν
that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see
κοιμασμένους ἐνῶδε πλουσίους, τοὺς
(those) having-come hither rich,
νῦν οἰκεῖο πολυτείουτας ἔχει σκληρᾶς. Ἄλλα,
now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why)
γὰρ, ὡς ἀνδρεῖς, ἔστι δὴν ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα
more, for, O men, it-is evident that, all these
τἀγαθα τῶν κρατοῦντων. Ἀλλὰ,
good (things belong to) the conquerors. 'It certainly
dεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἄν πορευομένα τε
is-proper to-mention this, how 'we may 'proceed not-only
ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὡς
as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that
μάχομεθα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν,
we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore,
ἐφι, δοξεῖ μοι κατακαίσαι τὰς ἑμᾶς,
said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,
ἀς ἔχουμεν, ἵνα τὰ ἥτις ἡμῶν ἡμῖν
which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us 'may not
στρατηγῆς,
'strothe-leader-of-the-army, [In order that our baggage may not influence
"Αλλὰ πορευόμεθα δὴν
the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever
ἄν συμφέρη τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἔπειτα καὶ
'it may 'be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also
συγκατακαίσαι τὰς σκηνὰς. Γὰρ αὐτοὺ
to-burn the tents 'with (them). For these
ἀδ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὕλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνοφε-
not again — give trouble to-carry, | and contrib-
λοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
bute nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of no
οὖ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. [use in battle] | or to the to-have — provisions [or in pro-
'Ετι δὲ καὶ ἀπαλλάξαμεν τὰ curing provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-rid-of the 
περιττὰ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα superfuous (things) of — (our) other furniture, except what 
ἐχομεν ἐνεχείν πολέμου, ἣ σίτον ἢ ποτῶν, in we-have-for-the-purpose of-war, or of-food, or of-drink, in-order-that 
ὡς πλείστου ἡμῶν ὡς ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις δὲ ὡς as many-as-possible of-us may-be under — arms and as 
ἐλάχιστα σκευοφοροῦσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπιστασθε ότι few-as-possible may-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that 
πάντα κρατουμένων ἀλληγριа all (things) 'of (the) 'conquered (become the) property-of-others; 
δὲ ἣν κρατοῦμεν δεί νομίζειν καὶ τους and if we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think that (that) even the 
pολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους. Λοιπὸν enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers. (It) remains 
μοι οἴρειν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω εἰναι μέγιστον. for-me to-mention what 'I even 'consider to-be (of the) greatest 
(G)άρ ὅπατε καὶ τούς πολέμιους, δη (importance). For you-see even the enemy, that 
οὐ εἶναιμεν πρὸς ἔξοδον ἐξενεχείν 'they-did not first to-bring-on (the) 
pολέμου πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέλαβον τοὺς στρα-
war against us, before they-had-seized the gene-
tγοὺς ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες μὲν ὄντων 
rais of-us, thinking (that) 'we indeed ('being) (having) 
tῶν ἀρχιτων, καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων — commanders, and we being-obedient (to them, that) 
ἡμᾶς εἶναι ἴκανοὺς παρηγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ we were competent to-conquer in — battle; 
δὲ λαβόντες τοὺς ἀρχιτας ἐνόμισον ἡμᾶς but taking — (our) commanders they-thought (that) 'we 
ἀν ἀπωλεῖσθαι ἀναρχία καὶ ἀταξία. Οὖν would perish in-anarchy and confusion. Therefore
δει μεν τους ἄρχοντας τους νῦν
it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)
γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους 
be much more-vigilant (than) — (those who)
πρόσθεν,
before (were commanders), and (that) the commanded (should be)
πολὺ μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πεπομένους τοὺς
much more orderly and obedient to-the
ἄρχουσι νῦν ἡ πρόσθεν. Δὲ ἦν τις ἀπει-
commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-disobe-
δῆ, ἦν ψυφίσσοντε τὸν ἵμων ἄει ἐντυ-
did, if you-decree (that) — (he) of-you at-any-time meet-
χάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν,
ing (such a one, is to assist) with the commander to-punish
ὀφθὼς οἱ πολέμιοι ἐσονται πλείστον εὐευ-
(him), thus the enemy will-be very-much de-
μένοι. γὰρ τῇ δὲ τῇ ἴμηρα δύονται
ceived (in what they expected); for in-that — day they-will-see
μιρίους Κλεάρχους ἄνθ᾽ ἐνὸς, τοὺς ἐπίτρε-
ten-thousand Clearances in-place-of one, — (who) will-per-
ψοντας οὐδενὶ εἶναι κακῷ. Ἀλλὰ
mit no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But
γὰρ καὶ ἤδη ἔρα περαίνειν· γὰρ οἱ
( enough), for ( it is) even now time to-finish; for the
πολέμιοι ἰῶς αὐτίκα παρέσονται. Ὅστο
enemy ' will perhaps immediately 'be-present. To-whom
οὖν δοξεῖ ταύτα ἐξειν
therefore it-may-seem | (that) these (things) hold (themselves)
καλῶς ἑπεκυρωσάτω
well [that what I have said is just and reasonable] let-them-approve
δὲς τάχυτα, ἵνα περαινταί
(them) as speedily-as-possible, in-order-that they-may-be-accomplished
ἐργω. 
in-fact. But if any-thing else ( is ) better than this,
καὶ διὸ ἰδιώτης τολμῶ
(let-him (though) even — (a) private (soldier) 'be-bold (enough)
διδάσκειν· γὰρ πάντες δεόμεθα κοινῆς to-instruct (us); for we all seek (a) common
σωτηρίας.
safety.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν
After this Chreisophus said: But if indeed
δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις, oĩς it-is-needed of-anything else for these (affairs), which
ξενοφῶν λέγει, καὶ αὐτίκα ἔξεσται ποιεῖν· Xenophon mentions, it will even speedily 'be-allowed-us to-do (it);
δὲ ᾧ νῦν εἰρηκε, δοξῆι μοι and what he has now said, it-seems to-me (that we ought)
ψηφίσασθαι ός τάχιστα εἶναι ἀριστον· καὶ to-vote as speedily-as-possible to-be the-best; and
οὗ δοξῆι ταῦτα ἀνατευνάτω τῇν to-whom it-seems, these (things to be right) let-him-hold-up —
κεῖσα. Ὅπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Δὲ (his) hand. All held-up (their hands). But
εἰς ἀρχαίαν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Ὡς andres,
ξενοφῶν πάλιν ἀναστᾶς εἶπεν· Οἱ men,
Xenophon again rising said: O men,
ἀκούσατε δὲν δοξῆι μοι προηγ- (me respecting that) which seems to-me to-be-necessary-
heur. Ωῇ δὲι δὲι ἰμᾶς πορεύ-
in-addition. (It is) evident that it-is-proper (that) we march-
εῖνω διὰν ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ ἀκούω to where we-shall-have — provisions; and I-hear (that)
easεί 
καλὰς κώμας, οὐ πλεῖον there-are (some) considerable villages, 'being not more (than)
eἶνοι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. Ἀν oĩx oĩx twenty stadia 'distant. I would not therefore 'won-
there are (some) considerable villages, 'being not more (than)
μάζομι, εἰ οἱ πολέμοι, ἡσπερ οἱ deisoi kînes, der, if the enemy, like — cowardly dogs,
μὲν τε διώκουσι τοὺς παρώντας καὶ indeed not-only follow — (those) passing-by but also
dáxvouσin, ἤν δίνωνται, δὲ φέυγουσι τοὺς bite (them), if they-can, but flee-from — (those)
Διόκτητας, καὶ εἰ αὐτὸς following (them), and (I would not be surprised) if they ἐπακολουθεῖν ἡμῖν ἀποικοῦσιν. Ἦσως οὖν follow us departing. Perhaps therefore (it will be) ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησάμενοι safer for us 'to-march-forth having-formed (a hollow) πλαίσιον τῶν ὀπλῶν, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα square of the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that the baggage, καὶ οἱ πολῖς ὀχλος εἰπ ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ. and the many camp-followers may-be in the greatest-safety (within it).

Εἰ νῦν οὖν ἀποδειχθεῖν, τίνα χρῆ ἡγεῖσθαι If now therefore it-should-be-designated, whom it-becomes to-lead τὸν πλαίσιον, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν, the square, and to-regulate-and-arrange the front, καὶ τίνας εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἐκατέρων πλευρῶν, and who (are) to-be on — each flank, δὲ τίνας ὁποιοφορακεῖν, ἄν οὗ δεῖ, and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, 'it may not 'be-necessary, (that) ἦμας βουλεύεσθαι ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιν, we deliberate (about this) when the enemy may-come, ἄλλα ἄν εἰῷσ ἄμωμα τοῖς τεταγ- but 'we might immediately make-use-of the (things) ar-

μένοις. Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἄλλος ὁπλικά. If therefore indeed any-one else sees (something) βέλτιον, ἔχετω ἄλλος. Better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged otherwise]. But Εἰ μὴ, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἥγεσθαι, ἐπειδῆ καὶ ἔστι if not, 'let Cheirisophus indeed 'lead, since also he-is Ἀσκεδαμώνος δὲ δόνο στρατηγῷ τῶν προσ-(a) Lacedemonian; | but 'let two generals of the old-

βατῶν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ἐκατέρων τῶν πλευρῶν. (generals) 'take-charge of-each of-the flanks; δὲ ἦμις οἱ νεότεροι, τε ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων, and 'let the younger, namely I and Timasius, ὁποιοφοράκειμεν, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. 'take-command-of-the-rear, | the now to-be [for the present]. And (for)
τὸ λοιπὸν, πειράματι τὰυτής τῆς τάξεως, δει
the rest, having-tried this — arrangement, always

βουλευτόμεθα δὲ τὰν δοξὴν εἰναύ
(or at any time) we-can-consider what may seem to-be (the)

κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὤρα ἄλλο
best. If indeed any-one perceives (any thing) else

βέλτιον, λεξάτω. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
better, let-him-mention (it). But when no-one objected,

ἐἶπεν ὁ δὲ ταῦτα, ἀνα-
he-said: To-whom it-seems (that) these (things are right), let-him-

τεινάτω τὴν χείρα. Ἐδοξεί ταῦτα.
hold-up — (his) hand. He-approved these (things). Now

τοίνυν, θην, ἀπολύτας δει ποιεῖν τὰ
therefore, said-he, departing it-becomes (you) to-perform — (things

dedoμένα· καὶ δεστὶς τὰ
that) have-seemed-good (and been determined on); and whoever —

ὑμῶν ἐπιστευει ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκεῖους, μεμ-
of-you desires to-see — (their) homes-and-families, let-him-

νήσῳ εἰναι ἄγαδος ἄνρ. γὰρ ἐστιν οὐ τυχεῖν
remember to-be (a) brave man; for it-is not to-obtain

τοῦτον ἄλλος·
of-this otherwise; [for in no other manner can this be obtained];

δεστὶς τὲ ἐπιστευει ζήν, πειράματι νικᾶν· γὰρ μὲν
whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer; for indeed

τὸ κατακαίνειν ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων, δὲ
the to-kill [killing] is (the part) of-the conquering, but

τὸ ἀποθάνειν τῶν ἐπιτώμενων· δὲ
the to-die [dying] is (the part) of-the conquered; and

καὶ εἰ τις ἐπιστευει χρημάτων πειράματι κρατεῖν·
also if any-one desires property let-him-strive to-vanquish;

γὰρ ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων καὶ σώζειν
for it-is (the part) of — (those) conquering also to-save

τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ λαμβάνειν τὰ
the (property belonging) to-themselves, and to-take the (property)

τῶν ἐπιτώμενων.
of-the conquered.
CHAPTER III.

Τούτων λέγειντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
theses (things) having-been-spoken they-rose-up, and
ἀπελθόντες κατέκαισαν τάς ἀμάξας καὶ τάς σκηνὰς
departing they-burned the carriages and the tents;
δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν ὅτου τις δέοιτο,
and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which any-one might-want,
μετεδίδοσαν ἄλλα ἐκτὸς, δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἐφρίπτον,
they-distributed-among one-another, but the rest they-threw
eἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποίησαντες ταῦτα ἴριστοποιν—
into the fire. Having-done these (things) they-break-
οὐντο. Δὲ ἀριστοποιομένων Μιθράδάτης
fasted. But (while) breakfasting Mithradates
ἐρχεται σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἵππευς, καὶ καλε—
came with about thirty horsemen, and having-
σάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπικοῦν λέγει
called the generals to (a) place-of-hearing he-speaks
ἀλλ’ Ἡγώ, ὁ Ἔλληνες ἄνδρες, ἦν καὶ πιστὸς
thus: I, O Grecian men, was even faithful
Κύρω, ὡς ἰμαῖς ἐπιστενοῦν, καὶ νῦν εὖν τοῦς
Cyrus, as you know, and (am) now well-disposed
τοῦς θυμήσαντες, καὶ καὶ εἰμὶ ἐνθάδε διὰ γων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.
to-you; and I-am here living with much fear.
ἔλθειν, καὶ εἰμὶ εἴναι διὰ γων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.

Εἰ oὖν ὁρᾷν ὅμας βουλευομένους τι
If therefore I-perceive (that) you are-concerting any-thing
σωτηρίου, ἃν ἑλθοῦμι πρὸς ὅμας, ἔχων
salutary, 'I might 'go to you, having (with me)
καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεράποντας. Οὖν ἕξατε
also all — (my) followers. Therefore tell
με τι ἔχετε ἐν νῷ ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνοιν
me what you-have in mind as 'to (a) friend and also well-disposed

18
καὶ βουλήμενον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν στόλον
(to you), and wishing to-make the march
κοινὴ σὺν ἡμῖν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευομένοις
in-common with you. The generals consulting-together
ἐδοξεν ἀποφρίνασθαι τὰδέ· καὶ Χερίσσωφος,
it-seemed (best) to-haveanswered thus; and Cheirisosphus
ἐλεγε· Δοξεῖ ἡμῖν, εἰ τὰς ἔξα ἡμᾶς ἀπείναι
spoke: It seems (good) to-us, if any-one allows us to-depart
οἴκειε· διαπολεμεῖν τὼν χώραν ὡς ἀσινεστατὰ
for-home, to-proceed-through the country as harmless-as
ἀν δυνώμεδα· δε ἦν τις ἀποκαλύφῃ ἡμᾶς
we may 'be-able; but if any-one prohibit us
τῆς ὁδοῦ, διαπολεμέων τοὺτῳ ὅς
the road, to-fight (our way) 'against this-one as
κράτιστα ἀν δυνώμεδα. Ἐκ τούτου Μιθραδάτης
bravely-as we may 'be-able. On this Mithradates
ἐπειράτο διδάσκειν ὡς ἀπορον εἰς σωθήναι,
endeavoured to-instruct (them) how impossible it-would-be to-be-saved,
βασιλέως ἁχοντος. Ἐνδα δὴ ἐγγυ·
basileusاخونتوس. 'Ενδα δὴ ἐγγυ-
(th) king (being) unwilling. Hereupon indeed it-was-
νόσκετο δι' εἰς ἐπισπευτος· γὰρ καὶ τις
νόσκετο δι' εἰς ἐπισπευτος· γὰρ καὶ τις
perceived that he-might-be insidiously-sent; for also some-one
τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούθει ἐνεκα
of the followers of Tissaphernes attended for-the sake of
πιστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδοξεῖ τοῖς
πιστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδοξεῖ τοῖς
(securing his) fidelity. And from this it-seemed to-the
στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον ποιήσαι δύναμι,
commanders to be best to-make (a) decree, (that)
ἐγὼ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τῶν
as-long-as they-might-be in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the
πόλεμου εἶναι ἀκέραστον.
πόλεμου εἶναι ἀκέραστον.
Gارد προς-
war (was) to-be without-heralds (and impecable). For coming-
ιόντες διέφεδρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
to (them) they-were-corrupting the soldiers, and
διέφεδρον γιὰ ἕνα λοχαγὸν Νίκαρχον
they-corrupted at-least one captain (namely) Nicarchus (the)
"Αρχάδα καὶ ὄχετο ἀπιῶν νυκτὸς
Arcadian; and he went away departing [and he went off] by-night
σὺν ὡς ἔλεσει ἀνάφρασις.
with about thirty men.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἄριστὴσαντες, καὶ διαβάντες
After this, having-taken-their-first-meal, and having-crossed
τὸν ποταμὸν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο τεταμενοὶ,
the river Zapata, they marched forth drawn-up-in-order,
ἐχοντες τὰ ὑποξύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ.
having the baggage-cattle and the camp-followers in (the) middle

Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ προεληλυθότων πολὺ,
(of the square). But they not having-gone far,
ὁ Μιθράδατης πάλιν ἐπιφαινεῖται ἐχὼν ὡς δια-
— Mithradates again appeared having about two-
kοσιῶν ἵππεας, καὶ ὡς τετραχοσίους τοξότας καὶ
hundred horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and
σφενδονήτας, μᾶλα ἑλαφροὺς καὶ εἰξόνους καὶ
slingers, very light and active; and
προσήχει μὲν ὡς ὄν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς Ἔλληνας.
approached indeed as being (a) friend to the Greeks.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡγυῖς, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν
But when he was near, suddenly — (those) indeed
αὐτῶν καὶ ἵππεις καὶ πεζοὶ ἐτόξεουν,
of-them both horse and foot commenced discharging arrows,
δὲ οἱ ἑσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐπιτροπηκαν.
and — (others) slinging-stones, and wounded (our men). But
οἱ ὥσπερ ὀφιᾶλαξες τῶν Ἐλλήνων ἐπανέχον μὲν
the rear-guard of the Greeks suffered indeed
κακῶς, δ` ἀντιποίουν οἰδέν.
badly, and could do nothing 'against (the enemy). For

Γὰρ οἱ Κρήτες ἐτόξευον βραχύτερα
not only 'did the Cretans 'shoot (their) 'arrows a shorter distance
τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἁμα ὄντες ὅλοι
(than) the Persians, but also at the same time being light-armed
κατεκέλευντο ἐσώ τῶν ὄπλων. οἱ ἄχωντονται
they were included within the heavy-armed-men; the javelin-men
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

τε ἥκωντικαν βραχύτερα ἡ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθα. Indeed ‘threw (their) javelins shorter than so-as to-reach τῶν σφενδοντων. Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξει Ξενοφῶντι the slingers. Upon this it-seemed to-Xenophon εἶναι δισκέτων. καὶ οἱ τῶν ὀπλατῶν to-be necessary-to-pursue; and (those)of-the heavy-armed-men καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῶ and of-the targeteers (who) happened (to be) with him ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες ἐδίκασεν· δὲ δἰκόντες κατε- guarding-the-rear pursued; but pursuing they- λάμβανον οὐδένα τῶν πολεμιῶν. Γὰρ οὗτε ἦσαν overtook no-one of-the enemy. For neither were-there ἵππεις τοῖς Ἑλληνεῖσι, οὕτε ἔδυναντο οἱ πεζοὶ horsemen to-the Greeks, nor could — (our) infantry καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χώρῳ, τοὺς πεζοὺς overtake, in (a) small space, the infantry φεύγοντας ἐκ πολλοῦ. γὰρ (of the enemy) fleeing from (a) (much) (distance); for ἢν οἷον τε διώκειν πολὺ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου it was not possible to-follow far from the rest (of the) στρατεύματος. Δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι ἵππεις καὶ ἀμάry. And the barbarian cavalry even while φεύγοντες ἐτίκτρωσκον τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ fleeing wounded (our men) shooting-their-arrows from τῶν ἵππων εἰς τοῦπισθεν. δὲ ὀπόσον οἱ Ἑλληνεῖς the horses backwards; and as-much-as the Greeks προδιώξειαν τοσοῦτον ἐδει πάλιν ἐπαναξω- advanced-in-pursuit so-much it-was-necessary again to-re- πεῖν μαχομένους. Οὕτε τῇς ὀλίγης ἡμέρας treat-fighting. So-that (during) the entire day οὐ διήλθον πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι they - did not ‘pass-through more (than) five and twenty σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς stadia, but late-in-the-afternoon they-arrived at the κώμας. Ἐνδιὰ δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀδύμια. Καὶ villages. Here truly there-was again dejection-of-mind. And
Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν
Cheirisophon and the oldest of the generals

ὁ τιτωμένος ἔνοφόντο, ὃτι ἐδίωξεν
blamed

Ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε αὐτὸς ἐκνικνύειν
from the phalanx, and so indeed he endangered

καὶ οἰδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύναται βλάπτειν
(himself) and was none the more able to injure

τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ Ἐνοφῶν ἄνοισας ἔλεγεν
the enemy. But Xenophon having heard (this) said

ὅτι τιτωμένο ὅρῶς, καὶ τό ἔργον αὐτὸ
that they blamed (him) justly, and (that) the act itself

μαρτυροῦσιν αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,
in its results bore testimony for them. But I, said he,

ἀναγκάσων διώκειν, ἐπείδὴ ἐώρων ἦμας μὲν
was forced to pursue, after I saw (that) we indeed

ἐν τῷ μένειν πάσῳ
[in the to remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-

χορτάς κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένοις ἀντιποιεῖν. Δὲ
suffering badly, and not being able to retaliate. But

ἐπείδη ἐδιώκομεν, ἔφη, ἀληθῶς ἵμας
when we pursued, said he, (the things were) true (as) you

λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεθα ποιεῖν οἰδὲν μᾶλλον
say; for indeed we were able to do not any more

κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἄνεχωρομεν πᾶν
injury (to) the enemy, but we returned very

χαλεπῶς. Χάρις οὐν τοις θεοῖς ὃτι οὐκ
difficulty. Thanks therefore to the gods, that they did not

ήλθον σὺν πολλὶ βίῳ ἀλλὰ σὺν ἠλίγοις,
not as indeed not to have injured (us) much, and (yet)

ἔχοντε μὲν ἡ βλάπτειν μεγάλα, δὲ
(troops), so as indeed not to have injured (us) much, and (yet)

ἡλίσσαν δὲν ἔδομεν. Γὰρ ἔντω μὲν οἱ
to have shown (us) what we needed. For now indeed the

πολέμιοι τοξεύοντο καὶ σφενδονότων
enemy shoot (their) arrows and

sling-stones
δεν γαρ ὑμεῖς μέλλομεν
to-be-able

dιά σφενδονίων καὶ ἰππεῶν.
slings but also cavalry.

Ἄκούον δὲ εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἵμων
I-hear (that) there are in the army of us

Ροδίους, φασίν τοὺς πολλοὺς δὲ ἐπιστασθαί
Rhodians, they-say (that) the great-part of them know

σφενδονίων, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ
(how) to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of them also

φέρεσθαι διπλάσιον τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονίων.
carric double (the distance) of the Persian slings.

Γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι διὰ σφενδονίων τοῖς λίθοις
For these (Persian slings) on-account-of slinginc — stones

χειροπληθύνουσα ἐξικνοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχί
filling-the-hands reach (only) to (a) short (distance);

dὲ γαρ ὑμεῖς. Ρόδιοι καὶ ἐπιστασθαί
but — the Rhodians even know (how) to-use
BOOK III. — CHAPTER III.

If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them leaden-bullets. If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them
téstantai sphenðovas, kai méν démæn áργυριον have-acquired slings, and (that) indeed we-give money
touτω αιτόν, dé tω ἔθελοντι πλέκειν to-that-one for-them, and — (to him) willing to-plait
άλλας τελόμεν αλλο áργυριον, kai tω other (sling) we-might-give other money, and — (for him)
ἔθελοντι sphenðovān ἐν τῶ τεταγμένῳ willing to-use-the-sling in the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him)
eὔψικμον tenà ἀλλην ἀτέλειαν, ἵσως τινες we-may-find some other privileges, probably some
iκανοὶ Ὀφειλεῖν ἡμᾶς φανοῦνται. capable to-aid us will-appear (and offer their services).

Δὲ καὶ ὅρω ἵππος ὄντως ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, And also I-see horses (being) in the army,
touσ τίνας μὲν παρ' ἐμοί dé touσ — some indeed (are) with me and — (others)
kataleleimένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, dé kai πολλοὺς left by — Clearchus, and also many
άλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. 'Av others taken-from-the-enemy (used in) carrying-baggage. If
οὗν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας τούτους, μὲν therefore, collecting all these (horses), 'we indeed
ἀντιδώμεν σκευοφόρα, dé kataσκευάζωμεν 'give-in-place (of them) ordinary-baggage-cattle, and equip
touσ ἵππουσ eis ἵππες, ἵσως καὶ οὕτωι ἀνάσπουσι the horses for cavalry, perhaps even these will-annoy
ti touσ φεύγοντας. Taúta somewhat the (enemy) fleeing. | (Respecting) these (things)

καὶ τῆς ταύτης it-seemed-right. [These things were approved of.] And the same

νυκτὸς μὲν ἐγένοντο sphenðovóntaı eis night indeed there-became slingers to (the number of)
dιακοσίων, dé kai τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἤπειροi dé kai two-hundred, and also on-the next-day horses and also
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

horsemen to (the number of) fifty were judged fit
for service, and leather-jackets and breastplates were provided
his, and Lycurgus the son-of-Polystratus (the Athenian)
was also appointed (their) commander.

CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν, τῇ ἄλλῃ
And halting for — that-same day, on-the next
ἀναστάντες πρωϊντον ἐπορεύοντο
rising-up earlier-in-the-morning (than usual) they marched-forth;
γὰρ ἢ ἐκείναι αὐτῶν διαβήναι χρὰ-
for it was necessary (that) they should cross (a) ravine-formed-
ἀπὸ, ἐφ’ ἄν ἐφθοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι
by-a torrent, at which they were afraid lest the enemy
ἐπιθυμῆσαι αὐτῶν διαβάινουσι. Δὲ αὐτῶν διαβε-
might-attack them crossing-over. But they having-
ῄσχυναι ὁ Μιθράδατς πάλιν φαίνεται ἐχὼν
heard again appeared having (a)
χιλίους ἵππες δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδόντας
thousand horsemen and also archers (and) slingers
eἰς τετρακακτικίλιους ἀρὶ ἦσσε Τισα-
(to the number of) four-thousand; for he solicited Tissæ-
φέρειν τοσοῦτοι, καὶ Ἐλληνεῖς, ἵπποι κλέαντες
to them, and the Greeks, few (men) he suffered indeed
δὲν λήθη τούτως, παραδόσειν τοὺς Ἐλληνας
if he should receive these, to deliver the Greeks
αὐτῶ ταῖς καταφρονήσας, δότη ἐν τῇ πρῶτῃ
to him, having despised (them), because, in the former
προσβολὴ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἔπαιδε μὲν οὐδὲν,
attack having (only) few (men) he suffered indeed no (loss),
δὲ ἐνῶμιζε ποιήσαι πολλὰ κακά.

and thought (that) he had occasioned (them) much annoyance.

’Επει δὲ οἱ Ἔλληνες διαβεβηκότες

When indeed the Greeks having (now) crossed (the ravine) and) were distant from the ravine about eight days, and the Miθραδάτης διέθανεν ἔχον τὴν διά, also — Mithradates crossed-over having the δύναμιν. Δὲ παρῆγγελτο τε force (above mentioned). And instructions had been given not only τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὀπλίτων,

(to those) of the targeteers, but also (to those) of the heavy armed men, ὁδεῖ διώκειν, καὶ εἰρήνο τοῖς ἱππείσι

whom it became to pursue, and also it was told to the horsemen διώκειν θαρροῦν, ὡς ικανῆς δυνάμεως ἐφε-

being confident and bold, as (a) sufficient force would-

ψωμένης. ’Επει δὲ οἱ Miθραδάτης καταλήψει,

be following (them). When indeed — Mithradates had overtaken καὶ ἦδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα

(already (the) slings and arrows ἔξωκοιντο ἐσήμανε τοῖς Ἔλλησι

began to reach (them) then the signal was given to the Greeks τῇ σάλπυγι, καὶ εὖθυς, οἷς εἰρήνο,

with the trumpet and directly 'they of whom it was requested, ἔδειν ὄμοσε, καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἥλαννον

ran there (to meet the enemy) and the cavalry charged; δὲ οἱ οίχες ἐδέσαντο ἀλλ' ἐφευγον

but the (enemy) did not receive (them) but fled ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. Ἔν τῇ ταύτῃ διώξει τε

to the ravine. In this pursuit not only πολλοί τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀπέθανον,

many of the foot soldiers (of) the barbarians died, καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ἐλήφθησαν ζωοὶ εἰς

but also in the ravine were taken alive (the number of) ὀκτωκαίδεκα τῶν ἵππων. Οἱ Ἔλληνες δὲ

eighteen of the horsemen. The Greeks indeed
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

αὐτοκέλευστοι ἡκίσαντο τοὺς ἀποσάνωτας, ὥς of-their-own-accord mutilated the dying, so ὅτι εἰς φθερώσαντα τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπάρνειν. that it-might-be most-frightful for-the enemy to-see.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολεμίοι πράξαντες ὑπὸ ἀπελέθονοι.* And indeed the enemy having-fared thus departed;

δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες πορεύομενοι ἀσφαλῶς τὸ λουτρὸν but the Greeks proceeding safely (for) the rest τῆς ἡμέρας, αἵκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τιγρητᾶ of-the day, arrived at the river Tigris.

'Ενταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' Here there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the) ὄνομα αὐτῆς ἦν Λάρισσα: δὲ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαίων name to-it was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly αἰτήθην: Τὸ εἰρός δὲ τοῖς τείχοις αὐτῆς inhabited it. The breadth indeed of-the wall of-it ἦν πέντε καὶ εἰκοσὶ πόδες, δ' ὕψος ἑκατὸν· was five and twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred; ἡ περιόδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρασάγγαι: the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two parasangs;

φυσικὸς ἔκτις δὲ πληθὺς κεραμίας· δ' ὑπήν it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)

λείψανος κράτους τὸ ὕψος εἰκοσί πωδῶν. (a) stone foundation the height (of it being) twenty feet.

'Ο Βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον The king 'of (the) 'Persians, when (the) Persians were-wresting τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μῆδοιν, πολυποτῶν ταῦταν, the empire from (the) Medes, besieging this (city), ἐδώρατο οὐδὲν πρόπος ἐλείν· δὲ νεφέλη could in-no manner take (it); but (a) cloud προκαλίσασα ἐλιόν ἥφασίσε, μέχρι οἱ ἄνδραιοι having-covered (the) sun made-it-disappear, until the people ἐξέγειτον, καὶ οὕτως ἐὰλω. Παρὰ ταῦταν deserted (it), and so it-was-taken. Near this τὴν πόλιν ἦν λείψανος τυμβών, τὸ εἰρός — city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the breadth...
μὲν ένὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ υψὸς δύο πλέθρων.
indeed (of it was) of-one plethora, and the height of-two plethora.

"Επὶ ταύτης ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.
On this (pyramid) there were many of the barbarians.

ἀποστεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν καμών πλησίον.
Having fled from the villages near. Hence

ἐπορεύθησαν ἐνα σταθμῷ, ἐξ παρασάγγας,
they proceeded {one day's-march, (making) six parasangs,

πρὸς μέγα ἐποικὸν τείχος, κεῖμενον πρὸς τῇ —
to (a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a)

πόλει. δὲ ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα:
the name (of the) city was Mespila;

δὲ Μῆδοι ποτὲ ὄχον αὐτήν. Δὲ ἦ ἐποικίς
and (the) Medes formerly inhabited it. And the foundation

μὲν ἦν ξεστῷ λίθῳ κομψυλιατόν, τὸ εὑρὸς
indeed was of-polished stone (full of) shells, the breadth

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ υψὸς
fifty feet, and the height

πεντήκοντα. "Επὶ δὲ ταύτη ἐπωρακόμητο
fifty (feet). On — this was-constructed (a)

πλίνδινον τείχος, τὸ εὑρὸς μὲν
brick wall, the breadth indeed (thereof being) fifty

ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ υψὸς ἐκατόν. δὲ ἦ περίοδος τοῦ
feet, and the height a-hundred; and the circuit of the

κύκλον ἐξ παρασάγγαυ. "Ενταῦθε Μῆδια
enclosure (was) six parasangs. Here Media (the)

γυνὴ βασιλέως ἥλεγεν καταφυγεῖν ὅτε Μῆδοι
wife 'of (the) king it-is-said took-refuge when (the) Medes

ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν. Δὲ ὃ
were-deprived (of) the empire by (the) Persians. But the

βασιλεὺς Περσῶν πολυρριῶν ταύτην πόλιν
king 'of (the) 'Persians besieging this city 'was

οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἔλειν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίο.
not 'able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force;

not 'able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force;
δὲ Ζεὺς ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβρονθήτοις,
but Jupiter made the inhabitants (as it were) thunder-struck,
καὶ οὖτως ἔλαβο
and so (the place) was taken.

Ἐνευδέν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἡνα σταθμοὺν,
Hence — they proceeded one day's-march, (making)
tεττάρας παρασάγγας. Ἐις δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
four parasanga. In — this —
σταθμὸν Τισαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἕχων τε
day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having not-only (the)
ἰππεῖας οὓς αὐτὸς ἤλθε, καὶ τὴν δύναμιν
cavalry (with) which he came, but-also the force
Ὁρόντου τοῦ ἑκοντος τὴν θυγατέρα
of Orontes — (he) having (with him) the daughter
βασιλέως, καὶ ἕχων βαρβάρους
of (the) 'king (in marriage), and having (the) barbarians
οὓς Κύρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἕχων οὓς ὅ
whom Cyrus went-up (with), and having (the troops) which the
ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἔθεσεν βασιλεῖ, καὶ, 
brother 'of (the) 'king assisted (the) king (with), and,
πρὸς τοῦτος, διόσος βασιλεὺς ἐδώκεν αὐτῷ·
besides these, as-many-as (the) king had-given him;
ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολλ.
so-that the army appeared exceedingly (large). But
ἐπεί ἐγένετο ἐγγύς,
when he-came near, (then) indeed having-placed — (some)
tῶν τάξεων ὑπεδεῖ εἴχε, δὲ παρα- 
when (his) ranks in-the-rear he-kept (them there), but lead-
γαγών τὰς ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὰ 
(ranks) (obliquely) to-throw (them) to the
πλάγια, μὲν οὖν ἐνόπλωσεν οὖν
flanks, (though) indeed he-did not 'dare (to attack) nor
ἔθεσεν διακυνδυνεύειν· δὲ παρῆγγελε
did-he-wish to-risk (any thing); but he-ordered
σφειδοναῖν καὶ τοξεύειν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
(slings and) bows. When indeed the

(his men) to-use-their-
Ρόδιποι διαυακεχέντες ἐσφενδάνθησαν, ταῖς Σκύ-Rhodians dispersed along the ranks used their slings, and the Scy-
θίους νεώτερως ἔχων....

και οἱ οὐδεὶς ἤμαρταν
than archers used their bows, and no one failed of (a)

ἀνδρός,

(γὰρ οὐδὲ εἰ

‘man, [no one failed to hit a man, (for neither if he had

πᾶν προθύμοιτο ἢν ἤδιον,) καὶ ὅς ὁ Τισ-

very much desired (to do so) was it easy,) and — Tis-

σαφέρνης μᾶλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρησε ἔξω βελῶν,
saphernes very speedily retreated beyond (the) missiles,

καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι τάξεις
and the other divisions (of the Persians) also retreated.

και τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἔπορεύ-
And the rest of the day the (Greeks) indeed continued-

οντο, ὃ οἱ εἰπόντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
their-march, and the (enemy) followed; and the barbarians

οὐκέτα ἐσίνοντο τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·
o no-longer harassed (them) then with — (their) skirmishing;

γὰρ οἱ Ρόδιοι ἔσφενδον ὑπὲρτερον τῶν
for the Rhodes threw stones farther (than) the

Περσῶν καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. Δὲ καὶ τὰ
Persians and the most of the bowmen. And also the

τόξα, τὰ Περσικά, ἔστι μεγάλα· ἔστε ὁπόσα bows, (namely) the Persian, are large; so that as many

τῶν τοξευμάτων ἀλίσχοντο ἢν χρήσιμα τοῖς
of the arrows as were taken (up) were useful to the

Κρηθοῖ· καὶ διετέλεσαν χράμενοι τοῖς τοξεύμασι
Cretans, and they continued using the arrows

τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἔως ἡντες
of the enemy, and they practised shooting upwards going

μαχαί
far [and they practised shooting these arrows high into the air].

Δὲ καὶ εὐρίσκετο πολλά νεῦρα ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
And also they found many bow strings in the villages,

καὶ μόλυνος, ἔστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.
also lead, so as to be used for the slings.
καὶ μὲν ταῦτα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἔπεις οἱ Ἑλληνες
And indeed on that — day, when the
ἐπιτυχοῦσες κῶμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἱ
arriving at (the) villages encamped, the
βάρβαροι ἄπειλον, ἔρχοντες τὸτε μελῶν ἐν τῇ
barbarians departed, having then the-worst in the
ἀχροβολίῳς: δὲ τὴν ἐποίησαν ἡμέραν οἱ Ἑλληνες
skirmish; but on-the following day the Greeks
ἐμείναν, καὶ ἐπεστίλαντο· γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σίτος
remained, and collected-provisions; for there was much corn
ἐν ταῖς κῶμαις. Δὲ τῇ ἱστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύόντο
in the villages. But on the next-day they marched
dιὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνας ἐπιστεὶ ἀχροβο-
through the plain, and Tissaphernes followed throwing-
λὐκόμενος. Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔγνωσαν,
at-them-from-a-distance. Here indeed the Greeks perceived,
ὅτι πλαύσιον ἰσόκλευρον εἴη πόνηρα τάξις,
that (a) column of-equal-sides was (a) bad arrangement,
pολεμῶν ἐπομένων. Γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα
the enemy following. For if indeed the wings
τοῦ πλαύσιον συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδὸν ὀδηγεῖ
(or flanks) of-the square close-together, or (the) road being
στενοτέρας, ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων, ἢ γεφύρας,
narrow, or mountains forcing, or (a) bridge
ἐστιν ἀνάγκη τοὺς ὀπλίτας
to be passed, it is a-necessity (that) the heavy-armed-men
ἐκθέλεισαι, καὶ πορεύεσθαι ποιήσας,
be-pushed-out-of-their-places, and march with-difficulty,
ἀμα μὲν πεζομένων, δὲ καὶ ἀμα
at-the-same-time indeed (being) pressed-upon, and also at-the-same-time
ταραττομένων: δότε ἐνάγκη εἶναι
throw-into-confusion; so that (from) necessity (they were) to-be
δυσχρήστους, ὄντας ἀνάκτους. Δ᾽ αὖ ὅταν τὰ
useless, being in-confusion. And again when the
κέρατα διασχῆ, ἀνάγκη τότε τοὺς ἐκλε-
wings divide, it is necessary then (that) — (those pushed-
BOOK III. — CHAPTER IV.

...drawn-asunder, and the middle

twv xeratwv ginestai xenon, kai touc
(between) the wings becomes empty, and —

tauota paschontas adumein, twv
(these) 'being thus 'affected must-become-dispirited, the

poleimous epomenvon. Kai ovpote deu
enemy following (them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary

diabaiveiv gevfran h ti va alla diabaciv,
to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place,

ekastocos expeudev boulomenvos phasisu prwtov:
each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first;

kal h vn entaivda evkniseton toux poleimous.
and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the

Di etai oi strategoi enkousan tauota, epoimiavan
But when the generals knew this, they-formed

ex logosu ana ekaton andras, kai epistheta
six companies each-of-a-hundred men, and they-appointed

locaioi kai allous penthecaptains (over these) and (they appointed) others command-
koutiras, kai allous enmootarchas.
ing-fifty (men), and others commanding-five-and-twenty (men).

Ovtoi locaioi de porounomevoi,
These captains indeed (with their companies) on-the-march,

opote men ta xerata synkivtoi,
whenever indeed the wings (or flanks of the square) closed,

upemeron uestro, ostae mnh enochleiv tois xeraciv,
remained behind, so-as not to-disturb the flanks,

de tvte parhyon exwdev tvwn xeraton.
and then (they-led-on [defiled] outside the flanks.

De ovpote ai pleurai tou plaisiou daschoion
But whenever the flanks of-the square might-open

anexestimplasaen to meson, ei men to diexon eih
they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating was

stevneteron kata logosu, de ei plaxisteron kata
narrow by companies; but if somewhat-wide by
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

πέντεκοστὸς, δὲιὶ πλαῦν πλαῦν καὶ ἐνακούτος
fifties, and if very wide by twenty-fives;

δὲς τὸ μέσον ἄνει εἶναι ἐξελεύσιν. Ἐπὶ δὲ καὶ
so-as (for) the middle always to-be

πάλιν ἐπιταράγητο, ἐλλ' ὦ λοχαγοὶ
bridge, they-were not 'thrown-into-confusion, but the captains

διέβαλον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ ἐκ
(with their companions) went-over in — succession; and if

τι δὲν που τοὺς φάλαγγας, οὕτως
any-thing was-wanted any-where (in) the phalanx, these

ἐπιταράγησαν. Τοῦτο τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν
were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded

τέσσαρας σταδίους. Δὲ ἴσις ἐπορεύθησαν τὸν
four days'-march. But when they-were-proceeding on-the

πέμπτον, ἔδωκαν τῷ βασιλείῳ, καὶ περὶ
fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and around

άυτῷ πολλὰς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς
it (there were) many villages, and the road to

τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γενομένην διὰ ὑψηλῶν γηλόφων,
— this place lying over high

οἱ χαλκίας ἐπὶ θύρας ὑφὲς ὡς ἓν ὁ
which reached-down from (a) mountain at (the foot of) which was the

κόμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀσέβειοι ἔδωκαν τοὺς
village. And indeed the Greeks rejoicing saw the

γηλόφους, ὡς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμικῶν
hills, as (was) natural, (the forests) of-the enemy

ὄψιν ἐπείτειν. Ἑπεί δὲ πορεύομεν ἐκ τοῦ
being cavalry. When indeed proceeding from the

πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν τρόπον γηλοφοῦν, καὶ
plain they-asceded on-to the first hill, and (then)

κατέβαλον ὡς ἄναβαίνειν ἑκτι τὸν ἔτερον.
they-commenced-descending so-as to-asced on-to the next.

Ἐν τοίς οἱ βάρβαροι ἔπιγιγνονται, καὶ ἄρτῳ
Here the barbarians came-upon (them), and from.
τοῦ ὑπηλοῦ ἔβαλλον εἰς τὸ προσεῖς, the high (ground) they-threw to the places-below, (and) ἔσφενδον ἔτοξεν ὑπὸ μαστίγων. Kai used-the-slings (and) shot-their-arrows, under (the) lash. And ἔτι τρωσκὸν πολλοὺς καὶ ἔκρατησαν τῶν γυμ— they-wounded many, and they-had-the-advantage-of-the light— νήτων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἰσάγαμεν armed Greeks, and shut them up within τῶν ὀπλῶν, ὡς ταῦτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ the heavy-armed-men, so—that on—that — (same) day both οἱ σφενδούσαν καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι the slingers and the archers were entirely ἄχρηστοι, ἄντες ἐν τῷ ὀχλῷ. Δὲ useless, being among the crowd (of camp-followers). But ἐπεί οἱ Ἑλληνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν when the Greeks hard-pressed attempted to-pursue μὲν ἄφθονων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄχρον σχολῆ, ἄντες indeed they-arrived at the summits (but) slowly, being ὄπλων, δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπαθητῶν. Δὲ heavy-armed, but the enemy speedily sprang-down. And πάλιν, ὡς ταῦτα πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα, again, when they-went-back to the rest (of the) army, ἐπαχοῦς ταῦτά· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου they-suffered the-same; and at the second hill ταύτα ἐγένετο· ὡς ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ the-same-things occurred; so—that it-seemed (proper) to-them not κυνεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου, to-move the soldiers from the third hill, πρὶν ἄνηγαγον πελαστάζας ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιάς πλευρᾶς before they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank τοῦ πλαυσίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Ἐπεί δὲ οὗτοι of-the square on-to the mountain. When indeed these ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμιοι had-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy οὐκέτι ἔπετι ἔντον τοῖς καταβαίνονσι, δεδομέ— no-longer attacked the (Greeks) descending, having—
κότες μὴ ἀπομηνδεῖσαν, καὶ οἱ πολέμων· feared lest they might be cut off, and the enemy [the Greeks]

γένοντο αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρων. Πορευ-

καὶ οἱ πολέμων ἀμφοτέρων. They might be on them [the Persians] from both sides. March-

ὅμενοι οὔτω το λοιπὸν τὴς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν

ing thus for the rest of the day, — (some) indeed τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ

on the road over the hills, — (others) however ἐπιπαρίστατο κατὰ τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς

marching along (them) over the mountain, they arrived at τὰς κώμας, καὶ κατέστησαν ἄνω τὸ ἱεροῖς, γὰρ

the villages, and they appointed eight surgeons; for ἡσαν πολλοὶ τετραμένοι.

there were many wounded.

'Ενταῦθα ἤμεναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἔνεκα

Here they remained three days, both on account τῶν τετραμένων, καὶ εἶχον ἀμα

of the wounded, and (because) they had at the same time πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια,

much provisions, (namely) wheat, flour, wine, and much ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλὰς

barley having been laid up for horses. For this (barley) ἑν συνεννεγμένα τῷ σατραπῆνων τῆς

was collected for the (person) being satrap of the χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταβάσαν εἰς

country. But on the fourth day they went down to τὸ πεδίον. 'Εστι δὲ Τισαφέρης κατέλαβεν

the plain. When however Tissaphernes overtook αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἡ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν

them with — (his) force, — necessity taught αὐτοὺς κατασκευήσαν οὗ πρῶτον ἔδωκεν κόμην,

them to encamp where first they saw (a) village, καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἐτὶ μαχομένους· γὰρ ἦσαν

and not to march on still fighting; for there were πολλοὶ ἀνώμαχοι, οἱ τετραμένοι, καὶ

many unfit for action, (namely) — (those) wounded, and
οἱ φέροντες ἐκείνους· καὶ οἱ δεξαμενοὶ τὰ ὀπλά τῶν φέροντων. Ἕπειρ δὲ οἱ βαρβαροὶ προσέρχοντες πρὸς μιᾷ τῶν ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκροβόλησαν αὐτοῖς, τῆς πόλεως περίπου γὰρ διέφερε· τὰ δὲ ὄρμωντες ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι, much (that) rushing from (their own) ground they-repelled μάχοντος τοῖς πολέμοις ἐπισυνέον.  'Ηνία δ' ἦν ἦδη δείσυν· when indeed it-was now late-in-the λη, κἀ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς ἀπείπεν τὸ αὐτός· γαρ οἱ barbarians never encamped at-(a-less) (distance) the Greeks had greatly (the)-advantage; for they it-differed ἁρμότων ἐκχώρησαν καὶ ἀνοίξασθαι τοῖς πολέμοις ἐπισυνέον. (an attack), or (that) marching-along they-fought the ene-μίους ἐπισυνέο. When indeed it-was now late-in-the λη, ἦν ἄρα τοῖς πολεμικοῖς ἀπείπεν. γαρ οἱ afternoon, it-was time for the enemy to-depart; for the barbarian-to put to-attack encamped in (a) (distance) from the Grecian (camp) (than) sixty stadia, fear-μενοι μὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπιδέονται αὐτοῖς τῆς ing lost the Greeks might-attack them (in) the νυκτός. Γαρ ἡ Περσίχων στράτευμα ἔστι πονηρόν night. For (a) Persian army is (a) miserable νυκτὸς· γαρ τε οἱ κατωτέρων αὐτοῖς (thing) at-night; for not-only (are) — (their) horses — δέεσσαιν, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποιθείσιν 'tied, but-also (as) for the most (part) have-been-tied-by-εἰς τῶν μυρίον φέιγειν the-feet; on-account the not to-run-away [to prevent them running εἵνευς αὐτοῖς· εάν τε τῷ δόρυβος γίγνεται, away] if they-were-let-loose; if also any alarm should-occur, δεῖ πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ ἐπισάξαι it-becomes-necessary for (the) 'Persian man to-put-the-housings
τὸν ἰππόν, καὶ δεῖ χαλκόσαυ, καὶ
on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him), and

θορακίαν ἔντα ἀναβήναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἰππόν. Δὲ
having-put-on-armour to-mount on the horse. But

πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπά πολὺν νύκταν,
all these (things) (are) difficult to-perform by-night,

καὶ διὸς θοριόνων. Ὁ Ἐβεσσα
and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm]. On-account

τούτων ἀπεσκόνον πόρρω τῶν Ἐλλήνων.
of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the Greeks.

_DECLARED TO BE (THE SAME)

_De_ ἐπει ὦ _Ἐλλήνες_ ἐγίγνωσκόν αὐτοῖς
But when the Greeks knew (that) they

βουλομένους ἀπεύναυ καὶ διαγγελλομένους,
were-desiring to-depart and announcing (the same),

ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἐλλησι συσχενάζουσαι, τῶν
it-was-proclaimed to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the

πολεμίων ἀκούοντων. Καὶ οἱ βαρβαροὶ μὲν
enemy hearing (lit). And the barbarians indeed

tινα χρόνον ἐπέσχον τῇς πορείαις. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ
for-some time retarded the march; but when

ἐγίγνετο ὧς ἀπῆθαν. Γὰρ οὐ ἐδοξεί
it-became late they-went-away. For it-did not 'seem

λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατάγεσθαι
to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ
at the camp by-night. When indeed the

Ἐλλήνες ἦδη ἐώρων σαφῶς ἀποντας, καὶ
Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, also

αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύκαντες, καὶ διὰ βοῶν ὄσον
they-themselves having-decamped, even passed-over as-much-as

ἐξῆκοντα στάδια. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον
sixty stadia. And there-became such (an)

μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὡστε τῇ ὑστε-
interval (between) the armies, that on-the next-

ραίᾳ οἱ πολέμιοι οὐχ ἔφανησαν, οἶδὲ τῇ
day the enemy 'did not 'appear, nor on-the
τρίτη. Βεβαίως, οι βαρβάροι προελθόντες in-the-night occupied a place above-on-the-right, οι Ἑλληνες ἔμελλον παρεῖναι ἀκρωνυχίον by-which the Greeks had to-pass on-the-brow

οὗτος καταλαμβάνονσι χωρίον ὑπερδέζιον, in-the-night occupied (a) place above-on-the-right,

τὸ πεδίον. Σὲ ἔπειδη Χειρίσοφος, ἐώρα τὴν the plain. But when Cheirisophus saw the

ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην, καλεὶ Εὐνοφώντα eminence pre-occupied, he-calls-for Xenophon

ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς, καὶ κελεύει λαβῶντα τοὺς from the rear, and orders (him that) taking the

πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. Ο δὲ targeteers to-advance to the front. — But

Εὐνοφών μὲν οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστὰς, (γὰρ Xenophon indeed did not 'bring the targeteers, (for

ἐδρα Ῥισσαφέρην ἐπιφανῶμενον, καὶ πάν τὸ he-saw Tissaphernes appearing, and all — (his)

στρατευμα,) αὐτὸς δὲ προσελέσας ἱππότα. Τὴ army,) he-himself indeed having-ridden-up inquired: Why

καλεῖς; Σὲ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ Ἑξεστίν do-you-call (me)? But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: You-may

δραίῳ γὰρ ὁ λόφος ἐπὶ τῆς καταλαμβάνεις pre-occupied against-us, and it—is not (possible) to-pass (it),

τεληστηται ἦμιν, καὶ ἦστιν οὐ παρελθείν, for the eminence above the descent has-been-

εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψωμεν τούτων Ἀλλὰ τι — unless we-cut-off those (on it). — But why did-you

οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστὰς; Δὲ δὲ λέγει, not 'bring the targeteers? But — (Xenophon) replies,

ὅτι οὐκ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ καταλυπεῖν τὰ ὑπόσθεν that it—did not 'seem-right to-him to-leave the rear

ἔρημα, πολεμίων ἐπιφανομένων. Ἀλλὰ destitute (of defence), (the) enemy appearing. But
μεν ἐφη δρα γε βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις
indeed said he (it is) time to consider how

ἀπελατοί τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου.
(of us) will drive (these) men from the hill.

'Ενταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν κορυφήν τοῦ
Here Xenophon perceives the summit of the

ὅρους οὖσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος
mountain (as) being above the army (of the Perc-

ἐναυτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης
ians) themselves, and from this (place) (there was) (an) approach

ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἐνθα οἱ πολεμίοι ἤσαν, καὶ λέγει·
to the hill, where the enemy were, and he says:

Κράτιστον, ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἶμιν ἰσαῤῥι ὅς
(It is) best, O Cheirisophus, for us to go as

τάχιστο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄχρον· γὰρ ἦν
quick as possible on to the summit (of the mountain); for it

λάβομεν τοῦτο, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς οἰκοῦ οὐ
we take this, (those) above the road will not

δινῆσον μενείν. Ἄλλα, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ
be able to remain. But, if you wish, remain with

τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δὲ ἐδέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ
the army, I indeed wish to go forward; if

ἐὰν Χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ ἐγὼ
indeed you want it, proceed on to the mountain, and I

μενῶ αὐτῶν. Ἄλλα διδαμι σοι, ἐφη ὁ Χειρί-
will remain here. But I allow you, said O Cheiri-

σοφος, ἐλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
sofus, to choose which of the two you wish. O Xenophon

εἰπὼν ὅτι ἐστὶν νεώτερος αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,
replying that (as) he is the younger it becomes him to proceed,

δὲ κελεύει συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
and he requests to have sent (with himself) men from the

στόματος. γὰρ ἦν μαχρὸν λαβεῖν ἀπὸ
front; for it was a long way to take them from

τῆς οὐφᾶς. Καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς
the rear. And O Cheirisophus sends with him the
πελταστάς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τῶν targeteers from the front; he-took also the κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ’ ἐξέλευσε (targeteers) in (the) middle of-the square. And he-ordered καὶ συνέπεσαν αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίων, oḥō also to-follow him the three-hundred, (men) whom αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ he-himself had of-the picked-men in the front of-the πλαισίου square.

'Εντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύναντο. Hence they-marched-forward as speedily-as they-could. Δ’ οἱ πολέμοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς ἐνόησαν τὴν But the enemy on the eminence, when they-perceived the πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄχρον, εἶδος καὶ αὐτῶν march of-those towards the summit, directly also they ἀμμηναν ἁμαλλασθέω ἐπὶ τὸ ἄχρον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα rushed to-contend for the summit. And here ἦν μὲν πολλὴ κραγῇ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ- was indeed (a) great about from-the Grecian ar- ματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς εκατόν, δὲ my, cheering-on — (those) of-their-men, and πολλὴ κραγῇ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρης much, shouting from — (those) about Tissaphernes [from the διακελευομένων τοῖς εκατόν. army of Tissaphernes] cheering-on — (those) of-their-men. Δὲ ξενοφῶν παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρε- But Xenophon riding-along on — (a) horse en- κελεύετο· Νομίζετε, ὦ ἄνδρες, νῦν encouraged (his men): Consider, O men, (that) now (you are) ἁμαλλασθέω ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς to-contend for — Greece, now for — (your) παιδὰς καὶ τὰς γυναικας, νῦν πονηροσαντας children and — (your) wives, now having-laboured ὀλίγον πορευομέθα τὴν λοιπὴν ἀμαξεί a-little we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting.
Δε Σωτηρίδης ο Σικυώνος εἰπεν· Ἐσμέν οίκες ἐξ
But Soterides the Sicyonic said: We are not on
κιος, ὁ Ξενοφῶν· γὰρ σὺ μὲν ὀχεῖ ἐφ' an-equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed are-carried on (a)
ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμων χαλεπῶς, φέρων τὴν horse, I however labour grievously, carrying — (my)
ἀσπίδα. Καὶ δὲ, ἄκουσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας
shield. And who, hearing this, having-leaned
ἀντὶ τοῦ ἵππου, ἅθειται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,
and pushed him from the ranks, from — (his)
καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἔπορεύετο ἔχων
and taking — (his) shield, he-proceeded, having (it),
ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Εὐτύχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων
as speedily-as he-was-able. He-happened — also having (a)
θόρακα τοῖν ἵπποιν· ὡστε corselet (on) (namely, that peculiar to) the cavalries; so-that
ἐπιείξετο. Καὶ μὲν παρεκχελέυετο τοῖς he-was-oppressed. Yet however he-continued-to-exhort — (those)
ἐπιπροσθέν ὑπάγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὑπισθέν, ἐπο— in-front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, fol—
μένων μόνος παριέναι. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιωταὶ
owing with-difficulty to-come-up. But the other soldiers
παῖοις, καὶ βάλλοντι καὶ λοιποῦσι τῶν Σωτη— and throw-at and revile — Sote—
ρίδων, ἵστε ἴναγχασαν λαθόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα
rides, until they-obliged (him) taking — (his) shield
πορεύεσθαι. Δε ο ἀναβάς ἐκς to-march-forward. But — (Xenophon) having-remounted as-long-as
μὲν ἦν βάσιμα ἔγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου, indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on horse-back,
ἄκρας ἦν ἄβατα, καταλιπών τὸν ἵππον but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his) horse
ἔσπευδε πεζῷ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄχρα he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the summit
φθάνουσι τοῖς πολέμιοις.
they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy.
CHAPTER V.

Εἰνδα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἐφευγοῦν
Then truly indeed the barbarians having-turned fled
ἡ ἔκαστος ἐδώνατο, δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες
(by the way) which each-one could, and the Greeks
eἰχον τὸ ἄχρον. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ
held the summit. | — (Those) indeed about [the armies of] Tiss-
ἠχερεν καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀντιπαλὸμενου ὄχοντο
sapphernes and Arius having-turned-aside went-off
ἀλλην ὡδὸν. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον κατα-
another way. — (Those) indeed about Cheirisophus de-
δὴντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ
scending encamped in (a) village filled (with)
pολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄλλαι
many good (things). And also there were other
κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν
villages in this — plain along the river
Τήγρητα, πληρεῖς πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δ’ οὖν
Tigris, full of many good (things). But, when
ὅπλην οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξεμαίνον ἐπιφαι-
it was late-in-the-afternoon, the enemy suddenly ap-
νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψαν τινὰς τῶν
pear in the plain, and cut-off some-of-the
Ἑλλήνων ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καὶ ἄρη-
Greeks dispersed in the plain for plun-
γήν γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων
der; for also many herds of-cattle
κατελήφησαν
were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the
πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἔνταῦθα Τισσαφέρης
opposite-side of the river. Here Tissaphernes
καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς
κωμὰς. Καὶ τινὲς τῶν Ἑλλήνων μᾶλα ἤθυ-
villages. And some of the Greeks were much 'dis-
μασαν, ἐννοοῦμενοι μὴ, εἰ καίοιεν
heartened, being apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages) they-
οὐχ ἔχουν ὅποιον λαμβάνουν τὰ
would not have (a place) whence they-might-procure —
ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄμφι Χειρίσοφον
provisions. And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus
ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βονὴδείας
[Cheirisophus and his men] returned from (giving) — assistance;
ὁ δὲ Ξεινοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέθη, παρελάυνων τὰς
— but Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past the
τάξεις, ἤνικα οἳ Ἑλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ
ranks, when the Greeks came-back from (giving)
τῆς βονὴδείας, ἔλεγεν. Ὅρατε, ὁ Ἑλληνες ἄνδρες,
— assistance, said: You-see, O Grecian men,
ὑφείντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι ἦδη
(th.e enemy) conceeding (that) the country is now
ὑμέτεραν γὰρ αὐτὸς ἐπένδυσον διεπάτ-
for that-which, when they-made-the-truce, they-stipu-
tονο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, νῦν
lated-for, not to-burn the country 'of (the) 'king, now
αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὅς ἄλλοτρίαν.
they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to) another.
"Αλλ' ἐὰν γε ποῦ καταλίπωσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
But if at-least any-where they-leave — provisions
αὐτοῖς διόνυται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους ἐνταῦθα.
for-themselves they-will-see even us proceeding thither.
"Αλλ', ὅ Χειρίσοφος, ἔφη, δοξεῖ μοι
But O Cheirisophus, said-he, it-seems-to-me (that we ought)
βονὴδείν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας, ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς
to-give-assistance against — (those) burning, as for — (our)
ἡμετέρας. "Ο δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐπιτευξ.
own-country. — But Cheirisophus said: It-does not therefore
BOOK III. — CHAPTER V.

δοξεῖ ἐμοὶ γε ἀλλὰ, ἐφη, ἢμείς καὶ ὑμεῖς,

seem (so) to-me-at-least; but, said-he, 'let us —

καὶ οὖν ἐπὶ ῥᾶττον παύσονται.

and so they-will the-sooner cease.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς οἱ

But when they-went-away to — (their) tents the

ἄλλοι ἦσαν μὲν

rest (of the army, being the private soldiers,) were indeed occupied

περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ

about the provisions, but (the) generals and (the) captains

συνήλθον. Καὶ ἥν πολλή ἀπορία

convened-together (in council). And there-was much perplexity

ἐνταῦθα. Γὰρ μὲν ἐκδεν ἥν ὅρη ἰσπερῖ

For indeed from-here there-were mountains exceeding-

ψῆλα, δὲ ἐκδεν ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τὸ ὅψη

high, but from-there — (a) river (having) so-great — (a)

βάθος, ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ἐπερέχευν

depth, so-that not-even the spears were-above (the water)

πειρωμένους τοῦ βάθους. Δὲ τις ἄνηρ

(to those) making-trial of-the depth. But a-certain man

Ῥόδιος προσελθὼν αὐτοῖς ἀπορομένους εἶπεν·

(a) Rhodian coming-to them (thus) perplexed said:

Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὃ ἀνδρεῖς, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ

I will, 0 men, have-crossed you 'over by

τετρακισχίλιους ὁπλίτας, ἀν ὑπηρετήσῃ
tetra- thousand heavy-armed-men 'at-a-time, if you-will-supply

ἐμοὶ ἡν ὀπλοῦ, καὶ πορίσητε τάλαντον

me with-what I-want, and will-furnish (me) (a) talent (as a)

μισθὸν. Δὲ ἐρωτώμενος ὅτιν εὔποτο. Δεήσομαι,

reward. But being-asked what he-might-require: I-shall-want,

ἐφη, δισεκατοχόν ἄσκον. ὃ ὅρο πολλὰ πρόβατα

said-he, two-thousand hides-for-bags; and I-see many sheep

καὶ αὐγὰς καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ, ἀποδαρέντα

and goats and oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned

καὶ φύσιντα, ἀν ῥαδίως παρέχου τὴν

and blown-out, " might easily furnish tho (means of)
diábasin. Dé kai de'chomai tôn devmow, ois crossing. And also I-shall-want the cords, which
chrísete peri tâ ipoqênia: toû ton izeiças tois you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these having-joined the
âskous prodâ allâlon, òrmisâs exaston âskhân bags to one-another, having-stretched each bag,
âdous: árthôsas, kai âephy sostones (having-been-suspended (from it), and having-'let (them) 'down
áster anxûras eîc to ìkwar, diáxagwôn like anchors into the water, having-'extended (the bags) 'across
kai òdhas âmforóteç atom, épibalô and having-secured (them) to-both (banks), I-will-'put
îlnh, kai épíforesw yinh. 'Otw wood 'on (them), and will-'throw earth 'over (the wood). That
ôv men ou kapatadîsaddhe, màla therefore indeed you-will not 'be-sunk, | (as) you-will much
aâvika eîseswé: yâr nâz immediately 'see; [as you will at once perceive:] for every
âskos ìzêi dio ándras tou òh kapatadînai: skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk; [will
keep two men from sinking:] and the wood and the earth
sgîzhei òste mh òlôsañeiny. Toîs strattpwçs, will-keep (them) so-as not to-fall-off. To-the generals,
âkoussas taîta, to evdîmuma mên edóxei eînou having-heard this, the contrivance indeed seemed to-be
cháin, dé to ergon âdînatoû: yâr ìsân pe-inventious, but the execution impossible; for there-were on-the-
par pòllloi îpneîs oî xalîmsontes, other-side many horsemen (those) would-be-disputing (their pas-
oî evdîs: òn epîterepov toîs prôtov age), (and) who immediately would permit the first (or
poiein ouîên toûtov. 'Entaîtha mên (foremost) to-do none of-these. Thence indeed
trîn ûsteraîava iâpanegyôroun eîc toûmpalav, on-the next-day they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again,
πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαίρετους
by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the unburnt
κόμας, κατακαίεσθαις ἐνθεν ἐξήσαν. ἦσε
villages, having-burnt (those) whence they-departed; so-that
οἱ πολέμοι οἱ προξέλανθον, ἀλλὰ ἦσε- the enemy 'did not 'come-up (to them), but continued-
ωντο, καὶ ἦσαν ὁμοίως θαυμάζειν
observing (them), and they-were like to-wonder [and they won-
ὅποι ποτὲ οἱ Ἔλληνες πρέξονται, καὶ dered] where at-any-time the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and
τι ἐχοιεν ἐν νόῳ. Ἑνταῦθα μὲν οἱ άλλοι what they-might-have in (their) mind. There - indeed the rest
στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἀμφί τά ἐπιτήδεια· (of the) soldiers were (occupied) about — provisions;
δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνήθεον, but the generals and the captains again assembled
καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐκαλωκότας,
και συναγαγόντες τούς ἐκαλωκότας,
(ἐν συνεχείᾳ), and having-brought-together — (those) taken-prisoners,
ἀρέσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ,
they-questioned (them about) all the country in-a-circle (round
τὸς ἐκάστην εἶν. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον, about them), what each (part) might-be. And — (they) said,
ὅτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἶν τῆς that the (parts) indeed towards (the) south were — (those)
ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδιάν δι’ ἧσπερ towards Babylon and Media through which they (the Greeks)
’ἔκοψαν· δὲ ἦν πρὸς ἐγερθεὶς ἐπὶ Σοῦσα had-come; and — (that) towards (the) east led to Susa
τε καὶ Ἐρυθάνα καὶ Βασιλεὺς λέγεται — and Ecbatana where (the) king is-said
Ἀπειρίζειν καὶ ἀπειρίζειν· δὲ ἦν διαβαίνειν τὸν to-spend-the-summer and spring; and the (road) going-across the
ποταμὸν πρὸς ἀπολαμβάνειν φέροι ἔπι Λυδίαν καὶ river towards (the) west led to Lydia and
Ἰωνίαν· δὲ ὅτι ἦν διὰ τῶν ὄρεων καὶ τετραμμένη Ionia; and that the (road) over the mountains and winding
πρὸς ἀρχετόν ἀγοι εἰς Καρδοῦχους. Δὲ ἐφασαν

 cheated 

 (the) 

 οἱ εἰκονοστησαν upon account of the difficulties of the country. When however 

 σατράτην τὸν πρὸς σατράτην τὸν — ἐν they made a treaty with the satrap — (he who dwelt) in 

 τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ σφῶν — ἐπιμνηναι the plain, (that) also some of those (of the plain) had intercourse 

 τῷ πρὸς ἔκείνους καὶ ἔκείνου with those (mountaineers) and some of those (mountaineers) 

 of the plain. 

 ὁι στρατηγοὶ αὐτοὶς ταῦτα ἔκάθισαν The generals having heard these (things) placed 

 χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας εἰδέναι apart — (those) saying (that) they knew (the road) 

 ἐκασταχάσεις ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν ὅπως, ὅπως ἐμέλλον in each direction, making no one certain, whither they intended 

 πορεύσασαι. Ἔδωκε δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι to proceed. It seemed however to the generals to be 

 ἀναγκαίαν ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς necessary to force their way over the mountains into (the country) 

 Καρδοῦχους. γὰρ ἐφασαν διελθοντας for they said (that) having passed through 

 τούτοις ἐκείνῳ εἰς Ἀρμενίαν'sa large
καὶ εἴδαιμονος, ἦς ὁ Ὀρόντας ἦρξε. Δ’ ἐντεύθεν
and rich, (and) which Oronates governed. And whence
ἔφασαν εἶναι εὐπορον πορεύεσθαι
they-said (that it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed
τις ὅπου ἔδεικνυτο Ἐπὶ τοῦτοι ἔδω—
any where they-might-wish. With-reference to-these (things) they-
σαντο, ὅπως ὅτινικα καὶ δοκοῖ τῇς
sacrificed, in-order-that when it-might even 'seem (to be) the
ἂρας ποιοίντω τῇν πορείαν (γὰρ
time they-'might (begin to) 'make the march (for
ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τῇν ἑπερβολὴν τῶν ὃρων
they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains
προκαταληφθεῖν) καὶ παρῆγγελαν
might-be-pre-occupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced (that)
ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαειν πάντας συνέσκευ:
when (the soldiers) had-supped (that) all having-packed-
ἀσμενοις ἄναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἐπεσθαί
up-their-baggage are-to-go-to-rest, and to-follow (their leaders)
ἡνίκα τις ἄν παραγγελῇ.
when any 'signal might 'be-given.
Εοσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει
What indeed really happened in the expedition-up-the-country
μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τῆς μάχης
till the battle, and what (occurred) after the battle
ἐν τοῖς σπονδαῖς, ἀς βασιλεῖς καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες
during the truce, which (the) king and the Greeks
ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα,
going-up with Cyrus made, and what, (the)
βασιλέως καὶ Τισαφέρνους παραβάντος ταῖς
king and Tissaphernes having-broken the
σπονδαῖς, ἐπολεμίζοντας πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, τοῦ
war-was-waged against the Greeks, the
Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπακολουθοῦντος
Persian army pursuing (them),
δεδῆλοντα ἐν τῷ πρὸς θεν ἱόγῳ.
has-been-related in the preceding discourse.

Δὲ ἔστι ἄφικτον, ἐνδα μὲν ὁ ποταμὸς Τίγρης
But when they-arrived, where indeed the river Tigris
ἣν παντάπασιν ἀπορος διὰ τὸ βάθος
is altogether impassable on-account-of — (its great) depth
καὶ μέγεθος, δὲ ἦν οὐ πάροδος
and size, and there-was no passage (along the banks),
ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὑπὲρ ἑκρέματο ἄπτομα
as indeed the Carduchian mountains hung steep
ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδόξη τῇ τοῖς
over this — river, it-seemed truly (therefore) to-the
στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευτέον διὰ τῶν ὅρεων.
generals to-be necessary-to-march over the mountains.

Γὰρ ἦκουν τῶν ἀλισκομένων, ὦτι, εἰ
For they-had-heard — (from those) made-prisoners, that, if

dιέλθοντεν τὰ Ἀκρόχυρα ὄρη, διαβὰνοντες τὰς
they-should-cross the Carduchian mountains, they-might-cross the

πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἱ’ Ἀρμενία,
sources of-the river Tigris in — Armenia,

ἡν μὲν βούλωνται, δὲ ἦν βούλωνται μὴ,
if indeed they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not

περίασιν.
peril in.

Καὶ τε ἐλέγετο
(to do so), ‘they (might) go-round (them). And also it-was-said

τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω
(that) the sources of-the Euphrates were not far

τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὖτως ἔχον.
from-the Tigris, and it-is so having [and it is

Δὲ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολὴν εἰς τοὺς
really so]. And they-make (the) irruption into the (terri-

καρδούχους ὅδε, πειρώμενοι ἁμαρτία
(therefore the) Carduchi in-this-manner, endavouring at-the-same-time

μὲν λαδεῖν
dé αἱμα φθα-

—indeed to-have-concealed (their march) and also at-the-same-time to-anf-

σαι τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαβεῖν τὰ
cipate the enemy before (that) they-have-occupied the

άχρα. Ἑπεὶ δ’ ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν
heights. When indeed it-was about the last

φυλακὴν, καὶ ἐλείπετο δοῦν τῆς νυκτὸς
watch, and there-was-left as-much of-the night (as)

διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον σκοταίους, τηριάται ἀναστάν-
to-pass-over the plain in-the-dark, then rising-

τες, ἀριτὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ-
(up, (and) at the-word-of-command marching-forth they-

νοῦνται ἁμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day at

tο ὀρος.
the mountain.
Ἐνδα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤγειτο τοῦ
Here indeed Chelrisophus — took-the-lead of-the
στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφὶ αὐτὸν
army, taking (with him) — (those) about him
καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνὰς. δὲ Ἐνοφῶν
and all the light-armed-men; but Xenophonz
εἰπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις ὁποιοδοὺς ἔχων
followed with the heavy-armed rear-guard, having
οὐδὲνα γυμνάτα. γὰρ ἐδοξεῖ ἐῖναι οὐδεὶς
not-one light-armed-man; for there-seemed to-be no
κίνδυνος, μὴ τις ἐπισπευτο ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθὲν,
fear, lest any-one might-pursue from — behind,
πορευμένων ἄνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
(they) marching upwards. And Chelrisophus indeed
ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄχρον, πρὶν τινα τῶν
went-up on-to the summit, before (that) any-one of-the
πολεμίων αἱρεῖται. Δ’ ἐπείτα ἰσχυρεῖτο
enemy perceived (him). But then led-forward-slowly:
δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀεὶ ὑπὲρ-
and the (part) of the army from-time-to-time passing-
τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἁγκεσοὶ τε καὶ μναχοῖς
over — (those) in the narrow-valleys and also —(the) recesses
τῶν ὅρηων.
of-the mountains.

Ἐνδα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλεισόντες τὰς
Then truly indeed the Carduchi, having-left —
oἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναῖκας καὶ παιδας,
their dwellings, and having (their) wives and children,
ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ὑν δὲ πολλὰ τὰ
fled on-to the mountains. There-was indeed much —
ἐπιτηδεῖα λαμβάνειν. δὲ καὶ οἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν
provisions to-take; and also — (their) dwellings were
κατασκευασμέναι παμπόλλοις χαλκόμασι, δὲν οἱ
furnished with-a-great-many brazen-utensils, of-which the
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER I.

"Ελλήνες ἐφερον οὐδὲν, οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοῖς
Greeks took-away none, nor did-they-pursue the
ἀνδρῶν τοὺς, ἵπποιδομένους, εἰ οἱ
people, sparing (them), as-if (to try whether) the
Καρδούχωι ἐδιέλθειαν τὼς αὐτοῖς διέναι
Carduchi "would by-any-means 'let them pass-through
ὡς διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας ἐπείπερ ἦσαν
as through — (a) friendly country in-as-much-as they-were
πολέμιοι βασιλεῖ. Μέντοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
enemies 'to (the) 'king. However the provisions,
ὅτω τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι,
[to-which any-one might-arrive, [which any one might obtain.]
ἐλάμβανον, γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγχη. Δὲ οἱ
they-took; for it-was (a) necessity (to do so). But the
Καρδούχωι οὕτε ὑπήκοουν, καλούντων, οὕτε ἐποί-
Carduchi neither listened, being-called-on, nor did-they-
οῦν οὐδὲν ἄλλο φιλικόν.
make any-one other friendly (demonstration). But when the
τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἐλλήνων κατέβασαν εἰς τὰς κόμας
rear of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἡδὴ σχοταῖοι (γὰρ διὰ
from the eminence (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of
τὴν ὀδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἡ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατάβασις
the road — being narrow, the ascent and descent
εἰς τὰς κόμας ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς
to the villages happened for-them (to be the occupation of)
τὴν θλήνην ημέραν), τότε δὴ των ὁ ποὺν Καρδούχων
the entire day); then indeed some of-the Carduchi
συλλεγόντες ἐπέδεντο τοῖς τελευταῖοι, καὶ
collecting-together attacked the hindmost, and
ἀπεκτείναν τινάς, καὶ κατέτρωσαν
they-killed some, and worried (them with) stones
καὶ τοξούμασι, ὀντες ὀλίγοι, γὰρ
and arrows, (they, the Carduchi,) being few, for
τὸ Ἐλληνικὸν ἐπέσεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοχῆτον.
the Grecian (army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly.
Εἰ μέντοι τότε συνελέγησαν πλείους ἢ ωσεὶ γὰρ (numerosity) (a) πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἔκινδυνεσεν· ἀν great (part) of the army would-have-been-in-danger —

διαφθαρήσαι. Καὶ οὐτω μὲν τὴν νύκτα to-have-been-destroyed. And so indeed — (that) night

ηλίσθησαν ἐν τοῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρποῦχοι they-lodged in the villages; and the Carduchi

ἐκαίνον πολλὰ πυρὰ κίλλω ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ burned many fires in a circle on the mountains, and

συνεϊπόν ἀλλήλους. Ἄμα δὲ observed (the position of) one-another. At-the-same-time indeed

τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best) to-the generals and

λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνελθοῦσιν, captains of the Greeks having-assembled-in-council,

πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε τὰ ἀναγκαία καὶ to-march-forth having also (only) the necessary and

δυνατότατα τῶν ἰπποζύγων, καταληψώντας τάλλα, strongest of the baggage-cattle, leaving-behind the-rest, καὶ ὅποσα ἀνθράποδα ἢν νεοστὶ αἰχμάλωτα and as-many slaves (as) were recently captured, ἀφεῖναι πάντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Γὰρ τὰ to-dismiss all (these) in the army. For the made the march slow; and the many (men)

ἐπιόυν τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἰ πολλοὶ and the many (men)

ὅπες ἐπὶ τούτους ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, ἐδει being (in charge) over these were unfit-for-action, it-was-necessary

τε διπλάσια ἐπιτυθείσα πορίζεσθαι also (that) double (the quantity of) provisions be-procured

καὶ φέρεσθαι, τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὅντων πολλῶν. Δὲ and carried, the men being many. And

δόσαν ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω. they-approved these (things), (and) proclaimed to-do so.
Επεί δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο,
When indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their march),
οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,
the generals standing-secretly in — (a) narrow (part of the)
eἰ εὐφυσοῦν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ
road), if they-found any-thing of-the (things) mentioned not
ἀφειμένων, ἀρρησύντο·
left, they—took (them) 'away; the (men) indeed
ἐπείδοντο, πλὴν εἰ τις ἔκλεψε τι, οἶνον ἡ
obeyed, unless if any-one was-smitten-with any-thing, as if
ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ἡ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν.
having-desired (a) boy or woman of-the handsome-ones.
Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν οὔτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν,
And indeed they-proceeded thus that —
τὰ μὲν μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ
— (sometimes) indeed fighting somewhat, and also — (sometimes)
ἀναπανόμενοι. Δὲ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν πολιῶς
resting. But on the next-day (a) great
χειμῶν γίγνεται, δὴ ἦν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι.
storm happened, but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;
γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτίθεσι  ἦν οὐ ἰκανὰ. Καὶ μὲν
for the provisions were not sufficient. And indeed
Χειρίσσοφος ἤγειτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὑπωσοφυλάκει.
Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-the-rear.
Καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπετίθεντο ἵσχυρος καὶ
And the enemy 'pressed greatly 'on (them) and
τῶν χωρίων ὑπὸ τῶν στενῶν, προσιόντες
the places being narrow, (the enemy) coming-up
ἐγγὺς ἐπόξενον καὶ ἐφορευόντων. ὡςτε οἱ Ἑλληνες
near they-shot-arrows and sling-stones; so-that the Greeks
ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἰγναχάζοντο
pursuing and again pursuing were-compelled
πορεύεσθαι σχολὴ καὶ θαμνὰ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
to-march slowly; and frequently — Xenophon
παρῆγγελλεν ὑπομένειν, διὸ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπικέειντο
passed-the-word to-halt, when the enemy might-press
Then — Cheirisophus when the word was passed at other times indeed halted, but once he did not halt, but led on rapidly, and ordered to follow; so that it was evident that there was some thing to do; but there was not leisure for a person moving along (to the front) to have ascertained the cause of the haste; so that the march became like a fight for the rear-guard. And here a brave man died, being shot with an arrow through the shield and the corselet on the right side, and also Basias (an Arcadian shot) right through the head. When indeed they arrived at the station immediately having gone as he had (himself) just as he was to — Cheirisophus he blamed him, that he did not halt but (that) they were compelled at the same time to fight.

And now two honourable and also brave men have died, and we could neither carry away (their bodies) nor.
θάψαι. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταύτα:
bury (them). — Cheirisophus answered to these

Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἰδε
(things), Look, said-he, at — (these) mountains, and see

ὡς ἀβατα πάντα ἑστὶ· ἰδὲ αὐτὴ μία ὁδὸς,
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (only) road,

ἡν ὄρας, ὄρδια, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτη ἑξεστὶ σοι
which you-see, (is) steep, and on this it-is-allowed to-you

ὄραν τοσοῦτον ὄχλον ἀνδρῶνον οἱ κατει-
how-great (a) multitude of-men (there are) who having-

ληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἐκβασιν. Ταὐτ',
occupied guard the pass. For these (reasons)

ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ἐπέμενον
I hastened-on, and for this I did not "wait-for

σε, εἰ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι τὴν
you, (but strove) if by-chance I could reach the

ὑπερβολὴν πρὶν κατείλθησαι·
passage-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-occupied (by the enemy);

δὲ οἱ ἄγεμόνες οὐς ἔχομεν, φασίν ἐκεῖν ὑμᾶς
for the guides whom we-have, (say) (that) there-is no

ἂλλην ὁδὸν. Ὅ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει · Ἀλλʼ ἐγὼ
other road. — But Xenophon says: But I

ἔχω διὸ ἄνδρας. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ παρείχον
have two men. (For when (the enemy) presented

πράγματα ὑμῖν,
things to-us, (for when the enemy annoyed us), we-placed-an-

ἐνηδρείας, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐπιτεθεῖσα ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεύσας),
ambush, (which also made us breathe,) (and

καὶ ἀπεκτείναμεν τινὰς
which gave us time to breathe,) and we-killed some

αὐτῶν, καὶ προὐδρομήθημεν λαβεῖν γίνοντας,
of-them, and we-were-eager to-take (them) alive,

ἐνεκεῖν αὐτοῦ τοῦτον ὅπως χειραίμεθα
on-account-of this very-same (thing) that we-might-use (them as)

ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.
guides knowing the country.
Kai ei̯dws áγαγóntes toús ánδρóπους, diála-
And immediately leading-forward the men, having-
βóntes ἔλεγχον, ei̯ eidei̯ein tina
'taken (them) 'apart they-questioned (them), if they-knew any
ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἡ τῆν
other road than the (one) apparent (before them). The (one)
μὲν οὖν ἔφη
indeed — said (that there was) not another, and very
πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων. de epei̯ éleγεν
many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but when he-said
οἴδεν ὄφελμον, κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἔτερου ὑπόπτος.
nothing useful he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (it).
Δὲ ὁ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν οτί οὐτὸς μὲν
But the (one) remaining said that this (other one) indeed 'would
οὐ φαίη
not 'say (any thing about another road) | to-appear through this
eidein poi̯ tía tauta
that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him
[for the reason] that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him
ἐκεῖ παρ’ ἄνδρι ἐξεδομένη.
there with (a) man having-been-given (to him in marriage); but
αὐτὸς ἔφη 
he said (that) he-would-lead (them) 'by (a) road possible

πορεύεσθαι καὶ ἱποκυνίοις. Δ’ ἑρωτάμενος, εἰ
to-be-passed-through even by-beasts-of-burden. But 'being-asked, if
ἐὶ̯ ñ̯ καριόν ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπαριτόν, ἔφη
there-were any place in it difficult-to-pass, he-said (that)
ἔπαινο δ’ ἄκρον, ὃ ei mi̯ tis προκαταλήψιον
there-was (a) height, which — unless some-one should- 'take-possession-of

ἐσεθαι ἀδύνατον παρελθεῖν ἕκτεν Ἐνταῦθα
(it) 'beforehand it-would-be impossible to-pass-over (it). Then
ἐδοξει̯ συνχαλέσαντας λοχαγικὸς καὶ
it-seemed-proper having-called-together (the) captains (being) also
πελταστάς καὶ τῶν ὅπλων, τῇ λέγειν
targeteers, and (those) of-the heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell

τὰ
(them) the (things) being-present, [and inform them of the state of affaires,]
BOOK IV.—CHAPTER I.

καὶ ἐρωτῶν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, δεις ἂν ἐξέλθῃ
and to-inquire if there-is any-one of-them, who might wish

γενέσθαι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ, καὶ
(to prove himself) to-be (a) courageous man, and

ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι
having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)

ἐξέλοντῆς. Τῶν ὀπλιτῶν μὲν Ἄριστωνυμος
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus (of)

Μεθυδρίους Ἄρχας ἠφίσταται, καὶ Ἄγασίας
Methydrion (an) Arcadian offered-himself, and (also) Agasias

Στυμφάλιος Ἄρχας ἔδος Καλλίμαχος Παρ-
(of) Stymphalus (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par-

ῥάσιος, Ἄρχας, ἀντιστασίας αὐτοῖς,
rhasia, (an) Arcadian, contesting (the honour) with them,

ἔφη οὖτος εὔδελειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαθὼν
said (that) he-himself wished to-go taking (with him)

ἐξελοντας ἐν παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. Γὰρ
volunteers from all the army. For

ἔγὼ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἔσονται,
I, said-he, know that many of-the young-men will-follow,

ἐμοὶ ἴγουμένου. Ἐξ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἰ τις καὶ
I leading. After this they-inquired, if any also

τῶν γυμνὴτῶν ταξιαρχῶν ἔδέλων συμπορεύεσθαι.
of-the light-armed taxarchs might-wish to-go-with

Ἀριστέας Χίος ἠφίσταται, δὲ
(of) Aristeas (of) Chios offers-himself, (a man) who

πολλαχοῦ ἐγενέτο ἄξιος πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ
often had-been worthy of-much in-the army

ἐἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.
on (occasions) — like-these.

21 •
Καὶ ἦν ἴδη μὲν δείλη, δ’ οἶ
And it was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the (generals,)

ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγώντας
Cheirisophus and Xenophon, ordered them having-eaten-something

πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ δῆσαντες τὸν ἴχνον παρα-
to-march-forth. And having-bound the guide they-
dιδόσιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται ἡ
’delivered (him) to-them, and they-arrange-with (them) if

λάβωσι τὸ ἄρχον, φυλάττειν τὸ
they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard the

χώριον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀμα τὴ
place (during) indeed the night, but at-the-same-time with-the

ἡμέρα σημαίνειν σάλπυγγι. καὶ
(dawn of) day to-give-the-signal ‘with (the) ‘trumpet; and (that)

μὲν τοὺς δυνάς ἀνω έναι ἐπὶ τοὺς
indeed — (those) being above to-go against — (those)

κατέχοντας τὴν φανερὰν ἐκβαίνων, δὲ αὐτοῖ
having-possession-of the apparent egress, and they (the

ἐκβαίνοντες συμβοήσειν ὡς
generals) coming-forth (from below) altogether-to-assist (them) ‘as

τάχιστα δύνανται. Συνδέμουν ταῦτα οἱ
speedily ‘as they-could. They-having-arranged these (things) the

μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δις-
(detachment) indeed proceeded (being a) multitude-of about ‘two-

χίλιοι. καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὦδορ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.
thousand; and there was much water from heaven [and there

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς
was a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having the

ὁπισθοφίλειας, ἥγειτο πρὸς τὴν φανερὰν
rear-guard, led (them) to the apparent
ἐξβαίνειν, ὅπως οἱ πολέµιοι προχοροῦν τὸν νοῦν egress, so that the enemy might-direct — (their) mind ταύτη τῇ ὀδῷ, καὶ ὥς οἱ περιόντες to-that — road, and so (that) — (those) going-round-about μάλιστα λάθους. Δὲ ἔπει οἱ ὁπισώφυλακες 'might' the-best 'escape-notice. But when the rear-guard ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρα, ἦν ἔδει δια- were at (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary they-having-

βάντες ἐξβαίνειν πρὸς τὸ ὀρέων, passed-through (it) to-come-out on the acclivity, [which they

had to cross to ascend the acclivity,] then the barbarians

ἐξυλίνουν ὀλοιτρόχους ἐλαχιστοὺς καὶ rolled (down) round-stones large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and

μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι (other stones also) greater and smaller, which being-borne-along

πταῖοντες πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδωνῦντο· (and) striking against the rocks were-slung-about;

καὶ παντάπασιν ἦν οὐδὲ οἶόν τε πελάσαι and altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached

τῇ εἰσόδῳ. Ὁ ἔνοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, ei the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of the captains, as

μὴ δύναμτο ταύτη ἐπειράντο they-'could not 'effect (a passage) in-this (way) endeavoured

ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔποιον ταῦτα μέχρι (to approach) in-another; and they-did these (things) until

ἐγένετο σκότος· δὲ ἔπει ὄντο· ἀποῦντες εἶναι it-became dark; but when they-thought (that) retiring to be

ἀφανεῖς, τότε ἀπελθοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ δείπνον· καὶ unobserved, then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for

δὲ ἐτύγχανον οὖντες ἀνάριστοι οἱ indeed they-happened being dinnerless, — (those, namely,) αὐτῶν ὁπισώφυλακσαντες. Οἱ πολέμιοι μέντοι of-them guarding-the-rear. The enemy however

δηλοῦτι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο evidently fearing (something), 'did not 'cease
δι’ τῆς ἀληθοῦς νυκτὸς κυλινδοῦντας τοὺς λίθους· through the whole night rolling (down) — stones;
δ’ ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. Α’ οἱ as it was (easy) to-be-conjectured by-the noise. But — (those)
ἐχοντες τὸν ἕγερόνα περιόντες κύκλω, having the guide [going-around in-a-circle, [taking a
καταλαμβάνοντες τοὺς φίλαξας καθη- circuitous route,] surprise the guard sit-
μένους ἀμφὶ πυρὶ καὶ μὲν κατακανόντες τοὺς,
ting round (a) fire; and indeed having-killed — (some),
δὲ καταδιώξαντες τοὺς, αὐτοὶ and having-followed-after — (others) [in their flight], they
ἐμενον ἐνταῖς ὡς κατέχοντες τὸ ἄξον. Α’ οἱ remained there as-if occupying the summit. But —
οὐ κατείχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν they.—did not ‘occupy’ (the summit), but (a) knoll was
ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ’ ὅν ἦν ἡ αὐτὴ στενὴ ὁδὸς,
above them, by which was the same narrow road,
ἔφ’ ὡς οἱ φίλαξες ἔξαθηντο. Μέντοι ἦν at which the guard were-seated. However there was (an)
ἔφοδος αὐτὸς δὲν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ approach thence to the enemy, —(those namely)
ἔξαθηντο ἐπὶ τῷ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ. stationed on the open way.

Καὶ ἐνταῖδα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δὲ And here indeed they-passed the night; but
ἐπεὶ ὑμέρα ὑπέφαυε συντεταγμένοι when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn (they) drawn-up-in-order
ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ καὶ proceeded in-silence against the enemy; for —
ἐγένετο ὅμιχλη, ὡστε προσελθόντες ἐγγὺς there-was (a) mist, so-that advancing near
ἐλαθὼν. Ἀδ’ ἐπεί εἶδον ἄλληλον, καὶ they-escaped-observation. But when they-saw one-another, and
τε ἦ σάλπυς ἐπεφθείξατο, καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες — the trumpet sounded-the-attack, and the Greeks
BOOK IV.—CHAPTER II.

ἀλαλάξαντες ἐντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρῶπους, δὲ οἱ raising-the-shout-of-battle rushed against the men, but the,

οὐκ ἀδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λυπόντες τὴν (enemy) did not receive (them), but leaving the

ὁδὸν, ὀλίγοι φεύγοντες ἀπέδωσαν. γὰρ road, (a) few (only) fleeing died; for

ἡσαν εὐξώνων Δὲ they-were well-girt [for they were active in their movements]. But

οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,—(those) with Cheirisophus, hearing the trumpet,

εἰσὶν ἐντο ἀνα κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδὸν. ἀλλοι immediately rushed up along the open road; others

dὲ τῶν στρατευῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded by

ἀπεβείης ὁδοὺς ἢ ἔκαστοι ἄνων ἄντες, καὶ untrodden paths wherever each happened (as) being, and

ἀναβάςτες ὡς ἐδύναντο, ἄνιμων ἄλληλους ascending as (well as) they-could, drew-up one-another

τοῖς δόραις. Καὶ οὕτω πρὸς τοὺς συνέμειζαν with—(their) spears. And these first-ones joined

τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν—(those) having-secured the place. But Xenophon

ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν ὑποθοφυλάξων, ἐπορεύετο having the half of-the rear-guard, proceeded

ἡ οἱ ἐχουντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα; (by the road) in-which—(those) having the guide (did);

(γὰρ ἦν εὐδοκία τοῖς ὑποξυγοις;) δὲ τοὺς (for it-was the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle;) but the

ἡμίσεις ἔταξε ὁπισθὲν τῶν ὑπο—(other) half he-ordered (to be stationed) behind the baggage-

ζυγών. Δὲ πορεύομενοι ἐντυγχάνονσι λόφῳ And proceeding-forward they-happened-to-find (a) hill

ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν (hanging) over the road occupied by the

πολεμίων, οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἦν ἀποκόψαι ἡ enemy, whom it-was (a) necessity either to-have-dislodged or
διεργασάντοι απὸ τὸν ἄλλον Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ
to-have-been-separated from the other Greeks. And

αἰτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν
(the men) themselves indeed might have-proceeded (in the same

ἡ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ τὰ ἵππα ἢν οῖκ
road) in-which the others (did), but (for) the baggage-cattle it was not

ἐκβῆναι ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη.
(possible) to-go-from (the valley) in-any-other (way) than this.

Ἐνθ' ἐκ παρακελευθέρωσε τοὺς ἄλλους, προκεῖται.
Then indeed having-encouraged one-another, they make-an-

λουν πρὸς τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὀρίστοις λόχοις,
attack against the hill in-the straight companies, [in

οὗ κύκλῳ, ἄλλα καταλείποντες
columns of companies.] not in (a) 'circle, but leaving

ἀφοῦ δὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοντο φεύγειν:
(a) way-of-escape for-the enemy, if they-wished to-flight.

Καὶ τέως μὲν, αἰτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπερ.
And for-a-while indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner

ἐκαστὸς ἐδύνατο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ
each could, the barbarians shot-arrows and

ἐβαλλον, δ' οὐ προσείτο ἐγγὺς, ἄλλα
threw-stones, but they-did not 'let-them-come near, but

φυγῇ γὰρ τὸν χωρίον. Καὶ τέ οἱ Ἑλληνες
in-flight they-leave the place. And — the Greeks

παρεληφθέσαν τοὺς, καὶ ὅροιν ἔτερον
having-passed-over this (hill), — they-see another

λόφον ἐμπροσθεν κατεχόμενον.
hill before (them) occupied (by the enemy).

Ἐδόξης αὐθίς πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτων.
It-seemed (necessary) again to-proceed against this.

Δ' ὁ Ξενόφων ἔνοπλος, μὴ, εἰ κατα-
But — Xenophon having-been-apprehensive, lest, if he-should-

λείποι τὸν ἱππότα λόφον ἔφυμον, καὶ
leave the captured hill destitute (of troops), and

οἱ πολέμιοι πάλιν λαβόντες ἐπιθεοίστην τοῖς
the enemy again taking (it) might-attack the
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER II.

ἐποξύγιοις παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ἵππονοια ἥν ἐπι πολὺ
baggage-cattle passing-by, (for the baggage-cattle) were on much

ἀτε πορευόμενα διὰ τῆς στενῆς
(forming a long train) as when proceeding through the narrow

δόου,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου
(defiles) 'of (the) road,) he-leaves on the hill (the)

λοχαγούς Κηφισόδωρον, Κηφισοφόντος,
captains Cephisodorus (the son) of Cephisophon, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην, Ἀμφιδήμου,
Athenian, and Amphictrates (the son) of Amphidemus, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν, φυγάδα Ἀργείων.
Athenian, and Archagoras, (an) exile (from) Argos;

αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν
himself indeed with the rest marched against the

δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἱροῦσι τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
second hill, and they-capture this-one even in the same

τρόπῳ. Ἔτι δὲ ἥν τρίτος μαστός λοιπὸς
manner: Still however there was (a) third hill remaining

αὐτοῖς, πολὺ ὤριστατος, ὁ ἀπὸ τῆς φυλαχῆς
for-them, much the-steepest, that above (where) the

ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης τῆς νυκτὸς
at the fire was-taken (by surprise) — at-night

ὑπὸ τῶν ἐξελοντῶν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες
by the volunteers. When indeed the Greeks

ἐγένοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι λείποντο τὸν μαστὸν
got near the barbarians leave the hill

ἀμαχητι, ὡστε γενέσθαι θαναμαστὸν πάσι, καὶ
without-fighting, so-as to-be wonderful to-all, and

ὑπόστενον δείσαντες αὐτοὺς ἀπολθεὶν,
they-suspected (that) having-been-in-fear (that) they left

μη κυκλωδέντες πολυσκολοντο. Δ’ ἄρα
(the place), lest being-surrounded they-might-be-besieged. But indeed

οἱ καθόρωντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ
—they) looking-down from the height (upon) the (things)
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

252

καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν.

And Xenophon indeed with the youngest-men ascended

εἰς τὸ ἄχρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ἵππας, on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered to-march-slowly,

ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμίζεσαι καὶ so that the rear companies might-come-up-with (them) and

εἰτε προελώνας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν θέσατε he-told (them) having-advanced along the road tohalt

τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὀμαλῷ. Καὶ ἐν τῷ τοῦτῳ under-arms on the level (ground). And at the same

χρόνῳ Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε περενγός, time Archagoras the Argive came having-fled,

καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρῶτου λόφου, and says that they-had-been-cut-off from the first hill,

καὶ δότι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης τεῦναι, and that Cepheus and Amphicles were-dead,

καὶ δώσαν ἄλλοι μὴ ἄλλοις κατὰ τῆς and also how-many others (who) not having-leaped down the

πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὁποιοφόρους. rocks (and) arrived at the rear-guard.

Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπραξάμενοι ταῦτα.

The barbarians indeed having-accomplished these (things).

ἡχον εἰς ῥόφον ἀντίπορον τῷ μαστῷ καὶ came on (a) hill opposite the knoll; and

Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι’ ἐρμηνέως Xenophon commenced-treating with-them through (an)

τὴν ἱστορίαν, καὶ ἀπήτευ τοὺς νεχροὺς. Oi about (a) truce, and demanded the dead. — (They)

de ἐφασαν ἀποδόσειν ἐφ’ ὅδε indeed said (that) they-would-give-them-up on — (this con-

μὴ καίειν τὰς κόμας. Ὁ dition), (that) he-would not ‘burn the villages. —
Εὐνοφῶν συνμιλώγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ὦ
Xenophon agreed to this. But in which [but while]
μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα παρῆκει,
indeed the remaining (part of the) army was passing along,
δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα,· πάντες οἱ
and — they were discussing these (things), all — (those)
ἐκ τοῦτον τοῦ τόπου συνεφύγαν. Ἐνταῦθα
from that (part of) the country flocked together.
There
οἱ πολέμιοι ἵσταντο· καὶ ἐπεί
the enemy made a stand; and when they (the Greeks with
ἡξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστου
began to descend from the knoll
πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἔδα τὰ ὅπλα ἐκείνον,
towards the others, where the arms lay, where
τοῖς οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ ἐνεντο
the heavy armed men were drawn up,] the enemy truly hurried on
πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ
in great multitude and with (much) noise and tumult; and
ἐπεί ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τῆς κόρυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἃφ
when they got on the vertex of the knoll, from
οὗ Ἐνοφῶν καταβαινειν, ἐκυλίνοντων πέτρας·
which Xenophon was descending, they commenced rolling (down) stones;
καὶ μὲν κατέβαζεν τὸ σχῖλος ἐνὸς, 
de ὁ
and indeed broke the leg of one (man), and the
ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἄσπιδα ἀπέλυε
shield-bearer having the shield (of Xenophon) deserted
Ἐνοφῶντα· δὲ Εὐρυλόχος Ἀρκάς Λούσιε Ἐνοφῶν;
Xenophon; but Eurylochos (an) Arcadian of Lusia (a)
ὁπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προσεβληκμένος
heavy armed soldier ran to him, and having thrown
πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρεσε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον
before both (his shield) they departed, and the others went
πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους.
to — (those) drawn up (on the level ground).

Ἐκ τοῦτον δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικὸν ἐγένετο
From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got
καὶ ἔσχηνεσαν αὐτοῖς
alike together (on the level ground), and they encamped there
ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ δασιλέσιν
among many and fine houses and abundant
ἐπιτηδείους· γὰρ καὶ ἦν πολλὸς ὦνος, ὡστε
provisions; for also there was much wine, so that
ἔχουν ἐν κονιατοῖς λάχανοις. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ
they kept (it) in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also
Χειρίσοφος διεπράξατο, ὡστε λαβόντες τοὺς
Cheirisophus effected (this), that having taken the
νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἱγμόνα·
dead (from the enemy) they would deliver up the guide;
καὶ ἔσκειςαν πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν
and they performed all (things) in — (their) power
τοῖς ἀναθανασίσι, ὡστερ νομίζεται ἄγαδοίσι
for — (those) having died, such as is usual and appropriate for brave
ἀνδράσι. ἔρε ὑπερείρας ἐπορεύοντο ἀνευ
men. And on the next day they proceeded without (a)
ἡγμόνος· δ’ οἶ πολέμων μαχόμενοι, καὶ ὅπῃ
guide; but the enemy fighting, and where
ἐνα δεῖ οὐσιν προκαταλαμβάνοντες
there might be (a) narrow place pre occupying (it)
ἐξώλον τὰς παράδοους. Ὄποτε ὦν ἐν καλὺ-
obstructed the passes. When therefore indeed they instep
τοὺς πρῶτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐκβαινὼν
those first, Xenophon going from
ὁμοσθεν πρὸς τὰ ὅρη, ἔλυε τὴν ἀετὸφραξίν τῆς
going from the front, opened the obstructions of the
παράδοου τοῖς πρῶτοις πείρωμενος γίγνεσθαι
passes for the front endeavouring to get
ἐνωτέρῳ τῶν καλύτοτων· δὲ ὅποτε ἐπι-
higher (than) — (those) obstructing; but when they
ὑψοντο τοῖς ὑμοσθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαινὼν
attacked — (those) behind, Cheirisophus departing
καὶ πείρωμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρῳ
(from his place) and endeavouring to get higher (than)
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER II.

τῶν καλυτῶν, ἔλυε τὴν ἄποφραξίν τῆς — (those) obstructing, opened the obstruction of the
παρόδου τοῖς ὑποσθέν· καὶ οὕτως ἔδει ἐθοδοὺν
passes for — (those) behind; and thus always they-assisted
ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἐπεμέλειοντο ἀλλήλου· Δὲ
each-other, and strenuously took-care of each-other. And
καὶ ὡπότε ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρεῖχον πολλὰ
also sometimes it-was (that) the barbarians exhibited many
πράγματα τοῖς ἀναβαίσι
things to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-asceded
πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· γὰρ ἦσαν ἐλαφροὶ
again descending; for they-were nimble
ὅτε ἀποφέιγεν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύθεν, γὰρ
so-as to escape even fleeing from-near, for
ἐξὸν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. Δὲ
they-had nothing else than bows and slings. And
καὶ ἦσαν ἄριστοι τοξόται· εἰλὺρι δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς
also they-were the-best archers; they-had indeed bows nearly
τριτίχη, ὅτα τὰ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διτίχη·
three-cubits (long), and the arrows more than two-cubits;
ἐὰν δὲ τὰς νευρὰς, ὡπότε τοξεύωμεν προθαί-
they-drew indeed the strings, when they-shot stepping-
νοῦτες τῷ ἀμυντῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ
vones to the amnity foot against the lower (part) of the
τόξου. Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν
bow. And the arrows went through the
αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες,
shields and through the corselets. But the Greeks,
ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἐχρυσωτοὶ αὐτοῖς ἄχοντοι
after they-took (them up), made-use of them for-javelins,
(ἐναγαλλώντες)
(having-fitted-a-poise-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin)
Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς
In these —
χειρίσεις οἱ Κρήτες ἐγένωτο χρησιμότατοι. Δὲ
places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And
Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἦρξε αἰτῶν.
Stratocles (a) Cretan commanded them.
CHAPTER III.

Δὲ ταῦτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἀλλὰ γνωρίσσαν,
And this — day likewise (the Greeks) were-ledged
ἐν ταῖς καλέσσαι ταῖς ἒπερ τοῦ πεδίου
in the villages (namely) — (those) above the plain
tοῦ παρὰ τῶν ποταμῶν Κεντρίτην,
— (that is situated) along the river Centrites, (the)
ἐβρος ὡς διπλεθρον, ὡς ὀρίζει τὴν
breadth (thereof is) about two-hundred-feet, which (river) bounds
Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν χώραν τῶν Καρδοῦχων. Καὶ
Armenia and the country of the Carduchi. And
οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀνεπάρκαντο ἐνταῦθα ἀκμαίοι
the Greeks rested here rejoiced (at)
ἰδὼν τοὺς πεδίους ἔδειχε τῷ
seeing (a) plain; and the river was-distant from-the
ὀρέων τῶν Καρδοῦχων ἢ ἢ ἐπτα στάδια.
mountains of the Carduchi six or seven stadia.
Τότε μὲν οὖν γνωρίσσαν μᾶλα ἤδειας,
[Then indeed therefore they-were-ledged very pleasantly, [here
ἐξοντες καὶ τίποτα—
they stayed with great pleasure,] having also (plenty of) pre-
τήδεια καὶ μιχυμοιοντες πολλά τῶν
visions and were-reflecting much — (on their)
παρεληκτότων πόνων. Γὰρ ἐπτὰ ἡμέρας
labours. For (during) seven days
δοκασπερ ἐπορεύσσαν διὰ τῶν Καρ-
however-many-that they-marched through (the country) of the Car-
δοῦχων, μαχομεν οἵτινεσ πάσας, καὶ
duo, fighting they-passed (them) all, and
ἐπασθεν καθα δια οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπταντα
suffered evils so-many-that not 'all — (those) 'together
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER III.

υπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.
(received) from (the) king and Tissaphernes (would

"Ως οὖν ἀπολλαγμένοι τούτων
equal them). So, therefore freed from these (dangers)

νῦν ἔχομεν ἔκοψαν.
they gladly were-made-to-take-repose.

"Αμα δὲ τῇ ημέρα ὁρῶσιν
At the same time indeed with the (break of) day they perceived

ἐξωτικομένους ἵππεας ποὺ πέραν τοῦ
completely-armed horsemen some-where on the other side of the

ποταμοῦ, δὲ καλύσοντας διαβαιρο-
river, so as (that) they would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-

κεῖν, δὲ πεζοὺς παρατεταγμένους
over, and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers drawn-up in order of battle

ἐν ταῖς ὑδάαις, ἄνω τῶν ἱππεῶν, δὲ καλύ-
on the high-banks above the horsemen, so as (that) they

σοντας ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν.
would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to cross over into — Armenia.

Δ' οὖν ἱσαν Ἀρμενίου καὶ Μάρδου καὶ Χαλδαίου.
And these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldeans

μισθοφόροι Ὀροντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-
mercenaries of Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-

δαίου ἐλέγοντο εἰναι ἐλευθεροὶ τε καὶ ἄλχιμοι.
daeans were said to be (a) free and also (a) brave

δ' εἶχον δὶπλα μαχαῖ γέρρα καὶ
people; and they had (for) arms long shields and

λόγχας. Δὲ αἱ αὐται ὑδαί, ἐφ' ὅν οὖν αὐτοῖς
spears. But the same elevated banks, on which these

ἡσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπείχον ἀπὸ
foot-soldiers were drawn up in order of battle, were distant from

τοῦ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τεττάρα πλέον.
the river three or four plothra (the plothra

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ὑπ' ἄρωμαν
being about a hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible

ἡν ἄγουσα ἄνω, ὡσπερ χειροποίητος. οἱ Ἑλληνες
was (one) leading upwards, as if made-by-hand; the Greeks

was (one) leading upwards, as if made-by-hand; the Greeks

22
ἐπιφάνειαν διαβαίνειν ταύτην. Ἡπεὶ δὲ τὸ endeavoured to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the τε ὅπως ἐφαινετο ἵππο τῶν μαστῶν πειρομένοις — water appeared above the breasts to-those-making-trial καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τραχύς μεγάλος (to cross over) and the river was rough with-large καὶ ὀλισθηρῶς λίθος, καὶ οὖν ἦν ἐξείν and slippery rocks, and neither was-it (possible) to-have τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὀδαρί. δὲ εἰ μὴ ὁ ποταμὸς — (their) arms in the water; but if not [or else] the river ἠπναζόμενος — εἰ τις φέροι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ 'swept' (them) 'away; if any-one carried — (his) arms on τῇ τῆς κεφάλης ἐνγραμμωτο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ — (his) head he-became bare-and-exposed to the τοξεύματα καὶ ταλάντα βέλην oὐν arrows and the-other missiles (of the enemy); therefore ἀνεχόμεναι, καὶ ἑσπρατοπεδώσαντα αὐτοῦ παρὰ they-retreated, and encamped there along τὸν ποταμὸν. Ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ ἔσκαν the river. There indeed (where) they-themselves had-been τὴν προσδέχεται νύκτα, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄρους, ἐώραν τοὺς on-the previous night, on the mountains, they-saw the Καρδοῦχος συνελεύσιμον τοιοῦτον ἐν τοῖς Carduchi assembled-together (in) great-numbers in — ὁπλοῦσι. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλῆς ἄνωθεν τοῖς arms. Here truly there-was great despondency to-the Ἐλληνων ὄροις μὲν τὴν διαστολὴν τοῦ Greeks (as) they-perceive indeed the difficult-passage of-the ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὄροις τοῖς river, and (as) they-perceive — (those on the other side of the κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, δὲ ὄροις τοῖς river) opposed to-crossing-over, and (as) they-perceive the Καρδοῦχος ἐπικεφαλάζοντος ὁποιοῖς τοῖς Carduchi hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those) διαβαίνονσιν. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ crossing-over. Therefore indeed on-that-same — day and
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER III.

τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν δυντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀτοφίᾳ. Αὐτὶ
— night they remained, being in great perplexity. — But

Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ.
Xenophon saw (a) dream [but Xenophon had a dream]: he seemed

δεδομένου ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αὐταὶ περιφέρεν
to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed) to-have-

ὁμοιοί, αὐτῶν αὐτοῦμαται, ὡς ἀνδρὶ-
dropped-off from him of their-own-accord, so that (he seemed) to-have-

να, καὶ διαβαίνειν, ὅποσον ἐθυμήσον.
been-loosened, and (able) to-stride-about, as much as he pleased.

Δὲ ἐπεί ἤν ὁδός,
But when it was near the dawn of day, he went to — Cheiris-

οσον, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας ἐσεσθαι
sooth, and says, that he has hopes (that all) will be

καλῶς, καὶ δογματίσαι αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. Ὅ
well, and relates to him — (his) dream. — (He)

δὲ ὢν ὑπὲρ τὸν τάχιστα ἐν ὑπε-
indeed was delighted — and, as speedily as (the) dawn began-

φανε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ παράντες ἔμυντο.
to-appear, all the generals being present sacrificed;

καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν καλὰ εἰδὼς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου.
and the victims were favourable immediately from the first.

Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπώλεας ἀπὸ τῶν
And the generals and captains going away from the

ἱερῶν παρῆγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστο-
sacrifices gave orders in the army (for the troops) to break-

τεισθανεῖν, Καὶ δύο νεανίδας προετρεχοῦν τῷ
fast. And two young men came running to —

Ξενοφῶντι ἀριστοῦντι γὰρ πάντας ἤθεσαν.
Xenophon (while) breakfasting; for all knew

ὅτι ἔχειν προελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ
that it might be allowed (to them) to approach him even

ἀριστοῦντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι, καὶ ἐλ καθεῦθος,
breakfasting and supping, and (also) if he were asleep,

ἐπεγείραν τα εἰπεῖν, εἰ τίς ἔχω τι
having been awakened to speak (to him), if any one might have any thing
τῶν πρὸς τὸν πολέμουν. of— (those things) (relating) to the war (to say).
Καὶ τότε ἔλεγον, ὅτι τυγχάνομεν συλλέγοντες And then they-said, | that they-might-happen gathering
φρύγανα ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, sticks as for (the) fire, [that as they were gathering sticks
κάπετα κατίδομεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν for the fire,] (and then) they-saw, on the other-side (of the river)
ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν en (the) rocks reaching-down to the river
αὐτῶν, γέροντα τε καὶ γυναικας καὶ παιδίσκες, itself, an-old-man and also women and girls,
ὅσπερ κατατεθὲντος μαρσίπους ίματιον ἐν as-if depositing bags of clothes in (a)
ἀντρώπῳ πέτρα. Δὲ δόξαι σφιν ἱδίουi cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them seeing
ἐναι ἀσφάλεις διαβῆναι γὰρ οἴδε εἴναι (this) to-be safe to-cross-over; for (that) neither was-it
πρόοδατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἱστείνα κατὰ τοῦτο. accessible for-the hostile cavalry at this (place).
Δὲ ἐφασαν ἐκδύντες ἑχοντες τα And they-said, (that) having-undressed (and) having — (their)
ἐγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ ὡς νεανίσκες, δὲ daggers they-crossed-over naked as being-about-to-swim, and-
παρενόμονοι πρόοδεν διαβῆναι πρὶν proceeding forwards (that) they-crossed-over before (that)
βρέξαν τα αἰδώσια, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λατόντες they-wetted the middle, and crossing-over and taking
τὰ ἰμάτια ἐξείσι πάλιν. the clothes (that) they-came (back) again.
Ὁ Ἐξενοφόν αὐτὸς οὖν τε εἶδος — Xenophon himself therefore not-only immediately
ἐσπενδά καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς νεανίσκους 'made (a) libation, but-also ordered the young-men
ἐγχεῖν, and
to-pour-in (wine into the cups to make a libation themselves), and
ἐνεἴσαθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φύνασι τε τα ὀνείρατα to-pray to-the gods having-shown not-only the dreams καὶ τὸν πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαθὰ but-also the passage, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things λοιπὰ. Δὲ σπείρας εἴδως ἥγε τοὺς remaining. And (the) libations-made he immediately led the νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται young-men to — Cheirisophus, and relates ταῦτα. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄχουσας these-same (things). And also — Cheirisophus having-heard (them) ἐποίησε σπουδᾶς. Δὲ μὲν σπείρασεν made (a) libation. And indeed having-made-the-libations παρήγγελλον ἄλλοις σύσχενάξεσθαι: they-ordered the-others [the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together; αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς they-themselves indeed calling-together the generals ἐπενείποντο ἄνω ἄν διαβαίνειν consulted-with (them) how they might cross (the river) κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῶν τοὺς to-the-best-advantage, and not-only (that) they-might-conquer — ἐμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν κακόν (those) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no evil ἵπτο τῶν ὁποιῶν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς from (those) 'in (their) rear. And it-seemed to-them Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἐγείρεσθαι, καὶ διαβαίνειν (good) (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-the-lead, and to-cross νῦν ἔχοντα τὸ ἑμισὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος, ἰὲν over having the half-of the army, and ἕτο τὸ ἑμισὺ ὑπομένειν σὺν Ἑνο-moreover (that) the (other) half should-remain-behind with Xenod— φῶντι, ἰὲν τὰ ὑποκύπτα καὶ τὸν ὀχλὸν phon, and (that) the baggage-cattle and the crowd (of camp— διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ τοὺσ ἐπεί δὲ ταῦτα πέρε ἐκεῖ καλῶς, When indeed these (things) had (themselves) well
eporei'onto. &' oi neanischi (And in good order), they-proceeded-forward; and the young-men
hgyvnto ekontes ton potamov en aristera'. guided (them) having the river on (the) left;
d'e odos epi tien diabasin hyiws tetrapes and (the) way to the ford was about four
stadai. De, ai'toiv poveromenv, ai taceis ton stadia. But, they proceeding, the lines of-the
iostheon antiraphesav.

De cavalry passed-along-opposite (them, on the other side of the river). And
epeidh osan kat' t' en diabasin kai tas dydas when they-were at the ford and the shores
tou potamov, edento ta opla, kai Xeiriskofof of-the river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cheirisophus
ai'toiv prwtos stefanowasmenos kal apodis himself first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes
elamvane ta opla, kai parhgyelle paisi he-took — (his) arms, and he-ordered all
toiv allios, kai elxevne toiv logagouvs the rest (to do the same), and he-ordered the captains
agenv toiv logous orbious, toiv men to-lead the companies drawn-up-in-columns, — (some) indeed
en aristera, de toiv (of these columns being) on (the) left-hand, and — (others)
en dezi' evantoi. Kai oi manteis men esfaron (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs indeed sacri-
giazontos eis ton potamov 'oi flowed-victims (so that the blood flowed) into the river; the
polimou de etexevon te kal enemy indeed (at the same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also
esfevdonov 'al leitoi xenovnto. kept-slinging-stones; but they 'did (not) as-yet 'reach (the Greeks).
'Estei de ta sfagia hy xala pantes oi stata'. When indeed the victims were favourable all the sol-
tiwtau kai anphalaizon, de kai aptasi ai ynnakes diers even raised-the-war-cry, and also all the women
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER III.

συνελάλυνον. Ἡρὰς ἦσαν πολλαὶ ἑταῖραι cried-out-and-shouted-with (them). For there were many mistresses ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε in the army. And Cheirisophus indeed entered καὶ οἱ σὺν ἑκεῖνοι. δὲ ὁ Ξενοφόν (the river), and — (those) with him (also); but — Xenophon, λαβὼν τοὺς εἰρμοστάτους τῶν ὁποιοδοθερακών, taking the most-active of the rear-guard,

ἐδεῖ ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἔπι τὸν πόρον ran at (the) utmost (speed) back to the ford,

tὸν κατὰ τὴν ἱκάσιν τὴν eis τὰ — (to that) opposite the outlet — (that led) to the ὅρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιοῦμενος διαθὰς mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint (as) crossing ταύτην ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἵππεις παρὰ τὸν in-that (place) to-cut-off the cavalry along the ποταμὸν. Αἱ οἱ πολέμιοι μὲν ὀρῶντες τοὺς river. But the enemy indeed seeing — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εἰπετὺς περῴνας τὸ ὕδωρ, with Cheirisophus easily crossing-over the water,

ὸρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφόντα θέοντας seeing likewise — (those) with Xenophon running εἰς τοῦπαλιν, δεῖσαντες μὴ ἀποκλείσει- to the contrary [running back,] fearing lest they-might-be-in-

ησαν, φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς tercepted, they-flee at (their utmost) power as-if to τὴν ἱκάσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω. Ἡπεί δὲ the outlet from the, river upwards. When indeed τὴν ἱκάσιν κατὰ τὴν ὤδον ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς they-got to the road (or outlet) they-stretched upwards to τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων the mountain. Lycurus indeed, who having (the command of) the τάξιν τῶν ἵππων, καὶ Ἀτράχην, ὁ ἔχων body of — cavalry, and Atrachon, who having (the τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν command of) the body of — targeeteers (namely) — (those)
Xenophon indeed when he-saw (things) on-the-other-side be-
meva kalos apokhora lati taxisto
coming prosperous-and-well departed (with) the greatest-speed
pros to diaphainon strateuma. (garp kai oi Karp
to the crossing army; (for also the Car-
boixoi houn houn phaneroi kataphainontes eis to
duchiu were now evidently descending to the
pedion os episthemosmenoi tois telenaities.)
plain as-if about-attacking — (those) behind.)
Kai Xenophon indeed (now) occupied the (place) above,
de Lycius, sun eligous epixeiyosas etu-
and Lycius, with (his) few (men) having-undertaken to-
διώξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα τῶν σχενο-πυροφόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε καλὴν ἐσθήτα
gage, and among these not-only fine garments
καὶ ἐπιώματα. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σχενοφόρα τῶν
but-also drinking-cups. And — the baggage of-the
ἀλέξανδρος αἰχμὴν διή-
Greeks and the crowd (of camp-followers) wore yet 'pass-
βαίνει, δὲ Ἑνοφόροι στρέψαι πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους,
ing, and Xenophon having-turned towards the
ἐκέφες ἀντία τὰ δίπλα· καὶ παρῆγγειλε
Carduchi, halted over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered
τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι ἐκαστὸν τὸν λόχον
the captains to-form each — company
ἐαυτὸι καὶ ἐνωμοσίας, παραγαγόντας
of-theirs into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-men, having-wheeled
τὴν ἐνωμοσίαν παρ’ ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος·
the division-of-twenty-five-men by the-left into line;
καὶ μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμόταρχας
and (he ordered) — the captains and (the) commanders-of
Ἰέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ
(these) 'divisions to-go against the Carduchi, and (the)
ὁραγούσις καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοὺς ποταμοὺς.
commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at the river.
Δ’ οἱ Καρδούχοι, δὲ ἔωρον τοὺς ὅπεσῳφιλάχας
But the Carduchi, as they-perceived the rear-guard
tοῦ ὀχλοῦ ἰσιομενένους, καὶ ἦδη φανοῦ-
of-the crowd (of camp-followers) diminished, and now ap-
μένους ὀλίγους, δὴ ἐπήθησαν θάττον ἀδοντες
peared few, 'they indeed 'advanced more-quickly singing
τινὰς στὰς. ὁ Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἴχε τὰ
certain songs. — Cheirisophus indeed, when he-had the
παρὰ αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστὰς
(par about himself safe, sends the targeteers
καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ἑνοφόρων,
and slingers and archers to Xenophon

23
καὶ κελεύει νοεῖν ὅτι ἀν παραγγέλλῃ.
and be-commanded (them) to-do whatever 'he might 'order.

Δ’ ὁ Χενόφων ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας πέμψας
But — Xenophon having-seen them crossing having-sent

ἀγγελον κελεύει μεῖναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ
(a) messenger to-request (them) to-stay there at the

ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάντας. Ὅταν δ’ αὐτοὶ
river, not having-crossed. When indeed they [Xenophon

ἀρκονται διαβαίνειν — ἐμβαίνειν
and his men] begin to-cross (that they should) enter

ἐναντίους ἐνδὲν καὶ ἐνδὲν σφῶν ὡς
(opposite on-this-side and on-that-side of-them as-if

dιαβαίνοντας, τοὺς ἀκοντίστας διηγείλθημε- about-to-cross, the javelin-men holding-the-javelin-by-the-

νους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιθυμεῖνοις
poise, and the archers having-placed (their) ‘arrows-on-

dὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
the-string; but not to-advance far-into the river.

Παρῆγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ’ ἐαυτῷ
[He ordered — — (those) about himself [he ordered his

ἐπειδὴν σφενδόνη ἔξωνται,
own men] (that) when (a stone from a) sling shall-reach

καὶ ἄστις ψοφῆ παμπίσσαντας
and (a) shield resounded (that) having-sung-the-peace

θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους: δὲ ἐπειδὴν οἱ
they-should-rush on the enemy; and when the

πολέμιοι ἀναστρέψοσι, καὶ ὁ σαλπυγκτὴς σημῆ- enemy should-turn-to-flee, and the trumpeter should-sound-the-

νη το πολέμικον ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς
signal the warlike-one (of attack) from the river, (that) the

οἰραγοὺς μὲν ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ
leaders-of-the-rear — having-turned to (the) right

ἡγεῖσαι, δὲ πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι
to-take-the-lead, and all to-run, and to-cross-over as

tάχιστα, ὃ ἐκαστὸς εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν,
fast-as-possible, where each-one had — (his) file,
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER III.

Δ' οἱ Καρδουχοὶ ὁρῶντες τοὺς λοιποὺς

But the Carduchi seeing — (those) remaining

兮δὲ ὀλίγους, (γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τεταγμένων

now few, (for also many of — (those) ordered

μὲν ἄριστος ὀψαλμοῦν, οἱ μὲν ἐπιού-

remain departed taking-care, — (some indeed of-the-baggage-

γίνοντο, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ
cattle, — (some) also 'of (their) 'utensils (and bagage), and — (others)

ἐταιρῶν;) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασείως,

'of (their) 'mistresses,) here indeed 'pressed boldly 'on,

καὶ ἵππουτο σφενδοῦναν καὶ τοξεύειν:

and began to—use (their) 'slings and 'bows.

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ἑρμηναν ὑδρῶν

But the Greeks having-sung-the-pan a started-forward 'in (a) 'run

ἐπὶ αὐτοῦς: οἱ δὲ οὐχ ἐδέξαντο

upon them; — 'they indeed 'did not 'receive (the charge

γὰρ καὶ ἦσαν ὀλισθεῖσιν, ὡς μὲν ἐν

of the Greeks); for though they were armed, as indeed in

τοῖς ὄρεσιν, ἰκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ

— (their) mountains, fit for — attacking and

φεῦγειν, δὲ πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χειρὰς

fleeing, but for receiving (any enemy) | the to hand

οὐχ ἰκανῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ

[hand to hand] (they were) not 'fit. At this (time)

ὁ σαλπυγχτῆς σημαινεῖ καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμων

the trumpeter 'sounds; and the — enemy

ἐφευγόν ἔτει πολὺ βάττοιν, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες στρεφ-

turned to-the-contrary fled as fast-as-possible over the

εῖταντες τάχιστα ἐφευγόν ὅτι τάχυστα διὰ τοῦ

faster, but the Greeks having-

turned to-the-contrary fled as fast-as-possible over the
ποταμοῦ. Οἵ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων, αἰσθη-
nigher. — Some however of the enemy, per-
μενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, καὶ
ceiving (this) ran back to the river, and
tοξεύοντες ἔτροπον ἀλίγους,
"using (their) bows wounded (a) few (of our men)
δ' οἱ πολλοὶ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δύναν
but the greater (number of them), even the Greeks being,
pέραν, ἢτι ἡσαν φανεροὶ φεύγοντες. Δ' οἱ
on-the-other-side, yet were evidently fleeing. But —
πλευτῆσαντες, ἀνδρίζον.
(those who) had-come-to-meet (them), priding-themselves-on-their-man-
μενοι καὶ προιόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,
hood-and-courage, and advancing farther (than) — proper,
pάλιν διέβησαν ἅπαρον τῶν μετὰ
again crossed (the river) behind — (those) with
Ξενοχώροντος καὶ ἐτροπήσαν
Xenophon; and "they (the Cersdachi) wounded even
τινες τούτων.
some of-those.

CHAPTER IV.

Εἰ σῶ δὲ διέβησαν,
When indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-up-
μενοι ἀμφὶ μὲσον ὑμέρας, ἐπορεύόμενοι,
in-order about (the) middle 'of (the) 'day, they-proceeded,
oὔ μὲν ἡ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας,
ot less than five parasangs, through — Armenia,
ἀπευδὸν καὶ γηλόφους λείους·
(it being) altogether (a) plain, and (having) hills of-gentle-ascent;
γὰρ ἦσαν οὔ χώματε ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ
for there-were not villages near the river on-account-of
τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους.
the wars (namely) — (those) with the Carduchi.

Δὲ εἰς ἕν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἑν τε μεγάλη,
But (the village) at which village they-arrived was not-only large,

καὶ εἰς βασιλείου τῷ σατράπῃ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς
but also had (a) palace for-the satrap, and on the

πλείστας οἰκίας ἐπήσαν τύρσεις, ἐπιτήθειαὶ δ' most houses there-were towers; provisions indeed

ἡ δασὶν. Ἕπετεδεν ἤ ἐπορεύθησαν δύο
were abundant. Thence — they-proceeded two

σταυμὸς, δέκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι ἑπετεῖα- days’-march, (making) ten parasangs, until they-passed-

θον τὰς πυγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρης. Ἕπετεδεν beyond the sources of the river Tigris. Thence

δ’ ἐπορεύθησαν τρεῖς σταυμοὺς πεντακαίδεκα — they-proceeded three days’-march (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τηλεβοᾶν. Οὗτος parasangs to the river Teleboas. This

ὁ ἵππος ηῶτερον Ἀρμενία ἐπὶ πρὸς (river) — was indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were

πολλαὶ κώμαι περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δὲ ὁ οὗτος many villages along — (this) river. And — this

tόπος ἑκάλειτο Ἁρμενία ὅ πρὸς place was-called Armenia (that namely) which (was) towards (the)

ἐστέραν. Δ’ ὑπαρχὼς αὐτῆς ἥν Τηρίβασος, west. And (the) lieutenant-governor of-it was Tiberius,

ὁ καὶ γενόμενος φίλος βασιλεῖ (καὶ ὦντε who even had-become (a) friend to (the) 'king (and when

παρεῖν οὐδεὶς ἅλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλεά he-might-be-present no-one else put (the) king

ἐπὶ τὸν ἱππον. Οὗτος προσῆλασεν ἐχὼν on — (his) horse. This (person) came-forward having

ἵππεας, καὶ προσείμας ἐρμήνεια εἰπεν, cavalry (with him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say,

ὅτι βούλοντο διαλεξῆναι τοῖς ἀρχοντισ. Ἔδοξε that he-wished to-have-spoken-with the commanders. It-seemod
... the generals to hear (him). And ad-

εὐθύνετος εἰς ἐπίθεσιν ἁρμῶν τι θέλειν.

vancing within bearing (distance) they—inquired what he—might—wish.

"Ο δὲ εἰπεν, ὅτι βούλοιτο σπείρασθαι,

Who—(then) said, that he—desired to—make—a—treaty (with them),

ἐφ᾽ ὧν μὴτα αὐτοῦ ἄδικείν τοὺς

(on which [on the condition] (that) neither he—himself should—injure the

Ἑλλήνας, μὴ τὰ εἰκόνες καὶ τὰς

(Greeks, nor (that) they (the Greeks) should—burn the

οἰκίας, τε λαμβανέιν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια

(terms) (good) they (the Greeks) should—take — provisions

διὸν δέωντο. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε

(on—as—much—as they—wanted. These (proposals) seemed (good)

to the generals, and they—made—a—a—treaty on these (terms).

"Εντεῦθεν οὖ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου τρεῖς

Thence indeed they—proceeded through (the) plain three

στάδιοις πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας καὶ
days—march (making) fifteen parasangs; and

Τηρίδαζος παρηκολούθηκε, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ,

Teribazus followed, having his own—force—of—himself,

ἀπέχαν ὡς δέκα στάδιοι.

[having his own troops] (and) being—distant about ten—stades;

καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασίλεια,

and they—arrived at (a) palace, (there being) also many

κώμας πέριζ μεστὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτήδειων.

villages round—about (it) filled—with much — provisions.

Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδευομένων γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς

But they having—encamped there—happened in—the—night

πολλὴ χιών. καὶ ἠδὲν ἔδοξε διασκε- much snow; and in—the—morning it—seemed—best to—distribute—in-

νῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς

quarters the troops and the generals among the

κώμας. γὰρ οὐ ἔρων οὔδενα πολέμιον,

villages; for they—did not 'see (no) (any) enemy,
καὶ ἔδοξει εἶναι ἀσφαλῆς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of—
χιόνος. Εὐταύδα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν
snow. Here they-had — provisions such-as are
ἀγαθὰ, ἀσπίδα, σῖτον, εὐώδεις
good, (namely) [victims, [animals used for food,] corn, fragrant
παλαιῶν σῖνων, ἀσταφίδας, παντοδαπὰ ὀσπριᾶ.
old wines, dried-grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse.
Τινὲς δὲ τῶν ἀποσκεδασμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ
Some — of — (those) scattered-about from the
στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν στράτευμα,
said, that they-saw (an) army,
καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντο νύκτωρ.
and (that) many fires appeared during-the-night. It-seemed
ὅτι τοὺς στρατηγοὺς οἷς εἶναι ἀσφαλῆς διασκέ-
that to the generals not to-be safe to-quarter-
νοῦν, ἄλλα συναγαγεὶν πάλιν τὸ
dispersed, but (that they ought) to-bring-together again the
στράτευμα. Ἐντεύθεν συνῆλθον γὰρ ἔδοξει καὶ
general they-assembled; for it-seemed even
συναισκάζειν. Αὖτεν νυκτερεύοντων ἐνταῦθα
to-be-clearing-up. But they passing-the-night here
ἀριστος χιῶν ἐπιτίθεται, ὡστε ἀπεκρυβὲ καὶ
(a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls, so-that it-covered both
τὰ ὀπίσω καὶ τοὺς ἅμαρτον κατακεμένους.
the arms and the [men lying
καὶ ἡ χιῶν συνεπόδισε τὰ ἵππα.
(on the ground); and the snow benumbed the baggage-cattle;
καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὄξος ἀνίστασθαι γὰρ ἡ χιῶν
and there-was much sluggishness to-rise-up; for the snow
ἔπιπετατάχθη κατακεμένων ἦν ἀλεεινόν,
having-fallen-on (them) lying-down was warm (to them),
μὴ παραπρονεῖν ὄτω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
(provided) it-did not "fall-off from-them. When however
Ἕνοφὼν ἐτύλυμησε ἀμαστὰς γυμνὸς
Xenophon] dared having-risen-up naked [dared to-rise up
σχίζειν ἑδή, τάχ' ἀν καὶ
divested of his outer garments] to-split wood, speedily — also
τις ἄλλος ἀναστάς ἀφελόμενος ἐκεῖνον
some other-one having-risen-up (and) having-taken (the wood) from-him
ἐκχύζειν. Ἐξ τούτων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες
split (it). After this — also the others having-risen-up
ἐξαίον πῦρ καὶ ἔχριστο. Ἡρ' εἰρίσκετο
lit (the) fire and anointed-themselves. For they-found
πολύ χρίσμα ἐνταῦθα, ὁ ἔχριστο ἀντὶ ἑλαίου,
much ointment there, which they-used in-place-of oil,
σύειον, καὶ σησάμινον, καὶ αμυγδάλινον
(It being made of) hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds
ἐξ τῶν πυκρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθινον. Ἀὶ
of the bitter (kind), and turpentine. And
ἐξ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον
of the self same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent
eἰρίσκετο.
was-found.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόθη πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-
After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-dis-
ντέον εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. Ἐνθα δὴ
persed-in-quarters in the villages under shelter. Here indeed
οἱ στρατιώται ἥσσαν σὺν πολλῷ κραυγῇ καὶ
the soldiers went with much shouting and
ἱδοὺ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας, καὶ τὰ ἑπτάδεια:
delight to the shelter-under-roofs, and (to) — provisions;
δὲ δὲν, δὴ τρόπον ἀπῆσαν,
but as-many-as, when before they-departed (from the villages),
ἐνέπερσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἕως ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδοσαν
set-fire-to the houses through folly | gave
δίκην ἔκφυοντες κακοῖς,
justice [suffered punishment] (by) encamping — uncomfortably (in the
Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην
open air). Thence they-sent at-night Democrats (of)
Τεμενίτην, δόντες ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ
Temenos, giving (him a detachment of) men, to the
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER IV.

ορν, ενδα οἱ ἀποσχεδαννύμενοι
mountains, where — (those) having-straggled (from the camp)
ἐφασαν καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· γὰρ οὔτος
said (that) they-saw the fires; for this (man)
ἐδόκει καὶ ἡδὶ πρότερον ἀληθεύσαν πολλὰ
seemed also already before to-have-truly-reported many
τοιαῦτα, τε τὰ ὄντα ὡς ὄντα, καὶ
such (things), not-only the (things) being as being, but-also
τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οἶχ ὄντα. Δὲ πορεύεσθαι,
the (things) not being as not being. And having-gone-forth,
ἐφη μὲν οἶχ ἱδεῖν τὰ πυρὰ, δὲ συλλαβῶν
he-said (that he) indeed did not 'see the fires, but having-captured

ἄνδρα ἤκεν ἄγων,
(a) man he-came bringing (him), (this man) having (a)
πορεύον τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν
sian bow and quiver, and (a) kind-of-battle-axe
οἴναντερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. Ἑρωτώμενος δὲ
such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked —
ποδαπὸς εἶν, ἐφη μὲν εῖναι Πέρσης,
of-what-country he-might-be, he-said indeed (that) he-was (a) Persian,

δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος Τηρίδαν,
and (that) he-was-proceeding from the army of-Teribazus,
ὅπως ἥλθοι ἐπιτύχεια. δ' οἱ ἤρωται
basus, that he-might-procure provisions; and — they-asked
αὐτῶν, τε ὄπωσον τὸ στρατεύμα εἶν, καὶ
him, not-only how-great the army might-be, but-also
ἐπὶ τὴν συνειλεγμένον. Οὐ δὲ εἶπεν, οὔτι
for what it-had-been-assembled. And — (he) said, | that

Τηρίδαζος εἶν, ἔχου τε τὴν δύναμιν ἔαντοφ
Teribazus might-be having not-only the force of-himself,
καὶ Χάλυβας καὶ
[that Teribazus had not only his own army,] but-also Chalybian and

Ταὸχος μισθοφόροις· δὲ ἐφη αὐτῶν παρεσκευαζον
Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that) he was-pre-

ἀσδαδὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς,
pared at the crossing of-the mountain, in the narrow
κυρίως μοναχὴ εἰς πορεία, ὡς ἐνταῦθα (parts) by-which alone there-was (a) passage, that there ἐπιδησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλησίων. Ἐδοξε τοῖς he-was-about-attacking the Greeks. It-seemed (good) to-the στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the στράτευμα· καὶ εὐθὺς καταλιπόντες φίλακας, army; and immediately leaving sentinels, καὶ Σωφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ and Sophronetus (the) Stymphalian (as) commander over τοὺς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες — (those) remaining (behind), they-proceed, having (a) ἰγεμόνα τὸν ἀλώντα ἄρδαπον. Ἐπειδή, guide (namely) the captured man. When δὲ ἰππεῖσι οὖν τὰ θρή, οἱ πελτασταὶ προῂ-however they-crossed-over the mountains, the targeteers going, ὄντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον before and having-perceived the camp (of the enemy) ὁίχ ἐμείναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἅλλ' ἀνακρα-they 'did not 'wait-for the heavyarmed-men, but having-raised-γόντες Ἐσαυ ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Δ' οἱ βάρβαροι a-about theyran against the camp. But the barbarians ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οἰχ ὑπέμειναν, ἅλλ' hearing the noise, 'did not 'remain, but ἔφεσαν· διὰς δὲ καὶ ἄρεισαν τίνες τῶν bar-liked wise also theykilled some ofthe bar-

τάρων· καὶ ἵπποι θλωσάν εἰς εἴκοσι, καὶ barians; and horses weretaken about twenty (in number), and ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τηριβάζου ἐάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ the tent — (that) of Teribazes was taken, and in it εἶναι ἀργυρόποδες κλίναι καὶ ἑπτά-there were found to-be silverfooted couches and drinking-

ματα, καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες ἀρτοκόποι, cups, and — (those) saying (that they were) bakers, καὶ οἱ oinochoai. Ἐπειδή δὲ and — (those) (saying that they were) cup-bearers. When indeed
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER V.

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἐπιδοντο ταῦτα, the commanders of the heavy-armed-men heard these
ἐδοξεὶς αὐτῶς ἀπειναὶ τὴν ταχύστην things, it seemed to them (best) to depart the
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις fastest
[as fast as possible] to — (their own) camp, lest any
ἐπίδεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελεμένοις. Καὶ attack might happen to — (those) having been left behind. And
ἐνδὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλ- immediately having recalled (the men) by the (sound of the)
κινητεῖσαν, καὶ ἀφίχοντο ἐπὶ τὸ pet they departed, and they arrived at — (their)
στρατόπεδον ἀκμῆρον. camp the same day.

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ τῇ ὡστεραίᾳ ἐδοξεὶς εἶναι πορευτέον, But on the next day it was thought to be necessary to proceed,
ὅτι δύναντο τάχιστα, πρὶν ἢ τὸ στρατεύμα in what way they could most speedily, before that the
συλλέγων τὰλην, καὶ καταλαβέων τὰ army (of the enemy) was collected again, and to have seized the
στενά. Δ' ενδὺς συνεχεισὰμενοι ἐπορεύ-
defile. And immediately having collected their baggage they proceeded.
ὄντο διὰ πολλὴς χιόνος ἐχοντές πολλοῖς passed through much snow having many
ἡγεμόνας θαλαμῶν ἐπερθαλύντες τὸ ἄκρον, guides and on the same day having passed over the height,
ἐφ᾿ ὡς Τεριθαῖος ἐμελλεῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι, on which Teribasus intended to attack (them),
κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύόμην
they-encamped. Hence they-proceeded
τρεῖς σταδίων ἕρημος πεντεκαίδεκα
three days' march (in a) desert (making) fifteen
παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τῶν ποταμῶν Εὐφράτην, καὶ
parasangs to the river Euphrates, and
dιέβασαν αὐτὸν βρεχόμενον πρὸς τὸν ὄμφαλον.
they-crossed-over it being-wet to the navel.

Δὲ ἐξέγεντο αἱ πυγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὗ εἶναι πρόσω.
And they-say the sources of it not to-be far.

"Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύομην διὰ πολλῆς χιλιῶν καὶ
Hence they-advanced through much snow and
πεδίου τρεῖς σταδίων, πεντεκαίδεκα
(through a) plain three days' march, (making) fifteen
παρασάγγας. 'Ο δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο
parasangs. The — third (day's march) was
χαλεπός καὶ βορρᾶς ἀνέμος ἐπεινε ἐνα
difficult-and-severe and (the) north wind blew against-them-
tίός, παντάπασιν ἀποκαίμων πάντα, καὶ
in-their-faces, entirely parching-up everything, and
πυγνίς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἐνθα δὴ τις τῶν
benumbing the men. Then indeed some-one of the
μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ
augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed to-the wind, and
σφαγιάζεται καὶ δὴ ἐδοξε περιφανῶς πᾶσι
it-was-sacrificed; and indeed it-seemed evidently to-all (that)
τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος λήξαι. Δὲ τὸ βάθος
the violence of the wind ceased. And the depth
τῆς χιλιῶν ἦν ὅρυμα. ὡστε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν
of the snow was (a) fathom; so-that even many of the
ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων ἄπωλετο, καὶ
haggage-cattle and of the slaves perished, and
τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. Δὲ διεγένετο
of the soldiers about thirty. And they-passed
τὴν νύκτα καίοντες πῦρ. οὗ ἦν πολλὰ ἐξῆλα
the night burning fire; for there-was much wood
ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ: οἱ δὲ προσήντες ὤφε 
in the place—where they halted; (those) indeed coming late
εἶχον οὐ ξύλα. Οἱ οὖν ξύντες πάλαι 
had no wood. (Those) therefore coming before
καὶ καλοῦντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς ὑψώντας 
and burning the fire (would) not (let)—(those) coming late
προσέσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μετάδοθεν αὐτοῖς 
approach to the fire, unless they—shared with-them
πυρὸς, ἢ τι ἄλλο, εἰτε ἔχοιεν βρωτῶν. 
wheat, or any—thing else, if—any—thing they—might—have etable.
Ἐνδα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἄλληλοι δὲν ἔκαστοι 
So—then indeed they—shared with—one—another what each
εἶχον. Ἐνδά δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος 
There—where indeed the fire was—burning, the snow
dιατηρομένης, ἐγίγνοντο μεγάλοι βόσκοι ἔστε 
(being) melted, there—became large pits—until
ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν 
to the ground; where indeed there—was—present (an opportunity)
· μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος. 
to—measure the depth of the snow.
Ἐκτείδεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν δλην ἐπισάν 
Hence (they—proceeded (during) the entire following'
ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν 
day through snow, and many of the men
ἐθουλμίσαν. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὁ ποιοθετούσας, καὶ 
But Xenophon commanding—the—rear, and
καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνδρῶν 
finding (those) fallen—down of the men
 neighbόι ὧ τὸ πάθος εἶν. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ τίς 
he knew—not what the disease might—be. But when some—one
τόν εἵμπειρον εἶπε αὐτῷ ὧ τις ἐρῶν 
of (it) acquainted—with (it) told him that evidently
βουλμίσθη, κἀν φάγωσι τι, ἀναστήσονται, 
they—had—the—bulimy, and—if they—eat something, they—would—get—up,
περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποξύγια, εἰ ποὺ ὁρῶν 
going—about among the baggage—cattle, if any—where he—saw any—thing
βρωτὼν ἥ ποτῶν, διεδίδον, καὶ διδόντας
and giving (it), and giving (it)
dιέστησεν τοὺς βουλιμώσι τοὺς δυνάμενος
he-sent-about to — (those) having-the-bulimy — (those) being-able
παραπέρεσαν. Ἐπειδή δὲ ἔμφαγον τι,
to-run-about. When — they-might-have-eaten any-thing,
ἀνίστατο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. Δὲ πορευομένων
they-stood-up and proceeded-forth. But proceeding (on)
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἄμφι κεφάλας ἀφινεῖται
their march) Cheirisophus indeed about dark
καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ
and finds at the spring-
ἐμπροσθέν τοῦ ἐρύματος γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας ἐκ
in-front of the rampart women and girls from
τῆς κόμης ὑδροφόρουσας. Ἀνταί ἤρθων αὐτοὺς
the village carrying-water. These asked them
τίνες εἶναι. Δ’ ὁ ἐρυμαῖναι εἰπε. Περσιστί,
who they-might-be. And the interpreter said in (the)’Persian-language,
ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸν
that they-were-proceeding from (the) king to the
σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι εἰν οὐκ
satrap. — (they) — replied, that he-was not
ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ’ ἀπέρχεται ὅσον παρασάγην.
there, but was-distant as-much-as (a) parasang.
Δ’ οἱ ἔπει ἣν ὄψιν συνεισέχονται σὺν τοῖς
But — (they) because it-was late enter-together with the
ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἐρύμα πρὸς τὸν κομήχην.
water-carriers into the fort to the head-man-of-the-village.
Ἐνταῦθα γὰρ μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ δοῦν τοῦ
There therefore indeed Cheirisophus and as-many-of-the
στρατεύματος ἔδυνασθαν ἐστρατοπεδεύσι
army (as) were-enabled (to come up)
σαντο. Ὁ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν
camped; and — (those) of the other soldiers that'were
μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσατο τὴν ὅδον ἐνυκτέρευσαν
not 'able to-have-completed the route passed-the-night
καὶ ἄνευ πυρὸς· καὶ ἐνταῦθα τινὲς τῶν fasting and without fire; and there some of-the στρατιωτῶν ἀπόλοντο. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν πολεμίων soldiers perished. And some of-the εἰφείστοντο, καὶ ἥρπαζον τὰ being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized —

τῶν ἵππων γὰρ δύναμεν, καὶ (those) of the baggage-cattle not being-able (to proceed), and ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ αὐτῶν. Δὲ καὶ fought with-one-another for them. And also ἔλειπον τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε οἱ διεθρα—there-were-left-behind of the soldiers both — (those) having-

τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἵππω τῆς χιόνος, been-ruined (as respects) the eyes by the snow, τε οἱ ἀποσεσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους [and — (those) having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers τῶν ποδῶν ὕπα τοῦ ψύχους. of-the feet by the cold [and those who had their toes

ἀνέμων ἢν ἐπιχούρησα τοῖς mortified by the cold]. But indeed it-was (a) defence to-the ὀφθαλμὸς τῆς χιόνος, εἰ τις πορεύοντο eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)

ἐχών τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, the march) (having) (had) something black before the eyes,

δὲ τῶν ποδῶν, εἰ τις κινοῖτο, καὶ and (a defence) of the feet, if any-one moved-about, and μηδέποτε ἔχων ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἰ τὴν νύκτα never might-have rest, and if at — night ἔπολύντο. Δὲ δὲ οἱ ἐχοιμοῦντο ἑποδε—they-loosened-their-sandals. But (as many) as slept having-their-

δεμένου, οἱ ἡμῶν ἐχεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας, they—loosened, (their) straps into the feet, and the soles (of the sandals) were-frozen-about (the feet);

γάρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἄρχαία ἱππήματα ἠπάλμη, for indeed, when — (their) old sandals failed
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

πεποιημένοι ἦσαν καρπάτινας ἐκ τῶν (them), they-had-made (for themselves) rough-sandals from the νεοδάρτων βοῶν. Διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας οὖν raw-hides of-oxen. Through — (such) necessity therefore τοιαύτας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἵππελειπτόντο· καὶ as-these some of-the soldiers were-left-behind; and ἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ τὸ ἐξελευσόμεναι seeing a black place, [on-account-of the to-have disappeared αὐτῶν τὴν χιόνα, there (as respects) the snow, [on account of the disappear-

ἐίχατον τετηχέναι· καὶ once there of the snow,) they-conjectured (that it) had-melted; and ἐτετηχεὶ διὰ τῶν χρήσιν, ἢ ἄν ἀτμίζονα it-had-melted through some spring, which was smoking πλησίον ἐν νάση. Ἔντασις ἐξτάσιομενοι near in (a) woody-vale. There turning-aside ἐκάθεντο, καὶ ἔφασαν they-sat-down, and said (that they would) not proceed. οὐ πορεύεσθαι. "Ο δὲ Ξένοφων ἔχων ὃπως ὕπειροι τοι, — But Xenophon having (the command of) rear-guard, ὡς ὑπόθετο ἔδειτο αὐτῶν πάση τέχνη καὶ as he-perceived (this) begged of-them by-every art and μηχανή μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, ὅτι πολλοὶ means not to-be-left-behind, saying, that many (of the) πολέμους συνειδηγεῖν έπονται, καὶ τελευτῶν enemy being-assembled-together pursued (them), and finishing ἐξαλέσανεν. Οἱ δὲ ἔκελευον σχάζειν· he-grew-angry. — (They) indeed requested (him) to-kill γὰρ ἄν οὐ δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. (them); for (that) they were not 'able to-proceed. Ἐντασις ἠδοξε· εἶναι χράτισον φοβήσαι Then it-seemed (to him) to-be the-best to-have-scared τοὺς ἐπομένους πολέμους, εἰ τις δύνατο, μὴ the pursuing enemy, if any-thing could-be-done, lest ἐπιπέσοντος τοὺς κἀκεῖνος. Καὶ μὲν ἦν they-should-fall-upon (those) being-exhausted. And indeed it-was
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER V.

now dark, — they indeed advanced with much noise
diaferomenedi αμφὶ δὲν εἰχον. 'Ενδα δὴ
disputing about what they had (of the booty). Then truly,
μὲν οἱ δυσθηρόλαχαι ἐτε ἤγιαινον — (those of the)
indeed (those of the) rear-guard as being-in-good-condition-
tes, ἐξαναστάντες ἐδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολέμιοις and-able, starting-up ran to the
and-able, starting-up ran to the enemy;
δὲ οἱ κάμινοις, ἀνακραγόντες δὸν μέγιστον
and the exhausted (men), | having-shouted as much as the greatest
and the exhausted (men), having-shouted as much as the greatest
ἐδώναντο,
they could, [having shouted as loud as they possibly could,] struck
τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ
the shields against the spears. The enemy indeed
δείσαντες, ἥκαν εὐποιὸς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος
having-become-alarmed, threw themselves amongst the snow
eἰς τὴν νάπτην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἐτὶ ἐφῄσκατο
into the woody-vaIe, and no one (of them) afterwards made-a-noise
οὐδαμοῦ.
oi—where.

Καὶ Ξενόφων μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰπόντες
And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him telling
τοῖς ἄσθενοσιν, ὁτι τῇ ὑπεραία τινες
— (those) being-weak-and-helpless, that on the next day some
ἐξουσί ἐτὶ αὐτοὺς, πορευόμενοι,
would-come to them, (then) proceeding (on their march, but)
πρὶν διελθεῖν τέταρα στάδια ἐτύγχανοσιν
before (that) they had-gone-over four stadia they found
ἐν τῇ ὅδῃ τοῖς στρατιῶταις ἀναιμομένοις
on the road — soldiers resting
ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ
on the snow (and) having-covered (by it), and neither
οὐδεμίᾳ φυλακῇ καθεστήκατε, καὶ
had (no) guard been-placed-over (them), and
ἀνίστασαν αὐτοὺς. Δ’ οἱ ἐλεγον ὅτι οἱ
they-roused them up. And — they-said that — (those)
καὶ παρεδόσαν τοὺς ἀσθενόντας καὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἴσον πρῶτον τῇ σεβασμῷ τῶν παρετέθησαν πρὸς τὴν ὁμαλον. Οἱ δὲ ἀπῆγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ τὸν ἀστάτον εἶναι. Καὶ οἱ ἄμφι Ἑξοφούτηται ἐνταῦθα ἡμῖν ἔσχεν καὶ ἀδειπνοῦσαν, καταστησάμενοι οὐτως. Ψηλακᾶς οἰας ἔδυναντο. Ἡ εὐτελεῖς μεν ὑπὲρ ὀνειδισμῶν. Εἰς τὴν δὲ τὴν ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντα ναοῦ αἰτοῦσαν, καταστησάμενοι οὐτως. Ψηλακᾶς οἰας ἔδυναντο. Ἡ εὐτελεῖς μεν ὑπὲρ ὀνειδισμῶν. Εἰς τὴν δὲ τὴν ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντα ναοῦ αἰτοῦσαν, καταστησάμενοι οὐτως. Ψηλακᾶς οἰας ἔδυναντο. Ἡ εὐτελεῖς μεν ὑπὲρ ὀνειδισμῶν.
τῇ κόμῃ ἐνδα Χειρίσοφος ἠττίζετο. Ἐπεῖ δὲ
despite the village where Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed
συνεγένωντο ἀλλήλους, ἐδοξε εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς
they-got-together among-one-another, it-seemed-to-be safe
σχημοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κόμας. Καὶ
to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And
τας τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κόμας. Καὶ
to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ, οἱ ἄλλοι
Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where he was), the others
dὲ διαλαχόντες κόμας ἃς ἔδραυν, ἐπορεύ-
indeed having-drawn-lots (for the) villages which they-saw, pro-
οντο, ἔκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἐαυτῶν.
ceeded, each having the (men) of-themselves [each hav-

ing their respective command].

Ἐνδα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς
Here indeed Polybotes (an) Athenian captain
ἐκέλευσεν ἐαυτὸν ἀφιέναι· καὶ requested (that) they-would-allow him to-go-away; and
λαβὼν τοὺς εἰς ὅπως, taking the well-girt, [and taking with him the most active
θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κόμην, ἄν Ἐξοφὼν
of his men], running to the village, which Xenophon
eἰλήκει, καταλαμβάνει πάντας τοὺς και got-surprises all the inhabitants-of-
κώμης ἁπασμένοι, καὶ τὸν κώμαρχον, καὶ ἐπτακαίδεκα
the-village at-home, and the village-chief, and seventeen
πόλισι τρεφόμενος εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ culti
colts bred for (a) tribute to (the) king, and
τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου γεγαμημένην
the daughter of-the village-chief married

ἐνάτην ἡμέραν ὡς ὁ ἄρης αὐτῆς ὥμετο
the ninth day; and the husband of-her had-gone-out
θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ οἱ ἔλα ἐν ταῖς κόμαις.
hunting hares, and was not found in the villages.

Ἀδὶ δὲ οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα.
The — houses were under-ground, the — mouth (or
δεπορ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εἰπεῖαι.
entrance was) like (that) 'of (a) 'well, but below spacious.

Δὲ αἱ εἰσόδου μὲν τοῖς ὑποχώγιοις ὄρυκται,
And the entrances — for the cattle (were) dug,
dὲ οἱ ἀνθρώποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. Ἠν δὲ
but the men descended on ladders. In —
ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἰγὲς, οἰκὲς, βόες, ὄρνες,
the houses there- were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,
καὶ τὰ ἐχόνα τούτων δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη
and the young of these; and all the cattle
ἐτρέφοντο χιλῖοι ἑυδόν.  Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
were-nourished on hay within (the houses). And also there was
πυροί, καὶ κριδαί, καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ κριδίνοις οἴνοις
burns, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine
ἐν κρατήρεσι. δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ κριδαι ἠνθέαν
in large-bowls; and also (these) same barley-grains floated
ἴσοχείλεις,
even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),
καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,
reeds planted in
οἱ μὲν μείζονος, δὲ οἱ ἐλάστοις, οίνοι
(some) indeed larger, but (others) smaller, (and) not
ἐχοντες γόνατα. δὲ ἐδει ὡπότε τις διψών
having joints; and it was proper when any-one might be thirsty
λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μίξειν. Καὶ
having taken these into (his) mouth to-suck. And
ἡν πάνω ἄρρατος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐπιχεῖαν
it was very strong, if not [unless] some-one poured in
ὑδρῷ. καὶ τὸ κτῶμα ἦν πάνω ἐν ὑδατω
water; and the drink was very pleasant to one accus-
θόντι.
tomend-to (it).

Ο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποιήσατο τὸν ἀρχοντα τῆς
— And Xenophon made-for himself the ruler of —
tαύτης κώμης σύνδεινον, καὶ ἔξηλευε αὐτὸν
this village his guest-at-supper, and he exhorted him
θαρρεῖν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔπε στερήσοντο
to-be-of-good-courage, saying, that he should not be-deprived
BOOK IV.—CHAPTER V.

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίασιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τὴν of—(his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the
οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπυτηδείων, ἢν φαίνεται house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)
ἐξηγησάμενος τι ἄγαθόν τῷ στρατεύματι, having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the
ἐστὶν γὰρ γεγονταί ἐν ἄλλω ἐξνεο. 'Ὁ δὲ army,
until 'they might 'get' with another tribe. — And
ταύτα ὑπερεισέντο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told
ὁ λίον ἐνδῇ ἣν καταφρογμένος. Οὖν (them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore
μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ νύχτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιώται indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers
dιασκειρήσαντες οὕτως, ἐξομήνθησαν ἐν πάσιν, having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great
ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and
τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὑπὸ ἐν ἀφθαλμοῖς. Δὲ τῇ the children of-him likewise under eye, And on-the
ημέρᾳ Ἐξοφόρων λαθὼν τὸν κωμάρχην next day Xenophon taking the village-chief
ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χερίσσοφον ὁποῦ δὲ παρίοι proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by
κόμην, ἐπέτετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαισ, (a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,
καὶ πάνταχον κατελάβασεν εὐχόχυμοιος καὶ and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and
ἐνυμομένους, καὶ οὐδαμὸν ἄφίεσαν enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to-
καὶ ἐπαργεῖαι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς. depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them.
Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρετέθεσαν ἐπὶ And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on
τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα αἵματα, ἐρίπεια, the same table flesh (of) lamb, kid,
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὄρνιθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις, ūi, with much bread,
toίς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς χρυσίνοις.
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley.

"Οπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βοῦλοιτο προσεῖν
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed wished to-drink-before
τῷ ἐλλέκεν ἐπὶ τὸν χρατῆρα, to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,
ἐκεῖν ἔδει ἐπικίνηστα ῥοφοῦντα πίνειν
there it-was-necessary having-stooped-down sucking to-drink
δασπερ βοῦν. Καὶ ἔδιδοσαν τῷ κουμάρχῃ λαμ-και
like (an) ox. And they-granted to-the village-chief to-
θάνειν ὃ τι βούλουτο. Ὁ δὲ ἔδεχετο οὐδὲν
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing
ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὅποιον δὲ ἱδοι τινὰ τῶν συν-
else indeed, where however he-may-have-seen any of — (his) re-
γενῶν ἄει ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτῶν.
lations 'he always 'took (them) with him.

'Επεὶ δὲ θησοῦν πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-
λάμβανον κάκεινος σχηματιζόντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,
ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ,
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,
καὶ Ἀμέωνους παιδὰς σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian
στολαῖς διακοσμούντας. Δὲ ἐδείχνυσαν τοῖς παιδίν
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys
δασπερ ἐνεῖσι τοῖς δὲ δεῖ ποιεῖν.
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

'Επεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφών ἐφιλοφρονήσατο
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted
ἀλλήλους, κοινὴ δὴ ἀνηρτῶν τὸν κουμάρχην,
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,
διὰ τοῦ ἐρυμέας περιζῶντος, τίς ἡ χώρα
through the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER V.

Δ' ὁ ἐλευθερῖος, στὶ Ἄρμενια. Καὶ might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And
πάλιν ἡρώτων τὴν οἱ ἱπποι τρέφοντο. Δ' again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred. And
ὁ ἐλευθερῖος, στὶ δασομός βασιλεί: ἵψῃ δὲ, — (he) said, as (a) tribute 'to (the) 'king; he-said also, (that)
tὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, and
ἐφραίζεθα τὴν ὁδὸν ἤ εἶν. mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed,
ἀγων αὐτῶν πρὸς οὓς οἴκετας ἐλαττοῦ, conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]
kαὶ διδώσι ἱππὸν ὅν εἰλήφει παλαί- and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-
tερον τῷ χωμάρχῃ ἀναδέρφας καταθύσαι, to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,
ὅτι ἥκουσεν αὐτῶν εἶναι ἵππον τοῦ Ἡλίου, because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,
ὥσπερ ἀπὸ δάνη γὰρ ἐκεκακαστὸ ύπὸ τῆς having-fears lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the
πορείας: αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πῶλον, journey; the indeed 'himself' takes (some) of-the colts,
kαὶ ἔκαστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν and to-each of-the other generals and captains
καὶ ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δ' ἱπποὶ ταῦτα ἤσαν he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were
μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολύ smaller indeed (than those) of the Persians, but much
θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἑκταίθα ὁ χωμάρχης more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief
διδάσκει περιελεῖν σαξία περὶ τοὺς πῶλας instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet
τῶν ἱππῶν καὶ τῶν ἰπποχιλῶν. ὅταν ἄγωσι of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)


"Επει δ' ὤγδὴ ἡμέρα ἤν, μὲν παραδίδοσι.  

When — (the) eighth day was, 'he indeed delivered-over

tὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρίσοφος, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς  
the guide to-Cherisophus, but he-left the

οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχῃ, πλὴν τοῦ  
members-of (his) family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)

νιὸν τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος δὲ τοῦτον  
son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him

παραδίδοσι Ἑπισθένει Ἀμφιπόλιτης φυλάττειν  
he-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard

ὡς, εἰ ἡγεμόνοι καλός. ἀπίοι  
that, if 'he (the father) should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return

ἐχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰςφόρμαν εἰς τὴν  
having also this-one. And they-brought to the

οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὡς πλείον ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-  
house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having-

ζεῦξαντες ἐπορεύοντο.  
having-broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. 'And the village-

χιτὶς λευμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ  
chief unbound them through (the) snow; and

Χειρίσοφος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι  
Cherisophus became-angry with-him that he-did not


\[ \text{\text{
\vspace{-1cm}

\begin{center}
\textbf{BOOK IV. — CHAPTER VI.} 289
\end{center}

\vspace{-1cm}

\[\text{γέν} \varepsilonις \text{kώμας}. \; \Delta' \; θέλεγεν οτι εἶνεν οὐκεκάκακα \varepsilon\text{v} \text{lead (them) to villages. But who said that there was not}

\[\text{— } \varepsilonν \text{τῷ τοῦτῳ τόπῳ. ο} \; \text{Ὁ δὲ Χειρόσοφος ἔπαισε}

\[\text{(any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck}

\[\text{αὐτὸν \μὲν, γ' \οὐκ \ἐλπίσε. Δ' \ἐκ τοῦτο\nu}

\[\text{him indeed, but did not bind. (him). | And from this}

\[\text{ἐξεῖνος αἰσχρὰς} \; \text{διώκετο} \; \text{τῆς} \; \text{νυκτὸς,}

\[\text{he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this so-}

\[\text{καταλήκτων} \; \text{τῶν} \; \text{υἱόν. Τόδε}

\[\text{count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This}

\[\text{δὴ} \; \; \text{ἡ} \; \; \text{κάκωσις} \; \; \text{xai} \; \; \text{ἀμέλεια} \; \; \text{τοῦ}

\[\text{truly—indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of the}

\[\text{ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο} \; \; \text{μόνον} \; \; \text{διάφορον} \; \; \text{Χειρί-

\[\text{guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiris-

\[\text{σόφος xai} \; \; \text{Ἐνωφώστης} \; \; \text{ἐν} \; \; \text{τῇ} \; \; \text{πορείᾳ. Δὲ} \; \; \text{Ἐπί-

\[\text{sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-

\[\text{δένης} \; \; \text{τῇ} \; \; \text{πρᾶσδῃ} \; \; \text{τοῦ} \; \; \text{παιδὸς, xai} \; \; \text{xομίσας}

\[\text{thenes not—only became fond of the boy, but also having—taken}

\[\text{οίκας} \; \; \text{ἐκρίπτου} \; \; \text{πιστοτάτῳ.}

\[\text{(him) home | made—use—of (him as) the—most—faithful [found him very}

\[\text{Metὰ} \; \; \text{τοῦτο} \; \; \text{ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπὶ τὰ}

\[\text{much attached to himself]. After this they—proceeded seven}

\[\text{σταῦμος, ἀνὰ πάντες} \; \; \text{παρασάγγας} \; \; \text{τῆς} \; \; \text{ἡμέρᾳ,}

\[\text{days'—march, always five parasangs the day,}

\[\text{παρὰ} \; \; \text{τῶν} \; \; \text{ποταμῶν} \; \; \text{Φάσιν, εἰρὸς} \; \; \text{πλῆ-

\[\text{to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal—}

\[\text{ςραῖον. Ἔντειθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο} \; \; \text{σταῦμος}

\[\text{Hence they—proceeded two days'—march}

\[\text{δέκα} \; \; \text{παρασάγγας. ἐπὶ} \; \; \text{δὲ} \; \; \text{τῇ} \; \; \text{ὑπερβολῇ}

\[\text{(making) ten parasangs; at — the pass—over}

\[\text{eἰς} \; \; \text{τῷ} \; \; \text{πεδίῳ} \; \; \text{Χάλυβας xai} \; \; \text{Σαῦχος,}

\[\text{(the mountains) on—to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taoci,}

\[\text{xai} \; \; \text{Φασιανῷ ἀπῆλθαν} \; \; \text{αὐτοῖς. Χειρί-

\[\text{and (the) Phasiani had—come—to—oppose them. Cheiris-

\[\text{σόφος θ', ἐπεὶ κατείθε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ}

\[\text{sophus indeed, when he—saw the enemy on the}

\[\text{25}

\]
ιπερβολη, ἔπαυσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being-distant
eis τριάκοντα σταδίων, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ about thirty stadia, that he might not approach
tοὺς πολέμιους ἀγων κατὰ κέρας. δὲ the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column:] and
καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς also announced to the other (officers) to bring-up the
λόχους, ἵνα τὸ στρατευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος. companies, so that the army might get into line.
Δὲ ἐπεί οἱ ὑπωδοφύλακες ἤλθον, συνεκάλεσε And when the rear-guard came, he called-together
tοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς, καὶ ἐλεξεν ὅσει the generals and captains, and spoke thus:
Οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὐς ὡράτε πατέχουσι τὰς ἦπερβολάς The enemy as you see possess the passes
tοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὡρα βουλεύεσθαι, ἐπιποσ of the mountain, (it is) indeed time to consider, how
ἀγωνούμενα ὡς κάλιστα. Ἀδει we may encounter (them) to the best advantage possible. It seems
οὖν μὲν ἐμοί παραγγείλαμεν μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις therefore indeed to me to direct — the soldiers
ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι, εἴτε to take their dinners, and (that) we should consult, whether
ἀδει ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τὴμερον εἴτε it seems best to cross over the mountain either to-day or
ἀθρον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλέανθος, ἀδει, to-morrow. To me indeed at least, said — Cleanor, it seems
ἐπὶ ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἐξο- (best), after we have dined as speedily as possible (and) having-
πλησαμένος ὡς τάχιστα ἵνα ἐπι τοὺς ἄνδρας. armed ourselves as speedily as possible to go against the men.
Γὰρ εἰ διατρίβομεν τὴν τήμερον ἦμεραν, τὸ For if we shall waste the present day, not only
οἱ πολέμιοι νῦν ὃρωντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαρρα-

the enemy now seeing us will be more-
Μετά τούτον Ἑκοφόρων εἶπεν· 'Εγὼ δὲ
After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed

γιγνόσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἔστι ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,
think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight,

τοῦτο δὲ παρασκευάσομαι ὅπως ὅσιοι τε μάχομεθα
this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight

κράτιστα·

Εἰ δὲ βοιλόμεθα ἐπερθάλλειν
to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over

ὧς πἀστα, τοῦτο δοξεῖ μοι εἶναι
(the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be

σχετῶσαι ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest

τραίματα, δὲ ὅς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (bodies)

ἀνδρῶν. Οἶμαι μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἔστι τὸ
(of-) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as)

ὅρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ’ ἐξήκοντα στάδια,
is-to-be-seen more than (to) sixty stadia (in length),

ὅτι ἀνδρεῖς φανεροί εἰσίν φυλάττοντες ἑμᾶς
but (the) men manifestly are watching us

οὐδὰμός, ἀλλ’ ἢ κατ’ αὐτὴν τὴν ὤδον· οἶμαι
nowhere, except along this-same — read; therefore (it is)

πολὺ κρείττουν, καὶ περασθοῦν κλέψαι λαθόντας
much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed,

τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυναίμεθα
some (part) of the desert mountain, and if we-can

ἀρπάσαι φθάσαντας, μᾶλλον
to-take-forcible-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather

ἦ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἵσχυρὰ κχορία καὶ ἄνδρας
than to-fight against strong places and men

παρασκευαιμένους. Γὰρ πολὺ βῆθον
prepared (to resist). For (it is) much easier
292 THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

... ἵν ὑμιλής ... to-go (up s) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (roads) ... πολεμικῶν ὄντων ἐνδεν καὶ ἐνδεν καὶ νύκτωρ (the) enemy being here and there; and at-night τις ἀν ὀρφή τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more ... ἁμάχι, ἡ μὲν ἡμέρα (distinctly when) not-fighting, than in, (the) day (time) (while) μαχόμενος καὶ ἡ τραχεία εἰμενεστέρα τοῖς fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the ποσίν ιοῦν ἁμάχι, ἡ ἡ ὑμαλή feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth (one) βαλλομένοις τῶς κεφαλᾶς. Kαί οὖ to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it 'does not δοξῆλα μοι εἶναι ἄδυνατον κλέψαι 'seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed μὲν ἠν νυκτός, ὡς μὴ ὀρασθαί, δὲ (us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-being also ἔσον ὑπελέξειν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ παρέχειν 'allowed (as) to-go-away so-far \( \mid \) as not to-suffer (a) αἰσθήσιν. 

Δὲ being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And μοι ἃν δοξοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack ταύτῃ ἃν χρησθαί τῷ ἄλλῳ ὄρει in-this (manner) — \( \mid \) to-have the rest (of the) mountain ἐρημῶτέρα. γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι μᾶλλον μένουν more-deserted; for the enemy 'would rather 'remain αὐτοῦ ἀδρόου. Ἀλαρ ἐγὼ συνβάλλομαι here collected-together. But why 'should I 'conjecture τί περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἔγωγυ, ὡς Χειρίσοφε, any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus, ἄκουὼ ὡςāς, τοῖς Λακεδαίμονισις, δοσι hear, (that) you, the Lacedemonians, as-many (of you as) ἐστε — ὑμῖν, τοῖς ἑυδίνις ἐκ are\[ \mid \] of (the class of) \( \mid \) 'equals (or higher order), immediately from
παιδὸν μελετῶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἶναι σικ. boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it is not
αισχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, διὰ shamefull, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the)
vῶμος μὴ κολλεῖ. Δὲ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὡς law 'does not 'forbid. And so-that you-may-steal | as
χράτιστα, καὶ πειράσθε λαν-
best-possible, [as adroitly as possible] and have-exerted-yourselves to-
θάνειν, ὅπα ἔστω τῶν μικρῶν ὑμῖν, ἕν τι χρῆτε conceal (it), now-then it is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught
κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστιν stealing, to-be-scorched. Now therefore (this) is
μάλα καρός σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν (the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)
παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught
κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὅρους, ὡς μὴ λάβωμεν stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-may not 'receive
πληγάς. Ἄλλα μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καγώ stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I
ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἄθηναίους, εἶναι δεινὸς have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever
κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινὸν (to-steal) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great
κυνῆνον ὄντος τῶν κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)
κρατίστος σοι μέντοι μάλιστα, εἰπέρ αἱ best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the
κρατίστοι αὐξοῦνται ἄρχειν ὑμῖν. ἄτε best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)
ὅρα καὶ σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τήν παιδείαν.
time also for-you to-show — (your) education.
Ἐγώ μὲν τοῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰμί ἔτοιμος, I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,
ἐχων τοῖς ὑποστοφύλακας, ἐπειδὰν δεινὰ—
having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have-
The Anabasis of Xenophon.

σωμεν, ιέναι καταληψάμενος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ supped, to go about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also ἔχω ἕγεμόνος· γὰρ οἱ γυμνῆτες ἐνθερίσαντες I have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush ἐλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν ἐφεπομένων ἦμιν· καὶ took some of the marauders following us; and πυρβάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ ὀξύ ἄβατον, I hear from these, that the mountain is not impassable, ἀλλὰ νεμέεται αἰξι καὶ βουσὶν. δετε ἐάνπερ but (that) it is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so that if ἄπαξ λάβωμεν τι τοῦ ὄρους. ἔσται once we-take-possession-of any (part) of the mountain there-will-be βατὰ καὶ τοις ἵππον γίγνεται. Δὲ ἐλπίζω passable (places) even for the cattle. And I-expect (that) τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεὶν ἐπειδὰν the enemy will not-indeed longer remain after ἰδοιμὴ ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὄμοιῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ᾅκρων. they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights. Γὰρ ἐδέλουσιν οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἱσον For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality ἦμιν. Ὀ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε. Καὶ τὶ δεῖ σὲ with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why is-it-proper (that) you ἱέναι, καὶ λυπεῖν τὴν ὀπιοδοφυλαξίαν; ἀλλὰ (should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἀν τινὲς ἐδελούσιοι φαίνεσθαι. send others, unless that some volunteers may-make Ἰερὰ τοῦτον Ἀριστόνυμος Ἑμῶν—
(their) 'appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Methystreus ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὀπίλητας, καὶ Ἀρισδριαν came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Ἀριστέας Χῖος, γυμνῆτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος tees (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachus Ὅλταιῳ, γυμνῆτας· καὶ σύνημα (the) Ετθαι, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement ἐποίησαντο, ὑπὸ τὸν ἔχουν τὰ ἄκρα was-made, (that) when they-might-have-possession-of the heights
καίειν πολλὰ πυρὰ. Ταῦτα συνδέμενοι
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on
ήγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
forward the whole army against the enemy
ὡς δέκα σταδίους, ὡς δοκοῖ ήδὲ μάλιστα
about ten stadia, so that he might seem as much as possible
προσάξειν ταῦτην.
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

Επειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νυκτὶ.
When indeed they had supped, and it was night
οἱ μὲν ταξιδέντες ὡξοντο, καὶ
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and
καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος. δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)
ἀνεπάγωντο αὐτῶν.
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,
ὡς ἤσθεν τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἔγραψαν, καὶ
as they perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and
ἐκαίον πολλὰ πυρὰ διὰ νυκτὸς.
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed
ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἤγερ
it was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led
κατὰ τὴν ὃδον. οἱ δὲ καταλαμβάνοντες
(the army) along the road; — (those) — having-taken-possession-of
τὸ ὄρος ἐπήσαν κατὰ τὰ ἀκρα. Δὲ τῶν
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of the
πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμελεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass
τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αὐτῶν ἀπῆλθα τοῖς
of the mountain, but (a) part of them went (against) — (those)
κατὰ τὰ ἀκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
along the heights. But before (that) the many, [the
κατὰ τὰ τοῖς πολλοῖς,
main bodies of the armies,] were together, — (those) along the
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

άκρα συμμυγνάσαιν ἀλλῆλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες-heights met one-another, and the Greeks
νικοῦσι καὶ διώκουσιν.

Ἐν τούτῳ conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this (time)
δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ πελτασται — also — (those) from the plain, namely the targeteers
tῶν Ἑλληνων ἔσεν δρόμῳ πρὸς τοὺς of-the Greeks ran in (a) 'race against — (those)
παρατηγαμένους, δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχῶ
drawn-up-against (them), and Cheirisophus followed quickly
βάδην σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις. Δ' οἱ πολέμῳ
step-by-step with the heavy-armed-men. But the enemy (namely)
oι ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπείδη ἔσφυν τὸ ἀνω — (those) on the road, when they-saw — (those) above
ἐττομήνεν, φεύγοντι καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν
defeated, flee-away; and not many indeed of-them
dὲ ἀπέθανον. Δὲ πάντωλλα γέγρα ἐλήφθη, ἔ
died. But (a) great-many shields were-taken, which
οἱ Ἑλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς the Greeks cutting — (with their)
μαχαίραις, swords,
ἐποίοις ἄχρεια. Δ' ὡς ἀνέβησαν,
made useless. And as they-arrived-on (the heights),
θύσαντες, καὶ συγκάμηνυ τρόπαιαν, κατέβησαν
having-sacrificed, and having-erected (a) trophy, they-descended
eἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ ἦλθον eἰς κόμας γεμοῦσας
into the plain, and they-went to villages stored-with
πολλῶν καὶ ἄγαθῶν.
many and good (things).
CHAPTER VII.

Ἐξ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε σταδία—

From these (villages) they-proceeded five days-

muñ, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς Ταόχων.

march, (making) thirty parasangs, to (the) Taochi;

καὶ τὰ ἑπτήδεια ἐπέλυσε· γὰρ οἱ Ταόχοι

and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for the Taochi

ὡς οὖν ἰσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς ἐίχον πάντα

inhabited strong places, and in which they-had all

τὰ ἑπτήδεια ἀνακεχομισμένοι.

what (their) provisions having—carried (them) 'up (and stored

'Επεί δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς χωρίον, ὅ

When however they-arrived at (a) place, which

μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὐδ' οἰκίας, δ' αὐτόσε καὶ

indeed had no town nor houses, and there both

ἀνδρὲς καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πολλὰ κτήνη ἕσσαν

men and women and many cattle were

συνελημμένοις, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἦκων εἰδὼς

included, Cheirisophus indeed having-come immediately

προσέβαλλε πρὸς τούτο· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦ πρῶτη

made-an-attack against this (place); when — the first

τάξις ἄπεχαμεν, ἀλλὰ προσήκει καὶ αὖθις
division began-to-grow-tired, another succeeded and again

ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ἀρδεός

another; for it-was not (possible for them) drawn-up-in-a-body

περιστῆναι, ἄλλα ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ.

to-stand-around (it), as there-was (a) river 'in (a) 'circle

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὄπισθο-

When — Xenophon came with the rear-

φύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ἐπιλίταις, ἐνταῦθα
guard and targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then

dὴ Χειρίσοφος λέγει: Ἡχετε εἰς καλὸν· γὰρ

truly Cheirisophus says: You-have-come most-opportunely; for
to χωρίον αλρετέαν: γαρ ἦστι ὅπως τά ἐπιτηδεῖα
— (this) place must-be-taken; for there-is no — provisions
τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα τὸ
for the army if not [unless] we-shall-take — (this)
χωρίον. Ἐναπείδη δὴ ἐσθολεύοντο κοινῆ: καὶ
place. Then indeed they-deliberated in-common; and
tοῦ Ἑνοφόντος ἐρωτώντος, τί εἰς τὸ καλῶν
— Xenophon having-asked, what might-be the hindrance
eἰσελθεῖν, οὗ Χειρίσοφος εἰπεν. Ἀλλὰ αὕτη
to-enter (the place), — Cheirisophus said: But this
ἐστιν μία παροδος ἢν ὥρας: ἄταν δὲ
is (the) one (only) passage which you-see; whenever indeed
tις πειράται παριέναι ταύτη, κυλινδοῦσι
any-one should-attempt to-pass-along this, they-roll (down).
λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ἵππερχούσης πέτρας
stones over this — impeding rock;
δ' ὡς ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.
(he) indeed who may have-been-struck, is thus ‘disposed-of.
Δ' ἄμα ἐδείξα ἄνδρωπος συντετριμένους
And at-the-same-time he-showed men
καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Δὲ ἦν ἀναλόγωσιν
both (as respects) legs and ribs. But if they-should-expend
τοὺς λίθους, ἐφ' ὃ Εὐνοφῶν, τι ἦν ὄδυν ἄλλο
— (their) stones, said — Xenophon, is there-nothing else
καλύπτει παριέναι; γὰρ ὃ ὅπως ὁρῶν
that prevents (us) to-advance? for indeed we-do not ‘see
ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους ὀλίγους
(any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, unless these few
ἀνδρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἡ τρεῖς ὄπλουσμένους
men, and of-these (only) two or three are-armed.
Δὲ τὸ χωρίον, δ' ὡς διελθεῖν βαλλο-
And the space, which it-is-necessary to-pass-through (while) being-
μένους ἔστιν, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὥρας, σχεδόν τρία
thrown-at is, as even you see, about three
ἡμιπλεθρά. Δὲ τούτου δοῦν
half-plentha [about 150 feet]. And of-this (space) as-much-as (a)
plexadon dasu megalaix pictui dialeu-
plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick with-great pine-trees standing-
pousaix an 2 en andres esteiktotes an
apart-from-one-another against which men standing -
ti paskoev h ipo tov fevomevov lidov h
what will-they-suffer either from the thrown stones or
ipoi tov kulinidoumenov, to loipon
from the rolled (ones)? the rest (of the space)
he dixi gignetai ois himiplrodov,
now therefore becomes about (a) half-plethrum [about 50 feet], (over)
dei, etan oix lidoi laphissei, para-
which it-is-necessary, when the stones may-cease, to-run-
dramein. Allad, ephe o xeirosisofos, eity u
past. But, said — Cheirisophus, immediately
epeteidan arkoimede proiéna eix to dasu,
when we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees),
pollai oix lidoi fevontai. Autod, ephe,
many — stones are-thrown. That, said (Xenophon),
ain eih to deon gar thatou analowsoi
would be the thing-wanted, for the-more-speedily will-they-expend
tois lidous. Allad porovomeida,
— (their) stones. But let-us-advance (to the place),
envdenv estai ti mikron hemiv paradrameein,
whence there-will-be some small (place) for-us to-run-past,
vin dinomeida, kai na idion apeladein,
if we-can, and (from which we may) easily depart,
vin boulomeida.
if we-please.

'Enteudven xeirosisofos kai xenophon, kai kal-li-
Thence Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and Calli-
machos parrasios loxagos, (gar h theunovia
machus (the) Parrhasian (a) captain, (for the lead
tov loxagow tov opioforilakow
of-the captains of-the
rear-guard (was in possession
toytov ekein (the) themera, ) eporeuntono. de oix alloi
of-this-one on-that — day,) proceeded-forward; but the other
λοχαγοὶ ἐμενοὶ ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τούτων captains remained in — safety. After this οὖν ως ἐξομήχυσα μεν ἄνδροι ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ therefore about seventy men went-off under τὰ δένδρα, οἴξ ἄβροι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐνα, the trees, not collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one, ἔκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίς each-one guarding-himself as (well as) he-could. Agasias δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστόνυμος Μεθυδρινὸς — the Stymphalian and Aristonymus (the) Methydrion καὶ οὗτοι ὄντες λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὑποσδοφυλάκων, καὶ and these being captains of the rear-guard, and ἄλλοι δὲ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων γὰρ ήν others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was οἷς ἀσφαλέσ πλείου ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον ἐστάναι not safe (for) more than — one company to stand ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. Καλλιμάχος ἦδα δὴ μηχανα— under the trees. Callimachus then indeed con-tαι τι προέτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου, trived something (thus): he-ran-forward from the tree, ὅφει ὃ αὐτὸς ἦν, διό ὅ τρία βῆματα δὲ ἔπει under which he was, two or three times; but when οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνεχάζετο ἐπετεῖς ἐκάστης the stones were-hurled, he-retired expeditiously; at each οὗ προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἀμάξων πετρῶν — more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone ἀνηλίσκοντο. Δὲ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὡς ὥρα τῶν were-consumed. But — Agasias, as he-perceives — Καλλιμάχον, ἃ ἐποίει, καὶ πάν τὸ στρατεύμα Callimachus, what he-was-doing, and all the army θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παρα- beholding (it), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-
dράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τῶν ning-by into the place, neither calling-to — Ἀριστόνυμον δυνα τλησιον, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον Aristonymus (he) being near, nor (to) Eurylochus
tòv Λουσίαν ὑντας ἐταίρους, οὐδὲ αὐδένα the Lusian (both) being (his) comrades, nor (to) no-one ἄλλον, αὐτὸς χωρεῖ, και παρέρχεται else, he went-on (by himself), and passed-by πάντας. Ὅ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὡς ἔφε σαῦ αὐτὸν all. — But Callimachus, as he-saw him παρέστιν τὸν λαμβάνεται τῆς ἑτορίας αὐτοῦ· passing-by he seizes the rim (of the shield) of-him;
δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστούμνος Μεθύδριος παρέδει but at this (time) Aristonymus (the) Methydrian ran-by αὐτοὺς, καὶ μετὰ τούτου Εὐρύλοχος Λουσίας. them, and after this (one) Eurylochus (the) Lusian.
Γὰρ πάντες ὦντον ἀντετεινοῦντο ἄρετῆς, καὶ For all these claimed-for-themselves valour, and διηγοῦσιν τὸν πρὸς ἄλληλον· καὶ ὦντως contended with one-another (as respects it); and thus ἑρίζοντες αἱροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Γὰρ ὡς ἀπαξ contending they-take the place. For as 'they once εἰσόδομον, οὐδέησ πέτρος ἐνέχει ἀναδευ. 'had-run-in, not (a) stone was-thrown from-above.
Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν δειον θέαμα. Γὰρ αἱ Then indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the γυναικεῖς βίττουσα τὰ παιδία, women throwing — (their) children (over the precipice), καὶ εἶτα ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες (and) then threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men ὑπαίτως. Ἔνθις δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας in-like-manner (did the same). Then indeed also Αἰνεάς (the) Στυμφαλίος, λοχαγὸς, ἰδὼν τινα, ἔχοντα Stymphalian, (a) captain, seeing some-one (of them), having (a) καλὴν στολὴν, θέοντα ὡς βίοντα εάντον handsome dress, running as being-about-'throwing himself 'over, ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς καλύπτοιν. Δὲ laid-hold (of him) as being-about-hindering (him). But ὃ ἐπιστάται αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ἔχοντο — (he) 'drags him 'along, and both went (over)
ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀνθρώποι ἐλήφθησαν,
Therefore indeed very few men were-captured,
dὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ οὖν καὶ πρόβατα.
but — many oxen and asses and sheep.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χα-
Thence they-proceeded through (the country) 'of (the) 'Cha-
λίδων ἐπτά σταθμοὺς,
the mountains seven stations, (making) fifty para-
σάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλκιμώτατοι ὄν
sages. These were the-bravest (of those people) whose
δῆλον, καὶ ἦσαν εἰς ἁεῖρας.
(s) that were — (as) (s) they — (as) (s) they — hands [and they
(country) they-passed-through, | and they-went to | hands [and they

Εἰχὼν δὲ λινοῖς θῶρακας
they had also (as) (linen) (cuirasses) (reaching)
μέχρι τοῦ ἕτρου, δ' ἀντί τῶν πτερίδων
just to-the groin, and in-place of — (s) (skirts) (they had)
πυκνά σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα. Εἰχὼν δὲ καὶ
thick (as) (cords) (twisted). They had also —
κυνήγιας, καὶ κράνια, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ
(as) (treaties) (as) (helmet) (as) (s) (knife) (at)
τὴν ζώνην ὄσον Λακωνικὴν ἔνθηκαν,
— (their) (girdle) (as-long-as (s) (Spartan) (dagger) (sickle-shaped),
ὁ ἐσφαττόν, ὅν δύνατον κρατεῖν:
(as) (knife) (as) (with-which) (s) (they-cut-the-throats) of — (as) (they — master,
καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τάς κεφαλὰς ἄν ἔχοντες
and (s) (cutting-off) — (their) (heads) — (and) (having
ἐπορεύοντο: καὶ ἤδον, καὶ ἐχόμενον,
they-proceeded (on their march); and they-sang, and (as)
ὅπωτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἠμέλλον ὑέσθαι.
when (they thought) the enemy were — about to-see (them)
Καὶ εἰχὼν δὲ δὸρυ ὡς πεντεκαΐδεκα πτηχών,
And they-had also (as) (s) (spare about) fifteen cubits (in length)
ἔχων μίαν λόγχην. Οὗτοι ἐνεμενον
(but) (having) (only) one (spike). These (people) (remained

THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.
ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες
in — (their) towns. When however the Greeks
παρέλθουσιν, εἰποῦτο δὲι μαχόμενοι.
may-have-passed-by, they-followed continually
μαχίζεισιν.
fighting (with them).
"Ομιλοῦν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπίτηδεια
They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and — (their). provisions
ἀναεικομισμένοι ἤσαν ἐν τούτοις, ὡστε
were-brought-up in these (strongholds), so (that)
τοὺς Ἑλληνας λαμβάνειν μηδὲν αὐτὸς ἄλλα
the Greeks took nothing from that-place, but
διεσφάρησιν τοὺς κτήσεις, ἃ ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν
were-nourished by the cattle, which they-took from the
Ταύχων. Ἐκ τοῦτοι οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ
Taochi. After this the Greeks arrived at
τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀρπασαν, εἴρων
the river Harpasus, (the) breadth (of which being)
τεττάρων πλέονν. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
four plethra. Thence they-proceeded through
Σκυθινῶν τέσσαρας σταδίων,
the country of the) Scythini four days'-march, (making)
eἰκοσι παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας,
twenty parasangs, through (a) plain to villages,
ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσεισαντο,
in which they-remained three days, and collected-provisions.
"Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἢλθον τέσσαρας σταδίων
Thence indeed they-went four days'-march (making)
eἰκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαιμονα,
twenty parasangs, to (a) large and wealthy
καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἢ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. Ἐκ
and populous city, which was-called Gymnias. From.
ταύτης ὅ ἄρχων ὑπὲρ χώρας πέμπτει ἤγεμόνα
this (place) the ruler of the country sends (a) guide
to the Greeks, that he-might-conduct them through the
χώρας πολεμίας ἑαυτῶν. Ἰδ' ἐκείνος
country inimical (to his people) themselves. And he
having come says, that he will lead them (in) five days

eis χωρίον, ὅτεν ἤλωναν τὰλατταν· δὲ εἰ
to a place, whence they would see (the) sea; and if

μὴ ἐπηγγέλετο τεσσάραυ. Καὶ ἡγούμενος,
not announced himself (willing) to die. And leading

ἐπειδῆ ἐνέδραλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν
(them), when he entered into the (country) inimical

ἐν τούτοις, παρεκαλοῦντο αἴσθεν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
to themselves, he exhorted (them) to burn and lay waste the

χώραν· καὶ ὃ ἐγένετο δὴλον ὅτι ἔλθοι
country; and by which it became evident that he had come (by)

ἐνεχα τοῦτον, οὐ τῆς εὐνοίας τῶν
reason of this, (and) not — (from any) good will (for) the

Εὐλήνων. Καὶ ἀφαιροῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ
Greeks. And they arrived at the mountain on the

πέμπτην ἡγέρα· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἤν Ὡθήνης.
fifth day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Theches.

Εἰπειδῇ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους,
When indeed the foremost got on the mountain,

καὶ κατειδον τὴν τάλατταν, πολλὴ χραγῇ
and looked down on the sea, (a) great noise

ἐγένετο. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφών καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
occurred. But — Xenophon and the rear-guard

ἀκοῦσας φῆμηςαν ἄλλους πολεμίους ἐμπροσθεν
having heard (it) thought (that) other enemies in front

ἐπιτίθεοντο· γὰρ εἰπόντο ὃποιον ἐκ τῆς
for they followed behind from the

καιομένης χώρας, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ποιησάμενοι
burned places and the rear-guard forming

ἐνέδραν τὴν ἀπεκτείναν τινας καὶ ἔγωγήσαν.
(an) ambuscade not only killed some but also made

καὶ ἔλαβον ἄμφι τὰ ἐξοχον γέμια
(others) prisoners; and they took about — twenty shields

ἀμφότερα δασείων βοῶν.
(made of) raw hides of thick haired oxen.


When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also

bigger and — (those) continually running-kept-running

in-haste to — (those) continually shouting, and the noise

became much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous

they became it seemed to Xenophon indeed to-be something

greater (than common). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse,

and having-taken-with (him) Lucius and the cavalry,

he went forward, that he-might-give-assistance; and quickly indeed

they hear the soldiers shouting, (The) sea!

(he) sea! and cheering-on (those in the rear).

Then indeed all commenced-running and the rear-guard,

and the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed) and (also) the

horses. And when all arrived on the summit,

indeed they-embraced one-another, also (the) gene-

ral officers and captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly,

whoever indeed (it might be) having-exhorted (them to it), the

soldiers bring stones, and make (a) large

mound. Then they placed-on (this mound a) multitude

26
THE 'ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

dermaton omoboeion, kai baxthrias, kai ta gerba
of-kins of-rain-ox-hides, and
staves, and the shields
aihyalota, kai o hymwv te autovs katetemne
captured (from the enemy), and the guide not-only himself cut-to-pieces
ta gerba, kai diexeleueto tois allois.
the shields, but-also exhorted the others (to do the same).

Metata taita oi Ellnes apopemptoun tov hymwv,
After thus the Greeks sent-away the guide,
dontes dora atop koinov
iving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,
ka arynaran filalhn, kai Persiwc skevn,
and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,
ka deka dafikouv. 'O malwsta ytei tois
and ten darics; but most-of-all he-asked-for the
daktulionous, kai elabhe pollous para tov
finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them) from the
stratiotow. De deizas kormin autovs ou
soldiers. And he-having-pointed-out (a) village to-them where
skhnw sou,
they-might-encamp (or take up their quarters), and (he also having showed

tiwn odon, tis porooustai eis Makrones,
the road, on-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones,
epi egeneto estera, xetov aymab tis nyctos.
when it-was evening, he-departed, proceeding during-the night.

CHAP ER VIII.

'Everte dev o'i Ellnes eporeudhsvn dia
HENCE — the Greeks proceeded through

Makrovn treis stadoiv,
(three days’-march,

dea parasaivas. De tis prwth iwer
ten parasangs. And on-the first day.
ἐφίκαντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, ὅς ἔδρευε τὴν
they-arrived at the river, which bounded-and-divided the
τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυ-
(territories) of the Macrones — (from) — (those) of the, Scy-
δινῶν. Εἰχον δὲ ἵππεδέξιον χωρίον οἶον
thini. They-had — on (their) right (a) place such-as
χαλεπώτατον, καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
(to be) the-most-difficult (of access), and on (their) left
ἄλλον ποταμὸν, εἰς δὲν ὅ ὅρις, δὴ οὖν
another river, into which the bounding (river), through where
ἐδει διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὕτος
it-was-necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river)
δὲ ἦν δασὺς δένδρων οὐ μὲν παχέα,
— was thick-set (on its shores) with-trees not indeed thick (or large),
δὲ πυκνοὶς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἑλληνες, ἐπεὶ
but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks, after
προς ἀλλον, ἔξοπτον, σπείρότους ἐξελέβαι ἐκ τοῦ
they-arrived, cut-down, hastening to-go-out from the
χωρίον ὅς τάχιστα. Δ' οἱ Μακρωνες, ἔχοντες
country as speedily-as-possible. But the Macrones, having
γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τρίχινος κυτώνας
wicker-shields and spears and hair tunics,
παρατηγαμένοι ἵσαν καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως,
had-been-drawn-up on the-opposite-side of the-crossing-place,
καὶ διεκελεύσων ἄλλως, καὶ ἐξεπτον λίθους
and encouraged one-another, and they-threw stones
εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν, δὲ οὐ ἐξικνύουσα, οὖθ' in the river, but 'they-did not 'reach (our men), (nor) (or)
ἐβλαστῶν οὗθένα.
hurt none (of-them).

Ἐνδὰ δὴ τις αὐτή τῶν πελατστῶν προερχέται
Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-up
τῷ Ἐξανθοῦντι, φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι
to — Xenophon, affirming (that he) had-been-a-slave
Ἀθηναῖοι, λέγον, ὅτι γυνώσκω τὴν φωνὴν
at-Athens, (and) saying, that he-knew the language
τῶν ἀνδρῶν. Καὶ οἱμαί, ἔφη, ταύτην εἶναι
of—(these) men. And I-think, said-he, this to-be
ἐμῆν πατρίδα· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἔδέλω
my country; and if not [unless] something hinders, I-wish
dιαλέγήναι αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' οἶδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη·
to-speak with-them. But nothing hinders, said

ἄλλα διαλέγον, καὶ μάθε πρῶτον
(Xenophon); but speak (with them), and ascertain first
τινὲς εἶσίν. Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ' what (people) they-may-be. He-inquiring, — (they) —
eἶπον, ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα αὐτοῖς
said, that (they were) Macrones. Ask them
tοίνυν, ἔφη, τι ἀντιτετάχθαται, καὶ then, said (Xenophon), why drawn-up-against (us), and
χρῆσον ἐναὶ πολέμου ἤμιν. Δ' οἱ wish to-be enemies to-us. But — (they)
ἀπεκρίναντο: ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἔρχεσθε ἐπ' answered: (Because) that even you come against
ἡμεῖς ὑμαῖν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔκέλευον our country. The generals (then) ordered (him)
λέγειν, δι' οὗ ποιήσοντες κακῶς γε, to-say, that not making evil at-least, [that not in the

ἄλλα πολεμήσαντες least intending to injure you,) but having-been-making-war 'with (the)
βασιλεῖ, ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ king, we-were-returning to — Greece, and (that)
βουλόμεθα ἀποκεῖσθαι ἐπὶ θάλασσαν. Ἠσεῖνοι we-desire to-arrive to (the) sea. They
ἐρώτων, εἰ ἀν δοῦνε τὰ πιστὰ τούτων.
asked, if (they) would give — pledges of-these (things).

Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν ἔδέλειν καὶ δοῦναι And — (they) said (that they) wished both to-give
καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεύχεν οἱ Μάκρωνες διδόσασι and to-receive (them). Then the Macrones gave
τοῖς Ἐλλησι βαρβαρίκην λόγχην, δε οἱ Ἐλληνες the Greeks (a) barbarian lance, and the Greeks
ἐκεῖνοις Ἑλληνικὴν γὰρ ἔφασαν
(gave) them (a) Grecian (one); for they-said (that)

ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ· δὲ ἀμφότεροι
these were (their) pledges; and both (parties called on the)

θεοὺς ἐπεμαρτύραντο.
gods (that) they-might-witness (it).

Δὲ μετὰ τὰ πιστὰ, οἱ Μάκρωνες εὐθὺς
And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately

συνεξέχωσαν τὰ δένδρα, τε ὄδοποιον
cut-down-with (them) the trees, not-only to-make-a-road (for

όνων ὡς διαβιδάσοντες,
aname-them, for a) path as about-passing (them) 'through min-

μιμήμενοι ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἑλλησι· καὶ
ming (at the same time) among the Greeks; but also

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν ὰιαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ
provided (a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and

παρῆγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἐως κατέ-
they-led (them) 'along for three days, until they-set-

στησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ δραὶ Κόλχων.
down the Greeks on the borders (of the) Colchians.

'Ενταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ προσβατὸν· καὶ
Here was (a) large mountain, but accessible; and

οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτων.
the Colchians had-been-drawn-up on this (mountain).

Καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο
And the Greeks indeed — (at) first drew-up-against

κατὰ φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς
(line) in, as thus about-leading (the men) against

τὸ ὄρος· δὲ ἐπείτα ἐδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
the mountain; but when it-seemed to-the generals (that)

συλλεγεῖσι βουλεύσασθαι ὡπως ἀγωνιοῦνται
they-should-assemble to-deliberate how they-should-contend

ὡς κάλλιστα. Ἐνοφῶν οὖν ἔλεγεν, στὶ δοξεῖ,
to-the-greatest-advantage. Xanophon therefore said, that it-seemed

παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα,
to him), ceasing (to have the troops) — 'in (a)

line.
ποιησαμεν ὁρδίους λόχους γὰρ μὲν to-form straight companies; [columns of companies;] for indeed ή φαλαγγε εἰσὶ διασπασθήσεται γὰρ μὲν the line will immediately be-broken; for indeed τῇ εὐρήσομεν ἀνοδον, δὲ τῇ in — (some places) we-will-find (an) impassable-road, but in — (others) εὐδοκον τὸ δρόμον καὶ εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ποιήσαι ἀδικι—(a) good-road to-the mountain; and immediately this will-cause despon-

μιαν, διαν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα, ὁρδίους decency (in the men), when drawn-up in line, they-see
tαυτὴν διεσπασμένην. Ἡσείται, ἥν μὲν προσάγωμεν this (line) broken. Then, if indeed we-advance
tεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλοὺς, οἱ πολέμου περιττεύσοντων drawn-up many-deep, the enemy will-reach-beyond ἡμῶν, καὶ χρῆσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς, us (on the wings), and will-use the superfluous τι ὃ ἄν βούλωμαι. Δὲ ἔαν (men), (in) any (manner) which they may desire. And if ἰσμεν τεταγμένου ἐπὶ ὀλίγων, ἄν εἰς οἴ δὲν we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be nothing

θαυμαστὸν, εἰ ἡ φαλαγγὴ ἡμῶν wonderful, if the line of-us [if our line] be-cut-through

ὑπὸ καὶ δῠρῶν βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων by both collected missiles and many men ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δὲ πη τοῦτο ἔσται, ἔσται falling-upon (it); if indeed by-any-means this should-be, it-will-be

κακὸν τῇ ὀλη φάλαγγα. Ἄλλα δοξεῖ μοι, bad for-the whole line. But it-seems to-me, (that)

ποιησαμένος τοὺς λόχους ὁρδίους, κατασχέειν having-formed the companies (in) columns, to-separate

τοῖς λόχοις διαλυπόντας τοσοῦτον χωρίον, the companies, being-distant (from one another), so-much space,

ὅσον τοὺς ἕσχατους λόχους γενέσθαι as-that the extreme companies (on the right and left) will-be

ἐξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως οἱ beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus 'we, the
Book IV.—Chapter VIII.

ἐκατοι λόχοι ἐσομένα τε ἐξώ τῆς φάλαγγος
extreme companies, will-be not-only beyond the line
tῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἀγωνίας ὄρθιος οἱ
of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward) in-column the
κράτιστοι, ἕως ἴσοι προσίασι πρῶτον, τε
bravest of-us advance first, and (in the place) in-which
ἂν ἡ ἐνδοια ταύτη ὁ ἔκαστος λόχος
'there may 'be (a) good-road, in-that — each company
ἀξε. Καὶ οὐ τε ἔσται ῥάδιον τοῖς πολεμίωις
will-lead. And it-'will not indeed 'be easy for-the enemy
eἰςελθεῖν εἰς τὸ διαλείπον
to-penetrate into the (space) left (vacant between the com-

δινῶν λόχων ἔνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν, τε
panies in column) there-being companies here and there, and indeed
οὐ ἔσται ῥάδιον διαχόναι λόχον ὄρθιον
it-'will not 'be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column
προςίαντα. Τε ἐὰν τις τῶν λόχων πνεύμαται
advancing-forward. And if any of-the companies be-hard-pressed
ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἦν τη̣ εἰς τῶν
the nearest will-give-assistance. And if by-any-means one of-the
λόχων δυνητὴ ἀναβήναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν
companies may-be-able to-ascend on the height none of-the
πολεμίων μηκὲτί μείνῃ. Ταύτα ἔδοξε καὶ
enemy after-this may-remain. This seemed-good, and
ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὄρθιους. Δὲ Ἐνορφῶν
they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon
ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐάνυμον
departing from the right (wing of the enemy) to the left
ἐξεγε τοῖς στρατιῶταις. Οὕτω εἰσίν, οὐς ὅρατε,
said to-the soldiers: These are, whom you-see, (the)
μόνοι ἄνδρες ἐτι ἐμποδῶν ἐμῖν τὸ μή ἤδη
only men yet in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon
ἐίναι, ἔνδα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν'
to-be, there (where) we-'have long 'desired-and-hastened (to be);
troûtos, ἦν ποὺς δυνάμεθα, δεῖ καὶ κατα-
those, if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even 

φαγεῖν ὄμοις.

catch-up raw [to exterminate].

'Επεὶ δὲ ἔκαστον ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις,

When indeed each had-got in — (their) places,

καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποίησαντο ὄρθιους, ἐγένοντο

and the companies were-formed (in) columns,

μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς

— companies of the heavy-armed-men (to) about the (number of)

ὁγοδικοντα, δ' ὁ ἔκαστος λόχος σχεδὸν

eighty, and each company (amounted) nearly

eἰς τοὺς ἔκαστον. δ' ἐποίησαντο τοὺς πελ-
to — (a) hundred (men); and they-formed the tar-

ταστάς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ τοὺς

gateers and the archers | threefold [in three divisions] —

μὲν ἔξω τοῦ εἰκωνίου δὲ τοὺς τοῦ

(one) indeed beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the

δεξιῶν δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἐκάστων

right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each (divi-

σχεδὸν ἐξακοσίου,) 'Εξ τοῦτον οἴ

sion being) nearly six-hundred (men). After this the,

στρατηγοὶ παρηγγύησαν εὐχεσθαι

generals ordered (the soldiers) to-make (their)

εὐχάμενοι δὲ καὶ παίανισαντες

vows; having-made (their) vows, and also having-sung-the-psea,

ἐπορεύοντο. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν

they-proceeded (forward). And Cheirisophus indeed and Xenophon

καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι ἔξω τῆς

and the targeteers with them, being beyond the

φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων ἐπορεύοντο.

line of-the enemy, proceeded (on their march).

Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὡς εἶδον αὐτοῖς, ἀντιπαραδέχοντες,
The enemy indeed, as they-saw them, running-against

οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τὸ

(some) indeed to the right, but — (others) to the
BOOK IV. — CHAPTER VIII.

εἰκώνιον, διεποντώσθαν, καὶ ἐποιήσαν πολὺ left, were-drawn-asunder, and they-made (a) great
κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς φάλαγγος ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ οἱ void in the middle of the line of them. But the
πελασταῖα κατὰ τὸ Ἄρκαδικὸν,
targeteers in the Arcadian (division in the centre),
ἀλλὰ Ἀθηναῖοι ἢρχεν ἰδόντες αὐτοὺς whom. Ἀχιλήν the Arcanian commanded seeing them
dιαχάζοντας, νομίζαντες φεύγειν, ἔθεν separating, having-thought (them) to-be-fleeing, ran (forward)
ἂν κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνοντι with (all their) might, and these first ascended
ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἄρκαδικὸν ὀπλισθοῦν, on the mountain; and also the Arcadian heavy-armed (troops),
ἀλλὰ τὸ Ἀχαρνᾶν ἢρχεσθεῖται. 
who] [Cleanor the Orchomenian commanded, followed-together (after).

Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, δὲ ἢραντο θεῖν οἰκέται
But the enemy, as (the Greeks) began to-run no-longer
ἐπούσαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐστράτευο. stood, but fled; other in-other turned [some

Δ' οἱ Ἐλληνες ἀνα-
going one way and some another]. But the Greeks de-
σάντες ἐστράτωπεδεύοντο ἐν
scending (from the mountain) encamped among
πολλὰς κώμας ἡχοῦσαι πολλὰ τάπινηδεια,
many villages having much (of) provisions,

Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα
And the indeed other (things) [and as respects other things] there-was
οὐδὲν, δὲ τι καὶ ἔδαυσαν, δὲ ἦν πολλὰ nothing, that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many
tὰ σμήνη αὐτωθι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν —
beehives there, and as - many of the soldiers as
ἐφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἄφροιν,
ate of the combs, all not-only became delirious,
καὶ ἡμοὺς, καὶ διέχορει αὐτοῖς κατῴ, but also vomited, and it-passed-through them downwards, [and they

27
καὶ οίδεϊς ἱδώνατο ἵππωλὰν ὄριος,
were purged,] and no-one was able to stand straight.
δὲ μὲν ἔκοψεῖς ὁλίγον σφόδρα ἐκέκοσαν
but — (those) indeed having eaten little very much resembled
μεθύουσι, δ’ οἱ πολὺ
(persons) being drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled)
μανουένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποδηνήκοισι,
those) being mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying.
Πολλοὶ δὲ ἐκείνοι οὖν, ὅσπερ τροπῆς
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as though (a) rout
γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἅδεμία ἦν πολλῆς.
had taken place, and the dejection was great. But on the
νυστερὰν οίδεῖς μὲν ἀπέδοαν, δ’ ἀνεφρόσυνων
next day no-one indeed had died, but they recovered (their)
ἀμφὶ ποῦ τὴν αὔτην ὁμοῦ.
dὲ 'senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and
τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὅσπερ ἐκ
'on (the) third and fourth (days) they got up, as if from
φαρμακοποιῶς.
taking physic.

Ἐντείθεν δ’ ἐπορεύθησαν διὸ σταθμοῖς,
Indeed they proceeded two days' march, (making)
ἐπὶ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἡλίθων ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea
eἰς Τραπεζούντα, Ἐλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκομένην,
at Trapesus, (a) Greek city, populous,
ἐν τῷ Εὐζείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν
(and situated on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony
Σινωπίων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.
of (the) Sinopians, in the territory of (the) Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἠμείναν ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ὡμέρας
There they remained, about thirty days
ἐν ταῖς κόμαις τῶν Κόλχων.
in the villages of the Colchians. And hence making-
μένου ἐλημόντο τῇ Κολχίδᾳ.
incursions they plundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapesians
παρέσχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπεδίῳ, καὶ τῇ ἐδέξαντο
provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received
τοὺς Ἑλλήνας καὶ ἐδόσαν
the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)
ζένια
oxen and barley-meal
cαι οἶνον. Καὶ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ
and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for
τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν
(and in behalf of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially (those)
oίκουτων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ ζένια καὶ ἡλίου
dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came
παρ' εὐεργέων βόες. Μετὰ τούτῳ δὲ παρεσ-
from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre-
κευάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὔξαντο. Ὁ ίκανος
pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient
βόες ἡλίου αὐτοῖς ἀποδόσαι τῷ Δίῳ τῷ σωτῆρι,
oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,
cαι τῷ Ἡρακλεὶ ἡγεμόνα, καὶ τοῖς ἅλλοις θεοῖς
kai tois allous theoi and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods
καὶ εὐξαντὸ. Καὶ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic
ἀγώνα, ἐν τῷ δρει, ἐνθάπερ ἐσχήνουν. Δὲ εὐλογότω
contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose
Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὅς ἔφυγε οἰκοδείν
Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home
ὅν παῖς, ἀχων κατακτανόν παιδα,
being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,
πατάξας κυνῆς τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι
having-struck (him) 'with (a) 'dagger' not-only to-take-'care (to pro-
δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοὺς ἀγώνος.
race, but-also to-preside-over the contest

'Επειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,
(and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),
παρέδοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακόντιῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested
ὁγείοσκει δὲντο πεποιηκας εἰπ τὸν
(him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the
dρόμον. Ὅ δὲ δείξας, οὔτερ
course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), where
ἐτύγχανον ἑστηκότες ἑφη, ὅ οὔτος λόφος
they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill (is)
κάλλιστος τρέχειν διον τις ἄν βοῦ-
most-excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de-
ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to-
λαίειν ἐν οὔτως σχληρῶ καὶ δασεῖ;
wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?
ὅ δ’, εἰπε, ὅ καταπεσόν, ἄνασται τι
— but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)
μάλλον. Δὲ παίδες μὲν, οἱ πλείστοι τῶν
the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —
αἰχμαλώτων, ἤγωνίζοντο στάδιον,
(from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium
ἀλλ’ δ’ ἡδικοίν πελείους ἦ
(or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than
ἐξήκονται Κρήτες ἔθεον, δε ἐτερο
sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling
καὶ παγημέν καὶ παγχράτων. Καὶ ἐγένετο
and boxing and (the) pancratium. And it-was (a)
καλὴ θέα γὰρ πολλοίς κατέβησαν,
fine sight; for many went-down, [entered the lists,]
καὶ ἄτε τῶν ἐταῖρων θεωμένων, ἐγίνετο
and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was
πολλὴ φιλονειώδια. Δὲ καὶ ἅπαν ἔθεον· καὶ
much emulation. And also horses ran; and
ἐδει αὐτοὺς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς,
it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the
ἀναστρέφαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν
steep, having-turned-round in the sea, again
ἀγεῖν ἄνω πρὸς τῶν βωμῶν. Καὶ μὲν
to-lead-back upwards to the altar. And indeed (going)
κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο. δὲ
downwards — many (of the horses) rolled (down); but
ἂνω πρὸς τὸ ἵσχυρὸς ὅρμιον, οἱ
(going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the
ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύοντο βάθην: ἔν θα
horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then
ἐγένετο πολλὴ κραγη, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακαλεῖσθαι was much shouting, and laughte, and cheering
λευσις αὐτῶν.
ing from-them.
BOOK V.

CHAPTER I.

"Osα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
What indeed — the Greeks did in the
ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ δοσα
march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)
ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἑπὶ θάλατταν
in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea
τῇ ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ,
—the in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and
καὶ ὃς αὐξίων ἐις Τραπεζώντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,
how they-arrived at Trebizond (a) Greek city,
καὶ ὃς ἀπέδωσαν ἐν εὐξαντῷ θύσειν
and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice 'for
ουσθρία, ἐνδα πρῶτον αὐξίων ἐις φελιάν
their) 'safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly
tyh, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσδεν λόγῳ.
country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.

Ἐκ τούτῳ δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἐθουλεύοντο περὶ
Upon this indeed coming-together they-delicrated concerning
τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας δὲ Ἀρτιλέων
the remaining (part of the) journey; and Antileon (the)
Θεόρος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἐλεξην ὁδὲ ἦγῳ μὲν
Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed
tοῖνν, ἐφὶ, ὡς ἄνδρες, ἡδη ἀπειρηκα
therefore, said-he, O men, have—become now 'tired
ξυσπειλαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ
packing-up, and walking, and running, and
BOOK V. — CHAPTER I.

Φέρων τὰ ὀπλα, καὶ ἴδων ἐν τάξει, καὶ carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and
φυλαττὼν φυλακάς, καὶ μαχόμενος,
[ guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;
ἐπιδυμὼ ἣθε δὲ, ἔπει ἐχομεν θάλατταν,
I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,
παυσάμενος τοῦτων τῶν πῶν, πλεῖν τὸ having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the
λοιπῶν, καὶ ἐκταδεῖς, ἔπερ ὸδυσσεῖς,
remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,
καθεύδων ἄφικεν εἰς τὴν Έλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-
sleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-
tιώται ἄκουσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεδορώθησαν
diers hearing those (things) loudly-applauded (him)
ὡς λέγοι εὕ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταῦτα, as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same
καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.
and all — (those) being-present (said the same).
'Εστείλα δὲ Χερίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὅδε· Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:
'Ω ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἔστιν φίλος μοι,
'O men, Anaxibius [is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]
de καὶ τυχάνει ναυαρκών. Ἡν οὖν πέμψατε
d and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send
με, οἴομαι ἄν ἐλθεῖν ἔχων καὶ τρυπῆς καὶ me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and
πλοία τὰ ἄξοντα ἡμᾶς.
galleys and transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]
de ὑμεῖς, ἔπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἔστι
and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until
ἔγω ἄν ἔλθω· ἥξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ
I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The
στρατιώται ἄκουσαντες ταῦτα ἀπόκρισάν τε
soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —
καὶ ἐνθύμισαντο αὐτῶν πλεῖν ὡς τάχιστα.
and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.
Metà touton Ἐνοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ Ἐλεξεῖν
After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke

οὗτος Χερίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοία, thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent — after ships,
dὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενούμεν. Ὑμα τὰ ὄνειρα ὑμῶν, and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be
καὶ τὸν πολεμίαν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, τοῦτο ἑρᾶ
cour to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).

Πρῶτον μὲν δὲι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured
ἐξ τῆς πολεμίας γὰρ ἑστίν οὗτο ἵκανη from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant
ἀγορά, οὗτο εἰσπορία ἀνησφυμένα market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy
ἀναπόλουσθαι, ὡς πορεύσητε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια any-thing, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)
πολεμία. οὖν κίνδυνος πολλὸς hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many
ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν πορεύσητε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions
ἄμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι carelessly — and unguardedly. But it-seems to-me
λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σύν προνομαίς, (that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,
(that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,
δὲ μὴ πλανάσθαι ἄλλως, ὡς ἢ σωκράτους, and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (your
lives), and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).

Ἤδοξε τοῖτα.
It-seemed-well (respecting) these (things, and they were adopted). And-now
τοῖνυν ἁκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γὰρ τῶν ἑμῶν listen also to-this. For-as some of-you
ἐκπορεύσονται ἐπὶ λείαιν. οἱ μὲν οὖν to-plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be

βέλτιστον εἰπεῖν ἑμῖν τὸν μὲλλοντα εἰς ἐναί, best to-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out,
BOOK V.—CHAPTER I.

δὲ καὶ φράζειν ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ εἰδομεν
and also to-mention where (or in what direction), that even we-may-know
τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐξιδυτῶν καὶ τῶν μενόντων,
the multitude of — (those) going-out and of — (those) remaining,
καὶ ἡμιπαρασκευάζομεν ἕαν τι δέη,
and (that) we-may-prepare-together if anything should-be-required,
κἂν ἡ καύρος βοηθησαι τις, εἰδομεν
and-if there-may occasion (that we) may-help any, (and) know
ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἕαν τις τῶν αὐτῶν ἀπειρωθεῖ to-help, and if any-one of the more-
νόμιτοι ἐγκεκερηθοῦν τοι, ἡμιπαρεμεῖν—
inexperienced may-undertake (anything) anywhere, we-may-consult-to-
μεν πιερώμενοι εἰδεναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' other endeavouRing to-know the strength (of the enemy) against
οὓς ἀν ἦσσιν. Καὶ ταύτα ἔδοξε.
whom 'they may 'go. And these (things) seemed-good, (and)

Δὲ καὶ ἐννοεῖτε τὸδε, ἐφη.
were agreed to). And also consider this, said-he. (There is)

Σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἰησοῦσαι, καὶ δικαῖος leisure to-the enemy to-rob (us), and justly
ἐπιβουλεύονσιν ἡμῖν, γὰρ ἔχουμεν τὰ ἐκείνων do-they-conspire-against us, for we-have the (things) of-them;

δ' ἵπποκάδην—[for we have their property;] and (moreover) they-are-placed-on-heights-

τα ἡμῶν. Δὴ δοξεῖ μοι δεῖν εἶναι φύλαξας above us. Indeed it-seems to-me there-ought-to-be sentinels

περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἕαν σὺν μερισθέντες κατὰ round the camp; if therefore being-divided into

µέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σχοπάμεν, ἦττον ἄν οἱ parts we-guard and keep-a-look-out, the-less may — (our)

πολέµοι δύναντο θηρὰν ἡμᾶς. Ἡττο τοῖνεn enemies be-able to-hunt us (down). Moreover therefore

ὅρατε τάδε. Εἵ µὲν ὠριστάμεθα σαφῶς, ὅτι consider this. If indeed we-knew certainly, that

Χειρίσοφος ἥξει ἄγων ἴκανά πλοια, Cheirisophus will-some (back) bringing (a) sufficient (number of) ships,
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ἄν οὐδὲν ἐδεῖ ὅν μέλλω λέγειν" δὲ νῦν
there would "be no 'need of what I am about to say; but now
ἔπει τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοξεῖ μου πεῖ-
since this (is) uncertain, it seems to me (that we ought) to-en-
ρᾶσαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοία καὶ αἰνεῖν.
deavour to provide and bring together ships even here.

Γὰρ ἦν μὲν ἔλθει, ἵππαρχόντων
For if indeed he should come (back with ships, vessels) being provided
ἐνδάδε, πλευσόμεθα ἐν ἄφθοντέροις.
here, we shall sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships).

'Εάν δὲ μὴ ἄγη, χρησόμεθα τοῖς
If indeed he should not 'bring (any), we will make use of—(those)
ἐνδάδε. 'Εγὼ δὲ ὅρω πλοία πολλάξεις παραπλέ-
here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing-
οντα. εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζοῦντιῶν
by; if therefore we should be asking from the people of Trebisond
μακρὰ πλοία,
long ships, "(ships of war,) we might bring into port (those vessels
καὶ φυλάττομεν αὐτά παραλύμπιοι τὰ
and might guard them | loosening the
πετάλια,
rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may
γένηται τὰ ἄξοντα, ἄν ἰὼς
be got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably
οὐχ ἀπορρόφησαις κομίδης οἷς δεσμέδα. Καὶ
not 'have failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such as we seek. And
ταῦτα ἔδοξε. 'Εννόησατε δ’, ἐφι,
these (suggestions) were approved. Think also, said he,
εἰ εἰκός καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,
if (it will not be) proper even to support from the common (stock),
οὐχ ἄν κατάγωμεν, δοὺν χρόνον ἄν
those whom 'we may 'bring in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may
μενοὺς ἐνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ἐνδείκνυ
to remain on account of us, and to make an agreement (with them
ναῦλον, ὅπως ὕβελούντες
about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they may
καὶ ὧφελήνται. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
also 'benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good.

Δοκεῖ μοι ποίνων, ἡφι, ἡν ἂρα καὶ ταῦτα
It-seems-to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even those (things)

μὴ ἐξερεαίνται, ὡς τούτα ἀρχεῖν,
'm do not 'result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),

ἐντείλασαν ταῖς πόλεσιν ἁγιομένας παρὰ
(it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)

θάλασσαν ὀδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς, ὡς ἄχονομεν εἰς
sea to-repair the . roads, which we-hear to-be

dυσπόρους. γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ
difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both |through the

φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι
to-fear, [through fear] and through the to-desire [and through

ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἰμῶν.
the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὡς δέοι οὐ
Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not

ὁδοποιεῖν. Δὲ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν
to-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the

ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, ὀυδέν μὲν ἐπε-
want-of-reason of-them, 'put nothing indeed (respecting roads) to-

ψήφισε, δὲ ἐπεὶ τὰς πόλεις ὀδοποιεῖν
vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads

ἐκοινώσας, λέγων ὅτι θάττων ἀπαλλάξων-
of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-

ται,
then they

ἡν αἱ ὅδοι γένονται εὐποροῦν.
freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.

Δὲ καὶ ἐλαβόν πεντηκόνταρ παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-
And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-

ζοντιῶν, ἦς ἐπέστησαν Δέξιττον Λάκωνα
Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Laodedemonian

περιοχαί. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν
provincial. This (person), having-neglected (the) to-collect

πλοία, ἀποδόσας ὀχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων
vessels, having-dept he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

vessels, having-dept he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having
τὴν ναῦν. Ὅτος μὲν οὖν ἔστερον ἔπαθε
the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered
δίκαιον· γὰρ ἐν Ὁράκη παρὰ
(punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)
Σεινῆ, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἄπεθανεν ἐπιδ
Seuthes, meddled-with something, he-died by (the)
Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκκωνος. Ἀδὴ xai
hands of) Nicander the Lacedaemonian. And (the Greeks) also
ἐλάβον τριακόντων, ὧν Πολυκράτης
received (a) thirty-cared-galley, over-which Polykrates (the)
Ἄθηναιος ἐπεστάλη, ὅς κατῆγε πλοία ὅπωσα
Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as
λαμβάνων ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And
μὲν ἔξαιρομενοι τὰ ἀγώνια, εἰ ἦγον τινὲς
indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,
καθίστασαν φίλαχας, ὧς εἶναι σῶς,
they-placed guards 'over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,
δὲ χρῆσαυτὸ τοῖς πλοίοις εἷς παραγωγὴν.
and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.
Εὖ ὃ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἑλληνες
During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks
ἐξήσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλαμβάνον,
went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),
δὲ καὶ οἱ οὕς. Δὲ Κλεαίνετος ἔξαγαγὼν
but also — (others did) not. But Cleomenes leading-out
καὶ τὸν λόχον ἑαυτὸν καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς
both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)
χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτὸς ἄπεθανεν καὶ πολλοὶ
difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many
ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.
others of — (those) with him.
ΓΕΝΕΙ δὲ ἦν οἰκέτι ἱλαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπί-
When indeed it was no longer (possible) to take — pro-
τήδεια, ἐστε ἀπαυδημεριζέων ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
visions, so as to return the same day to the camp,
ἐκ τοῦτον ἑκονοφῶν, λαβὼν ἑγεμόνας
| on this [then] Xenophon, having taken (as) guides (some)
τῶν Τραπεζούντων, ἔξαγει τὸ ἡμείν του
of the people of Trebizond, led out the half of the
στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίαλας, δὲ τὸ ἡμείν τοῦ
army against (the) Driles, but the (other) half
κατέλαπτε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον. γὰρ οἱ
he left to guard the camp; for the
Κόλχωι ἀτε ἔκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, ἔσαν
Colchians as having been driven out from — (their) houses were
ἀμφότεροι πολλοὶ, καὶ ἰπερεκάθιστο ἐπὶ
collected together (in) great (numbers), and were posted on
τῶν ἄχρων. Δὲ οἱ Τραπεζούντωι οὐχ ἦσαν
the heights. But the people of Trebizond did not lead
ὁπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα ἦν ἡδίων
(them to places) whence — provisions were easy
λαβεῖν γὰρ ἔσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς.
to take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends to themselves;
δὲ προεῖπῷς ἦσαν εἰς τοὺς Δρίαλας, ἢφ ἤν
but eagerly led (them) to (the) Driles, | from whom
παλαιὸν κακῶς,
eis χαρία τε they suffered evil, [who had injured them] into (a) country not only
ἀρεινᾶ, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικῶτατοὺς
mountainous, but also difficult of access and (among) the most warlike
ἄνδρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).

Ἐπεί δὲ οἱ Ἐλληνες ἔσαν ἀνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,
When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,
ὅπως τῶν χωρίων ἐδόθη τοῖς Δρίλαισι εἶναι much of the places as it seemed to the Dríλai
ἄλογα, ἐμπράντες ἀπήσαν· καὶ easy-to-be-taken, having-set-fire (to such places) they retreated; and
ὅν οὖν λαμβάνειν, εἰ μὴ ἦς, ἡ βοῦς, ἡ τι there was nothing to take, unless swine, or oxen, or any
ἄλλο κτῆνος διαπεφυγός τὸ πῦρ. Δὲ ἦν ἐν other cattle having-escaped from the fire. But there was one
χωρίον μετρόπολις αὐτῶν· place (the) metropolis of them; [but there was one place that
was their metropolis;] to this all was crowded together.

Δὲ περὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἵσχυρὸς βαδεία And round this (place) there was (an) exceedingly deep
χαράδρα, καὶ πρόοδοι πρὸς τὸ χωρίον ravine, and (the) approaches to the country (were)
χαλέας. Οἱ πελτασταὶ δὲ, προδραμόντες τῶν difficult. The targeters however, having-run-before the
ὀπλίτων πέντε ἢ ἐξ στάδια, διαβάντες τὴν heavy-armed-men five or six stadia, having-crossed the
χαράδραν, ὄρων τῆς πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα ravine, (and) seeing many sheep and other
χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον. δὲ καὶ things, made-an-attack on the place; and also
πολλοὶ διορφόροι, οἱ ἐξωριμένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπί many spear-men, — (those) having-gone-out for — pro-
τῆδεια ἐξοντοποτο· ἄγετε οἱ διαβάντες visions followed-with (them); so that — (those) crossing (the
ἐγένοντο πλέιοις ἢ δισχιλίοις ἄνθρώποις. ravine) happened-to-be more than two-thousand men.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ μαχόμενοι οὐχ ἐδίδοντο λαβέοι But when fighting they were not able to take
τὸ χωρίον (γὰρ καὶ ἦν εἰσεῖα τάφρος the place (for also there was a broad trench, (it)
ἀναβεβλημένη περὶ αὐτὸ, καὶ ἦπι having-been-thrown-up around this (place), and (there were) on
τῆς ἀναβολῆς σχόλοπες, καὶ ἤλιναι τύρσεις
the rampart palisades, and (also) wooden towers
πυκναὶ πεποημέναι), δὴ ἐπε-
close-together having-been-made) (on the mound or rampart), indeed they-
χειρον ἄπιναι· δὲ οἱ ἐπέχειντο αὐτοῖς.
attempted to-depart; but the (Drills) pressed-upon them.

Δὲ ὁς ὀικ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν
But (the Greeks), as they were not able to-retreat
(γὰρ ἡ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν
(for the passage-down from the place to the ravine
ἡν ἐφ’ ἐνὸς), πέμποντι πρὸς Ξενοφόντα, ὅς
was for one) (only), sent to Xenophon, who
ἀγεῖτο τοῖς ὀπλίταις. Δ’ ὁ ἔλεος
led the heavy-armed-men. And the (messenger) having-gone
λέγει, ὅτι χωρίον ἐστὶ μεστὸν πολλῶν
said, that (the) place is full of many
χρημάτων· οὔτε δυνάμεια λαβεῖν τούτον·
things; nor were-able to-take this (place);
γὰρ ἐστὶν ἵσχυρον· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ραδίων· γὰρ
for it is strong; or to-retreat easily; for
ἐπεξελεύσθεντες μάχονται, καὶ ἡ ἀφοδος
the enemy having-marched-out fight (as), and the way-from
χαλεπὴ.
(it is) difficult.

"Ακούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφόν, προσαγαγὼν
"Having-heard these (things) — Xenophon, leading-forward
πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐξέλευσε μὲν τοὺς
(pros the ravine, ordered — the
ὀπλίτας θέσας τὰ ὀπλα· αὐτοῖς δὲ,
heavy-armed-men to-stand — (under) arms; he indeed,
διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς, ἑσκοπεῖτο πότερον
having-crossed-over with the captains, considered whether
εἶν κρείττον ἀπάγειν καὶ τοὺς
it-might-be better to-lead-back also — (those) 'having (already)
διαβεβηκότας, ἃ καὶ διαβιβάζειν τοὺς ὀπλίτας,
crossed-over, or even to-lead-over the heavy-armed-men,
The Anabasis of Xenophon.

ὡς δὲν τοῦ χωρίου ἀλώντος. Γὰρ ἐδόξας μὲν as — (hoping) the place being-taken. For it seemed indeed τὸ ἀπάγειν. οἷς εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν (the) to-lead (the men) 'back not to-be (possible) without many νεκρῶν, δὲ δὲν οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ ἔμεντο ἐλεῖν dead, and — the captains even were-of-opinion to-take τὸ χωρίον. the place [and the captains were of the opinion that the place could

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἵσυνεχόμενος, πιστεύοντας be taken). And — Xenophon yielded, having-confided τοῖς ἱεροῖς· γὰρ οἱ μάντεις ἀποδείχμενοι ήσαν, in-the sacrifices; for the augurs had-shown, δι᾽ οὓς μὲν ἦσαν μάχης, δὲ τὸ τέλος τῆς that indeed there-would-be (a) battle, and (that) the termination of-the ἐξόδου καλῶν. Καὶ μὲν ἐπεμένει τοὺς excursion (would be) favourable. And — he sent the λοχαγοὺς διαβιβάσοντας τοὺς captains | being-about-bringing-over [to bring over] the ὀπλίτας. δ’ οὖτος ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἀπαντάς heavy-armed-men, but he-himself remained having-kept-back all τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ εἰς οὐδένα ἀφέθο- the targeteers, and allowed none (of them) to-skip- λιξεῖται. Ἔστι δ’ οἱ ὀπλίται ἥκον, mish (with the enemy). When indeed the heavy-armed-men came, ἐκέλευσε ἐκαστὸν τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι τὸν he-ordered each of the captains to-form — (his) λόχον ὡς ἀν οὕτως κράτιστα ἄγωνεσθαι· company as 'he might 'think the-best to-fight (with); γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἥσαν πλείστον ἀλλήλων, οἱ for the captains were near to-one-another, who πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀντεποιοῦντο ἅλλοις περὶ at-all — times contended with-one-another about ἀνδραγάθιας. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἑποίουν ταύτα· deeds-of-valour. And — (they) indeed did these (things); δ’ ὁ παρῆγγελε πάσι τοῖς πελτασταῖς ἔτηιν and — he-ordered all the targeteers to-go
BOOK V. — CHAPTER II.

holding-their-javelins-by-the-thong, as it-would-be-necessary to-hurl

whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the archers to-have-

placed (the arrows) on the string, as it-would-be-necessary
to-shoot whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the light-armed

— (their) bags-made-of-skins full of-stones;

and he-sent (those) fit to-have these (things)

taken-care-of. When indeed all had-been-prepared,

and the captains and the lieutenants, and (those)
esteeming (themselves) not to-be inferior to these, all

were-drawn-up-in-order, and indeed truly they-beheld

one-another; (for the order in which they were drawn up), from

the nature of the place, was (a) crescent). When indeed

they-had-sung-the-pee-an, and the trumpet had-sounded,

at-the-same-time also they-raised-the-war-dry to — Euryalius, and

the heavy-armed-men ran, (as) 'in (a) race, (fast); and the

missiles were-thrown together, (namely,) lances, arrows,

balls-and-stones-from-slings, and many stones from the

hands; and there-were (some) who even threw fire
Το δὲ πολέμου τῶν Βελῶν (at the place). On-account therefore 'of (the) 'multitude of-the missiles οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλειπον τε τὰ σταυρόματα καὶ τὰς the enemy deserted not-only the palisades but-also the τύρσεις. ἐγὼ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καὶ Φυ- towers; so-that Agasias (the) Stymphalian and Φίλοξενος Πελληνεύς, καταδέμενοι τὰ οπλα Iozenus (the) Pellienian, having-put-down — (their) arms, ἀνεβηκαν ἐν χιτῶνι μύλον, καὶ ἄλλος mounted (the rampart) in (their) tunics only, and one εἴλεξε ἄλλον, καὶ ἄλλος ἀναβηκαν, καὶ, ὡς drew-up another, and another climbed-up, and, as εἶδοκε, τὸ χωρίον ἠλόκει. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταί it-appears the place was-taken. And — the targeteers καὶ οἱ ψιλοί εἰςδράλοντες ἤρπαξον ὅ τι ἔκαστος and the light-armed-men running-in took whatever each-one ἐδύνατο. ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας could; — Xenophon indeed standing at the gates κατεκάλυεν ἔξω ὑπόσως ἐδύνατο τῶν ὀπλιτῶν· detained without as-many-as he-could of-the heavy-armed-men; γὰρ ἄλλοι πολέμιοι ἐφαινότο ἐπὶ τισιν ἱσχυροῖς for other enemies appeared on some strong ἄλοις. Μεταξὺ δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ χρόνου heights. In-the-mean-while, indeed no long time γενομένων ἐγίγνετο τε πραγμάτων ἐφόδιον, καὶ οἱ having-occurred, there-was — (a) noise within, and the ἐφουγόν οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἀλαβόν, (men) fled, —(some) indeed even having what-they-had-taken, τάχα δὲ τις καὶ τετραμένος· καὶ ἦν πολίς presently also some even wounded; and there-was much ἀδισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. Καὶ οἱ crowding-and-pressing about the gates. And — (these) ἐκπιπτόντες ἔρωτόμενοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἅρα τὲ rushing-out being-questioned said, that (a) citadel indeed
ἐστιν ἐνδον, καὶ πολλοί οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ἐκδεδρα-ισ within, and many (of) the enemy, who sallying-
μηκότες, παιώνι τοὺς ἀνδρώπους ἐνδον. forth, fell-on the men within.

Ἡντείδεν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα Then (Xenophon) ordered Tolmides the oric
ἀνεπειν τὸν βουλόμενον λαμβάνειν τι to-proclaim (that) — (those) desiring to-take anything
ἰέναι εἰσω. Καὶ πολλοὶ ἑντο εἰσω, καὶ οἱ might-go within. And many rushed within, and — (those)
ἀδούμενοι εἰσω νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπιέτοντας, pushing (to get) within overcome — (those) pressing-out, καὶ πάλιν καταξίλεουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς and they again shut-up the enemy in
τὴν ἁχραν. Καὶ μὲν πάντα ἐξω τῆς ἁχρας the citadel. And indeed all (things) without the citadel
dιηρήσασθε, καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐξεκομίσαντο· were-seized, and the Greeks carried (them) 'out;
dὲ οἱ ὀπλίται ἔδεντο τὰ ὀπλα, οἱ μὲν and the heavy-armed-men stood — (under) arms, — (some) indeed
περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν ὄδον about the palesades, and — (others) along the road
τῆς φέρουσαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἁχραν. ὁ Ἑνο- that, namely,) leading to the citadel. — Xen-
φὸν δὲ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔσκοπον, εἰ εἰ φον indeed and the captains began-to-consider, if it-might-be
οἶν τῆς λαβεῖν τῆν ἁχραν· γὰρ ἣν οὕτω possible to-take the citadel; for (if) it-were so
σωτηρία ἀσταλτῆς· ἀλλὰς δὲ ἐδόξει (their) safety (would be) sure; otherwise indeed it-seemed
ἐναὶ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἀπελθεῖν· δὲ τὸ χωρίον to-be extremely difficult to-retire; and the place
ἐδοξε αὐτοῖς σχοπομένοις εἰναι παντάποσιν seemed to-them (after) having-explored (it) to-be altogether
ἀνάλοτον. Ἑνταίθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν impregnable. Then they-began-to-prepare (for) the
αφοδον, καὶ ἔκαστοι μὲν διήρουν τοὺς
retreat, and each (of the men) indeed pulled-up the
σταυροὺς τοὺς καὶ’ αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἔξωθεν-
palisades — (those namely) near themselves, and they-sent-
pοντο τοὺς ἄχρείους καὶ ἔχοντας
out (of the place) the useless (persons) and (those) having
φορτία, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐπιτών · δὲ οἱ
burdens, also the multitude of the heavy-armed-men; but the
λοχαγοὶ κατέληκον · οἱς ἔκαστος
captains left (remaining those) in-whom each
ἐπίστευεν.
confided.

'Επει δὲ ἥραντο ἀποχωρεῖν, πολλοὶ
After indeed they-commenced to-retreat, many (of the enemy)
ἐπεζέδεον ἐνδοθεὶς, ἔχοντες γέρρα
sallied-forth from-within (the citadel), having (Persian) shields
καὶ λόγχας, καὶ ἄμμαδας καὶ Παφλαγονικὰ χρῶν ·
and lances, and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets;
καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς ὀλίγας τὰς
and others went-up on the houses — (namely those)
ἐνδεν καὶ ἐνδεν τῆς ὀδοῦ φερούσας εἰς
on this-side and (those) on that-side of the way leading to
τὴν ἄκραν. Ὡστε ἦν οὐδὲ ἄσφαλῆς διάκειν
the citadel. So that it was not-even safe to-pursue (them)
κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας εἰς τὴν
to the gates — (those namely) leading to the
ἄκραν. Καὶ γὰρ ἐπεξηγήθησαν ἄνωθεν μεγάλα
citadel. And indeed they-threw-on (them) from-above large
ξύλα, ὡστε ἦν καὶ χαλέπιον μένειν καὶ
/logs of) wood, so that it was both dangerous to-remain and
ἀπεδέναι καὶ ζῆν ἐποῦσα θνῄερα. Δὲ
to-retreat; and the night coming-on it was dreadful. But
αὐτῶν μαχομένων καὶ ἀπορομένων τῷς θεῶν
they fighting and perplexed some-one of (the) gods
dίδωσιν αὐτοῖς μηχανῆς σωτηρίας. Γὰρ ἔξαπτωσ
gave them (the) means of-safety. For suddenly
oιχία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀνέλαμψαν, διότι (a) house of — (those) on (the) right having-burst-out-in-flames, whoever δὴ ἐνάπλακτος. Ὡς δὲ αὐτὴ εὐνετῷ truly (it may be) having-set-fire-to (it). As indeed this (house) fell-
πτερεῖ, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκίων in, (the enemy) fled, — (those namely) from the houses ἐν δεξιᾷ. Ὡς δὲ ὁ Ἑνοφόνων ἔμαθε τούτο on (the) right. As indeed — Xenophon learned this παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐκέλευε καὶ ἐνάπτεν τὰς from — fortune, he-ordered (them) also to-set-fire (to) the oἰχίας ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, αἱ ήσαν ξύλιναι, houses on (the) left, which (as) they-were wooden, "were ἐξετὶ καὶ ταχὺ ἐκάλυτο. Οἱ ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ also even immediately "on-fire. — They-fled therefore even ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκίων. Οἱ δὲ μόνοι from these — (same) houses. — (Those) indeed alone κατὰ τὸ στόμα ἕτει ἐλύσων, along the front (or direction of the army) truly any-more annoyed καὶ ἦσαν δήλοι ὅτι ἐπικείμοντα ἐν τῷ (them), and it-was evident that they-would-fall-on (them) on — ἔξοδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει. (their) departure and also (on their) descent (from the plain).

'Ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα, Then 'he (Xenophon) ordered (them) to-bring wood, διὸν ἐτύγχανον δυτεῖς ἔξω (namely) 'such (men) 'as happened being without (the reach) τῶν βελῶν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἐκτὸς καὶ τῶν of-the missiles, into the middle (between) themselves and the πολεμίων. Δὲ ἔπει ἦν ἢθη ἵκανὰ enemy. And when there-was now (a) sufficient (quantity) ἐνύηλαν δὲ καὶ ἐνηπτοῦν τὰς οἰχίας they-'set (it) "on-fire; and also they-set-fire-to the houses παρὰ τὸ αὐτὸ χαράκωμα ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔρχον along the very palisading, so-that the enemy might-have ἄμφι ταῦτα. Οὕτω μόλις (their minds occupied) about these (things). Thus with-difficulty
ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦρ
they-departed from the place, having-made (a) fire
ἐν μέσῳ ἐαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ
in (the) middle (between) themselves and the enemy. And
πᾶσα ἡ πόλες κατεκαίθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι, καὶ αἱ
all the town was-burnt, and the houses, and the
τίρσεις, καὶ τὰ σταυρόματα, καὶ πάντα
towers, and the palisading, and all (things)
τάλλα, πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.
else, except the citadel.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραιᾷ ὁ Ἑλλήνες ἀπῆσαν, ἔχοντες
And on-the next-day the Greeks departed, having
tὰ ἐπιτύδεια. Δὲ ἔπει ἐφοδιάσατο τὴν κατάβασιν
— provisions. But as they-feared the descent
tὴν ἐνὶ Τραπεζουντα, (γὰρ ἦν πρανῆς
— (namely that) to Trebisond, (for it-was steep
καὶ στενῆς,) ἐποιήσατο ἴσων ἐνδέθραν. Καὶ
and narrow,) they-made (a) false-ambuscade. And (a)
ἄνὴρ Μυσός τὸ γένος, καὶ ἔχων τοῦτο τοῦνομα,
man (a) Mysus — by-birth, and having this same-name
λαβὼν δὲκα Κρητῶν, ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ
(labwων deka Kretων, eumenen en lasiō)
(Mysus), taking ten Cretans, he-remained in (a) bushy
χωρίῳ, καὶ προσποτείητο περασάθαι λαγδάνειν
place, and did-as-if to-attempt to-conceal
τοὺς πολέμιους· δ’ αἱ πέλται αὐτῶν,
(toîs polemionous· d’ aî peátai aitwōn,
(himself from) the enemy; and the shields of-them,
οὐσαί χαλκαί, διεφαίνοντο
being brass, appeard (glittering) through (the bushes)
ἄλλωσαι καὶ ἄλλωσε. Ὡν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι
from-time — to-time. Therefore indeed the enemy
διορῶντες ταύτα ἐφοδιάσατο ὡς οὐσαν
perceiving these (things) feared (it) as being (a real)
ἐνέθραν· δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν.
ambuscade; and the army during this (time) descended.

'Επεὶ δὲ ἔδοξει τῷ Μυσῷ ἡν ἣ
When indeed it-seemed to — Mysus (that the Greeks) now
ἐπεληρίαν ἵκανον, ἐσῆμενε φεῦγειν ἀνά
had-advanced sufficiently (far), he-gave-the-signal to-flee with
κράτος· καὶ ὅς ἐξαναστὰς φεῦγει, καὶ
'their' 'might; and who getting-up flees, as-also
οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἀλλοι Κρήτες,
with him. And indeed the other Cretans,
ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ (γὰρ ἔφασαν
departing from the road (for they-said (that they)
ἀλίσσεσθαι τῷ δρόμῳ) ἐσώθησαν κυλιν-
were-getting-caught in-the race saved (themselves) roll-

dούμενοι εἰς ἔλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας. Δὲ
ing-down into (the) woods among the bushy-hollows. But
ο Ἔμευς φεῦγων κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν, ἔβα
Mysus fleeing along the road, he-called-out (for them)
βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοηθήσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀνέλαβον
to-help (him); and they-helped him, and took
τετρωμένων. Καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ βοηθήσαντες
wounded. And — those having-helped (him)
ἀνεχώρον ἐπὶ πόδα
| retreated on foot [retreated slowly step by step] being-thrown-at
καὶ τινές τῶν Κρήτων ἀντιοξεύοντες.
(by the enemy), and some of the Cretans
Οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
'there' 'arrows-in-return. Thus they-arrived at the camp,
pάντες ὄντες σώοι.
all being safe.
CHAPTER III.

Επεί δὲ ὁ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε ἦκεν, οὔτε ἦν
When indeed—Cheirisophus neither came, nor were—there
ικανά πλοία, οὔτε ἦν ἐτι λαμβά-
sufficient vessels, nor was—there any—more (any place where) to-pro-
νεν τὰ ἑπτάδεκα, ἔδοξει εἶναι ἄντεόν. Kai
cure the provisions, it—seemed to—be necessary—to-depart. And
μὲν ἐνεβίβασαν εἰς τὰ πλοία τε τοὺς
indeed they—placed on board the vessels not—only—(those)
ἀσθενοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς ἐπέρ τετταράκοντα
being—infirm, but—also—(those) above forty
ἐτη, καὶ παιδάς καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ
(years of) age, and (the) children and women, and
τῶν σκευῶν διὰ ἦν μὴ ἀνάγκη ἔχειν:
of—the baggage such—as it—was not necessary to—have (with—them);
καὶ Φιλίσθων καὶ Σωφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους
and Philesium and Sophenetus, the oldest
τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰςβίβασαντες, ἐκέλευον ἐπι-
of—the generals going—on—board, they—ordered (them) to—
μελειοῦσαν τοῦτων: δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο: η ἡ
take—charge of—them; but the others marched—forth; the
ὁδὸς δὲ ἑδοπεποιημένη ἦν. Kai πορεύομενοι
road indeed having—been—made. And proceeding—forth
ἀφικνοῦται τριτάιοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, "Ελληνίδα
they—arrived (in) three—days at Cerasus, (a) Grecian
πόλιν ἐπὶ θαλάττα, ἅπαξ τον Σινοπίων,
city on (the) sea (coast), (a) colony of (the) Sinopians,
ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. "Ενταῦθα. ἔμειναν δέκα
in the Colchian country. Here they—remained ten
ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐγκυντο ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς
days; and there—was (a) review (of those) under—
δύσιοι καὶ ἀριθμὸς, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὅκτασίχλους
arms and—also (an) enumeration, and there—were eight—thousand
BOOK V. — CHAPTER III.

καὶ ἔξαχθησαν. Οὕτω ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν
and six-hundred. These were-saved out-of — (those at first)
ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους. δὲ οἱ άλλοι ἀπώλοντο τε
about — ten-thousand; and the others had-been-destroyed not-only
ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ χίδονος, καὶ εἰ τις
by the enemy, but-also (by the) snow, and if any
νῦσσα.
by-sickness.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα διαλαμβάνοντι τὸ ἀγγέλιον
And here they-distribute the money
γενόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων. Καὶ τὴν
got from (the sale) of-the prisoners. And the
dεκάτην, ἔξις ἐξείλον 'Ἀπόλλων
tenth (part), which they-took-out (and set apart) for-Apollo
καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, οἱ στρατηγοὶ διέλα-
and the Ephesian Diana, the generals took-among-them-
βοῦν, ἔκαστος τὸ μέρος, φυλάττειν τοῖς
selves; each-one — (his) part, to-keep (it) for — (these)
θεοῖς. δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε ἀντὶ
gods; and Neon the Asineian took (the part) in-place
Χειρισόφου. Ἐνοφόν οὖν ποιησάμενος
of-Cheirisophos. Xenophon therefore having-made (and set aside
ἀνάδειμα τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος,
out of his part an) offering — (that) indeed for — Apollo,
ἀνατίθεσιν εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων
deposits (it) in the treasury of-the Athenians
ἐν Δελφοῖς, καὶ ἐπέγραψε τὸ τε ὄνομα αὐτοῦ
in Delphis, and he-inscribed (on it) the — name of-himself
καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὡς ἀπέδαινε σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
and — (that) of-Proxenus, who died with Clearchus;

γὰρ ἦν ξένος αὐτοῦ. Δὲ τὸ
for (Proxenus) was (the) guest-friend-of-himself. But the (part)
τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτε ἀπῆλεί σὺν
of — . Diana of — Ephesus, when he-departed with
'Αγνησιλάω ἐξ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν Ῥώμην Βοιωτῶν,
'Agisilao from — Asia into the road (to) Boeotia,
kataleípei para Megábýsō τῷ νεωχόρῳ τῆς
he-left with Megabylus the warden-of-the (temple)
'Artémidos, óti autós ἔδοξει ἴπναι κινδυνεύων,
of Diana, as he seemed to-go about-incurring-danger,
καὶ ἑπέστειλεν, ἥν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, ἄνω-
and enjoined-on (him), if indeed he should-be-saved, to-
ἀπεδόηναι εἰς ἡν ἡν πάλη τις
return (the money) to-himself; but if he-suffered any-thing [but
ἀναθεῖναι, ποιησάμενοι
if he lost his life] to-dedicate (it), having-made (and set it apart)
τῇ 'Artémidι, ο τι οἴουτο χαρεῖσθαι τῇ
for — Diana, whatever he-might-think to-be-agreeable, to-the
θεῶ. Δ' ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔφευγε αὐτῷ
godess. But when — Xenophon was-in-banishment (and) he
ἡ δὴ κατοικῶντος ἐν Σελλίωι, οἰκισθέντος, para-
now dwelling in Selinus, having-been-settled near
τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαμιωνίων, Μεγάβυσος
Olympia by the Lacedemonians, Megabylus
ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρῆσαι,
came to Olympia | about-seeing-the-public-games, [for the
καὶ ἀποδίδωσι
purpose of being present at the Olympic games,] and he-returned
τῇ παρακαταθήκῃν αὐτῷ. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν
the deposit to-him. And Xenophon taking (it)
ἀνείται χωρίον τῇ θεῷ, ὅπου ὁ θεὸς
bought (a) piece-of-land for-the goddess, where the god
ἀνείλε. Δὲ ποταμὸς Σελίνους
had-directed (him) 'by-a-response. And (the) river Selinus
ἐτυχε βέων διὰ μέσου τοῦ χωρίου.
| happened running [ran] through (the) middle of — (this) piece-of-land.
Καὶ ἐν Ἐφεσῳ δὲ ποταμὸς Σελίνους παράβρει
And in Ephesus also (a) river Selinus runs-by
παρὰ τῶν νεῶν τῆς 'Artémidos, καὶ δὲ ἐν ἀμφιβερεί
along the temple of — Diana, and also in both
ἐνείσι ἰχθύες καὶ χόγχα. ἐν δὲ τῷ χωρίῳ
there-are fish and shell-fish; in indeed — (this) piece-of-land
ἐν Σκιλλοῦτι καὶ θήραι πάντων,
in Scillus (there are) also hunts of-all (kinds, espe-
cially of) such-as are hunted wild-beasts. And also
ἐποιήσε βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἄγαριον,
he-made (an) altar and (a) temple with the sacred
money,
καὶ τὸ λουτρὸν δὲ δεῖ δεκατεῖσθαι τὰ and (for) the rest (of time) also always-taking-the-tenth (of) the
ώραία ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἐποίει θυσίαι τῇ θεῷ,
season’s (produce) from the land he-made (a) sacrifice to-the goddess;
καὶ πάντες οἱ πολίται καὶ οἱ πρόχωροι ἄνδρες
and all the citizens and the neighbouring men
καὶ γυναῖκες μετεῖχον τῆς οἰκτίς,
and women participated (in) the festival (following the sacri-
ifice). And the goddess supplied — (those who) might-be-encamp-
Δὲ ἡ θεὸς παρεῖχε τοῖς οἰκτοῖς σχεδὸν
and the sons hunted also. For also not-only the sons
ἔξενοφωντος ἐποιοῦντο θήραν εἰς τὴν ἐορτήν,
of-Xenophon made (a) hunt for the festival,
καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολίτῶν οἱ ἄνδρες
but also — (those) of the other citizens; — (those) men
δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ξυνήδηρον καὶ ἡλία-
namely desiring (it) also hunted-with (them); and there-
κετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτῶν τοῦ ἱεροῦ
were-caught — (partly) indeed from this the (same) sacred
χῶρος, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Φολῆς, σὺς καὶ
place, and also — (partly) from — Phoibē, boars and
dορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. Δὲ ἡ χώρα
antelopes and deer. And — (this sacred) piece-of-land
ἐστὶν ἡ πορεύονται ἐκ Λαξεδαίμονος εἰς
is (on the road) by-which they-go from Laocedemon to
'Ολυμπίαν, ώς εἰκοσι στάδιαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ Δίος
Olympia, about thirty stadia from the temple of Jupiter
ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ. Ἔν οὗ ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ καρπῷ
in Olympia. There are within also in — (this) sacred place
καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ἁλσία καὶ ὑψι μεστά δέντραν,
also meadows and groves and hills full of trees,
ἰθανα τρέφειν καὶ σῆς καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῖς καὶ
adapted to breeding as well swine as goats and oxen and
ἵππως, ἔστε καὶ τὰ ἵππεα, τῶν ἑόρτων
horses, so that also the cattle, — (of these) going
eἰς τὴν ἑόρτην, ἐνωκεισθαί.
to the festival, are well-supplied with food. And round the
ναὸν αὐτῶν ἐφυτεύθη ἁλσία ἀλεοῦς ἐμέρων δέντραν,
temple itself is planted (a) grove of cultivated trees,
δόα ἔστι τρωτὰ ὑπαίᾳ.
(bearing) such (fruits) 'as are eatable in different seasons. And the
ναὸς εἰκοσία τῶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ ώς μικρὸς
temple is like to — (that) in Ephesus (in) as (far as a) small
μεγάλω, καὶ τὸ ξύλον
(one may be compared) 'with (a) 'large (one), and the statue
ἔστη ποὺ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ, ώς κυπαρίσσις
is like to — (that) in Ephesus, (in) as (much as) 'one (being) 'of-
ρίττινον δορυφορή
(cypress (is like to one) being of gold. And (a) pillar
ἔστη νὰ παρὰ τῶν ναὸν ἠχονα γράμματα
stood near the temple having (this) inscription:
Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΙΕΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.
— (This) ground (is) sacred — (to) Diana.
ΔΕ ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ
And — (he) possessing (it) and
ΚΑΤΑΘΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΤΕ ΕΤΟΥΣ
'gathering (the) 'fruit (thereof) 'is-to-offer-in-sacrifice each year
ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΘΝΗ.
the tenth (part of this produce). And from
ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΤΑΣΕΙΝ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ.
the residue to-keep-in-repair the temple.
BOOK V.—CHAPTER IV.

AN ΤΙΣ ΔΕ MH ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΤΤΑ
If any-one indeed should not perform these
MEΛΗΣΕΙ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ.
(conditions) it-will-be-a-care to-the goddess (to remember it).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

CHAPTER IV.

"Ex Kerasoūntos de oĩ kai prōsēn
From Corus — those-who (had) even
ekouiónto mēn kathá thalattan,
were (again) carried — by sea,
de oĩ állou époreúontο kata γην. Dê épei ñoan
but the rest proceeded by land. But when they-were
ē̂̂̂πι τοις ὅριοις Μοισυνοίκων, πέμπονσιν εἰς
on the coasts of (the) Mossynoei, they-send to
αὐτοὺς Τιμισθεὺν τῶν Τραπεζούντων, ὑπάρ
them Timesitheus the Trapesian, being (the)
πρόξενον τῶν Μοισυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες
public-friend-and-entertainer-of the Mossynoei, inquiring
πότερον πορεύονται τῆς χώρας ὡς διὰ
whether they-might-proceed-through — (their) country as through
φιλίας, ἥ ὡς διὰ πολέμιας Δὲ οĩ
(a) friendly (one), or as through (an) iminical (one). And —
eiπον ðtì ou διήσοιεν,
they-said that they 'would not 'allow (them) to-pass-through, for
ἐπιστένου τοῖς χωρίοις. Ἐντεύθεν ὁ Τιμι-
they-trusted to — (their) strong-places. Then — Times-
θεὺς λέγει, ðtì oĩ ex toû
itheus says, that — (those of the Mossynoei) from —
ἐπεκείνα εἰσὶν πολέμιοι αὐτοῖς. Kai ἐδόξει
beyond (them) were enemies to-them. And it-seemed-best
καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλοντο ποιήσασθαι
to-call-on them (to know), if they-might-wish to-make
εὐμαχίαν. καὶ ὁ Τιμοθίδεος πεμφήσεις
(an) alliance (with the Greeks); and — Timesitheus having-been-sent
ἡκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. Εἴπει
(to them) came bringing — (their) rulers (or chiefs). When
dὲ ἀφίκοντο, τε οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
indeed they-arrived, not-only the chiefs of-the Moseynocci,
kαὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, συνῆλθον;
but-also the generals of-the Greeks, came-together;
kαὶ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγε, δὲ Τιμοθίδεος ἱρμήνευε.
and indeed Xenophon spoke, and Timesitheus interpreted:
"Ω Μοσσυνοῖκοι ἄνδρες, ἤμεις βουλόμεθα δια-
Ο Moseynocci men, we desire to-
σώθηναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ.
save (ourselves) through into the Greece on-foot;
γάρ ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα. δὲ
[to go safely into Greece on foot;} for we-have no ships; and
οὗτοι καλοῦσιν ἡμᾶς, οὐς ἀκούμεν εἶναι
those (people) oppose us, whom we-hear to-be
τῶν ἰμιῶν. Εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἐξεστιν ἰμῖν
enemies to-you. If therefore you-wish, it-is-allowed you
λάβειν ἡμᾶς εὐμάχοις, καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι,
to-take us (as) allies, and to-avenge-yourselves,
eἰ ποτὲ οὕτωι ἡδικήσασιν ἡμᾶς τι, καὶ
if at-any-time these (people) may-have-injured you (in) any-thing, and
τούτους εἶναι ἵπποις ἰμῶν
(you may have) these (people) (so as) to-be subject (to) you
τὸ λοιπὸν. Τὸ εἰ ἀφίσετε ἡμᾶς, σκέψασθε
(you) the rest (of time). But if you-will-reject us, consider
πῶς ᾧν αὐτῆς λάβοτε τοσαύτην δύναμιν
whence you may again procure such (a) force
ἐξαιρεῖται. Πρὸς ταύτα ὁ ἄρχων
(as an) ally. To this the ruler (or head chief)
tῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι καὶ βούλομεν
of-the Moseynocci replied, that they both desired
ταύτα, καὶ δέχομεν τὴν ἐξαιρεῖσθαι.
this, and accepted the alliance. "Bring
δή, ἔφη ο Ξενοφῶν, τι δεσδεσθε κρῆ-
then, [well then,] said — Xenophon, in-what do-you-want to-
sασαίν ὑμῶν, ἀν γεγόμεθα ἐξομακεῖ ὑμῶν;
make-use of-us, if we-become allies of-you?
kαὶ τι δεσδεσθε οἷοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐξομακεῖ ὑμῶν
and in-what will-it-be possible for-you to-assist us
καὶ τῇ τῆς διόδου. Δὲ οἳ εὐπον ὅτι
as-respects the journey-through (the country)? And — they-said that
ἐσμὲν ἰκανοὶ εἰςβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ
we-are sufficient (and able) to-make-an-irruption |from the (side) on
θάτερα εἰς τὴν χώραν τὴν
side [from the farther side] into the country — (namely that)
tῶν πολεμίων ὑμῖν τε καὶ ὑμῖν, καὶ πέμψει
of-the enemies of-you as also of-us, and to-send
δεῖπρ ὑμῖν ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας, ὅτινες ἐκμη-
thither for-you ships as also men, who are-to-
μαχοῦνται ὑμῖν, τε καὶ ἓχοστοι τὴν
be-auxiliaries for-you, as also they-will-guide (you) on-the
ῥόδον.
road.

Ἐπὶ τούτως δόντες καὶ λαβόντες πυστά
Upon these (things) giving and taking pledges-of-good-faith
ἀγοντο. Καὶ ἤκουν τῇ ὀστεραιᾷ ἀγοντες τρι-
they-departed. And they-came on-the next-day bringing three-
κόσια πλοία μονόξυλα, καὶ τρεῖς ἄνδρας
hundred boats (made out of) one-piece-of-wood, and three men
ἐν ἐκάστῳ, δὲν οἱ διὸ μὲν,
(being) in each, of-whom — two indeed (from each boat),
ἐκβάντες, ἔδειτο εἰς ταξιν τὰ ὁπλα, δὲ
having-disembarked, placed-themselves in line under-arms, and
ὁ εἰς ἐμεν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες
the one (in each boat) remained. And — (these last) indeed taking
τὰ πλοία ἀπέπλευσαν· δὲ οἱ μενοντες
— (their) boats sailed-away; but — (those) remaining
ἐξετάσαντο ὅτε. Ἑστησαν ἀτὰ μάλιστα
were-drawn-up thus. They-stood — very (nearly)
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ἐκατόν, ὀξεῖροι, ἀντιστοίχευτες (a) hundred (in each line), like troops-of-dancers, drawn-up-opposite ἄλληλοις, πάντες ἐχοντες γέρβα λευκῶν one-another. all having shields (made of) white (hides) βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα πετάλω of-oxen (and the) hair-on, (the shield) being-like 'to (a) 'leaf κιττοῦ, δὲ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ πάλτον ὡς ἔξατην of-ivy, and on the right (hand was a) javelin about six-cubit-long ἔχον μὲν ἐμπροσθεν λόγχην, δὲ ὀπισθεν having indeed 'at (the) 'top (a) spear, but 'at (the) 'lower σφαιρωδεῖς τοῦ ξύλου αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἐνεδε-(end a) ball-like-form (made of) the wood itself. And they-δίκεσαν χιτωνίσκους ὑπὲρ γονάτων, were-dressed (in) tunics (reaching to) (the) knees, πάχος ὡς λινοῦ (and the) thickness (of these tunics was the same) as (that) 'of (a) 'linen στρωματοδέσμου, δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ σκύτου bed-sack, and (they having) on the head leathern κράνη, οἰκείς τὰ Παφλαγονικά, ἔχοντα helmets, such-as the Paphlagonian (helmet), having (a) κράδυλον κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύττα τιαρο- bunch-of-hair along (the) middle (of the helmet), very-nearly tiara-εὐθὺς δὲ καὶ εἰχον σιδηρᾶς σαγάρεις. Ἐντεῦθεν shaped; and also they had iron battle-axes. Then μὲν εἰς αὐτῶν ἐξῆρξε, δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύ- indeed one of-them went-out, and all the others proceeded ουτο οὖστος ἐν μυθῷ, καὶ διελθοντες διὰ forth singing in rhythmic-modulation, and passing through τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὄπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων, the lines and through the heavy-armed-men of the Greeks, ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπὶ they-proceeded directly towards the enemy, on (a) χωρίον ὃ ἐδοξεῖ εἶναι ἐπιμαχῶτατον. Δὲ fortified-place which seemed to be most-assailable. And τοῦτο ὅχειτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καλουμένης this (place) was-situated before the city called
αὐτοῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως, καὶ ἔχουσις τὸ ἀξροτάτων
by-them the metropolis, and having the highest-situation
tῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. Καὶ ὁ
(of any place in the country) of-the Mossynei. And the
πόλεμος ἦν περὶ τούτου· γὰρ οἱ
war was about this-same (place); for — (those who)
ἀδικοὶ ἔχοντες τούτον ἐδόχον οἶναι ἐγκρατεῖς
at-any-time having this (place) seemed to-be the-most-powerful
καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφαν τούτους
even of-all (the) Mossynei, and they-say (that) these
οὐ ἔχειν τούτο δίκαιος,
(their opponents) 'had not 'obtained this (place) justly,
ἄλλα καταλαβόντας, δὲν κοινὸν
but having-seized (it), (it) being common (property, that thus)
πλεονεκτεῖν.
they-got-the-ascendancy.

Δ' τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἰπώτατο αὐτοῖς,
And some of the Greeks even followed them,
οὐ ταχέως ἐπὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἄλλα
not having-been-ordered by the generals, but
ἐξεκεῖν ἀφείραγς. Δ' οἱ πολέμοιν, προσίτοιτο,
for-the-sake of-plunder. But the enemy, (they) advancing,
τέως μὲν, ἡσύχασον· ὥσπερ ἐπὶ ἐγένοντο
so-long-as (they did) indeed, kept-quiet; but when they-got
ἐγγὺς τοῦ χωρίων, ἐκδραμόντες αὐτοὺς τρέ-near the place, sallying-out put them
tονται, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συνοίχον τῶν βαρβάρων,
flight, and they-killed many of the barbarians,
καὶ τινάς τῶν κυνναδάντων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ
and some of-the accompanying Greeks, and
ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὖ εἰδον τοὺς Ἑλλήνας βοη-
they-pursued just-to where they-saw the Greeks coming-
σοῦντας. Δὲ εἶτα ἀποτραπόμενοι ὑγροτο,
to-help (the defeated). And then having-turned-back they-fed,
καὶ ἀποπεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν,
and cutting-off the heads of the dead,
ἐπεδείκνυσαν τε τοὺς Ἑλληνας καὶ τοὺς they exhibited (them) not-only to-the Greeks but-also to-the
πολεμίους ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἄμα ἐχόμενον φδοντες enemies of-themselves, and at-the-same-time they-danced singing
τινὶ νόμῳ. Δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες μάλα ἁχθοντο to-some tune. And the Greeks 'were very-much 'disturbed
ὅτι ἐπεποίηκεσαν τε τοὺς πολεμίους θρασυτέρους, that they-had-made not-only the enemy more-bold-and-daring,
καὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐκελθόντες σὺν αὐτοῖς but-also that the Greeks having-gone-out with them
ἐπεφεύγεσαν, δυντες μάλα συχνοι' δ ὁπως fled, (they) being very numerous; which 'had never
ἐπεποίηκεσαν πρὸςδεν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Δὲ 'been-done before during the expedition. But
Ἐξοφοῦν, ἥψυχαλέσας τοὺς Ἑλληνας, εἶπεν' Xenophon, calling-together the Greeks, said:
Ἀνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀδυμηστε ἔνεκα Men soldiers, 'do not 'be-cast-down on-account
τῶν γεγονημένων· γὰρ ἵστε δι' αὐτὶ of-the (things) having-happened (thus); for know that even (a)
ἀγαθὸν οὐ μεῖον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. Γὰρ good not less (than) the evil has-occurred. For
πρῶτον μὲν ἐπίστασθε, δι' οἱ μὲλλοντες first indeed know, that — (those) being-about
ὅγεισθαι ἦμιν εἰσιν πολέμιοι τῷ δυνι to-conduct us are enemies to — (those) being (really
οἷστε καὶ ἀνάγκη ἦμιν· enemies to themselves) to-whom also it-is-necessary for-us (also to be
καὶ ἐπειτὰ δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄφρον· enemies); and next indeed — (those) of-the Greeks ne-
τιστάσαντες τῆς τάξεως ἐξὸν ἦμιν, καὶ gleeing the order-and-discipline (prevalent) with us, and
ὕγισταμενοι εἶναι ἵκαιοι πράττειν ἐξὸν thinking (themselves) to-be able to-perform with
τοῖς βαρβάροις ταύτα, ἄπερ ἐξὸν ἦμιν, the barbarians the-same, which (they do) with us,
BOOK V. — CHAPTER IV.

δεδώκασιν δίκην．

[have-given justice; [have suffered justly]; so that hereafter (it will be]

ήττον

'απολείπονται ἡμετέρας

considered) worse [should (the men)] 'desert our

τάξεως．'Ἀλλ' δεῖ ὑμᾶς παρασκευάσθαι,

But it-is-proper (that) you prepare-yourselves,

τάξεως. ἄλλοι τῶν βαρβάρων

so that both [(to) the] friends being of the barbarians [to the]

δόξην εἶναι κρείττονος αὐτῶν,

'dóxην eînai krei̇ttou̇n oî̇tōn, barbarians your allies] you-may-appear-to-be better (than) they

καὶ δηλώσαστε τοῖς πολεμίοις, ὅτι

καὶ δηλώσαστε toî̇s polemiōî̇s, òti (in courage), and show — (your) enemies, that they—'do

οὐ μαχοῦνται ὁμοίως ἀνδράσι τῶν τε καὶ οὗ

not 'fight 'with (the) same men now as when

εμάχοντο τοῖς ἀτάκτωσι.

εμάχοντο toî̇s ataktōsî̇s. they-fought with the undisciplined.

Οὕτως μὲν ἐμειναν οὖν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν.

Οὕτως μὲν ἐμειναν οὖν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν. So indeed they-remained therefore that — day.

Δ’ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ θύσαντες, ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο,

But-on-the next-day having-sacrificed, when they-had-obtained-favour-

οὐκ ἔστω ὁ πλούσιος ποιησάμενοι τοὺς λόγους

able-omens, they-breakfasted, having-formed the companies

ὀρδίους καὶ ταξάμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους

[straight, [in columns,] and drawing-up the barbarians

ἐν τῷ εἰκόνιμον κατὰ ταύτα, ἐπορεύσαντο,

on the left according (to) the-same (way) they-marched-forth,

ἐχοντες τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων, ὑπολείποντο

having the archers between the companies, having-

τοὺς ἐфύλακτους τὸν στόματος τῶν

left indeed (a) little (space from) the front of the

ὁπλιτῶν．

ὁπλιτῶν． Ἄρα ἦσαν οἱ εἰκώνιοι τῶν

heavy-armed-men. For there-were the active (men) of the

πολεμίων, κατατρέχοντες καθάλλον τοῖς λίθοις

enemy, (who) running-down threw — stones;

οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταῖ ἀνέστελλον τούτους.

the archers and targeteers kept-back these.
Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο βάδεν,
But the others (of the Greeks) proceeded (slowly) step-by-step,
πρῶτον μὲν ἔπλ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ’ οὗ οἱ βάρβαροι first indeed against the (strong) place at which the barbarian
ἐτρήφθησαν καὶ οἱ εἰς αὐτοῖς· (allies of the Greeks) were-repulsed and the (Greeks) with them;
γὰρ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι.
for there the enemy were drawn-up-against (them).
Οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν οὖν ἐδέξαντο πελταστασκόντας,
The barbarians indeed therefore received (the) targeteers,
καὶ ἐμάχοντο· δὲ ἑπειδή οἱ ὀπλίται
and fought (with them); but when the heavy-armed-men
ἦσαν ἐν γύγης ἐστράποντο. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελταστασκόντας were near they-took-to-flight. And indeed the targeteers
ἐιῆσθαι εἰσοπτεύοντες διὰ χώραν ἀκόροις τὴν μητρό-
directly followed driving (them) upwards towards the metro-
πόλιν, οἱ ὀπλίται δὲ εἰσοπτεύοντες ἐν τάξει.
polis, the heavy-armed-men indeed followed in order.
Ἐκεῖ δὲ ἦσαν ἀκόροι πρὸς ταῖς οἰκίαις τῆς μετρο-
When indeed they-were above by the houses of the metro-
πόλεως, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ
polis, here indeed the enemy 'having —
πάντες γενόμενοι δμοῦ ἐμαχοῦσαν,
all 'got' together fought (with them), and
ἐξορύζουσιν τοῖς παλτοῖς· καὶ ἐχοντες ἄλλα
they-hurled — (their) darts; and having other
παχές δόρατα, μαχρά, δόσα ἄνθρο χύν μόλις
thick spears, large, so-that (a) man could scarcely
φέροι, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμυνοῦσιν
carry (them), with-these they-endeavoured to-defend-themselves
ἐπὶ κεφαλής. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες οὐχ ὑφιένταν
hand-to-hand. But when the Greeks 'did not 'give-way,
ἀλλ’ ἐχώρουν ὑμόσει,
but went to-the-same-place, [but engaged in close combat,) the
οἱ βαρβαροὶ ἑθενοῦν, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαντῶν ἐλατον
barbarians fled, and thereupon 'they altogether 'left
τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ μόσσυνι τῷ ζωδομημένῳ ἐπὶ ἄκρου, the place. But the king of them — (he living) in the wooden-tower — (that namely) having-being-built on (the) height, ὃν μένοντα αὐτοῦ πάντες τρέφουσι καὶ whom remaining these all supported and φυλάττουσιν κοινῇ, οἷς ἔθελεν ἔζελθείν, guarded (him) in-common, 'did not wish to-leave (it), οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ χορῷ πρῶτον αἱρέσαντι, nor — (those) in the strong-place first taken, ἀλλ' κατεκαίθησαν αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσῶις, but were-burnt these with the wooden-towers. Δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες, διαράξαντες τὰ χωρία, εὑρίσκουν But the Greeks, ransacking the place, found ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις Ἰησαυρῶν ἄρτων γεννήμενων in the houses stores-of bread heaped-together πατρίως, ὡς οἱ Μοσσώνοι according-to-the-custom-of-their-forefathers, as the Mossynocci ἔφασαν, δὲ τὸν νέον σιτον ἀποκείμενον ξύν τῇ say, also the new corn put-up (with) (in) the καλάμη. ὅ αἱ πλειστοὶ ἦσαν ξιαλ. Καὶ straw; and the most was spelter. And τεταραχεμένα τεμάχια δελφίνων εὑρίσκετο ἐν pickled slices-of dolphins were-found in ἄμφορεσι, καὶ στεάρ τῶν δελφίνων ἐν τεῦχεσι, jars, and (the) fat of — dolphins in vessels, ὡς οἱ Μοσσώνοι έξρωτος, καθάπερ οἱ Ἑλληνες which the Mossynocci used, as the Greeks τῷ ἐλαιῷ. Δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄνωγαλων ἦν (do) — oil. And in the upper-parts-of-the-houses there-were πολλὰ κάρυα τὰ πλατέα, οἷς ἔχοντα many nuts (chestnuts) the broad-ones, not having οὐδεμίαν διαφυὴν. Τούτω καὶ ἐξρωτόντω (no) (any) fissure. This 'they even used πλείστῳ σιτῷ, ἔχοντες καὶ ἄπτοντες ἄρτους, most for-food, boiling (them) and baking bread
Δὲ οἶνος εἰρίσκετο, ὡς μὲν ἄκρατος
(of them). Also wine was-found, which indeed (when) pure
ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑζὺς ἐπὶ τῆς αἰσθητότητος,
seemed to-be sour from — (its) very-great-roughness,
δὲ κερασίης εὐώδης τε καὶ
but being-mixed (with water) (it becomes) fragrant and also
ηὔς.
pleasant.

Οἱ Ἑλληνες μὲν δὴ, ἀμιστήσαντες ἐνταῖθα,
The Greeks indeed —, having-breakfasted there,
ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες
proceeded on — (their) forward (march), giving-up
τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμακχάσαι τῶν Μοσύνοιων.
the place to — (their) allies of the Mosynoeis.

Δὲ καὶ ὅπως ἄλλα χωρία παρῆσαν, τῶν
And also as-many other places as they-arrived-at, — (those)
ὅτων ἦν τοῖς πολέμοις, τὰ
being with the enemy, — (some of the places) being-most-
δύνατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, δὲ οἱ
accessible the (barbarians) indeed deserted (them), but the (inhabit-
ἐκόντες προσεχόροιν. Δὲ τὰ πλείστα
ants of other places) willingly surrendered. And the most
τῶν χωρίων ἦν τοιάδε. Αἱ πόλεις ἀπείρου
of-the places were (situated) thus. The towns were-distant
ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ὀγδοίκοντα στάδια, αἱ
from one-another (about) eighty stadia, — (some) indeed
πλείων, αἱ δὲ μείον· δὲ ἀναβώτων
more, — (others) indeed less; and calling-aloud (to)
ἀλλήλων ξυνήχουν ἐκ τῆς ἔτερας πόλεως
one-another they-heard-each-other from the (other) (one) city
eἰς τὴν ἔτεραν· ἡ χώρα ἦν οὕτως ὑψηλή
to the other; (for) the country was so elevated
τε καὶ κοίλη. Ἕτερι δὲ πορευόμενοι ἦσαν
and so hollow. When indeed having-proceeded-forwards they-were
ἐν τοῖς φίλοις, ἐπεδείξασαν αὐτοῖς τοῖς παίδας
among — friends, they-showed them boys (the sons of)
BOOK V. — CHAPTER IV.

τῶν εὐδαιμόνων, ἀπαλοῦς καὶ σφόδρα λευκοῦς, of-the rich, soft and exceedingly white;
sυτευτοῖς, τεθραμμένους ἐφθαίς καρύους, καὶ οὗ being-made-fat, having-been-fed with-boiled chestnuts, and not
dεόντας πολλοὶ εἶναι ἱσοῦς τὸ μῦχος καὶ τὸ wanting much to-be equal — (in) length and — (in)
πλάτος, δὲ ποικίλους τὰ νότα, καὶ πάντα breadth, and painted-with-various-colours on-the back, and on-all
τὰ ἐμπροσθεν ἀστηγμένους διδέμων. Δὲ the forespart pricked (in the form of) flowers. And
καὶ ἐξήτον ἡγγίσανθαι ἐμφανῶς ταῖς ἑταῖραις also-they-desired to-have-intercourse publicly with-the mistresses
αἳ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἱγον, γὰρ οὐτός νόμος which the Greeks brought (with them), for this custom
ἡν σφισι. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναικεῖς was to-them. And all the men and the women

λευκοί. Οἱ στρατευσάμενοι
(were very) white. — (Those) having-served-in (this) 'expedition
ἐλέγον διελθέν βαρβαρτάτους,
said (that) they-passed-through the-most-barbarous, [that these were
καὶ πλείστον
the most barbarous people they had passed through,) and the-most
κεχωρισμένους τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων.
removed from-the Grecian manners (and customs). For

τε ἐποίου ὄντες ἐν ἄγαλμα ἀπέρ ἄνδρωπον ἄν
indeed they-do being in (a) crowd what men would

ποίησειν ἐν ἐρημίᾳ, ἄλλως δὲ ἄν οὐ
dare (to do); and being alone they-did-these-things

(only) do in private, otherwise indeed might not

τολμῆσαι, τε ὄντες μόνοι ἔπραττον
which (they) might (do) (the) same (as if) being (in company)

ἀπέρ ἄν διοικού ὄντες
with others; talked — to-themselves, and laughed

μετ᾽ ἄλλων. διελέγοντο τε ἐαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλων
CHAPTER V.

Diá tautēs tēs xwras, te diá tēs
through these — countries, — (namely) through — (those)
poleimía xai tēs philía, oi 'Ellhnes épo-
friendly, the Greeks pro-
rei'n fan ǒxto stathmous, xai áfínounta eis
seeded eight days' march, and arrived among (the)
Xalubaías. Oútou ἤσαν ὀλύγοι ἰαί
Chalybes. These (people) were few (in number) and (were)
upókou tōn Mossoínov, xai ó bios tōs
subjects of the Messenians, and — (their) living for the
pleistous autōn atop sidheias. 'Ennei'θen
most of them (was obtained) from iron works. Thence
áfínounta eis Tibarínoús. Ἡ xwra dé
they arrived among (the) Tibareni. The country —
von Tibarínoún ēn poli peidiwtera, xai eixen
of the Tibareni was much more level, and they had
xwria énti kalāntē ȟttov érmwva. Kai
stations on (the) sea (coast) but weakly fortified. And
oi stratiygoi ἤxhzen pro sbálleiv prós tā xwria,
the generals wanted to make an attack on the places,
xai ánthnai ti tīn stratiav kai
and to have conferred some benefit on the army and
oix édēkonto tā zevia à ūxe parrā
did not receive the gifts of hospitality which came from
Tibarínoún, ãll' xeléusanstes épimeinai
the Tibareni, but having ordered (the messengers) to wait
εστε βουλεύσαιντο, έθιντο. Καὶ πολλα
till they-might-deliberate, they-sacrificed. And many (victims).
καταθυσάντων, τέλος πάντες οἱ μάντες ἀπε-
having-been-sacrificed, at-last all the augurs of-
deίξαντο γνώμην, ὅτι οἱ θεοὶ συνάμη προσίσταντο
fered (their) opinion, that the gods in-no-wise approved-of
τὸν πόλεμον. έντευθεν δὴ ἐδέξαντο τὰ ἔξ-
the war. Then indeed they-accepted the gifts-of-
νια, καὶ πορεύόμενοι δύο ήμέρας, δὲ
hospitality, and proceeding-on (their march) two days, as
dιὰ φιλίας, ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα
through (a) friendly (country), they-arrived at Cotyora (a)
'Ελληνιδα πόλιν, ἀποκιάν Σινόπεων, δ' οὖνας
Greek city, (a) colony from-Sinope, and being
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Τιβαρηνῶν.
in the country 'of (the) Tibarenii.

'Η στρατιά ἐπέζευσε μέχρι ἐνταῦθα. Πλῆθος
The army proceeded-by-land just-to here. (The) length
τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὀδοῦ ἀπὸ
of-the descent (down the country along) the road from
τῆς μάχης ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα
the battle (ground) in Babylon just to Cotyora (was)
ἐκατὸν εἰκοσι δύο σταθμοί, ἐξακόσιοι
a-hundred (and) twenty two stations, (making) six-hundred
καὶ εἰκοσὶ παρασάγγαι, μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακικὸι
and twenty parasangs, (or) ten-thousand and eight-thousand
καὶ ἐξακόσιοι στάδιοι. πλῆθος χρόνον
and six-hundred (18,600) stadia; the-amount of-time (was)
ὀκτὼ μήνες. Ἕντευξα ἐμείναν τετταράκοντα
eight months. There they-remained forty
πέντε ἡμέρας. Ἐν δὲ ταύτας πρῶτον
five days. During — these (days) 'they first
μὲν ἔδυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς
indeed 'sacrificed to-the gods, and they-made processions
ἐκαστῷ κατὰ ἔδυο τῶν 'Ελληνων,
each according-to (the) nation (or tribe) of-the Greeks
καὶ γυμνικοὶς ἀγώνας. Δὲ τὰ
(to which he belonged), and gymnastic games. And — (their)
ἐνυτύχεια ἔλαμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλα-
provisions they-took — (partly) indeed from —
γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρῶν τῶν Κοτυριτῶν;
Paphlagonias, and — (partly) from the lands of the
γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρῶν τῶν Κοτυριτῶν;
Cotyrites;
γὰρ οὐ παρεῖχον ἄγοραν, ο�� δὲ ἔδεχοντο
for they 'did not provide (a) market, nor did they receive
τοῖς ἀσθενοῦνταῖς εἰς τὸ τείχος,
the feeble and sick within the walls.

Ἐν τούτῳ πρέσβεις ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης,
During this ambassadors come from Sinope,
φοβοῦμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυριτῶν τὸ τῆς
frightened about the Cotyores namely (those) of the
πόλεως, (γὰρ ἦν ἐκεῖνων,
city, (for it was of them, [for it was theirs,] and (the in-
ἐφερον φόρους ἐκείνων,) καὶ
habitants) brought tribute to them,) and (they were also in fear)
περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὡς τῶν ἄνων
about the territories, as they had heard (that they were) being-
μένην. Καὶ ἔδόλοες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔλεγον
therefore. And going to the camp, they said
(δὲ Ἔκατόνυμος προηγόρη, νομίζομενος εἶναι δεινὸς
(and Hecatonymus spoke for them, he considered to be able
λέγει). Ἡ πόλις τῶν Σινώπων ἐπαύγειν ἡμᾶς,
to-speak): The city of the Sinopians has sent us,
ὅ ἄνδρες στρατῶταί, ἐπαύγεστο τε ἡμᾶς, ὡς
those men soldiers, about-praising indeed you, that
ὄνεις Ἕλληνες νικάτε ἐπιβάρους, δὲ καὶ
being Greeks you have conquered (the) barbarians, and also
ἐξείτας ξυνοσθομένους, ὡς πάρεστε
being with you, that you are present (here)
τοις σεσωσμένοι, ὡς ἦμεις ἀκούσαμεν, διὰ πολλῶν τε
having been saved, as we hear, through many and
καὶ ἐποίησαν πραγμάτων. Δὲ ἄξιονεν,
also grievous things. But we think it right, being also
αιτοὶ Ἑλληνες, μὲν πάσχειν τι
ourselves Greeks, (that we ought) indeed to-suffer something
ἀγαθὸν, δὲ μηδὲν κακὸν ὕφ᾽ ὑμῶν, ὁντων Ἑλληνῶν·
good, but nothing evil from you, being Greeks;
γὰρ οὐδὲ — πώποτε ἵππεςμεν ποιοῦντες οὐδὲν
for neither 'have-we ever 'commenced doing (no) (any)
κακὸς υμᾶς. Οὕτωι Κοτυρίται δὲ εἰσὶ μὲν
evil to-you. These Cotyritians — are indeed
ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ ἡμεῖς παραδεδωκαμεν αὐτοῖς
our colonists, and we have-given them
ταῦταν τὴν κώραν, ἀφελόμενον βαρ-
this — (same) land, having-taken (it) 'from (the) 'bar-
θάρους· καὶ διὸ οὕτω φέρονσιν ἡμῖν
barnans; and therefore these (people) bring us (an)
tεταγμένον δαμοῦν, καὶ ὠραίως Κερασοῦντιοι καὶ
appointed tribute, and likewise (the) Cerasuntians and
Τραπεζοῦντιοι· ὅστε ὁ τι κακὸν ἄν ποιήσητε
Trapezuntians; so-that whatever evil 'you may 'do
τούτους, ἢ πόλις Σινωπέων νομίζει
them, the city 'of (the) 'Sinopians considers (itself)
pάσχειν. . . . Δὲ νῦν ἄχοιομεν ὑμᾶς τε
to-suffer (from it). But now we-hear (that) you not-only
παρελγηλόντας εἰς τὴν πόλιν βια, ἐνίους
having-entered into the town by-force, some (of you)
σπευδόν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις, καὶ λαμβάνειν
lodge in the houses, but-also (that you) take
βια, ἐν τῶν χωρίων ὄν ἄν δέσθε,
by-force, from the (neighbouring) places what 'you may 'want,
οὐ πείσοντας. Οὖν οὐκ ἀξιόθεν
(the owners) not consenting. Therefore we-'do not 'approve
ταῦτα· δὲ εἰ ποιήσετε ταῦτα
these (things); and if you-will-do these (things) there-'will-
ἀνάγκη ὑμῖν ποιεῖσθαι φίλοι καὶ Κορυλαν
be (a) 'necessity for-us to-make friends both (of)
Corylas
καὶ Παφλαγόνας, καὶ ἄλλον, δυνάμεν ὁμοῦ καὶ (of the) Paphlagonians, and (any) other, whomsoever we may 'be-able.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Εὔνοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν rising-up spoke Ἡμεῖς δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες for the army: We indeed, O men (of)

Συνωσίας, εἴχομεν ἄγαπῶντες, διὰ δεισώσαμεν since, have-come being-content, that we-have-saved τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ ὀφελα̃ γὰρ ἦν οὐ— (our) bodies and — (our) arms; for it was not δυνατόν ἡμᾶς ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν possible at-the-same-time to-drive and bring (away) things, καὶ μάχεσθαι τοὺς πολέμιους. Kαὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ and to-fight the enemy. And now when εἴσ τὰς Ἑλληνιδὰς πόλεις, μὲν ἐν̃ we-have-come to — Greek cities, (as) indeed among (the)

Τραπεζώντι (γὰρ παρεῖχον ἡμῖν ἄγοραν) ἰώνου- Trebisondians (for they-provided us (a) market) buy-

μενεὶ εἴχομεν τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα, καὶ ἄνδρ’ ἄνθι̃ ing we-had — (our) provisions, and in-return for-what ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς, καὶ εἴνα 

they-honoured us, and (the) gifts-of-hospitality (which) they-gave τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὑτοῖς, καὶ εἰ̣ to-the army we-honoured them 'in-return, and if τῆς τῶν βαρβάρων ἦν φίλος αὐτοῖς, ἀνε- any-one of the barbarians was (a) friend to-them, we-ab-

χόμεθα toύτων ἔδωκαν (from injuring) them; but (to) the enemies αὐτῶν ἐφ’ οὐς αὐτοῖς ἡγοῦντο ἐποιοῦμεν κακῶς of-them against whom they may-have-led (us) we-did evil δόσων ἐδυνάμεθα. Δὲ ἐρωτάτε αὐτοῖς ὅποιων as-much-as we-could. But ask them what-sort ἥνων ἑτυχοῦν ἡμῶν γὰρ πάρεισι ἔνθε, persons they-may-have-found us; for they-are-present here,
Οὔς ἡ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν ἡμῖν ἡγεμόνας διὰ

whom the city sent-with us (as) guides through

φιλίαν. Δ’ ὅποι ἔλεγοντες μη ἔχωμεν

friendship. But wherever we may have-been-coming (and) not having

ἀγοράν, ἀν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν τε

(a) market, (it) may (be) as-well to (a) barbarian country as (it)

ἀν Ἐλληνίδα, λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια

may (be) 'to (a) 'Grecian, we-take — provisions

οὐχ ὑβρεί, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη. Καὶ

not (through) insolence, but (through) necessity. And

ἐκτῆσαμεδα πολεμίους Καρδούχους καὶ

we-made enemies (of the) Carduchi and (of the)

Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους, καίτερ ὁ ὀντας

Taochi and (of the) Chaldeans, although not being

ὅπωρος μασελέως, καὶ δειος ὄντας μάλα

subjects 'of (the) 'king, and yet being very

φοβεροὺς, διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἀνάγκην

formidable, through the to-be [from being] (in) necessity

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἕπει ὃς παρεῖχον
to-take — provisions, when they-'did not 'furnish (us)

ἀγοράν. Δὲ Μάκρωνας, καίτερ ὄντας βαρ-

(a) market. 'But (the) Macrones, although being bar-

βάρος, ἕπει παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οὗ ἔδοναντο,

barians, when they-provided (us a) market, as-much-as they-could,

ἐνομίζομεν τε εἶναι φίλους, καὶ ἐλαμβάνομεν

we-considered indeed to-be friends, and we-took

οἶδὲν τῶν ἔχεινων βίαν. Δὲ Κοτυρίταις,

nothing of-the (things) of-them by-force. But (the) Cotyrites

οὗς φατε εἶναι ἰμετερούς, εἰ εἰλήφαμεν τι

whom you-say to-be yours, if we-have-taken any-thing

ἀντῶν, αὐτὸν εἰσὶν αὐτιον· γὰρ

from-them, they-themselves are (the) authors (thereof); for

οὗ προσεφέροντο ὡς φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ

they-'did not 'carry-themselves as friends of-us, but

κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας, οὔτε ἐδέχοντο

having-closed — (their) gates, 'would neither 'receive (us)
εἰσιν, οὖν ἐπεμπόν ἀγοράν ἐξω·
within (the walls), nor did-they-send (as a) market without (the walls);
dε ἐπιώντο τὸν ἄρμοστὴν παρ' ἵμιον εἰναι
and they-alleged (that) the governor (sent) by you was
αἰτιον τοῦτων.
the-author of-these (things). (As to) what indeed you-say (that)
παρελθόντας βία σκηνοῦν,
entering by-force we-quartered (in the place), we requested,
δέκασθαι τοὺς καμνοντας εἰς τὰς
(that) they-would-receive — (those) being-sick — (under) — (their)
στέγας: δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀνέγαγον τὰς πύλας,
but when they-'would not open the gates,
τὸ καρπὸν αὐτὸ ἐδέχετο ἡμᾶς
in-which (way) the place itself received us [where the
ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες,
nature of the place admitted our entrance] in-the-same (place) entering,
ἀλλὰ ἐποιήσαμεν μὲν οὐδὲν βίαν· ἢ οἱ
(but) we-committed indeed no violent, (act); but — (those)
καμνοντες σκηνοῦσι ἐν ταῖς στέγαις, δαπανώντες
being-sick they-quarter — (under) the roofs, consuming
τὰ ἑαυτῶν·
the (things) of-themselves; [living on their own means]; and we-
καὶ φρονοῦμεν τὰς πύλας, ὅποις οἱ ἵμοι καμνοντες
guard the gates, so-that — (those) of-us being-sick
μὴ δαν ἐπὶ τῷ ἰμετέρῳ ἄρμοστῃ,
'may not 'be in the (power of) your governor,
ἀλλ' κομίσασθαι ἤ ἐφ' ἵμιν,
but to-remove (them) may-be to us, [but that it may
ὦσταν βουλώμεθα. Δὲ οἱ
be in our power to remove them,) when we-wish. But the
ἀλλοι, ὡς ὀρᾶτε, σκηνοῦμεν ἵππαιροι,
rest (of us) as you-see, we-are-encamped (in the) open-air,
ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἃν τις
in — (proper) order, prepared, (that) should any-one
μὲν ποιῇ εἰ, ἀντεποιεῖν,
indeed act well (to us), to-act-well-in-return (to them), but (if he) should
κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. Δὲ ἔτει, ἵνα ἡ θύμωποικας, ὡς, ἵνα δικαὶ ἔθνοι, ποιήσομεν you-have-threatened, that, if it-seemed-proper to-you, you-would-make κορίλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ἡμιμάχοντες ἐφ' Corilas and (the) Paphlagonians (your) allies against ἡμᾶς, δὲ ἡμεῖς, ἵνα μὲν ἢ ἀνάγκη, us, but we (on our part), if indeed it-may-be necessary, πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἁμφοτέρους. (γὰρ ηδή καὶ ἐπολε- will-fight even with-you-both; (for already even we-have- μέσαμεν ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ἡμῶν) δὲ fought with-others more-numerous (than you;) and (if) 'it ἄν δοξῆ, ποιήσωμεν τὸν Παφλαγόνα may seem-proper (to us), we-will-make the Paphlagonian (a) φίλον ἡμῖν. Δὲ ἄκοιμοιν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιδυμεῖν friend to-us. And we-have-heard (that) he even covets τῆς ἡμετέρας πόλεως καὶ τῶν ἐπιθαλασσίων χωρίων. — your city and the maritime places. Οὖν πειρασόμεθα, συμπράττοντες ὑμῖν We-shall therefore 'try, helping (him in) what ἐπιδυμεῖ κίνησις φίλοι. he-desires to-become (his) friends. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ἐνμπρέσθεις ἔσον μὲν μάλα After this (speech) the joint-ambassadors were indeed very δῆλοι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Ἐκάτωνυμῳ τοῖς evident being-much-displeased at — Hecatomnus in — (what) εἰρημένοις. δ' ἄλλοις αὐτῶν παρελθὼν εἶπεν, he-had-been-saying; but others of-them coming-forward said, ὅτι οὐ ἧκοίνει ποιησόμενοι πάλιμον, ἄλλα that they—did not 'come making war, but ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι εἰσὶ φίλοι. 'Ἡν μὲν ἐξ- showing-and-declaring that they-were friends. If indeed you-should— εἴτε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Σινωπέων, ἐκεῖ δεξάμεθα come to the city-of-the-Sinopeans, there we-will-receive (you) καὶ ζενίοις, δὲ νῦν κελεύσομεν τοὺς even with-gifts-of-hospitality, and now we-will-order — (those)
ἐνθάδε διδόναι ἃ δύνανται; γὰρ ὁρῶμεν πάντα here to-give what they-can; for we-perceive all ὄντα ἄλλης ἃ λέγετε. Ἐξ τούτου τε οἱ Κοτυρ- being true that you-say. After this indeed the Coty- ριται ἐπημονον ξένων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ritans sent gifts-of-hospitality, and the generals τῶν Ἑλλήνων εξενιζον τοὺς πρέσβεις τῶν Σινωπέων, of the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of the Sinopeans, καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἄλληλους τε πολλά καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἄλληλους τε πολλά and they-conversed with one-another not-only (about) many (things) καὶ φιλικά, τὰ but-also (about) friendly (things, that concerned one another), among-the ἄλλα τε ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ other (things) indeed they-inquired and (in particular) about the λοιπῆς πορείας, ἐν ἐκάτεροι ἐδένοντο. remaining route, what each (party) desired (to know).

CHAPTER VI.

Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταῦτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ. Such was the end indeed to-that — day. 

Δὲ τῇ ἑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ξυνέλεξαν τοὺς But on-the next-day the generals assembled the στρατιώτας, καὶ ἔδοξει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς soldiers, and it-seemed (best) to-them as-respects the λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας remaining route (that) having-called-in the Sinopeans βουλεύσαντες. Γὰρ εἰτε δέοι πορεύ- to-consult (with them). For if it-might-be-necessary to- ἔτι πεζῇ, οἱ Σινωπεῖς ἄν ἐδόξουν εἰναι χρήσιμοι· proceed by-land, the Sinopeans would seem to-be useful; γὰρ ἦσαν ἐμπειροὶ τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἰτε for they-were well-acquainted (with) — Paphlagonia; if
κατὰ θάλατταν ἐδόξει προσδείν
by sea it-seems (that they would) require (the aid)

Σινωπεῶν, γὰρ ἄν ἐδόξουν μόνοι εἶναι
of (the) Sinopeans, for they would seem alone to be

ίκανοι παρασχεῖν πλοία ἄρχοντα
competent to-furnish ships (in number) sufficient

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οὖν παλέσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις
for the army. Therefore calling (in) the ambassadors

ἐξεθουλεύοντο, καὶ ἡξίουν ὄντας Ἔλληνας
they-consulted-together, and requested being (as) Greeks

Ἔλληνι τοῦτω πρῶτον δέχεσθαι
to-Greeks (that) in-this (relation) they would first receive

καλῶς τε εἶναι εὖνοις τῷ καὶ (them) well, not-only-to-be friendly-and-kind to (them), but also

ἐξουθενεῖν τὰ κάλλιστα.
to-advice (them) for-the best.

Δὲ Ἐκατόνυμος ἀναστάς, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογή-
But Hecatonymus having-risen-up, first indeed he-stated-in-

σατο περὶ οὗ ἐπεν, ὡς ποιήσωντο τὸν Παφλαγόνα
defence about what he-said, that they-would-make the Paphlagonian

φίλον, οὗτοι οὐχ εἶποι, ὡς σφῶν (a) friend, that he might not have-said (this), as that themselves

πολεμησόντων τοῖς Ἔλληνας, ἀλλ' οὗτοι were-about-making-war against the Greeks, but that (though)

ἐξών εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις αἰρή-
it-being-allowed (them) to be friends to-the barbarians they-

σονται τοὺς Ἔλληνας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ would-take (in preference) the Greeks. When indeed

ἐκέλευον ἐξουθενεῖομι,
they-called-in (him) that he-might-give (his) opinion-and-advice, calling-

ἐπει̂ων τοῖς Ἐλληνας. Εἰ μὲν ἐξουθενεῖομι, imprecations (on himself) he-spoke thus: If indeed I-advice

ἔδοξει μοι εἶναι βέλτιστα, πολλά κἀγαθά (you), what seems to-me to-be best, 'may much even-good

γένοιτο μοι: δὲ εἰ μὴ, τάναντια. Γὰρ αὐτὴ happen to-me; but if not, the-contrary. For that
εὐμοῦλή ἡ λεγομένη εἰναι ἱερά δοξεῖ μοι
counsel which is-said to-be sacred seems to-me
παρεῖναι: γὰρ νῦν μὲν δὴ, ἂν μὲν φανῦ
to-be-present; for now indeed —, if indeed I-shall-appear (as)
εὐμοῦλεύσας εὖ, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ ἔπαι-
having-advised (you) well, you-will-be many — ap-
νοῦντες μὲν ὃ ἂν κακῶς, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ κατα-
plauding me; but if ill, you-will-be many — exe-
ρόμενοι. Οὖν μὲν οἰον ὅτι έξομεν πολὺ
crating (me). Therefore indeed I-know that we-shall-have much
πλείω πράγματα, ἐὰν κομίζησοδε κατὰ θάλατταν:
more trouble, if you-are-conveyed by
γὰρ δεῖσαι ἴμασ πορίσειν τὰ πλοία.
for it-will-be-necessary (that) we furnish the ships;
δὲ ἂν στέλλῃς κατὰ γῆν, δεῖσαι ἰμάσ.
but if you-are-sent by land, it-will-be-necessary (that) you
εἰναι τοὺς μαχομένους. Ὄμως δὲ
be — (those) fighting. However indeed (the things)
ἀ γιγνώσκω λεκτέα: γὰρ εἰμι ἐμπείρος καὶ
which I-know are-to-be-spoken; for I-am well-acquainted both
τῆς χώρας τῶν Παφλαγών καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως.
with the country of the Paphlagonians and — (their)
ποιεῖσθαι·
with power.
Γὰρ ἔξει ἀμφότερα, καὶ κάλλιστα πεδία καὶ
For it-has both, as-well most-beautiful plains as
υψιλότατα ὅρη. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εἶδος
most-high mountains. For first indeed I-know exactly
τῆς εἰσδολὴν ἢ ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·
the entrance by-which (it will be a) necessity (for you) to-make
γὰρ ἐστίν οὐ ἄλλη ἡ ἡ
(your entrance); for there-is not by-another than (that) by-which
τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὅρους καὶ ἔκάτερα τῆς ὅροῦ
the peaks of the mountain on each (side) of the road
ἔστων ὑψηλά, κατέχοντες καὶ καλῶν ὀλύνω
are high, possessing which even (a) very few
ἀν δύναιντο κρατεῖν· 
de κατεχομένων τούτων,
might be-able to-be-superior (to you); but having-pre-occupied this,
οὐδὲ πάντες οἱ ἀνδροποι ἄν δύναιντ' 
not—even all the men (in the world) might be-able

ἄν δειξεῖν· δὲ καὶ ἄν δείξαμι ταῦτα.
that they) might pass-through; and also I could 'show

εἰ βούλοισθε εὐπέμεναι μοι τῦν. Ἐπείτη δὲ if you-desire to-send-with me any-one. Then indeed

εἰδα καὶ πεδία δύνα, καὶ ἱππείαν, ἢν οἱ βάρ-
I-know even (of) plains being, and cavalry, which the bar-

θαροὶ αὐτοὶ νομίζοσι εἶναι κρείττω ἀπάσης τῆς barians themselves consider to-be superior (to) all the

ἱππείας βασιλεως. Καὶ νῦν οὕτω cavalry 'of (the) 'king. And now (lately) these (Paphla-

οἷ παρεγένοντο 
'of the)

βασιλεια. κα-
gonians) 'did not 'present (themselves) 'to (the) 'king call-

λοῦντι, ἀλλὰ διὰ ἄρχων αὐτῶν φρονεῖ μειζόν. ing-on (others), but the ruler of-them thinks greater

Δὲ εἰ καὶ δυνὴσετε τε κλέψαι (of himself, than to obey). And if also you-were-able indeed to-steal

tὰ ὄρη, ἡ λαβόντες φθάσαι, (over) the mountains, or having-taken-possession to-have-anticipated (the

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μαχιμένοι κρατήσαι τῇ enemy), and in the plain fighting to-have-conquered —

τοὺς ἑπτὰ τόπων καὶ πλείων ἡ ἄδεξα the cavalry of-these (people) and more than twelve

μυριάδες πεζῶν ἦκετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ten-thousands [120,000] of-infantry, you-will-come to the

ποταμοῖς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμόδοντα, εἰς rivers, first indeed to-the Therdon, (the) breadth

tριῶν πλεύρων, ἐν οἷαι χαλεπῶν (being) three plothra, [300 feet] which I-think difficult:

dιαβαίνειν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὑπνον ἐνοῦ to-cross, especially — also there-being indeed (a) numerous

πολεμίων ἐμπροσθέν, δὲ πολλῶν ἐπομένων enemy before (you), and many following

ὁποσθέν· δεύτερον δ' Ἰριν, ἰδαίτερος τρί-

behind; second — (the) Iris, likewise three-
τιθέμενον. δὲ τρίτον Ἄλων, οὐ μεῖον
plethra; [300 feet.] and third (the) Halys, not less (than)
δυοῖν σταδίων, ὅν ἂν οὗ δύνασθε διαβῆκαι
two stadia, which you may not be able to pass
ἀνευ πλοίων. δὲ τις ἐστιν ὁ παρέχων πλοία;
without boats; but what one will there — providing boats?
ὡς δ' αὐτὸς καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἅβατος, ἕφ' ὅν
as indeed likewise even the Parthenius (is) impassable, at which
ἀν ἔλθωτε, εἰ διαβαίνετε τὸν Ἄλων. Ἐγὼ
you may 'arrive, if you-cross-over the Halys. I
οὖν μὲν νομίζω τὴν πορείαν εἶναι οὐ χαλεπὴν
therefore indeed consider the route to-be not difficult
ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ παντάπανιν ἐδόνατον. Δὲ ἂν
(only) for-you, but altogether impassable. But if
πλένετε, ἐστὶν εἶναι δὲ μὲν παραπλεύσασθαι
you-sail, it-is (in-your-power) from-hence indeed to-coast-along
eἰς Σινώπην, ἐξ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡρακλείαν. ἐξ
to Sinope, from Sinope indeed to Heracleia; from
Ἡρακλείας δὲ ἀπορία οὕτω πεζῇ οὕτω
Heracleia indeed (the) passage (may be) either by-hand or
κατὰ θάλασσαν. γὰρ ἐστὶν καὶ πολλὰ πλοία ἐν
by sea; for there-are even many vessels in
Ἡρακλεία.

"Επει δὲ ἔλεξε ταῦτα, οἱ ἱππότενον
When indeed he-had-said this, — (some) suspected (that)
λέγειν ἑνεκα φίλιας τῆς Κορίλα, (γὰρ ἦν
he-said (it) by-reason-of-friendship for — Corylas, (for he-was
καὶ πρόξενος αὐτῶ,) δὲ καὶ οἱ
even (the) public-guest-friend to-him,) and also — (others) (suspected
ὡς ληφόμενοι δόρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ξυμβού-
ὡς (that) he-said (so) by-reason
ξῆν' δὲ οἱ καὶ ἱππότενον λέγειν ἑνεκα
of this, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil
σει; and — (others) again suspected (that) he-said (so) by-reason
τοῦτον, ὡς μὴ ἴστες πεζῇ ἐργάζοντο τῷ καθὸν
of this, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil
τήν χώραν Σινοπεών. Δ’ οὖν οἱ Ἑλληνες
to-the country 'of (the) Sinopeans. But — the Greeks
ἐνηφίσαντο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν κατὰ θάλασσαν.
voted to-make the journey by sea.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἐξενοφόν εἶπεν: ‘Ω Σινοπεῖς,
After these (things) Xenophon said: O Sinopeans,
oἱ ἄνδρες μὲν ἤρθανται πορείαν, ἂν ἤμεις ἥμουν-
the men indeed have-chosen (the) route, which you ad-
λεύετε· δὲ ἔχει οὕτως·
vise; and it-has (itself) thus; [and we will sail on these com-
εἰ μὲν μέλλεις ἔσοδαι πλοῖα ἵκα
dictions;) if indeed it-is-intended (that) there-will-be ships sufficient
ἀριθμῷ, δὲ μὴ ἐνα καταλεῖπεσθαι ἐν γάδε, in-number, so-as (that) not one be-left here,
ἐν μὴ ἕνα καταλεῖπεσθαι, δὲ οἱ πλεῦσθαι, δὲν indeed are-to-be-left, but — (others) to-sail, 'we may
ἐν μὴ υπαίθριον εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. Γὰρ γυγνύσχομεν,
not 'embark on (board) the ships. For we-know,
οἶν ὁποιοῦ μὲν ἄν πράττειν ἄν δυναίμεθα
that, where indeed 'we may 'be-the-strongest 'we may be-
καὶ σάκεσθαι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ εἰστήθεια.
both to-save (ourselves), and to-have — provisions;
δὲ εἰ που νηρίσθησθαι ἔττος
but if any-where | we-shall-be-taken worse [shall be found weaker]
τῶν πολεμίων, εὐθηλον δὴ, δὴ
(than) — (our) enemies, (it is) very-evident indeed, that
ἐσόμεθα ἐν χώρα ἀνδραπόδων. Οἱ πρέσβεις
we-will-be in (the) place of-slaves. The ambassadors
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἔκελενον πείματεν
hearing these (things) requested (them) to-send
πρέσβεις. Καὶ πέμποντοι Καλλίμαχον
ambassadors (to Sinope). And they-sent Callimachus (the)
Αρκάδα, καὶ Αρίστων, Αθηναίον, καὶ Σαμώ.
Ardadian, and Ariston (the) Athenian, and Samo-
λαν Ἀχαίον. Καὶ οἱ μὲν όχοντο.
Is (the) Achæan. And — (they) indeed departed.

'Εν δὲ τοῦτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφόντης,
During indeed this (same) — time (it seemed) to-Xenophon,
ὁρῶντι μὲν πολλοὺς ὑπάλλας τῶν Ἐλλήνων,
seeing indeed (the) many heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,
dὲ καὶ ὁρῶντι πολλοὺς πελαταστάς, καὶ τοκῶν,
and also seeing many targeteers, and archers,
καὶ σφενδόντας, καὶ ἵππες δὲ, καὶ μάλα ἱπποὺς
and cavalry also, and very efficient
ὅρις διὰ τὴν τριβήν, ὄντας δὲ ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,
now through — exercise, being indeed in — Pontus,
ἐνδὰ τοσαῦτη δύναμις ἂν οὐκ παρεσκευάση ἀπ᾿ where such (a) force could not have-been-prepared from
ολίγων χρημάτων,
small things-and-means, ’it (therefore) ’seemed to-be good
αὐτῷ προζητῆσαι καὶ χῶραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ to-him to-have-added-yet-more both territory and power to —
Ἐλλάδι, κατοικίσασθα γενν.
Greece, having-provided (a) city (there). And it-seemed
αὐτῷ ἂν γενέσθαι μεγάλης, καταλογιζόμενος to-him (that it) might become great, considering
τε τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περιων— not-only the multitude-of-themselves, but-also — (those) inhabiting-
καύντας τὸν Πόντον.
around the Pontus (unskilled in war). And about this
ἐδύτη, πρὶν εἰπεῖν τινι τῶν στρατιώτων,
h-sacrificed, (and) before he-spoke to-any-of-the soldiers,
χαλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρακίστην, τὸν
having-called-in Silanus the Ambracian, — (who)
γενόμενον τὸν μάντιν Κύρου. ’Ο δὲ Σιλανός,
gave the auger of-Cyrus. — But Silanus
δεδιώκει μὴ ταῖνα γένηται, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ
having-feared lest this might-happen, and the army
καταμείνη ποὺ, ἔξφερε ἄλγον εἰς τῇ
might-remain some-where (here), he-brings word to the
στράτευμα, δὴ Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τὴν στρατιὰν
army, that Xenophon desired the army
καταμείναι, καὶ οἰκίσαι πόλιν, καὶ περι-
to Remain, and to-build (a) city, and (thereby) to
ποιῆσαι δύναμιν ἐαυτῷ. Δ’ ὁ
quire (a) name and power for-himself. But —
Σιλανὸς αὐτὸς ἐδούλευε ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
Silenus himself desired to-arrive in — Greece
δὴ τάχειστα, γὰρ διεσεότει τρις;
as quick as-possible; for he-had-saved (the) three-
χιλίων δαρειοῦς, οὗς ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου, δὲ τὸ
thousand daries, which he-received from Cyrus, when
θυμέων ἠλθενες; τὰς δέκα ὑμέρας
sacrificing he-told (the) 'truth (respecting) the ten days
Κύρω. Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἔπει ἠκούσαν,
to-Cyprus. But (as respects) the soldiers, when they-heard
ἐδόξησε μὲν τοὺς εἰναι βέλτιστον καταμείναι,
(this), it-seemed indeed to — (some) to-be the-best to-remain,
δὲ τοὺς πολλοῖς ὄν. Δὲ Τιμασίων
but — (others) the-most (numerous) not (to remain). But Timasioi
ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Θόραξ ὁ Βοώτιος λέγουσι
the Dardanean and Thorax the Boetian told
τῶν Ἡρακλεώτων παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεώτων
some merchants being-present-there of-the Heracleans
καὶ Σινοπέων, δὴ εἰ μὴ ἐκτορισθῆσι
and 'of (the) 'Sinopeans, that, if they—do not procure
μισθῶν τῇ στρατιᾷ, δέχεται εἰςεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
pay for the army, so-as to-have — provisions (while)
ἐξπλεόντας, δὴ τοσαυτὴ δύναμιν κυρια-
sailing-out (on their voyage), that so-large (a) force will-be-
δυναύτες μεῖναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,
in-danger to-remain in — Pontus [there will be danger of so
Γὰρ Ξενοφῶν βου-
large a force remaining in Pontus]. For (said they) Xenophon in-
468

The Anabasis of Xenophon.

λέντεια, καὶ παραταλεὶ ᾦμᾶς, ἐπειδὰν τὰ πλοῖα
planning (thus), and requests us, when the vessels
ἐλθῃ, εἰπεῖν τότε ἔξαιρην τῇ στρατὶático. Ἀνδρέας,
may-come, to-say then exairen the army; Men,

νῦν μὲν ὁρῶμεν ἦμᾶς δύνας ἄπόρους καὶ

we now indeed perceive you being at-a-loss (how) even
ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλω ἐχειν τὰ ἐπανῆδεα, καὶ ὡς
in the voyage-homeward to-have — provisions, and how
ἀπελθόντας οἰκαδε ἀνήσατι τοὺς οἰχοι—
having-departed home to-have-benefitted any (of) — (those) at-home;
eἰ δὲ βούλεσθε ἐκλέγαμενοι τῆς οἰκουμένης
if indeed you-desire (it), having-selected — (an) inhabited
χώρας, κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν Πόντον ὅτι ἂν
place, in (a) 'circle round the Pontus whenever you may
βούλεσθε, κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἔδελοντα,
wish, to-take-possession-of (it), and — (those) indeed wishing
ἀπειραὶ οἰκαδε, δὲ τὸν ἔδελοντα μὲνειν
(lit), to-depart home, but — (those) wishing (lit) to-remain
αὐτοῦ, πλοία δὲ πάρεσιν ἦμῖν, δεῦτε, ὅτη
here, ships indeed are-ready (here) for-you, so-that, when you
ἀν βούλησθε, ἄν ἔξαιρην ἐπιτρέσοιτε.
may wish, you may suddenly fall-on (such place).

Οἱ ἐμποροὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπῆγγελλον
The merchants hearing these (things), announced
τὰς πόλεις: δὲ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς
(them) to-the cities; and Timasion the Dardanian
ἐνυπεμψε αὐτοῖς Εὐρύμαχον τε τὸν Δαρδανέα
sent-with him Eurymachus also — (a) Dardanian
καὶ Θόραξ τὸν Βοῦτιον, ἔροῦσας τὰ αὐτὰ
and Thorax the Boiotian, saying the self
tαῦτα Σινοπείς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλείται,
same (things). (The) Sinopeans and also (the) Heracleans,
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμα-
hearing these (things), sent to — Timas-
σίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι, λαβόντα χρήματα,
sion and requested him, having-received money,
προστατευόσαι, ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ
to-place-himself-at-the-head (of bringing it about), that the army
ἐκπλεύσῃ. Ὡ δὲ ἄσμενος ἄξιος,
would-sail-out (of the Euxine). — (He) indeed willingly listening
ἐν ξυλλόγῳ, ὄντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
to this), | (and) in (an) assembly, being the soldiers,

[and in an assembly of the soldiers,] spoke thus: It becomes (us)
oὐ, ὁ ἄνδρες, προσέχειν τῇ μονῇ, οὐδὲ
not, 0 men, to-bend (our minds) on — remaining, nor
ποιεῖσθαι οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος τῆς
to-make (no) (any) (country) of more-value (than) —
Ελλάδος. Ἀκοῦ ὁ δὲ τίνας θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
Greece. I-hear indeed (that) some are-sacrificing about this
οὐδὲ λέγοντας ἰμίν. Δὲ ἵσπροχονμαί ἰμίν,
(and) not-even mentioning (it) to-you. And I-promise you,
ἀν ἐκπλήσσῃ, παρῆξεν ἐκάστῳ κυβικῆν
if. you-set-sail, to-furnish-hereafter to-each-of-you (a) cysicene
μυσθοφόραν τοὺς θηνός, ἀπὸ
(about five dollars) as-pay — (per) month, (counting) from

νομηνίας... καὶ ὧν ἰμάς εἰς τὴν
(the) beginning-of-the-month; and I-will-lead you to
Τρωάδα, ἐνδεικνύφοι μεν ἡμῖν,
Troya, whose even I-am (an) exile, and — my
πόλις ἵππαρχει ἵμιν γὰρ
city will-send you; for they (my countrymen) 'will willingly
δέχονται με. Δὲ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς ἰγκομαί,
receive me. And I myself will-conduct (you to places),
ἐνδεικνύφοι πολλὰς χρήματα. Εἰμὶ δὲ ἐμῷ
where you-will-get much riches. I-am indeed well-

πειρότος τῆς Ἀιολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας, καὶ τῆς
acquainted-with — Εσολία and — Phrygia, and —
Τρωάδος, καὶ πᾶσα ἡ τῆς Αρχῆς τῆς Φαρ
Troya, and all the government [satrapy] (of) — Phyr-
ναβάδον, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐξειδεν,
[the indeed through the to-be hence, [partly as ba-
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

δὲ τὰ διὰ τὸ ἐνεστρα-
ing a native of that place), and — (partly) through | the to-make-cam-
tεῖοςαι ἐν αὐτῷ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ paings-with [having served with] in that (place) with Clearchus
te καὶ Δερκυλίδα.
and also Dercyllidas.

Αἰθις δὲ Θόραξ ὁ Βοιωτιος, δς ἀεὶ ἐμάχετο Afterwards indeed Thorax the Boeotian, who always contended
Εὐνοφόντι περὶ στρατηγίας, ἀναστάς, ἐφι, with-Xenophon about (the) command-of-the-army, having-stood-up, said,
el ἐξέλθουεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, Χερρόντσου if they-should-depart from the Pontus, (that the) Chersonese
ἐσεῦθαι αἰτοῖς, χρῶν καλὴν καὶ will-be (the place) for-them, (for that the) country (is) fine and
eἰδαίμονα, ὅστε τῷ βουλομένῳ rich, so-that (it will be) to — (him) wishing-it (in his power)
ἐνοικεῖν, δὲ τῷ μὴ βουλομένῳ to-dwell-therein, but to — (him) not wishing-it (it will be in his
ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. Δὲ εἶναι γελοῖον, οὐσὶν power) to-depart home. And (that) it-was ridiculous, there-being
ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου χώρας, in — Greece much and excellent land,
μαστεύειν ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων. Δ synonym, ἐφι, to-seek-for-it in the (country) of-barbarians. But until, said-he,
ἀν γένησε ἐκεῖ, κἀγὼ, καθάπερ Τιμαίοιον, 'you may 'get there, both-I, as-well-as Timasion,
τιμαίοις ὁμιὰν τὴν μυσθοφορίαν. Δὲ ἐλέγει promise you — pay. And he-said
ταῦτα, εἰδὼς Τιμαίοιον καὶ οἱ Ἡρακλεώται καὶ this, having-heard from-Timasion what the Heracleans and
οἱ Σινώπειος ὁπισχυοῦντο δόστε ἐκπλεῖν. Δὲ δ the Sinopeans had-promised (it) provided (that) they-set-sail. But —
Ἐνοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. Δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ Xenophon during this was-silent. But Phileius and
Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναστὰς ἔλεγον, ὡς εἰν ἔδινον Lycon the Achaeans having-stood-up said, that it-was insufferable
μὲν Ἑυνοφῶντα ἰδίᾳ τε πείθειν
indeed (that) Xenophon in-private 'should not-only' persuade (people)
καταμένειν, καὶ θύσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς, μὴ
to-stay, but-also to-sacrifice about — (their) stay, not
κοινοῦμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινὸν
having-communicated to-the army, and in the public
ἀγορεύειν μεδὲν περὶ τούτων.
to-declare nothing about these (things). So-that — Xenophon
φῶν ἱναγκάζῃ ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε
was-obliged to-stand-up and to-speak thus:
Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυμαί, ὡς μὲν ὄρατε, ὑπὸσα
I, 0 men, sacrifice, as indeed you-see, as-well-as
δύναμιν, καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτόν, ὡς
I-can, both for you and for myself, so-in-order-that
τοιγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῦν καὶ πράττων
I-happen both speaking and thinking and doing [in order
ταῦτα ὑποίᾳ μέλ-
that I may speak, and think and do] those (things) such-as it-may-be-
λεί ἐσθοῦσα κάλλιστα καὶ ἀριστά τε ἵμιν καὶ
about to-be the-most-honourable and best not-only for-you but-also
ἐμοί. Καὶ νῦν ἐδυνῆνεν περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου,
for-me. And now I-was-sacrificing about this same (thing),
eἰ εἰη ἄμεινον ἀρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς
(namely) whether it-would-be better to-begin to-speak to
ἵμας καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων,
you and to-act respecting these (things), or altogether
μὴ δὲ ἀπτεθαν τοῦ πράγματος. Δὲ Σιλανὸς ὦ
not to-touch the affair. And Silanus the
μᾶντις ἄπεκρίνατο μοι τὸ
augur determined for-me — (what was of the) greatest
μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ εἰναι καλὰ. (γὰρ
indeed, (that) the victims were favourable; (for
ηδὲ καὶ ἐμὲ δῦτα οὐκ ἀπειρον
be-knew also (that) I was not unskilled (in such things)
διὰ τὸ ἄει παρεῖναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς.
by-reason-of — (my) always being-present at-the sacrifices;) and
ἐλέει ὅτι φαίνετο ἐν τοῖς λεπτοῖς τις δόλος
said that there-appeared in the victims (as if) some fraud
καὶ ἐπιθυμή ἐμοὶ, ὡς ἄρα γεγυνώσκων,
and plotting (was agitating) against-me, as in-truth knowing
ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεθυμεῖν διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ἦμᾶς.
that he was-plotting to-calamniate me to you.

Γὰρ ἐξῆγενε χρόνον λόγον, ὡς ἤγερα διανοίμεν
For he-brought-out the report, that I already intended
πράττεν ταῦτα, οὕτως πείσας ἦμᾶς.
to-do these (things), not having-persuaded you (to give

Δὲ ἤγερ, εἰ μὲν ἔστω ἦμᾶς ἀποστολητας,
your consent). And I, if indeed I-saw you destitute
τοῦτο ἄν ἔσκοπον ἔφο βοῦ
(and in perplexity), for-that 'I would 'have-looked-out from which 'it

ἄν γενοιτο, οὗτε ἦμᾶς λαβόντας πόλιν, ποῦ
might 'happen, that you having-taken (a) city, — (those)

μὴν βουλόμενον,
indeed desiring (it), (might) set-sail now, — (those)

ἐπεὶ καθ' ὑπὲρτ]
indeed not desiring (it), (might do so) when they-might-have-

σαυτῷ ἱκανά, οὗτε ἥφθησαί τι τοὺς οἰκεῖος
acquired sufficient, so-as to-assist somewhat the families

ἐαυτοῦ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ὥρω Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινω-ποιῶν
of-themselves. But when I-see (the) Hellenes and (the) Sino-

πεῖς πέμποντας τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἦμῖν, οὗτε
pegs sending — vessels even to-you, so-as (that)

ἐπιπλεῖν, καὶ ἄνδρας ἵσσανομένους ἦμῖν μισθόν
you-may-set-sail, and men promising you pay

ἀπὸ νομιμίας, δοκεὶ μοι εἶναι καλῶν
from (the) beginning-of-the-month, it-seems to-me to-be (an) excellent

συγκομένους ἔνθα βουλόμενα λαμβάνειν
(thing that) we-being-saved to-where we-wish (to be) to-receive

μισθόν τῆς πορείας καὶ τε αὐτὸς παρ-παί
money 'for (making) 'the journey; and not-only myself do-

ομαι ἐκεῖνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὁπόδοι προς-
intention, but-also such-as have-
πρὸς ἐμε, λέγοντες, ὡς χρῆ πράττειν come-forward to me, saying, that it-is-necessary to-do
ταῦτα, φημι χρῆναι ἀνα-these (things), I-say (to them also) (that) it-is-necessary to-
παύσασθαι. Γὰρ οὕτω γρανώσασθαι ἀντες desist (from them). For thus I-know: being
πολλοὶ ὁμοί, ὡστε νῦν, ᾧν δοξεῖτε μοι καὶ many together, as now, 'you may seem to-me even
eἶναι ἐντιμοί, καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἑπτῆδεια· (γὰρ ἐστὶν to-be honoured, and to-have — provisions; (for it-is
ἐν τῷ κρατεῖν καὶ τὸ in the to-have-power [for it belongs to those having power] even —
λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἐπτῶν;) δὲ ἀν διασπασ-
to-take the (things) of-the weaker;) but — being-torn-
θέντες, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως γενομένης into-pieces, and — (your) force having-become (divided into)
κατὰ μικρὰ, ἀν οὕτε δύνασθε λαμβάνειν — small (parties), 'you might neither 'be-able to-procure
τροφὴν, οὐτ' ἀν ἀπαλλάξαυτε χαίροντες. Δοξεῖ subsistence, nor might you-depart rejoicing. It-seems
οὖν μοι ἀπερ ὑμῖν, ἔκπω therefore to-me (good) which (is good) for-you, (that) 'we (ought) 'to-
ῥεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· καὶ ἔαν τις μείνῃ depart for — Greece; and if any-one remains
ἡ ληφθῇ ἄπολιτῶν τινα, πρὶν τὸ πᾶν or be-caught 'leaving any-one 'behind, before (that) the whole
στράτευμα εἶναι ἐν ἁσφαλεί αὐτὸν κρίνεσθαι army is in safety (that) he is-to-be-judged
ὡς ἁδικοῦντα. Καὶ ἄτο, ἐφ' ἑατα δοξεῖ as committing-a-crime. And to-whom, said-he these (things) seem
ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα Ἄπαντες (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All
ἀνέτειναν.
held-up (their hands).
'Ὁ Σιλανὸς δὲ ἔθη, καὶ ἐπεχείρησε λέγειν,
— Silanus indeed cried-out, and attempted to-speak
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ος ειη δικαιον τον βουλδμενον
(in order to show), that it-might-be lawful for — (those) desiring
απιναι. Oi στρατωται δε ουξ ινειχοντο,
(it) to-depart. The soldiers however 'did not tolerate
αλλ’ ιπειλον αυτω, δει ει ληφονται ιποδι-
(it) but threatened him, that if they-caught (him) running-
δρασκοντα, επιδησουεν την δικην.
away, | they-would 'put the law 'on (him), [they would

Εντευδεν, επει οι Ηρακλεοται έγνωσαν,
'Enteouda, επει οι Ηρακλεοται έγνωσαν, punish him]. Therupon, when the Heracleans knew,
δει δεδομενον ειη εκπλειν, και Χενοφων
that it-had-been-determined to-set-sail, and (that) Xenophon
αυτος επετραις ειη, πέμπονι μεν τα πλοια,
himself had-put-it-to-vote, sent indeed the ships,
δε τα κρηματα α επισχοντο Τιμασιων
but (as respects) the money which they-promised to Timasion
και Θωρακε της μισοδοφωρίας ελεισθαι
and Thorax (as) the pay (of the soldiers) they-had-
νο ήσαν. 'Ενταυθα δε οι ιπεσχημενοι
νο ήσαν. 'Entautha de oi hipeskhimenoi falsified (their word). Then indeed — (those) having-promised
της μισοδοφωρίας επετρησχημενοι ήσαν και
the pay were-astounded and
εκδειχοσαν την στρατιαν. Ουτοι ουν παραλι
εκδειχοσαν την στρατιαν. Ουτοι ουν παραλι feared the army. These therefore taking-with
βοντες και τοις άλλοις στρατηγοις, οις άνεχοι-
βοντες και τοις αllois strathegois, ois anexoi-
(them) also the other generals, to-whom they-com-
νοντο, δε προδεν εποιατον, (δε
νοντο, δε προδεν εποιατον, (de
municated, what 'they' before (this) 'attempted-to-bring-about, (and
νον ταντες, πλην Νέων του 'Ασιναιον,
νον ταντες, πλην Neos tou 'Asinaiou,
they were all (of them), except Neon the Asinan,
ος ιπεστρατηγε Χειρισοφω, δε Χειρισοφως ουτω
ος ipestrahtigei Cheirisophus, de Cheirisophos ouuto
who commanded-under Cheirisophus, but Cheirisophus 'was not-yet
παρην,) ερχουνται προς Χενοφωντα, και λεγουσιν,
'present,) they-went to Xenophon, and said,
δει μεταμελοι αυτοις, και δοκοι
δεi metamelois autois, kai dokoi
that it-repented them (for what had been done), and it-might-seem
Εἶναι κράτιστον πλείν ἐῖς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεί ἐστὶν to-be the-best to-sail to (the) Phasis, when there-were πλοῖα, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν χώραν Φασίαν ὅν vessels, and to-have-taken the country ὅν Πνασίαν (δέ νῦνος Αἰττον ἐτύγχανε βασιλείων αὐτῶν). (for (a) grandson of Ἀιττος happened to-be-reigning-over them).

Δὲ Ἑνοφὼν ἀπεδρήσατο, διὶ ἂν εἶποι οἶδὲν But Xenophon replied, that ᾧ he would ἢ say nothing τούτων εἰς τὴν στρατιὰν· δὲ ἵμιες ἐξολεξαντες, of-this to the army; but you assembling

ἐφὶ, εἰ θυλεύσῃ, λέγετε. (them), said he, if you-wish, tell

(them about the affair)

'Ενταῦθα Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἀποδείχθη ταῖς Then Timasion the Dardanian offered (the)

gνώμην, οὐκ ἐκχειρισάειν, ἀλλὰ opinion, (that) they-ought not to-call-a-council (of all), but πρῶτον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς πειράσθαι πείδειν first the captains (ought) to-endavour to-persuade ἐκαστὸν αὐτῶν. Καὶ ἀπελθοῦντες | each (of the men) of-himself [his own men]. And departing ἐποίουν ταῦτα.

they-did these (things).

CHAPTER VII.

Οἱ στρατιῶται οὖν ἀνεπίθυμτο ταῦτα The soldiers therefore heard (that) these (things) πραττόμενα. Καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὁς Ἑνοφὼν, were-doing. And — Neon tells (them), that Χενοφόν, ἀναπεπεικοῦσας τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, διανοεῖται, having-persuaded the other generals, was-deliberating, ἔξαπατήσας, ἀγεὶν πάλιν τοὺς στρατιώτας deceiving (them), to-lead back-again the soldiers
eis Φάσιν. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
to (the) Phasis. But the soldiers hearing (this)
καλετῶς ἐφεροῦν καὶ ἐγίγνετο ἡξίλιογοι,
were greatly excited, and there were assemblages,
καὶ κύκλοι ἐνιστάντο, καὶ ἦσαν μάλα φοβεροὶ,
and circles were-formed, and they were much to-be-feared,
μὴ ποιήσειαν ὁδα καὶ ἐποίησαν τοὺς κήρυκας
lest they might do, as they even had-done to the heralds
Κόλχων καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους γὰρ
Colchians and the superintendents of the markets; for
δὲν μὴ κατέφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, κατε-
"Ere, did not take refuge in the sea,
ἀσ-—many—as did not—take—refuge in the sea,
λευκοίσαν. "Επει δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἃθάνετο,
destroyed. When however Xenophon perceived (these)
ἐδοξεῖν αὐτῶ ὡς τάχιστα ἐνυπ- things), it seemed (best) to him "as speedily "as possible to call-
γαγεῖν ἀγοράν αὐτῶν,
together (an) assembly of them (the soldiers), and not to have permitted
καὶ μὴ ἔσας
these things)
καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν
them) to assemble of their own accord; and he ordered the
κήρυκα ἐνναγεῖν ἀγοράν. Δ’ οἰ ἐπει
herald to collect together (a) meeting. But — (they) when
ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὖ μὲν
they-heard (the proclamation) of the herald, ran together even
μᾶλα ἐστοίμως. "Ενταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὖ μὲν
very speedily. Then Xenophon "did not indeed
κατηγορεῖ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι ἔλθον πρὸς αὐτῶν,
the generals, that they came to him,
δὲ λέγει ὅτι
but speaks thus:
"Ακούω, ὦ ἄνδρες, τινὰ διαβάλλειν ἐμὲ ὡς
I hear, O men, (that) some-one accuses me that
ἐγὼ ἔρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς
I namely deceiving you intend to lead (you) to (the)
Φάσιν. "Ακούσατε μοι οὖν πρὸς θεῶν.
Phasis. "Hear me therefore for (the sake) of the gods;
καὶ εἰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἁδικεῖν, οὗ χρῆναι
καὶ εἰπομε νῦν φαίνων ἁδικεῖν, οὐχ ἁπὰκαί ἐμὴ
καὶ οἱ διαβάλλοντες ἐμὲ
[before I suffer punishment;] but (if) — (those) calumniating me
ἀν. φαίνωνται τιμή σε ἁδικεῖν, χρῆσε ἄντοις οὕτως
may appear to-you to-do-wrong, treat them so
οὔπερ ἄξιον. Ἄμεις δὲ δὴ ποιεῖν ἱστεῖν, ἐφη, ὑδει
as is-fitting. You indeed certainly know, said-he, whence
ἡλιος ἀνίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύσται, καὶ ὅτι,
(the) sun rises, and where it-sets, and to-whom,
εἰις τοὺς παρθένους, τοῦμαλλιν πρὸς
(to go) to the barbarians, (on) the-contrary (he must go) to (the)
ἐκιν. ἦστιν οὖν δὲ γὰρ ἐὰν γίναιτο ἑξαπατη
east. Is-there therefore any-one (that) might be-able so-to-
τῆσαυ ὑμᾶς τοῦτο, ὡς ἡλιος,
deceive you in-this, as (to make you believe that the) sun,
ἐνδέιν μὲν ἀνίσχει, δὲ δύσται ἐνταῦθα, δὲ
there-where indeed it-was, it also 'sets there, and
ἐνδα δύσται, δ᾽ ἀνίσχει ἐντεῦθεν; Ἀλλὰ μὲν
where it-sets, it also 'rises there? But indeed
καὶ τοῦτο γε ἐπιστασθε, ὅτι βορέας μὲν
even this at-least know, that (the) north-wind 'will indeed
φέρει ἐξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
carry (us) out of the Pontus (Euxinus) towards — Greece,
ἐς νότοις εἰσο εἰς Φασιν, καὶ κλέγετε,
but (the) south-wind inwards towards (the) Phasis, and you-say,
ἐταν βορρᾶς πνεύς ὡς εἰσιν καλοὶ πλοῖοι εἰς
when (the) north-wind may-blow, that it-is fair sailing for
τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτο οὖν ὅπως ἔστιν,
— Greece. In-this therefore how is-it (possible), any-one
ΤΗΝ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΟΣ ΟΥ ΧΕΝΟΦΟΝ.

δι' ἔξαπατησαί ῥως, ὡςτε ἐμβαίνειν, ὅποταν
could deceive you, so as to embark, when (the)

νότος. πυγή; Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμβιβῶ
south-wind may-blow? But perhaps (you will say that) I shall—put

ὀποταν ἦ γαλήνη. Ἔγω
(on-board when there-may-be (a) calm. 'Will I

οἴκοιον μὲν πλεύσομαι ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ, δὲ ἰμεῖς ἐν
not-therefore indeed 'sail in one ship, but you in

ἐκατόν τοιλάχιστον; Πῶς οὖν ἃν ἐγὼ ἦ
(a hundred (at) the least? How therefore could I either

βιασώμην ῥως πλεῖν ἐν ἐνὶ ἐμοί, μὴ βουλο-
force you to-sail with me, (you) not being-

μένους, ἦ ἔξαπατήσας ἄγομι. Δὲ οὐδὲν
willing, or deceiving lead (you away). But | I-makes

[ I will suppose] (that) you having—been-deceived and having-

γονητευδέντας ὑπ' ἐμοὶ ἰχθεῖν εἰς Φάσιν καὶ
been-tricked by me to—come to (the) Phasis; and

ὗτον ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν
from the vessels) to the land;

ἐνδιώκεις ὅτι ἐστὶ οἴχ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.
you—will certainly 'know, that you-are not in — Greece.

Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ ἔξαπατήσας ἔσομαι εἰς, δὲ
And I indeed who have—been-deceiving (you) will—be (but) one, but

ἵμεις οἱ ἔξαπατησμένοι ἐχοντες ἐγγὺς μυρίων
who have—been-deceived having near ten-thousand

ὅπλα. Πῶς οὖν ἃν εἰς ἄνθρωπον
(men under) arms. | How therefore could one man more

δοκῇ δίκην,
given justice, [how could one man more effectually have brought punish-

ἡ βουλευόμενος ωὔτω τε περὶ
mind on himself,) than (for) planning thus not-only about

ἐντού καί ἰμῶν; Ἀλλ' οὗτοι εἰσίν ὁι λόγοι
himself but—also (about) you? But these are the words

ἀνδρῶν καί ἑλίσθων κάμοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ
of-men even foolish 'and envying 'me, because I
BOOK V. — CHAPTER VII.

τιμώμαι ἐφ' ἰμῶν. Καίτω οὔ δικαιῶς γ' ἂν am-honoured by you. Although not justly at-least —
φησονεῖν μοι γὰρ ἐγὼ ἣ κολύω τίνα λέγειν,
do-they-annoy me; for 'do I either 'prevent any-one to-speak,
eἰ τις δύναται τι ἀγαθὸν ἐν ἰμῖν, if any-one is-able (to say) any-thing good (or advantageous) for you,
ἡ μάχεσθαι, εἰ τις ἐξέλετι, τε ὑπὲρ ἰμῶν καὶ or to-fight, if any-one wishes, not-only for you but also
ἵνα τοῦ ἐγγραφοῦντα περὶ τῆς ἴμητέρας (for) himself, or to-watch for — your
ἀφαλείας ἐπιμελημένον; Γὰρ τι, ἰμῶν safety (if) caring (to do so)? For (in) what, you
aιρομένων ἀρχοντάς, εἰμὶ ἐγὼ ἐμποδῶν τινι; choosing officers, am I (a) hindrance to-any-one?
παρίσμι, ἄρχεται, μόνον φαινέσθω I-yield (to him), let (him) 'command; alone let (him) appear
ποιῶν τι ἀγαθὸν ἰμᾶς. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ doing something good (and advantageous) for you. But however
μὲν τὰ εἰρημένα περὶ τοῦτων ἀρχεῖ ἐμοὶ: indeed the (things) said about this are-sufficient for-me;
eἰ δὲ τις ἰμῶν οἴεται ἢ αὐτὸς ἄν ἐξαπατή— if indeed any-one of-you thinks that he-himself could have-been
ὕπατα ταύτα, ἢ ἄλλου ἐξαπα— deceived (as respects) these (things), or (that) another (could) have-
tῆς ταύτα, λέγων διδα— deceived (him) (as respects) these (things), speaking 'let (him) in—
σκέτω. Δὲ ὅταν ἔχετε ἅλος τούτων, form (us). But when you-may-have enough of-these (things),
μὴ ἀπέλθητε, πρὶν ἀκούσητε οἶνον πράγμα 'do not 'depart, before you-may-have-heard what thing
ὄργα ἀρχόμενον ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὅ εἰ ἐπεί συ καὶ I-see reigning in the army; which if it-go-on 'and
ἔσται, οἶνον ὄσοδείκνυσι, δορὰ ἤμιν will-be, as it-shows (itself) 'gradually, (it is) time for us
βουλέεσθαι ἦπερ ἰμῶν αὐτῶν, μὴ ἀποφαίνωμεθα to-deliberate about us ourselves, lest we-appear
te káxistoi kai áiχiostoi ándres, kai próg
not-only the-worst but-also the-most-infamous men, both before

théon kai próg ánDrówon kai fílon kai
(the) gods and before men (and) both (before) friends and
pólemiónv.
foes.

Oi strátówta dè ãkoússantex taínta éDAuv-
The soldiers indeed hearing (these) (things) won-
μαsán te ó tì eìn, kai ékéleuon λégein.
dered not-only what it-might-be, but-also requested (him) to-say

'Ex toúton árketai pállov. 'EpléstaDê
(what it was). On this he-begins again: You-know

pou, ðti ðn χώpia èn toix ðrèxi
perhaps, that there-are places in the mountains (belonging to the)

bárbarixá, fílía toix KeraSóunntios, ðDev tînèz
barbarians, friendly to-the Corasuntians, whence some

katióntes épòloñon hìmín kai
coming-down sold us both (cattle for) victims and other

ðn éihou, dè kai tînèz hìmôtìn dòkouðì ìmov
(things) which they-had, and also some of-you seem to-me

èlòntes ègγyutâto χωpíou toútòw,
having-gone to-the-nearpest places of-these (people), (and)

ággorásantex tì, ápèlDeìn pállov. Klaáretoò
having-purchased something, to-have-gone-away again. Cleáretus

ó loxagòs, kataμaðòn toúto, ðti . eìn
the captain, having-learned this, that (this place) was

kai miðròn kai áfýlaxtón, diá to fílon
both small and unguarded, on-account-of the friendship

òmízìn eìnai, érketai ép' aítvòs
(that they) supposed to-be (between us), went against them

tìs nìkòs òs pòrðhìsw, eìpòn oúðèi hìmôtì
at — night as about-plundering, telling none of-us.

DIènèntoto dè, eì láboi to χωpíou tòde,
He-had-proposed however, if he-should-take — (this) place here,

muñëti mèn èlDeìn eìs to strátèumà, ðe eìsðòs
never-more indeed to-go to the army, but embarking
ἐίς πλοῖον, ἐν ὧν οἱ ἔξοχοι αὐτῷ εὐγένειον (board a) vessel, in which the companions of-himself ἡπεκαλέσατο, καὶ ἐνδέμενος pened-to-be sailing-along (the coast), and putting-on (board) ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. Καὶ ἔνωμολογησαν ταῦτα out-of the Pontus. And they-concerted these (things) αὐτῶ οἱ σύσκοποι ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου, ὡς with-him, (namely) — (those his) companions from the vessel, as ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι, ὅπως I now perceive. Therefore having-called-together, as-many-as ἐπείδην, ἤγεν ἔπι τὸ χωρίον. Δ' ἡμέρα he-had-persuaded, he-led (them) against the place. But day γενόμενη φθάνει αὐτῶν πορευόμενον, have-become overtakes him proceeding (on his march), καὶ οἱ ἄνδραις καὶ παῖς ἐνταντάς βάλλοντες and the men (of the place) having-come-together hurling καὶ παῖσις ἀπὸ ἰσχυρῶν τόπων, ἀποκτείνουσι and striking from (the) strong places, they-kill τε τῶν Κλεάρετων καὶ συνοικίας τῶν άλλων— not-only — Clearatus but-also many of-the other (men); δ' οἱ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποκτείνουσι eis Kerassōnta. but — some of-them also go-away to Cerasus, Taῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἡ ἡμέρα. Those (things) indeed were on the day on-which we ἐξωμομεν δεύον πεζῷ τινες δὲ τῶν set-out hither on-foot; (while) some indeed of — (those who πλεοντῶν ἡσάν ἑτη ἐν Kerassōnti, oυτω were) sailing were still in Cerasus, having not-yet ἀνηγμένου. Metα τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Kerassōntai 'brought-up (the anchors). After this, as the Cerasuntians λέγουσι, αὑρινοῦται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου say, there-arrived of-the (people) from the place τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων, χρησούσες ἐλθεῖν three men of-the older-class, desiring to-go
πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ οὐ
to the public-council (of officers). But when they 'did not
κατέλαβον ἡμᾶς, ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Κερασοῦντιος,
they-wondered why it seemed to us (proper) to go against
ἀυτούς.

'Εφασαν ἐπεὶ μέντοι
they. 'They (the Cerasuntians) 'said (that) when however
σφεῖς λέγειν, διὶ τὸ πράγμα οὐ γένοιτο ἀπὸ
they told (them), that the thing 'did not 'happen from
κοινοῦ, αὐτοῦς τῇ ἢδεσχα
common (or public authority), (that) they 'were not-only 'delighted
καὶ μέλλειν πλεῖν ἐνθάδε, ὡς λέξαι τὰ
but-also (that they) were-about to-sail hither, so-as to-relate the
γενόμενα ἡμῖν, καὶ κελεύειν τοὺς
(things) having-happened to-us, and (that) they-requested — (those)
δεομένους τοῦτον λαβόντας τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν
taking this (that) taking the dead to-bury
ἀυτοῖς. Δὲ τινὲς Ἑλλήνων, τῶν
them. But some (of the) Greeks, — (those namely)
ἀποφυγόντων, ἔτυχον ἐτὶ δοντες ἐν Κερασοῦντι;
having-fled-away, happened still (being) (to be) in Cerasus;
δ’ αἰσθάνομαι τῶν βαρβάρων, ὅποιοι λοιπὲν,
and having-perceived the barbarians, (and) whither they were-going,
ἀυτοὶ τῇ ἑτολμήσαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις, καὶ
they not-only dared to-throw — stones, but-also
παρεκκελεύοντο τοῖς ἄλλοις. Καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
encouraged — others (to do so). And the men
ἀποδεψανοντες, δοντες οἱ τρεῖς πρέσβεις, καταλευσά-
being the three ambassadors, stoned-to-
δεντες. Ἐπεί δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, οἱ Κερασοῦντιοι
died. When indeed this happened, the Cerasuntians
ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς, καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πράγμα, καὶ
come to us, and relate the affair; and
ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες
we the generals hearing (it) were-greatly-excited-against
καὶ ἐσθύλλυσαν ἐν τῷ δión τῶν Ἑλλήνων
the Cerasuntians, how the dead of the Greeks
might be-buried. And sitting-together outside of the
place-of-arms, suddenly we-hear much noise-and-ootury,
Paise, paise, blade, blade, and Iaceta ὤρωμεν
Strike, strike, throw, throw, and immediately indeed saw
many (men) running-together having stones in —
χεριά, δὲ καὶ ἀναφορυμένως. Kai μὲν
(thelh) hands, and also 'picking (them) 'up. And indeed
οἱ Κερασούντιοι ὡς ἄν καὶ ἔωρακότες τὸ
the Cerasuntians as (they) may even have-perceived the
πράγμα παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, δείσαντες ἀπο-
affair (that happened) among themselves, fearing re-
χωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. Ἡσαν δὲ, νη Δία,
treat to — (their) vessels. There-was indeed, by Jupiter,
καὶ οἱ ἰμὼν ἔδεισαν. Ἔγγυσ ἡπὶ ἡλιον
even — (some) of-us (who) feared. I-at-least indeed went
πρὸς αὐτοὺς, καὶ ηρώτων, ὅ τι τὸ πράγμα ἐστὶν
to them, and inquired, what the affair is.
Δὲ ἦσαν τῶν μὲν οἱ ἔδεισαν υδέν, δὲ
And there-were (some) of — (them) indeed who knew nothing, and
ὅμως εἰχον λιθοὺς ἐν ταῖς χερείν. Ἕπεϊ δὲ
yet had stones in — (their) hands. When indeed
ἐπέτυχον τινὶ εἰδότι, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἄγορα-
I-found some-one knowing (it), he-tells me that the superintendents-
vóμοι ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα δεινότατα. Ἐν
of-the-market treat the army most-shamefully. At
τούτῳ τις ὁρᾷ τὸν ἄγορανόμον Ζή-
this (time) some-one saw the superintendent-of-markets Ze-
λαρχον ἀποχωροῦντα πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ
larchus retreating to the sea, and
Δ' οἱ Κεράσοιντσοι αὖ, ὡς εἶδον δραμώντας καὶ
But the Cerasontians also, as they saw (them) hurrying towards

αὖτοις, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἵσθαν ἐπὶ
them, evidently thinking (that they were) about-to-rush against

σφαῖς, φεύγουσι δρόμω, καὶ ἐπιτυπτοῦνιν
themselves, flee in-haste, and throw (themselves)

εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν. Δὲ καὶ τινὲς ἤμων αὐτῶν
into the sea. And also some of us ourselves

ξυνείπησον, καὶ δεῖσις ἐτύγχανε
'throw (themselves) 'together-in (the sea), and whoever happened

μὴ ἐπιστόμενος νεῖν ἐπινίγησο. Καὶ τί δοξεῖτε
not being-skilled to-swim was-drowned: And what do-you-think

tοῦτος; Ἔμεν οἰδέν ὄνωμον,
of-these (persons fleeing thus)? They 'did indeed no 'wrong,

δὲ ἐδείσαν μὴ τις λύπτα δοξερ κυσίν ἐμ-
but they-fear lest some madness like (that of) dogs might-

πετάσκων ἤμων. Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ἦσσαν τοιαῦτα,
have-fallen-on us. If then these (things) are-to-be even-thus,

θεᾶσθαι, οἶα ἡ κατάστασις τῆς στρατιάς ἦσσαν
see, what the constitution of-the army will-be

ἡμῖν. 'Τοιχεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες σὺν ἐκεῖσθε
'see, you indeed the whole (army) will not 'be

κυρίοις οὔτε ἀνελέοντας πόλεμον ὅ ἄν
masters either to-undertake (any) war which 'you may

βούλησθε, οὔτε καταλῦσαι,
'wish, or-to-'put-an-end-to (it) 'by-making-peace, but in-private

ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει στράτευμα ἐφ' ὃ τι
—he desiring (it) will-lead (an) army against what 'they

ἄν θέλητε. Καὶ τινὲς πρέσβεις ἤκον ὑμᾶς, ἢ
may 'wish. And (if) any ambassadors might-come-to-you, either

deμενοί εἰρηνῆς ή τινὸς ἄλλου, οἱ βουλόμενοι,
asking for-peace or anything else, (those) wishing (it),

The Anabasis of Xenophon.
κατακτήταιναντές τούτους ποιησοῦντων
having-killed these (ambassadors) will-make (that)
ὑμᾶς μὴ ἁκούσαι τῶν λόγων τῶν ἰδνων
you 'will not 'hear the words of—(those) coming
πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Ἐπειτα δὲ, οὐς μὲν ὑμεῖς ἀπαντῆτε
to you. Then also, (those) whom indeed you all
ἀν ἐλησθή ἄρχοντας, ἐσονταὶ ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ,
may have-chosen rulers, | will-be in no place;

δ' δὲτές ἄν ἐλησθαὶ ἐαντόν
[will be of no authority;] but whoever may take-upon himself
στρατηγὸν, καὶ ἔδελη λέγειν, Βάλλε,
(the office of) general, and wishes to-say, Strike,
βάλλε, οὕτος ἐσται ἰχανὸς κατακανεῖν, καὶ
strike, this (person) will-be able to-kill, both
ἄρχοντα καὶ ἰδιώτην, ἃν ὑμῶν ἃν ἔδελη,
commander and private, whom of-us 'he may 'wish,
ἀξιτων, ἣν ὅσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῶ, ἀξιτερ
without-trial, if there-may-be—(those) obeying them, as
καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. Δὲ σκεφασθε οἷα καὶ
even now has-happened. Also consider what-sort-of (things) even
οὐ γὰρ αὐθαίρετοι στρατηγοὶ διασπῆράχασιν
— these (same) self-chosen generals affected
ὑμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν Ἰῆλαρχος ὁ ἄγορανύμος,
for-you. For indeed Zelarchus the superintendent-of-the-market,
eἰ μὲν ἦδει ὑμᾶς, ἀποπλέον οἴχεται, οὗ
if indeed he-has-'done you 'wrong, sailing-away he-has-departed, not
dοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἄδικεν,
rendering you justice; if indeed he-'has not 'done (you) 'wrong,
φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δεῖσας μὴ ἀποδάνη φεές from the
he-feels from the camp, fearing lest he-may-die
ἀδίκως ἄκρετος. Οἳ δὲ καταλείπαντες τοὺς
unjustly without-trial. — (Those) indeed having-stoned the
πρέσβεις, ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν
ambassadors, have-effected for-you alone indeed of-the
Εὔλογον μὴ ἄσφαλες εἶναι εἰς Κερασοῦντα,
Greeks (that it is) not safe to-be in Cerasus,
μὴ δὲν ἄφυνεςδαί σὺν ἰσχίω. δὲ
unless 'it may 'have-been-gone-there with (a) strong-force; but (as respects)
tους νεκροὺς, οἷς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ κατακανώντες
the dead, whom previously those — having-killed
ἐξέλεινον θάπτειν, διεπράξαντο μηδὲ εἶναι
(them) requested (you) to-bury, they-have-rendered (it) not-even to-be
ἀσφαλὲς ἔτι ἀνελέσθαι τοῖτοις
safe now (for you) to-carry these (dead) 'off (even) with
κηρυκώ. Γὰρ τίς ἔδειλησε ιέναι κηρυκῶ,
(the) herald's-staff. For who will-desire to-go (as a) herald,
ἀπεκτονῶς κηρυκάς; Ἀλλ' ἴμεις ἐδεξῆθημεν
having-killed heralds? But we requested (the)
Κερασοῦνιὼν Ἥλιου αὐτοῦ. Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταύτα
Cerasuntians to-bury them. | If indeed therefore these
ἐξεῖ καλῶς,
(things) have handsomely, [if these proceedings be right.] 'let (them)
dοξάτω ὑμῖν,
'appear (good) to-you (and be sanctioned by you), in-order-that,
as
tοιοῦτων ἐσομένων, τις καὶ ποιήσῃ φυλακὴν
these-same (things) are-about-to-be, one 'may both 'set (a) guard
ιδία, καὶ πειράται σκηνοῦν ἔχον τὰ ἔρμακα
in-private, and endeavour to-lodge, having the strong-places
ἐπερδέξα. Εἰ μὲντοι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα δοξεῖ
'over (his) 'right. If however — these-same deeds seem
ὑμῖν εἶναι ἑπηρίων, ἄλλα μὴ ἀνδρῶν,
to-you to-be (those) of-wild-beasts, but (not (those) of-men,
σκοπεῖτε τίνα παύλαν αὐτῶν: εἰ δὲ μὴ, πρὸς
look-for some cessation of-them; if indeed not, .

Διὸς, πῶς ἡ θύσωμεν θεοῖς
(in the name of) Jupiter, how either shall-we-sacrifice 'to (the) 'gods
ὑδεῖς, ποιοῦντες ἁσθῆ ἔργα, ἡ πῶς μαχούμεθα
cheerfully, (while) performing impious deeds, or how shall-we-fight
πολεμοῦς, ἣν κατακαίνωμεν ἄλληλοις; Δὲ
(our) enemies, if we-kill one-another? And
τίς φιλία πόλις δέξεται ἡμᾶς, ἢ τίς ἃν ὅρᾳ
what friendly city will-receive us, which may see
τοσαύτην ἄνοιμαν ἐν ἡμίν· δὲ τίς ἀφρόν
such lawlessness among us? and what-one confiding
ἄξει ἄγοραν, ἢν φανίμενα ἔκαμαρ-
will-bring (provisions for a) market, if we-appear offend-
tάνοντες περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέγιστα;
ing as-respects — those the-greatest (of things)? and
δὴ ὅσιομεδα τεύχεσθαι ἐπαίνου πάντων,
there (there) where we-think to-find (the) praise of-all,
τῖς ἀν ἑπαίνεσθειν ἡμᾶς δυντάς τοιούτως; γὰρ
what-one might praise us being such? for
μὲν ἡμεῖς, ὅτι οἶδ', ἂν φαίημεν τοὺς εἶναι
indeed we, as they, would pronounce — (those) to-be
ποιητοὺς ποιοῦντας τὰ τοιαῦτα.
poet (men) doing — these-same (things).

Ἐκ τούτων πάντων ἀνίσταμεν ξύεγον τοῖς
On this all rising-up said (that) —
μὲν ἀρξάντας τούτων δοῦναι
(these) indeed having-been-leaders of-those (things) | (ought) to-give
dίκην, δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ μη-
justice, [ought to be punished,] and (for) the future (it should) no-
κέτι ἔξεινα ἄρξαι ἄνοιας.
more be-allowed to-begin (any) lawlessness (of the kind); if indeed
τῖς ἄρχη,
any-one should-command (these things), (that) they were-to-be-led
αὐτοὺς ἀγέσθαι
and (that) the generals should — put
πάντας εἰς δίκας· δὲ εἶναι δίκας, καὶ εἰ
all on trial; and (there were) to-be trials, even if
τίς ἧδικητο τι ἄλλο εἴ τις Κύρος
any-one had-done-wrong (in) any-thing else since Cyrus
ἀνέσθαι· δὲ ἑποικήσαντο τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
and they-made the captains (the)
δικαστὰς. Δὲ Ἐσοφόντος ποραινοῦντος, καὶ τῶν
judges. And Xenophon recommending, and the
μάντων συμβουλευόντων, καὶ ἐδοξεῖ καθήμει
augurs agreeing-thereeto, 'it even 'seemed (good) to-purify
τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ καθαρμὸς ἐγένετο.
the army. And (the) purification took-place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Δὲ καὶ ἐδοξεῖ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὑποσχεῖν
And also it-seemed (good that) the generals should-undergo
dίκην τοῦ χρόνου παρελθόντος.
(a) trial (for their conduct) during-the time having-gone-by.

Καὶ διδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ἄφλε
And giving (it) Philias indeed was-condemned (to-say)
καὶ Χανθικής τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαύ-
and-also Xanthicles (for) the (careless) guarding-of-the merchant-
λικῶν τὸ μείωμα χρημάτων εἰκοσὶ μνᾶς.
vessels the deficiency of-things (of their cargoes) twenty mina.

Δὲ Σοφαίνετος δέκα μνᾶς, δειν ἀπεδεῖσ
And Sophanetos (was fined) ten mina, because having-been-chosen
ἀρχῶν κατημέλει.
commander he-neglected (his duty). And some accused

Εὐνοφόρτος, φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ἵνα αὐτοῖς,
Xenophon, saying (that) they-were-struck by him,
καὶ ἐποιοῦντο τὴν κατηγορίαν ὡς ὑδρί-
and they-made the accusation (against him) as being-
ζώντως.

Καὶ ὁ Εὐνοφόρος ἀναστὰς ἐξε-
and (and overbearing). And — Xenophon standing-up re-
λευσε τὸν λέγαντα πρῶτον εἰπεῖν, ποὺ καὶ
quested the (one) having-spoken first to-say, where also
ἐπλήγη.

Δὲ ὁ ἀποκρίνεται ὁ οὖν καὶ
he-might-have-been-beaten. And — he-replied: Where even
ἀπωλέσωμεν τῷ βίγει, καὶ ἦν πλείστῃ
we-were-perishing with-the cold, and (where) there-was the-most
BOOK V. — CHAPTER VIII.

χιόν. Δὲ ὁ ἐκείν. Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ χειμῶνος
snow. And — (Xenophon) said: But indeed even (the) cold
δὸντος γέ οἰνον λέγεις, δὲ σίτου ἐπιλεξοστότος,
being at-least as-great-as you-say, and provisions had-become-deficient,
δὲ παρὼν οἰνον μηδ' ὀσφαίνεσθαι, δὲ
and there-was-present of-wine not-even (enough) to-smell-to, and
πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων ὑπὸ πόνων, δὲ
many (of us) being-exhausted with fatigue, and (the)
pολεμίων ἔπομενοι, εἰ ὑπερίζου
enemy following, if (then) I-acted-insolently (and overbear-
ἐν τοιούτῳ καυρῷ, ὁμολογῶ εἰμαι καὶ
ingly) on such (an) occasion, I-acknowledge (myself) to-be even
ὑπερστότερος τῶν ὄνων, οἷς φασίν, ὑπὸ
more-spiteful (than) — asses, which it-is-said, (that) from
τῆς ὕβρεως, κόπον οἷκ ἐγγίνεσθαι. Δὲ καὶ
spite, fatigue 'is not 'engendered. And also
ὅμως λέξον, ἐφῄ, ἐκ τινος ἐπιλήγης. Πότερον
what-like wise tell (us), said-he, for what you-were-beaten. Whether
ἐν τούτῳ σε τι, καὶ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἔδίδος
in this (you)? and, when you—did not 'give (it)
μοι ἔπαιρον; ἄλλα ἀπήτουν; ἄλλα
to me I-struck (you)? but did-I-'demand (anything) 'back? or
μαχόμενος περὶ παιδικῶν, ἄλλα μειδών ἔτα-
being-in-games was-fighting about (a) beloved (object), or being-in-liquor, did-
οῦνσα;
be
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐφησεν
I-act-turbulently-like-a-drunken-man (to you)? When indeed he-said
οὕδεν τούτων, ἐπήρετο αὐτόν,
(that it was) nothing of these (things), (Xenophon) asked him,
εἰ ὁπλιτεῖον; οὐκ, ἐφη. Πάλιν, εἰ
if he-served-as-a-heavy-armed-soldier? No, said-he. Again, if
πελτάζων. οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ἐφη, ἄλλα ταχεῖς ὑπὸ
a-targeteer. Not-even this, said-he, but having-been-appointed by
τῶν συσχήμων ἐλαύνειν ἡμίονον ὅν
— (his) comrades to-drive (a) mule (he himself) being
ἐλεύθερος. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγνωρίσκει αὐτόν,
(a) freeman. Then indeed he-recognised him,
καὶ ἢρετο. Ὡ ἐν σὺ ὁ ἀναγαγὼν
and asked (him): Whether — (are) you the (man) carrying-away
τὸν κάμνοντα; Ναι μὰ Δέ, ἔφη γὰρ σὺ
the (person) being-sick? Yes — by-Jupiter, said-he; for you


γίναχας. δὲ διερρήσας τὰ σχεῖν τῶν
compelled (me to do so); and you-threw-about the baggage of —


ἐμὼν συσχήμασιν. Ἀλλ’ ἡ διαρρήσις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
But the throwing-about, said — Xenophon,


φῶν, ἐγένετο τις τοιαῦτη. Διάδυσα ἀλλοις
phen, happened something like-this. I-distributed (it) to-others


ἀγείν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπαγαγεῖν
to-carry, and ordered (them) to-carry (such baggage) 'away


πρὸς ἐμε, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἀπαντὰ σῶσαι ἀπέδωκα
for me, and having-received all safe, I-delivered (it)


σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἀπέδωκας τὸν ἄνδρα ἐμοὶ.
to-you, when also you produced the man to-me.


Ἀξιόστατε, ἔφη, οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο ὁ
Hear, said-he, how indeed the thing happened;


γὰρ καὶ ἄξιον.
for (it is) even worth (your while).


Ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο, διὰ τὸ μηκέτι
(A) man was-left-behind, on-account (that) — he—was no-longer


δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἐγίγνοσαν
able to-proceed. And I indeed knew


τὸν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἶν εἰς ἑμῶν· δὲ
the man so-much (only) (as) that he-was one of-us; and


ἐναγάκασα σὲ ἀγείν τούτου, ὡς μὴ
I-obliged you to-carry this (man), that he—might not


ἀπόλουσον καὶ γὰρ, ὡς ἐγὼ οἴμαι, πολέμουιν
perish; and also, as I think, (the) enemy


ἐφείσωσόν ἡμῖν. ὁ ἄνδρωνος συνέφη τούτῳ.
were-pursuing us. The man acknowledged this.


Οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προσπέμψα ἰστε,
Therefore, said — Xenophon, after I-had—sent you 'before


προσώπων σὺν τοῖς ὕπωσθοφύλαξι. οὖξ αἰῆς
coming-up with the rear-guard did. 'I not likewise
 BOOK V. — CHAPTER VIII. 891

καταλαμβάνω ὄρυξαντα βέδρον, ὡς κατο- 
stay (you) digging (a) pit, as about-
ρύζαντα τὸν ἄνδρον καὶ ἐπήνουν burying the man; and stopping did 'I (not) 'praise
σε; Ἐπει δὲ ἡμῶν παρεστηκότων, ὁ ἄνηρ you? When indeed we having-stood-by, the man
συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος, οἱ παρόντες ἀνέρχαγον, drew-together — (his) legs, — (those) present, exclaimed,
ὅτι ὁ ἄνηρ ζήσε! σὺ δ' εἶπας. 'Οπόσα that the man was-alive; you indeed said; (He may live) as 'much
γε βούλεται ὡς ἔγωγε οὖς ἔξω αὐτῶν. at least 'as he-pleases; as I-at least 'will not 'carry him.
εἰς ἑβολεται ἔπαισα σε' λέγεις ἀλληθη. γὰρ Then I-struck you; you-speak (the) truth; for
ἦδοισα μοι οὐκεῖναι εἰδότα, ὅτι ἔχω. you-seemed to-me to-have-been-like (one) knowing, that he-was-alive.
Τί οὖν ἔφη, τι ἔττον ἀπέδαινεν, ἐπει ἔγω What then? said-he, did 'he any the-less 'die, after I
ἀπέδαια αὐτῶν σοι; Καὶ γὰρ, ἔφη ὁ Ἑνο- showed him to-you? Certainly, not for, said — Xenoph-
ἀδεια ἡμέρας ἐπηεν τούτον ἡμᾶς κατορκηθηναι ζώντας; of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-buried alive?
ημέρας πάντες ἀνερχανοίμεθα. οὖν ἔενεικα phon, we all shall-die; therefore on-account
τούτον δει ἡμᾶς κατορκηθηναι ζώντας; of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-buried alive?

Πάντες μὲν ἀνέρχαγον ὡς παῖσευν τοῦτον All indeed cried-out that he had-struck this (man too)
ὁλίγας. δὲ ἐδέλευεν. ἄλλους λέγειν, few (blows); and 'he (then) 'called-up (the) others to-say,
ἀλλὰ τι ἔκαστος ἐπλήγη. Τὸ ἔπει for what each (of them) had-been-struck. But when they 'did
οὐχ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτῶς ἔλεγεν. Ἕγω, οὐ ἄνδρες, not 'stand-forward, he said: I, O men,
δὴ ὄμολογῳ παίσαν ἄνδρας ἐνευξίων indeed acknowledge to-have-beaten men by-reason of undisciplined-
ἐταξίας: ὅσοις μὲν and disorderly-conduct-in-leaving (their) 'ranks; to-as 'many indeed 'as
were-content to-be-saved by us, not-only marching in ranks
but also fighting, where it-might-be-necessary; but those
leaving the ranks, hurrying-on-before, they-desired to-plunder,
and to-have-an-advantage-over us. If indeed we all had-
oumen touto, anantres av apolomedae. De kai
acted so, we all might have-perished. And also
anh tina malaizomenon kai os metateleota
already some giving-way-to-slothful feelings, and not willing
andabonding themselves to-the enemy,
and epaisa, kai etiassamen norotebodai. Ga'ren
I also 'struck, and forced to-proceed. For in
the vehement cold, even myself once waiting
vinais syssenaxomeneus, kadezomenos
for-some having-packed-up (their baggage), (and) having-sat-down
syphon chronon, katemadon anastax moly
'time, I-found standing-up difficult
and also stretching-out the legs. 'Having therefore taken
experience in myself, after this also when I-saw (one)
kaidemenon kai blesenota xalanon. gar
sitting-down and indulging-in-sloth I-'drove (him) on; for
the kineidai kai andreosai pareixe tin - to-be-moved (about) and to-set-mannfully produce (a) certain
warmth and suppleness; but to-sit-down and
exein hounchion eorom av ipournyvov tω
(to-have) idleness I-perceive (as) being the-assisting-means by-which
the blood is-congealed, but also (that) the
BOOK V. — CHAPTER VIII.

δικτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσθέθησαι· καὶ ἀπερ
fingers of the feet are-morted; and (with) which

μεῖς ἵστε πολλοὺς παθόντας. Ἀλλον δὲ γε
you know many are-suffering. Another indeed at-least

ἰσος ὑπολευκόμενον που, διὰ βαστώνυν, καὶ
likewise being-left-behind somewhere, through insolence, and

καλύντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἦμᾶς
hindered both you (in) the front, and us (in)
toctors ὑπερεύσθαμε ἐπαισα ὅπως
the rear to-proceed-forward I-struck with (the) 'hast', so-that

μὴ παύοιτο λόγχη ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
he might not 'be-struck with (the) 'spear by the enemy.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς σωθῆσαι εῇ
For indeed therefore now it is-allowed to those having-been-saved, if

ἐπάθον τι νῦν ἐμοὶ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον,
they have-suffered any-thing by me contrary-to — justice,

λαθεῖν δίκην. Δ᾿ εὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῖς
to-obtain justice. But if they had got into (the power of) the

πολεμίοις, τι οὕτω μέγα ἄν ἐπᾶθον,
enemy, what (evil) however great 'they may have-suffered, (for)

ὁτον ἄν ἔχουν λαμβάνειν δίκην; ὁ λόγος
which 'they might claim to-obtain justice? the case is (in)

ἀπλοῖς, ἐφη, μοι. Εἰ μὲν ἔκαλασά τινα ἐπὶ
plain, said he to me. If indeed I have-punished any-one for

ἀγαθῷ, ἄξιω ὑπέρχειν δίκην, οὖν
(his) good, I claim to-undergo justice (and punishment), such-as

καὶ γονεῖς, νιὸς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παῖσι.
even parents (receive for) sons and teachers (for) boys.

Καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἰατροὶ καίοντι καὶ τέμνοντον ἐπὶ ἀγαθῷ.
And also the surgeons cauterize and cut for good.

Δὲ εἰ νομίζετέ με πρᾶττειν ταῦτα
But if you think me to (have) acted thus (through)

ὑστερη, ἐνδυμήσητε, ὅτι νῦν σὺν
insolence (and tyranny) consider, that now with (the assistance

toics θεοῖς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον θαρσῶ ἢ τότε, καὶ of) the gods I have much-more spirit than then, and
ἐίμι θρασύτερος νῦν ἡ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλείω οἶνον· am bolder now than then, and I-drink more wine;
ἀλλ' διπόσ παίσσαντην, γὰρ ὅριν ἰμάσκ έν
but yet-however I-strike no-one; for I-see you (now) in (a)
εὐδία. Δὲ δέ τοι κείμεν ἡ, καὶ μεγάλη
calm. But when (a) storm may-be, and (a) great
θάλασσα ἐπιφέρεται, οὔχ ὀρᾶτε,
sea may-be-bearing (itself) 'onward, do-you not 'see,
ὅτι πρωίας χαλεπαίνει μὲν τοῖς ἐν
that the-commander-in-the-prow becomes-angry indeed with — (those) in
πρώρα καὶ ἔκεις, νεώμαστος μόνον, δὲ καὶ
the prow even by-reason-of (a) nod only, and also (the)
κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρώμην; γὰρ ἐν τῷ
steersman with — (those) in (the) stern? for in —
τοιούτω καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτησάντα ἦκαν
such (circumstances) even small mistakes (are) sufficient
συνεπιτρήσαι πάντα. Ὡτὶ δὲ ἔπαινον αὐτῶς
to-ruin all. That indeed I-struck this (man)
δικαίως, καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες
justly, even you have-'given (your) 'judgment; having
ἐἴρη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστητε, καὶ ἔξεσαν ἑμῖν
swords, not voting-pebbles, you-stood-by, and it-was-allowed you
ἔπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἑβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ, μὰ Δία,
to-assist them, if you-wished; but, by Jupiter,
οὔτε ἐπικουρεῖτε τούτοις, οὔτε σὺν ἐμοι
'you neither 'assisted these (men), nor with me
ἔπαινε τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα. Τοιαύτα ἐποιήσατε
struck the disorderly. Therefore | you-have-made
ἐξουσίαν τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν, ἔχοντες
licence [you gave licence] to-the bad (ones) of-them, permitting
αὐτοὺς ἱβίζειν· γὰρ οἶμαι, εἰ ἔσελετε
them to-be-violent (and audacious); for I-think, if you-wish
σκοπεῖν, εἰρήνετε τοῖς αὐτοῖς καὶ
to-examine, you-will-find (that) — (those) same — (who) even
τότε κακόστους, καὶ νῦν ἰδρυστικάτους.
then (were) the-worst, (are) even now the-most-audacious.
Τοῦν Βοῦσκος, ὁ Θεσσαλὸς πίκτης, τότε μὲν
Also Boiscus, the Thessalian boxer, then indeed
dιεμάχετο, μὴ φέρειν ἀστίθα, ὡς
fought-hard, (that he might) not carry (his) shield, as
κάμνων, γὰρ ὃς ἰχνὸς, ἦδη ἀποδέδυξε
being-sick, now indeed as I-hear, 'has already 'despoiled
πολλοὺς Κοτυριτῶν. Ἡν οὖν σωφρονήτε, many 'of (the) Cotyrians. If therefore you-are-wise,
pοιῆσετε τούτῳ τὰναντία, ἥ ποιούσι τοὺς
you-will-do to-this (one) the-reverse, to (what) they-do (to) the
κύνας· γὰρ μὲν δίδασι κύνας τοὺς χαλεπούς,
dogs; for indeed they-have-tied-up dogs the cross-ones,
tὰς ἡμέρας μὲν, δὲ τὰς νύκτας
(namely) during-the day indeed, but by — night have-let (them)
ἀφιάσι· δὲ τοῦτον ἢν σωφρονήτε δήσετε μὲν τὴν
'loose; but this-one if you-are-wise you-will-tie indeed by —
νύκτα, δὲ ἀφιήσετε τὴν ἡμέραν. Ἄλλα γὰρ,
night, but let-loose by — day. But also,
ἔφθη, θαυμάζω, ὅτι, εἰ μὲν ἄτυχῳ οἴμεν τινι
said-he, I-am-surprised, that, | if indeed I-become-hateful to-any-one
ὑμῶν, μέμνεσθε,
of-you, [If I did anything to incur your displeasure,] you-remember (it),
καλ οὐ σωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ ἐπεξοφρησα τῷ
and 'did not 'remain-silent, if indeed I-assisted — (any-one)
ἡ χειμῶνα, ἡ ἀπήρυξα πολέμων,
(or) 'against (a) 'storm, or repelled (the) enemy (from him),
ἡ συνεξεπόρισά τι ἀδειονυντι ἡ ἀπορροῦντι,
or aided-in-procuring any-thing 'for (one) 'being-sick or being-destitute,
οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τοῦτων, οὔδ' εἰ ἐπηνεσα
no-one remembers these (things), nor if I-have-praised
τινα ποιοῦντα τι καλὸς, οὔδ' εἰ ἐπηνεσα,
any-one doing something good, or if I-have-honoured,
ὡς ἔδυναμην, τιν' ἄνδρα δύνα μαι ἀγαθῶν,
as (much as) I-could, any man being brave,
οὐδ' μέμνεσθε τοῦτων. Ἄλλα μὴν τε
neither do-you-remember these (things). But indeed (it is) not-only
καλόν, καὶ δίκαιον, καὶ διόν καὶ ἠδίόν μεμνημένοι
dependable, but also just, and pious and pleasing to remember
τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν.
— good rather than — evil.
Έκ τούτου μὲν ἡ ἄνισταντο καὶ ἀνεμίμητον.
On this indeed truly they rose up and recollected
Καὶ περιεγένετο ὡς ἡ έχειν κα-
(past events). And it remained so as to have hand-
λῶς.
somely [and in the end everything turned out well].
BOOK VI.

CHAPTER I.

"Εξ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ ἔζων ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, δέ καὶ οἱ ληφθείσαι εἰς τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. And also (others by) plundering (from) the Paphlagonians.

Δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἐκλώπευνον μᾶλα εἰς τοὺς δεότασι σκηνοῦντας πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους. And also the Paphlagonians stole-away very adroitly —

κακονομενεῖ τοὺς σκηνοῦντας πρὸς τοὺς Παφλαγονίαν, and at — night attempted to-injure-and-annoy (those) quartering far-off; and from these (things) they-had the-greatest-hostility to one-another.

"Ο δὲ Κορίλας δὲ τὸν ἐγγεχαν ἄρχον — But Corylas who then happened (to be) ruler

Παφλαγονίας, πέμπει πρέσβεις, ἐχόνας of-Paphlagonia, sends ambassadors, having (as presents)

ἵππους καὶ καλὰς στολὰς, παρὰ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, horses and beautiful robes, to the Greeks,

λέγοντας, ὅτι Κορίλας εἰς ἔστωμος μὴτε ἄδικείν saying, that Corylas was ready neither to-injure τοὺς Ἑλλήνας μὴτε ἄδικείσθαι. Oi στρατηγοὶ the Greeks nor to-be-injured (by them). The generals δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι θεολεύοντο σὺν τῇ however replied, that they-would-consult with the
στρατιὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἐδέχοντο αὐτοὺς δὲ army about indeed these (things), they-received them however ἐπὶ ξενία· δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσαν τῶν ἄλλων at (a) hospitable (table); and also they-invited the other ἄνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν εἶναι δικαιοτάτους. Ἀδε men whom they-considered to-be the-most-worthy. And θύσαις βοῶς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ having-sacrificed oxen — (those namely) captured and ἄλλα ἵππεια ἄρχονταν εἰδοχίαν other cattle-killed-for-sacrifice-and-for-eating (an) abundant ἑστάκτισαν, δὲ κατακείμενοι ἐν σχήμασιν ἔδειπνον, was-provided, and reclining on couches they-supplied, καὶ ἐπὶ νυμὼν ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐντύχανον and they-drunk out-of horn cups, which they-found ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ. in the country.

'Επεὶ δὲ τὰ σπονδαῖ ἐγένοντο καὶ When however not-only (the) libations had-taken-place, but also ἐπαινάνταν, πρῶτον μὲν Ὄρακες ἀνέστησαν, καὶ they-had-sung-the-panegyric, at-first indeed Thracians stood-up, and ἄρχονταν σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις πρὸς danced with — (their) arms to (the sound of the) αἰλόν, καὶ ἤλεγην ὑψηλά τε καὶ κοῦφως, καὶ pipe, and they-jumped high and also with-agility, and ἔχρυσον ταῖς μαχαίραις· δὲ τέλος ὁ ἔτερος they-made-use of — (their) swords; and at-length the one παίει τὸν ἔτερον, ὡς ἐδοξεῖ πᾶσι πεταληγέναι struck the other, so-that it-seemed to-all to-have-wounded τὸν ἄνδρα· δ’ ὁ ἐπεσε τεχνικῶς τώς. Καὶ oi the man; and — he-fell artfully in-some-way. And the Παφλαγονίων ἀνέκραγον. Καὶ οὐ μὲν σκυλεύσας Paphlagonians cried-out. And — 'he indeed 'having-despoiled τοῦ ἐτέρου τὰ ὀπλα, ἐξῆκεν ἄδων τὸν the other (one) of — (his) arms, departed singing the (song) Σιτάλκαν· ἅλλοι δὲ τῶν Ὄρακῶν ἔξεφερον τὸν Sitalcan; others indeed of-the Thracians carried-off the
ἕτερον ὡς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ
other (one) as-if having-been-dead; he-was however (in the state of)
πεπονθὼς οὖν ἔμεν. Μετὰ τούτο Αἰνίαν
carried having-suffered- no (injury). After this (some) Αἰνιάν
καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὀρχεῖντο τὴν
and Magnesians stood-up, who danced the dance
καλουμένην καρπαίαν ἐν τοῖς ὀπλαῖς. Ὁ τρόπος
called carpman in — arms. The nature
δὲ τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν ὦδε· ὃ μὲν, παρα
indeed of-the dance was thus: — (off of them) indeed, having-
δείμενος τὰ ὀπλα, σπείρει καὶ ἰενηλατεί,
laid-aside — (his) arms, sows and drives-a-yoke-of-oxen,
πυκνὰ μεταστρέφομενος, ὡς φοβοῦμενος·
often turning-around, as-if fearing (something);
λιστὴς δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ ἐπειδὰν ὁ προιδηται,
(a) robber indeed approaches; but when — he-perceives
ἀρπάσας τὰ ὀπλα, καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ
(him), snatching-up — (his) arms, 'he even 'fights for the
ζεῦγον·
yoke (of oxen); (and these (men) performed these (things)
ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν·)
in rhythm to the pipe;)
καὶ τέλος ὁ λιστὴς δῆσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπάγει
and-at-last the robber having-tied the man 'leads (him) off
καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος· δὲ καὶ ἐνίοτε ὁ ἰενηλάτης
and also the yoke (of oxen); but also sometimes the driver-of-the-oxen
τὸν λιστὴν· εἶτα ζεῦγας παρὰ τοὺς
(overcomes) the robber; then having-fastened (him) to the
θοὺς ἐλαῦνει δεδεμένον τῷ χειρὶ ὀπίσω.
oxen he 'drives (him) off bound with — (his) hands behind.
Μετὰ τούτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἐκὼν πέλτην ἐν
After this (a) Mysian entered having (a) light-shield in
ἐκατέρα τῇ χειρί· καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὀρχεῖτο μιμοῦμενος
each — hand; and at-one-time he-danced mimicking
ὡς δύο ἀντιταττομένων, δὲ τοτὲ ἐξορθο
as (if) two were-attacking (him), but at-another-time he-used
tais peltais ois proe eva, de to
the shields as (if engaged) with one (only), and also another-
tei edineito kai exekubista, ehow tais peltais,
time he-whirled-about and throw-summersets, having the shields
oste kalhn olin faivesoai. De
(at the same time), so-that (a) fine sight appeared. And
telos orxeito to Persikon, krouv tais
at-last he-danced the Persian (dance), striking the
peltais1 kai dxlaxe, kai exanistato1
shields (together); and he-‘sank-on (his) knees, and rose-up-again;
ai epoiei pantata taouta en rhdwm proe ton
and he-performed all this in rhythm to the
aiolou. De epi toutr ois Man-
(sound of the) pipe. And after this (one) — (some) Man-
tineis epintetes, kai tineis alloi ton 'Arkadian
tineans coming-forward, and some others of the Arcadians
anastantes, exoplismenoi ois kallista edunanto,
standing-up, armed as handsomely (as) they-could,
hesan te en rhdmo,
| went — in rhythm, [marched in time,] playing-on-the-pipe (tuned)
proe ton enopliou rhdmon, kai epamianan
for the armed-war rhythm (or movement), and they-sang-the-poesan
kai wfrhpsanto, osper en tais prosoi proe ton
and danced, as in the procession to
touz theous. De ois Paphlagonies ohrwtes
the gods. And the Paphlagonians seeing (these things)
epoiounto deina pasas tais wfrhsein
made (a) great-thing-of-it (that) all the dances
eina en oplois. 'O Mysos epi oron toutrous
were in arms. The Mysian after seeing these (things)
aiotr ecpektiphmounous, peisa
(that) they were-striuk (with surprise), (and) having-persuaded
tria ton 'Arkadon, pepaimenon wfrhsotrida,
a-certain-one of the Arcadians, having-in-possession (a) female-dancer,
eisangei skenias ois kallista edunanto
he-‘brings (her) in having-equipped (her) as handsomely (as) he-could
καὶ δεός αὐτὴν κούφην ἀσπίδα. Δὲ ἡ ὀρχήσατο
and giving her (a) light shield. And — she-danced
πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. Ἔνταῦθα ἦν
the) Pyrric (dance) with-great-agility. Then there-was
πολὺς κρότος. καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἦροντο,
much applause-and-clapping; and the Paphlugonians asked,
eἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμαχόντο αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δὲ
if also women fought-together with-them. —(They)—
ἐλέγον, ὅτι ἔλευς καὶ αὖτας αἱ ἑρεμάμεναι
said, that it-was even these (women) —(that) had-been-driving
βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Οὖν μὲν τοῦτο
the (the) king from the camp. Therefore indeed such
ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος τῇ ταύτῃ νυκτὶ.
was the end (of) — that night.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραῖα προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς
And on-the next-day they-led them [the ambassadors] to
τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις
the army, and it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers
μὴτε ἀδίκειν Παφλαγόνας μὴτε
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlugonians nor
ἀδίκεισθαί. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρεσβεῖς
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlugonians nor
ἀδίκεισθαί. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρεσβεῖς
to-be-injured (by them). After this indeed the ambassadors
ἀνοιγότοι οἱ Ελληνες δὲ, ἐπειδὴ ἵκανα
departed; the Greeks also, as (a) sufficient (number of)
πλοία ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ λιμένιστ
ships seemed to-be-present, going-on-board they-sailed (that)
ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα, πνεύματι καλῶν, ἕχοντες
day and night, (the) wind (being) fair, having
τὴν Παφλαγονίαν ἐν ἄριστερᾷ. Δὲ τῇ ἄλλῃ
— Paphlugonia on (the) left. And on-the next
ἀφικνοῦντα εἰς Σινώπην, καὶ ὁμοίσαντο εἰς
(day) they-arrived at Sinope, and anchored at
Ἅρμηνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινώπεις δὲ
'Harmene (the harbour) of — Sinope. (The) Sinopeans —
μὲν οἰκοῦσί ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ,
indeed dwell in — Paphlugonian (territory), and they-are
ἀποικια Μιλησίων. Οὔτοι δὲ πέμπουσι
(a) colony of-the-Milesians. These (Sinopeans) indeed sent
Ξένια τοῖς Ἑλλησι μὲν τρισχίλιοις
gifts-of-hospitality to-the Greeks (namely) — three-thousand
μεδίμνους ἀλφίτων, δὲ
medimni [each medimni being about twelve gallons] of-flour, also
χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια κεράμια
a-thousand and five-hundred ceramicia [the ceramicia being about
οἴνου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Χείρισοφος ήλ. δε
six gallons] of-wine. And then Cheurisophus came
ἐξαν τρὶάρη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ στρατιώται προσεδόκουν
having galleys. And indeed the soldiers expected
ἔρχεται τι σφίσι; δὲ ὦ ἥγε μὲν
(that) he-came bringing something for-them; but — he-brought indeed
οἷδὲν, δὲ ἀπήγγελε, οὗτι καὶ Ἄναξιβίος ὦ ναῦ-
oidên, dê apêngelle, dti kai 'Anaxibios o nai-
nothing, however he-announced, that both Anaxibius the naval-
ἀρχος καὶ οἱ ἅλλοι ἐπαινοῦ ἄντως, καὶ οὗτι
commander and the others praised them, and that
'Anaxibios ἔπεισεν εἰς τούτοις, εἰ ἄφικτοι τι
Anaxibius promised, if they-would-come-to (him) out-of
toú Pontou, ἔσεσθαι μισοθορίαν αὐτοῖς.
the Pontus, (that) there-would-be pay to-them.

Καὶ οἱ στρατιώται εἵμεναν πέντε ἡμέρας ἐν
And the soldiers remained five days in
ταύτη τῇ Ἀρμένῃ. Ὡς δὲ ἔδοξον γίγν
this — Harmene. As indeed they-considered (that) they-
νεσθαί ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἦδη μᾶλλον ἦ
were-getting near — Greece it now more than
πρόσθεν εἰς ἑαυτό τις ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἀφίκονται
before occurred to-them how 'they might even arrive
οἰκάδε ἔχοντες τῇ. Οὖν ἑγεῖσαντο εἰ
at-home having something. Therefore they-thought (that) if
ἦλθοντο ἓνα ἄρχοντα, ἂν μᾶλλον ἦ
they-should-choose one commander, (it) would (be) better than
οὕσως πολυαρχίας, τὸν ἓνα δύνασθαι
there-being many-commanders, (that) the one (commander) would-be-able
ΚΡΗΣΩΔΑΙ ΤΩ ΣΤΡΑΤΕΥΜΑΤΙ ΚΑΙ ΒΙΝΤΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΗΜΕΡΑΣ,
to-use the army both by-night and by-day,
καὶ εἰ δεῖ λανθάνειν τι ἂν
and if it-should-be-necessary to-conceal any-thing (that it) would (be)
μᾶλλον κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἰ δεῖ αὐ φθάνειν
much-better concealed, and if it-were-necessary again to-anticipate
τι ἂν ἤττουν ἵστεριζειν· γὰρ
any-thing (there) would (be) less coming-late (and delay); for
ἀν οὗ δεῖν λόγων πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
(that) 'there would 'be no 'need of-conferences with one-another,
ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνι
but (that) the to-see (good) to-the one [but that the determination
ἀν περαινεσθαι δὲ τὸν χρόνον
of the one commander] would be-carried-out; but (in) the time
ἐμπροσθεν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔπραττον πάντα ἐκ
herefore the generals did every (thing) from
τῆς νικώσης.
the prevailing (opinion). As indeed they-were-revolving these (things)
ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐνοφώντα· καὶ
'Εν (their) 'minds, they-turned-themselves to — Xenophon; and
οἱ λοχαγοὶ προκύπτειν αὐτῶ, ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ
the captains going to-him, said, that the army
γιγνώσκει αὐτῶ· καὶ ἐκαστὸς ἐνδεικνύμενος
think-and-determine thus; and each showing (his)
ἐυνοεῖν ἐπείδης αὐτῶν ὑποστήναι τὴν ἄρχην.
good-will persuaded him to-undertake the command.
"Ο δὲ Εὐνοφῶν πὴ μὲν ἐθούλετο ταῦτα,
— Xenophon in-some-measure indeed, desired this,
νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν γιγνεσθαι αὐτῶς
acknowledging (that) even the honour would-become thus
μείζων ἐαυτῷ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, καὶ τοῦνομα
greater to-himself before — (his) friends, and the-name
αὐτοῦ ἀφίξεσθαι μείζων εἰς τὴν πόλιν, τυχόν
of-himself would-become greater in — (his own) city, perhaps
δὲ καὶ ἂν γενέσθαι τινος αὐτῶς ἀγαθῶν
likewise also (that) 'he might 'become some cause of-good
404 THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

tis stratiad. Men de tâ touiaata evnymatata to-the army. Indeed truly — these-same considerations
epibevn auton evndumein yenesthai arxonta auto-
impelled him to-desire to-become | commander with-full-
kratoura. \[\Delta' opote au evndumeito,\]
power [commander-in-chief]. But as again he-reflected,
dti adholon men panti aneropw, dpe to
that (it was) uncertain indeed to-every man, | how the
mellov epei,
\[de kai dia\]
future will-hold, [what the future will produce,] and also through
touto eis kai khnduvos apobalein tihn
this (that) there-might-be even danger to-lose — (his)
proeirasmenvn doxan, epereito. De autw diasto-
previously-earned reputation, he-was-perplexed. And he hesi-
rovmenw diakriva edoxe einae kratistov anaxoti-
tating to-decide it-seemed to-be the-best to-con-
vidai tois theois. kai parasthsamenvs dio
suit the gods; and having-placed-by (the altar) two
iereia, ednes to w Dv to w baclei, oster h
victims, he-sacrifices to — Jupiter the king, who was
mantevovs evw Delfon autw kai de ev-
pointed-out-by-the-oracle at Delphos to-him; and indeed he-ac-
mienv evrapenai to onar apd toutov
nowledged [to-have-seen [to have had] the dream from the-same
tou theou, de elde, ote hrcheto kadi斯塔vai to
— god, which he-had, when he-began to-set-himself

syneimeliesvai tihn stratiad. Kai ote ormatov
to-take-chargethrough-others of the army. And when he-departed
ex 'Efesov, sy斯塔hsmenvs Kerw, anemimhsketo from Ephesus, about-meeting Cyrus, he-recalled-to-mind
\[dten phdegvmenov deqion evantw,\]
an (an) eagle crying-out 'on (the) right (hand of) himself,
menvov kadihmenov, oster o mavnis o pro-
however sitting, (which) as the augur — ac-
peterov auton eleven, dte eis men megas oivnocos,
companying him said, that it-was indeed (a) great omen,
and not belonging-to-a-private-individual, and honourable however

however (that) the omen is not

indeed he

sacrificing to the god evidently signified neither to-

desire the command, nor, if he-should-be-chosen, to-

decided. To that they did not accept (it). This truly indeed happened thus. The

commander) was-to-be-chosen; and when this seemed (good),

[and when this was resolved on by the army,] they-proposed him

When indeed it seemed to be evident, that

they-would-choose him, if any-one should-put (it) 'to-the-vote, he-rise-up and spoke thus:

'men indeed 'delighted at being-honoured

by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude

(whence you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me

the author of-some good to-you; however the

I, O men, 'am indeed 'delighted at being-honoured

by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude

(whence you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me

the author of-some good to-you; however the
προχρῆναι ἐμὲ ἰπτὸ ἵμων

to-have-preferred me [but the preferring me] by you (as your)

ἄρχωντα, Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος, δοξεῖ

commander, (a) Lacedæmonian man being-present, it-seems

καὶ εἰς τὸ ὑμῖν συμφέρον ἵμων, ἀλλ' εἰ
to-me (would) neither be (an) advantage to-you, but, if

δέσποτε τι παρ' αὐτῶν, ἃν ἄττον

you-should-desire any-thing from them, (that you) would the-less

διὰ τούτο τυγχάνειν, τὲ νομίζω τούτῳ

on-account-of this obtain (it), and I-think (that) this

αὖ ὦ πάνω τι εἶναι ἄσφαλές ἐμοὶ.

again (would) not at-all in-any-manner be safe for-me.

Γὰρ ὅρω ὅτι καὶ

For I-see that even 'they [the Lacedæmonians] heretofore 'did not

ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες τῇ πατρίδι μου,

'cease making-war against-the [country of-me, [my country,]

πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν

before they-had-made (the) whole — state to-acknowledge (the)

Λακεδαιμονίους εἶναι καὶ ἕγεμόνας αὐτῶν. 'Εκεῖ

Lacedæmonians to-be even masters of-them. When

δὲ ὁμολόγησαν τούτῳ, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο

indeed they-acknowledged this, 'they directly 'ceased

πολεμοῦντες, καὶ οἰκεῖται πέρα ἐπολιορκησαν τὴν

making-war, and no-longer more did-they-besiege the

πόλιν. Εἰ οὖν, ὅρων ταῦτα, ἐγὼ δοξοῖν

city. If therefore, seeing these (things), I should-seem

ἐνταῦθ' ὅπου δυναίμην ποιεῖν ἄχρον τὸ

(to be) there where I-might-be-able to-make null the

ἀξίωμα ἐκεῖνον, ἐννοῶ ἐκεῖνο μή ἄν λιαν ταχὺ

authority of-them, I-consider this lest 'I might very speedily

σωφρονοῦσθαιν. Ὁ δὲ ὣς τοις ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι

be-taught-discretion. What indeed you consider-in-your-minds, that

ἐνώς ἄρχωντος ἃν εἰς ἄττον στάσις

there being) one commander 'there would 'be less faction

ἡ πολλῶν, ἵστε εὖ, ὅτι ἐλάμβανοι μὲν

than (there being) many, you-know well, that having-chosen indeed
عطاء, πολύ πλείονες

When indeed he had said these (things), many more

εξανισταντο, λέγοντες, ὡς αὐτὸν δὲοι ἄρχειν.

stated, saying, that he ought to command.

Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὡς εἶη

Agasias indeed (the) Stymphalian said that it would be

γελοῖον, εἰ ἔχοι οὔτως
gigantic, if it have (itself) thus; [if things be in such a state;]

 sophistic αὐτὸ

since) that (the) Lacedemonians might be enraged, even if (a party)

συνελθόντες σύνδεσιν μη άρδονται Λακε-

rushed together (and) do not choose (a) Laced-

δαμονον συμποσίαρχον. Εἰ ἔπει οὔτω γε

demonian (as) president of the banquet. If when thus at least

τοῦτο ἔχει,

it has (itself), [if such be the case] said he, it would neither

ἐκεῖνη ὡς λοχαγεῖν, ὡς ἔκαστον, ὡς

be proper for us to lead-companions (as captains), as it seems, that

ἐγὼ ἄρχας. Ἐνταύθα δὲ ἀνεδορίζοντας ὡς

we are Arcadians. Then truly they murmured as

τοῦ Ἀγασίου εἰπόντος. Καὶ ὁ Ἑνο-

when spoke (that) there was need of more (speaking),

(signifying) — Agasias having spoken well. And — Xeno-
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

παρελθὼν εἶπεν: 'Αλλ', ὁ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ως coming-forward he-said: But, O men, said-he, that you-may πάνω εἰδοτε, δυνάω ὑμῖν πάντας θεοὺς καὶ fully 'know, I-swear to-you by-all (the) gods and πάσας, ἡ μὴν ἔτει ἐγώ ἡθανάμην by-all (the goddesses), (that) truly indeed when I perceived ἰμετέραν γνώμην, ἐδύναμεν, εἰ εἴη your intention, I-sacrificed, (to ascertain) if it-might-be βέλτιον ὑμῖν τε ἐπιτρέψαι ναύτην τὴν better for-you not-only to-have-consulted this — (same) ἀρχήν ἐμοὶ, καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐπιστῆναι: καὶ οἱ θεοὶ command to-me, but-also for-me to-have-undertaken (it); and the gods οὗτος ἐσήμεναν ἐν τοῖς ιεροῖς ἔστε καὶ ἰδιωτήν so signified in the sacrifices that even (a) private-person ἄν γνῶναι, ὅτι δει με ἀπέκειναι [not an anger] might know, that it-was-proper [(that) I should-keep-off τῆς μοναρχίας. from-the single-rule [that I should not accept the sole command].

Οὗτος δὴ αἰρόντας Χειρίσοφον. Οὗτος δὴ αἰρόντας Χειρίσοφον. And Cheirisophas. Thus indeed 'they (them) 'chose

But, ὁ ἄνδρες, ἵστε μὲν τούτο, ὅτι ἐγὼ ἐν ἐν στασιαζον O men, know indeed this, that I-at-least would have-excited οὐδ', εἰ εἴλεσθε ἄλλον: μέντοι, ἔφη, no 'factions, if you-had-elected another; however, said-he, ἀνήσατε Ἐνεφούντα σὺν ἐλήμενοι: 'as you-have-done-a-service to Xenophon (by) not having-elected (him); as καὶ νῦν Δέξιττος ἥδη διεβαλεῖν αὐτὸν πρὸς even now Dexippus 'has already 'accused him before Ἀναξίβιον, οὕτω δὲ ἐδύνατο, καὶ ἐμοῦ μᾶλα Ἀναξίβιον, as-much-as he-could, even I (trying) much συγάξοντος αὐτῶν. 'O ὅδε ἔφη to-silence him. — (Dexippus) also said (that he) νομίζειν, αὐτῶν ἐπελήσαι μᾶλλον thought, (that) he (Xenophon) desired rather
συνάρχειν Τιμασίων, δντι Δαρδάνηι
to-be-joined-in-command-with Timasion, (he) being (a) Dardanian
στρατεύματος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ἦ ἐαυτῷ
of (the) army of — Clearchus, than with-himself
δντι Λακωνί. Ἑπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, (Cheirisophus) being (a) Lacedæmonian. Since however, said-he,
ἐλεοῦσε ἐμεῖ, ἐγὼ καὶ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν
(as) you-have-elected me, I. will even 'endeavour to-do
ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν, ὦ τι ἀν δύνασαι. Καὶ οὕτω you (all the) good, as-much-as 'I may 'be-able. And thus
παρασκευάζοσε ὡς ἀδριαν ὑμεῖς ἀναβίων,
prepare-yourself, as to-morrow you will-be-ordered (to depart),
ἐὰν ἦ πλοῦς. δὲ δὲ if there-may-be (a) sailing (permitted by the weather); and the
πλοῦς ἐσταί εἰς Ἡράκλειαν οὐν δεῖ
sailing will-be to Heraclea; therefore it-is-proper (that)
ἀπαντάς πειράσθη κατάσχειν ἐκεῖσε. δὲ τὰ all endeavour to-arrive there; and (about)—
ολλα βουλευσόμεθα, ἐπειδὰν ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε. other (things) we-will-consult, when we-arrive there.

CHAP. II.

'Ενεπείδευσε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι, ἔπλεον
Hence on-the next-day lifting (the anchors), they-sailed
καλῷ πνεύματι δύο ἡμέρας παρὰ γῆν. 'with (a) 'fair wind two days along (the land).
Καὶ παραπλέοντες ἔθερον τε Ἰασονίαν ἄκτην,
And sailing-along they-saw not-only (the) Jasonian beach,
ἐνθα ἦ Ἄργῳ λέγεται ὁμίσασθαι, καὶ τὰ where the Argo is-said to-have-been-moored, but also the
στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώ-
mouths of-the rivers, first indeed of-the Thermo-

35
δούντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἀλυος, δοὺς, afterwards also of-the Ἰριος, afterwards also the Ἀλυος, μετὰ δὲ τούτου τοῦ Παρθενίου. δὲ παραπλεύ-
after indeed that of-the Παρθενίου; and having-sailed-
σαντες τούτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλεαν, by this (last river) they-arrived at Ἡράκλεαν, Heracles, (a) Ἑλληνιδα πόλιν, ἄποικον Μεγαρέων, Ἡ
greek city, (a) colony 'of (the) Μεγαρέων, and ὤςαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Μαριανδυνῶν. Καὶ being in the territory 'of (the) Μαριανδυνῶν. And ὁ Ἡρακλῆς λέγεται καταβάναι ἐπὶ τοῦ κύνα — Ἁρκελς, it is said to-have-descended for the dog Ἀρθρος ἤ νῦν δεικνύσι, τὰ σημεῖα τῆς Ἀρθρος, where (indeed) now they-show the marks of—
καταβάσεως, τὸ βάθος ἐπὶ πλέον ἡ δύα (his) descent, to — (a) depth for more than two στάδια. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ὁδακλεώται πέμποντι στάδια. There the Ἁρκελούς send ξένων τρισχίλιων μεδίσεως
gifts-of-hospitality (namely) three-thousand μεδίσεως [the μεδίσεως
dlφίτων, καὶ δισχίλια κεράμια being about twelve gallons] of-barley-meal, and two-thousand [the κεράμια
οίνου, καὶ εἰκόσι βοίων, [the εἰκόσι βοίων] of-wine, and twenty και ἐκατόν οἰς. Ἐνταῦθα ποταμός, Λύκος
and (a) hundred sheep. Here (a) river, Λύκος (by) δνομα, Βὴ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, εὔβοις ὡς name, flows through the plain, (the) breadth (thereof being) about δύο πλῆθρων.
two πλῆθρα (or about two hundred feet).

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ συλλεγόντες ἔδοξεν ὑπάρξοντο
The soldiers indeed assembling deliberated
τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν, πότερον κρή
about the rest 'of (the) 'road, whether it-might-be-best
πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ατὰ (for them) to-have-proceeded from the Pontus (Euxinus) by
γῆν ἢ κατὰ θᾶλασσαν. Δὲ Λύκων ἁχαιός
land or by sea. But Lycon (an) Achaean
ἀναστὰς, εἶπε· Ἡμᾶς ἡμῶν μὲν, ὄ ἁνδρες, τοὺν
rising-up, said: I-wonder indeed, O men, (at) the
στρατηγῶν, οὗ τοὺς πειράται ἐκπορίζειν
generals, that they—do not 'endeavour to-procure
συντρέσιον ἡμῖν; γὰρ μὲν τὰ ξένα οὐ μὴ
money-for-provisions for-us; for indeed the presents 'will not —
γένηται σιτία τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμέρων;
'sufficient' food for the army for-three days!
δ' ἐστιν οὐκ, ἕφη, ἐπιστεύσα—
and there-is no (place), said-he, having-provided-ourselves-with-pro-
μενοι, ὑπὸ δὲν πορευόμεθα.
we, therefore it-seems
ἐμοι αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ὡρακλεώτας μὴ
to-me (that we might) to-ask the Heracleaës (for) not
ἐλαττῶν ἡ τρισχιλίων κυκλικηνών.
less than three-thousand cypress [about 15,000 dollars].
Δ' ἄλλος εἰπὲ μὴ ἐλαττῶν ἡ μυρίους· καὶ
But another said not less than ten-thousand; and
πρέσβεις ἐλομένους, πέμπειν μάλα αὐτίκα
deputies being-chosen, to-send (them) (more) immediately
πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἡμῶν καθημένων, καὶ εἰδέναι δὲ τι
to the city, we being-in-session, even to-know what
ἄδικαν αἰγίλλωσι, καὶ βούλευται πρὸς
said unjustly, and (they) propose about
ταῦτα. Ἐνευδὲν προσβάλλοντο πρέσβεις,
these (things). Then they-proposed (for) deputes,
πρὸς τοῦ Χειρίσοφον, ὥσι ἡ τρίτη ἄρχων;
they first indeed Cheirisophus, because he-had-been-chosen commander;
δ' ἔστι καὶ οἱ Ἐνευδέ|xenophons. But
and it-is also (that) — (others proposed) Xenophon. But
οὶ ἵσθαν ἀπεμάχοντο· γὰρ ταῦτα
they vehemently 'set-themselves-against (it) ; for this
'Εδόξει ἀμφότεροι. μὴ ἀναγκάζειν
seemed to both (of them), (that) they (ought) not to compel

'Ελληνιδα πόλιν καὶ φίλιν δίδοιν
(a) Greek city and (one) friendly (to them) to give

ὅ τι αὐτοί μὴ ἔδοντες. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτωι
what they were not willing (to give). When indeed these

ἔδοξον ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμποντι Δύναν
showed (themselves) no-ways-inclined to go, they send Lycon

Αχαῖοι, καὶ Καλλιμαχος Παρράσιον, καὶ
the Achaeans, and Callimachus (the) Parrhasian, and

Αγασιάν Στυμφάλιον. Οὕτωι ἔδοντες
Agaia (the) Stymphalian. These going (to the town)

ἔλεγον τὰ δεδομένα. Ἐφασαν δὲ
informed (of them) the resolutions. They said indeed (that)

τὸν Δύναν καὶ ἐπαπειεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν
— Lycon even threatened, if they did not do

ταύτα. Δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεωταὶ ἀχοῦσαι
these (things). And the Heracleans hearing (this)

ἐφασαν βουλεύσεινοι. καὶ εἰς οὕς συνῆγον
said (that) they would consult about it; and immediately they-collected

τε τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἄγορῶν, καὶ ἄνεσει καὶ
not-only (their) property from the fields, but also packed-

ἀσαν ἐξω τὴν
up (and carried) within (the city) the (things exposed for sale in the)

ἄγοραν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο, καὶ ὅπλα
market, and the gates were closed, and armed (men)

ἐφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν τεῖχων.
appeared on the walls.

'Εκ τούτου οἱ παράξυντες ταύτα ὑπώνυτο
Upon this — (those) having-promoted these (things) accused

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς διαφθείρειν τὴν πράξιν.
the generals (that they) spoiled the affair.

Καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαῖοι συνίσταντο. δὲ
And the Arcadians and the Achaeans joined-together; and

τε Καλλιμαχος ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ Δύναν ὃ
not-only Callimachus the Parrhasian, but also Lycon the
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER II.

"Ἀχαϊὸς προειστήκει μάλιστα αὐτῶν. Ἀχαῖαν ἑκατονταζωνηθέντων ἡμῶν," most ‘over them’ [were the

head leaders]. And the words were to-them, [and the con-

ως εἰς αἰσχρὸν Ἀθη-

ναῖον ἄρχειν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαμιο-

νίας, (should) rule Peloponnesians and Lacedaemo-

νίων, παρεχόμενον μηδεμίαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν

nians, (and he) contributing no force to the

στρατιάν, καὶ σφᾶς ἔχειν τοὺς πόλους

army, and (that) they-themselves had the trouble

μὲν, δὲ ἄλλους τὰ κέρδη, καὶ ταῦτα

indeed, but others, the profits, and these (things taking place)

σφῶν κατευγιασμένων τὴν σωτηρίαν.

they-themselves having-affect the safety (of all);

γὰρ τοὺς κατευγιασμένους εἶναι Ἀρχάδας

for (that) — (those) accomplishing (this) were Arcadians

καὶ Ἀχαιοὺς, δὲ τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα εἶναι

and Achaeans, and (that) the rest (of the) army was (as)

ἄνδειαν (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ἐπέρ ἔμικτο

nothing; (and there-was indeed in truth above half

τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρχάδες καὶ

of-the whole army (who were) Arcadians and

Ἀχαιοῖ). Οὐν εἰ σωφρονεῖν, αὐτοὶ

Achaeans). Therefore if they-were-wise, these (the Achaeans

συστάντες, καὶ ἑλόμενοι στρατηγοῦς

and Arcadianœ) having-united, and choosing commanders

ἐναυτῶν, ἄν περιοίντο τὴν πορείαν καὶ

themselves, they might ‘make the journey by

ἐναυτοῦς, καὶ πειρῶντο λαμβάνειν τι ἄγαδὼν.

themselves, and endeavour to-procure something good

Ταῦτ’ ἐδοξεῖ· καὶ

(for themselves). This seemed (good and was adopted); and (the)

Ἀρχάδες ἡ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀπολυπόντες Χειρίσοφοι, εἰ

Arcadians or Achaeans leaving Cheirisophus, if
τινες ἦσαν παρ’ αὐτῷ, καὶ Χειρισόφος, συνέστησαν—any were with him, as also Xenophon, joined-together
καὶ αἱροῦνται δέκα στρατηγοὺς ἕκαστῶν—(with the rest); and choose ten commanders-of-themselves;
δὲ τούτους ἑφηθύσαντο—ἐκ τῆς νικώσις—and (that) these (when) they had decided by the majority
ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὅ τι δοξοίη. Οὖν μὲν ἦν
wore-to-do that whatever might-be-decided-on. Therefore indeed the
ἄρχη πάντως τοῦ Χειρισόφος ἐνταίδα
command of all the (army) by Cheirisophus was then
κατελήλυσιν ἐκτεὶ ἡ ἐβδομήμη ἡμέρα ἅφ’ ἦς
'was dissolved on (the) sixth or seventh day after which
ἡρέθη.
he was chosen.

Χειρισόφος μέντοι ἐδοξίλεπτο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν
Xenophon however wished to-make the journey
κοινὴ μετ’ αὐτῶν, νομίζον οὗτος εἶναι
in-common with them, thinking (that) thus it (would) be
ἄσφαλέστεραν, ἢ ἔκαστον στέλλεσθαι
safer, than (that) each (should) go
ἱδία. ἀλλὰ Νέων ἐπείδειν αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι
his own (way); butoleon persuaded him to-proceed
καὶ αὐτόν, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου, ὅτι Κλεανδρὸς
by himself, having heard from—Cheirisophus, that
ὁ ἀρμοστής ἐν Βυζάντιῳ φαίη
Cleander, the governor in Byzantium said (that he would) come to

λιμένα Κάλλης ἔχων τριήρεις. Οὖν συνεβοῦ—
the harbour of Calpe having galleys. Therefore he-ad-
λέειν διὰ ταύτα ὅπως μηδεὶς μετάγχων vised (him) for this (purpose) that no-one might-participate
ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, ἀλλ’ αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιώται
(to be) on the galleys, but they and the soldiers
αὐτῶν. Καὶ Χειρισόφος μὲν ἄμα ἀδυν
of-themselves. And Cheirisophus 'being indeed at-the-same-time 'dis-
mὸν τοὺς γεγενημένους, δὲ ἄμα μυ-
heartened with-the (things) having-happened, and 'being also 'dis-
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER II.

σῶν ἐκ τούτου ὁ πολεμὸς τὸ στρατεύμα, gusted on-account of-these (things) (with) the army,
ἐπετρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὧ τι βούλεται. Ἑνοφῶν he-permits him to-do what he-wishes. Xenophon
δὲ ἐτὶ μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς also moreover indeed (for some time) attempted (after) having-left
τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι. δὲ αὐτῷ θυμεῖν
the army to-sail-away; and he sacrificing (to)
Ἡρακλῆς τῷ ἤγεμόνι, καὶ κοινοῦμένῳ πότερα Hercules the conductor, and consulting (with him) whether
εἰς λόγον καὶ ἀμείνον στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχοντι it-would-be better and more-desirable to-march, having
τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, (those) remaining (with him) of-the soldiers,
ἡ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ὁ θεὸς ἐσῆμην τοὺς ἱεροῖς or to-take-leave-of (them), the god signified by-the victims
συστρατεύεσθαι. Οὕτω τὸ στρατεύμα (that he ought) to-march-with (them). Thus the army
γιγνεται τρίχη. Ἀρχάδες καὶ μὲν became (divided into) three-parts; (the) Arcadians and indeed (the)
Ἄχαιοι, πλείους ἡ τετραχικώτεροι, πάντες ὕπληται. Achaeans, more than four-thousand, all heavy-armed-men;
δὲ Χειρισόφω μὲν εῖς τετραχισίους but with-Cheirisophus (there were) indeed in (number) four-hundred
καὶ χιλίους ὕπληται, δὲ πελτασταί εἰς and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number)
ἐπταχισίους, οἱ Ὁράκες Κλεάρχου. δὲ Ἑξο-
seven-hundred, (being) the Thracians of-Clearchus; and with-Xenophon
καὶ χιλίους ὕπληται, δὲ πελτασταί εἰς τρια-
phoi instead (there were) in (number) seven-hundred and
χιλίους ὕπληται, δὲ πελτασταί εἰς τρια-
a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number) three-
κισίους. δὲ αὐτὸς μόνος εἶχεν ἱππικὸν ἄμφι
hundred; and he alone had cavalry about
τετταράκοντα ἱππέας.
forty horsemen.
Kai μὲν οἱ Ἀρχάδες διαφαγάμενοι πλοία παρὰ
And indeed the Arcadians having-procured ships from
τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν, πρῶτοι πλέονσιν, ὅπως, ἐξαίφνης
the Heracles, first set-sail, that-is, suddenly
ἐπιπεδόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, λάβονεν
making-an-irruption-against the Bithynians, (that) they-might-take
δὲ τι πλείστα·
what most (they could); [as much as they could;] and
dεῖδον οὐκ ἵππους
descending (from their vessels) at (the) harbour of Calpe,
pως κατὰ μέσον τῆς Ῥώμης. Δὲ Χειρίσοφος
somewhere about (the) middle — of Thrace. And Chirisophus
εἶδος ἄρξαμενος ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
having immediately commenced (the journey) from the city
τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἐπορεύετο πεζῇ διὰ τῆς χώρας·
of-the Heracles proceeded-forth on-foot through the territories
ἀκομφίαται eis τὴν Ῥώμην
(of the Heracles); but when he-entered (i.e.): — Thrace
ἐξελεύσατο παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν· καὶ γὰρ ἤσθενεν.
his went along the sea; for indeed he-was-sick.
Æνοφῶν δὲ λαμβάνει πλοῖα, ἀποδαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ
Xenophon indeed having-taken vessels, disembarks on the
δρια τῆς Ῥώμης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος, καὶ
confines of — Thrace and — Heracles, and
ἐπορεύετο διὰ μεσογαίας.
proceeded through (the) inland (parts.)
CHAPTER III.

On τρόπον μὲν οὖν τε ἦ ὑρχῆ Χειρισφόου τοῦ παντὸς κατελίθη, καὶ τὸ sophus (over) the entire (army) was-dissolved, but also (how) the στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς army of the Greeks was-divided into the (three parts) εἰρηταὶ ἐπάνω. Ἐκαστοὶ δὲ αὐτῶν has been related above. Each indeed of these (three divisions) ἔφοραν τάδε. Οἱ Ἀρχάδες μὲν, διὸς ἀπέβησαν fared thus. The Arcadians indeed, as they had disembarked νυκτὸς εἰς ἀμένα Κάλπης, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς by night at the (the) port of Calpe, proceeded to the πρώτας κῶμας διὸς τριάκοντα στάδια first (or nearest) villages (being) about thirty stadia ἀπὸ τῆς ἀλάττης. 'Επεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο φῶς from (the) sea. When indeed it was (day) light ἔκαστος στρατηγὸς ἤγεν ἐπὶ κῶμην τὸν λόχον each commander led against (a) village the company ἐαυτῷ. δὲ ὅποια ἐδοξεῖ εἶναι μεῖζων of himself, but whatever (village) seemed to be greater (than the rest) οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦγον σύνδυο λόχους. the commanders led 'two companies 'together (against it).

Δὲ συνεβάλοντο καὶ λόφον, εἰς δὲν, δεόι And they agreed 'also about (a) 'hill, on which it might be-πάντας ἀλληλοθεία καὶ, ἀτε ἐπιπεσοῦντες proper for all to reassemble; and, as falling on εξαιρῆσις, ἔλαβον τε πόλλα ἀνδράποδα, (these people) suddenly, they took not only many slaves, καὶ περιεβάλοντο πολλὰ πρόβατα. but also surrounded many (flocks of) sheep (and other cattle).

Δ' οἱ Θρακεῖς οἱ διαφεύγοντες ἔδροι. But the Thracians — (those namely) fleeing away collected.
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

κοντο· δὲ πολλοὶ διέφευγοι, δυτες πελτασται, together; and many escaped, being targetees, ὀπλιτας ἐξ τῶν χειρῶν αὐτῶν. (from the) heavy-armed-men (even) from the hands of them.

'Επει δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτοι. When indeed 'they (the Thracians) 'had-collected-together, 'they first μὲν ἐπιτίθενται τῷ λόχῳ Σμικρητος, ἐνὸς τῶν indeed 'attacked the company of-Smicrates, one of the στρατηγῶν. 'Αρχάδων, ἢδη ἀπιστὶ εἰς τὸ commanders 'of (the) 'Arcadians, now departing to the συνεχείμενον καὶ ἄγοντι πολλὰ χρήματα. place-agreed-on and leading (with him) much booty.

Καὶ τέως μὲν οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔμαχοντο ἄμα. And for-a-while indeed the Greeks fought while πορευόμενοι. Δὲ διαβάσει ἐτε marching-forward. But 'they [the Greeks] 'being-about-to-cross over (a) χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτοὺς, καὶ τε ἀποκτιν- ravine they-routed them, and 'they not-only 'killed νίσαι τὸν Σμικρητα αὐτῶν, καὶ πάντας τοὺς νύσσαι τὸν Σμικρητα αὐτῶν, καὶ πάντας τοὺς — Smicrates himself; but also all the ἄλλους. ἄλλου λόχου δὲ τῶν δέκα στρα- others (with him); of another company indeed of the ten com-

cτηγῶν, τοῦ Ἡγγανδρου, κατέλιπον manders, — (that namely) of Hegesander, they-left μόνους ὡκτω· καὶ Ἡγγανδρος αὐτῶς ἐσώθη. Καὶ only eight; and Hegesander himself was saved. And δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοι συνώθουν, οἱ μὲν σὺν also the other captains came-together, — (some) indeed with πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων. δὲ οἱ things, — (others) indeed without things; but the Ἐραξες, ἐπει εἰτύχησαν τούτῳ τὸ εἰτύχημα, Thracians, when they-had-luckily-met (with) this — good-luck, τε συνεθών ἄλλους, καὶ συνελέγοντο not-only cried-out (encouragingly) to one-another, but also assembled ἔβρωμενως τῆς νυκτὸς. Καὶ ἄμα ἡμέρα, strongly during-the night. And at-the-time (of) day light,
καὶ πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς καὶ πελτασταὶ ἑτάττοντο
both many horsemen and targeteers arranged-themselves "in
κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἐνδαὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστρα-
(a) 'circle round the hill, where the Greeks were-
tοπεδεύοντο, καὶ ἀεὶ πλεῖονες
encamped, and continually more (of these Thracians)
συνέβρεον. Καὶ ἀσφαλῶς προσέβαλλον πρὸς
kept-flocking-together. And 'they safely 'rushed against
tοὺς ὀπλίτας. γὰρ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες εἰχον
the heavy-armed-men; for indeed the Greeks had
οὔτε τοξότην, οὔτε ἄκουστοτήν οὔτε ἵππεα. neither (an) archer, or (a) javelin-man or (a) horseman.
Δὲ οἱ προσέδεοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες
And the (Thracians) running-up and
ἵκαντιον·
riding-forwards
δὲ ὧποτε 'threw (their) 'darts (among them); and when 'they [the
ἔπισσων αὐτοῖς, βαδίζω ἀπέφευγον. "Αλλοι
Greeks] advanced-against them, easily fled-away. | Others
dὲ ἐπετίθεντο ἄλλη.
indeed attacked other (part) [some of the Thracians attacked
Καὶ μὲν τῶν πολλοί
one part, others another part]. And indeed of-the (Greeks) many
ἐτυτρώσκοντο, δὲ τῶν οὐδεὶς. ὡστε
were-wounded, but of-the (Thracians) none; so-that (the Greeks)
οὐκ ἔδυναντο κυνθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἄλλα
'were not 'able to-move from the place, but
οἱ Θράκες τελευτώντες καὶ εἰργοῦν αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ
the Thracians finishing even prohibited them from
tοῦ ὕδατος. Δὲ ἔπει
the water [finally even cut them off from water]. But when (the)
ἀπορία ἦν πολλῇ, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν·
distress was much, they-began-to-speak about 'terms;
καὶ μὲν τὰ ἄλλα ὀμολόγησαν αὐτοῖς, δὲ οἱ
and indeed the other (terms) had-been-agreed-on by-them, but the
Θράκες οὐκ ἑδίδοσαν ὃμήρους, τῶν Ἕλληνων
Thracians 'would not 'give hostages, the Greeks
aitoivnvs, alla en touto isxeto*
requesting (them), but on this (the affair) was-in-check;
mev de ta twn 'Arapadwn eixe
indeed truly the (affairs) of-the Arcadians had (themselves)
oittos.
so.

Δe Xeiriśofos porenvmevos ἄσφαλῶς παρά
But Chreisophus proceeding safely along (the)
θάλατταν, ἀφικνεῖται εἰς λυμένα Κάλπης.
sea (coast), arrived at (the) harbour of-Calpa
Eneophonti de porenvomeno diα τῆς μεσογαίας,
Xenophon however proceeding through the interior,
oi ἵππεις προκατάδειοντες ἐντυγχάνονσι
— (his) horsemen hastening-on-before fall-in-with (some)
presbítas porenvoménoi poi.
Kai eπεὶ ἵκες-
ambassadors proceeding some-where. And when they-had-
sav para Eneophonta, ἔρωτα αὐτοὺς εἶ
conducted (them) to Xenophon, he-asked them if
pouv ἡσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος, ὅντος
any-where they-might-have-seen another army, being
'Ellinikou. Δe oi ἔλεγον πάντα τα
Grecian. And — they-told (him) all the (things)
γεγενημένα, καὶ ὅτι νῦν πολυορκοῦνται
having-occurred, and that now 'they [the Greeks] 'were-besieged
ἐπὶ λόφου, δὲ πάντες οἱ Θράκες εἶνεν περι-
(on) (a) hill, and (that) all the Thracians were sur-
xeuklwménoi aútois. 'Eνταῦθα. μὲν ἵσχυρας
rounding 'them. Then indeed he strictly
ēfulatte toutous tois andropous, ópos eīne
'guarded these-same — men, so-that they-might-be
γεμάτες δπον δεν. 'de katastísa
'guards when it-might-be-required; and having-stationed
skoptous, sunelefs tois stratiútas kai ełêxen.
scouts, he-assembled the soldiers and said:
'Andres stratiútai, oi mêv twn 'Arapadwn
Men soldiers, — (some) indeed of-the Arcadians
τεθνάσων, δὲ ὁ λοιπὸν πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ τινὸς λόφου. Δ' ἔγγορε νομίζω, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολούνται, hill. And I-at-least think, if these are-destroyed, 
οὐδὲ εἶναι οἰδεμίαν σωτηρίαν ἡμῖν, (that there will) neither be any salvation for-us, 
πολεμῶν ὄντων μὲν οὕτω πολλῶν, δὲ οὕτω (the) enemy being indeed so numerous, and so 
τεθαρρυκτῶν. Οὖν κράτιστον ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν confident-and-daring. (It is) therefore best for-us to-assist 
τοῖς ἀνδράσις ὃς τάχιστα, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι the men 'as speedily 'as-possible, so-that if as-yet 
eἰσὶ σῶμα, μαχόμεθα, καὶ μὴ, λειψάντες they-are safe, we-may fight (together), and not, being-left 
μόνοι, καὶ κυνωνεύμεν μόνοι. Νῦν μὲν οὖν alone, even encounter danger alone. Now indeed therefore 
στρατοπεδευμένως προελθόντες δοσον 'let (us) 'encamp (after) having-marched-forward as-much 
ἄν δοξῇ εἰναι καιρὸς εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι may seem to-be (the) proper (time) to the taking-of-supper; 
δ' ἐκεῖ ἄν πορευόμεθα, Τιμασίων ἔχων τούς and while 'we may 'be-marching-forward 'let Timasion having the 
ὑπείραζον προελαυνότω ἐφορὸν ἡμᾶς, cavalry (with him) 'ride-on-before 'keeping us 'in-view, 
καὶ σκυπεῖτω τὰ ἐμπροσθεν, ως μνῆδεν 
and 'let (him) 'reconnoitre the (country) in-front, that nothing 
λάθη ἡμᾶς. (Δὲ καὶ παρέπεμψε may-be-concealed from-us. (And he [Xenophon] also 
εἰς ὄνομας ἄνθρωπους τῶν γυναῖκῶν εἰς τὰ active men of-the light-armed (troops) to the 
πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄχρα, ὅπως, εἰ ποὺ καθόρσων flanks and to the hills, so-that, if anywhere they-might-see 
tὶ ποθεν, σημαίνοιεν· ἔκλεισες δὲ any-thing thence, they-might-signify (it); he-ordered (them) moreover 
καῖειν ἀπαντᾷ διὸ ἐντυγχάνοιεν καῦσίμω. Ἔτρα to-burn every-thing that they-might-meet-with combustible.) For
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ἡμεῖς δὲν ἀναδρομήσαν εὐδένδε οὐδαμοῦ· γὰρ μὲν we can hence no-where; for indeed
καὶ, πολλὴ ἀπείναυ πάλιν εἰς said-he, | (it is) much [it is a long way] to-go-hence back to
'Ἡράκλειον, δὲ πολλῆς διελθεῖν εἰς Χρυσόπολιν· Heraclea, and much to-go to Chrysonpolis;
dὲ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησίον· εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης and the enemy (being) near; to (the) harbour of Calpe
dὲ, ἐνῶ εἰκάζομεν Χειρίσοφον εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται, indeed, where we-suppose Cheirisophus to-be, if he-is-safe,
οὐτὲ πλοῖα, οἷς ἀποπλευσούμεθα, τε μένουσι neither ships, in-which we-may-set-sail, but (we) remaining
αὐτοῦ οὖδὲ ἔστι τὰ ἑπτάδεια μιᾶς ἡμέρας. there neither is-there — provisions (enough) for-one day.

Δὲ τῶν πολιορκομένων ἀπολομένων, σὺν τοῖς But — (those) besieged perishing, with the
μόνοις Χειρίσοφον ἐστὶ κάχιον διακενδυνεῖν, (men) alone of Cheirisophus it-is worse to-face-danger,
ἡ τώνδε σωζόντων, πάντας ἐλθόντας εἰς than — (these) being-saved, all coming to
tαυτῶν ἔχεισθαι κοινῇ τῇς σωτηρίας. that (place) to-take-hold in-common of — (our) safety.

'Αλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασμένους τῇν γνώμην But it-is-necessary having-prepared-and-made-up — (our) minds
πορεύεσθαι, δὲς νῦν ἔστιν ἡ τελευτήσαι to-proceed-forward, as (if) now it-is either to-have-ended (our lives)
eικλεόντως, ἡ ἐργάσασθαι κάλλιστον. ἔργον, gloriously, or to-have-performed (a) most-honourable work,
tοσούτως Ἐλληνας σώσαντας. Καὶ ἵσως δὲ so-many Greeks being-saved. And perhaps — (some)
θεὸς ἄγει οὖντις, δὲ βούλεται ταπεινωθῆναι god leads (the affair) thus, who wishes to-humble
tοὺς μεγαλυγορήσαντας, ὡς πλεῖον φρονοῦντας, (those) having-spoken-bastfully, as 'being more
'wise
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER III.

... beginning

... (than we are), and to-render, us,

... (every thing) from (consulting the) gods, more-honoured (than)

... 'Alλ' χρή ἐπεσθαί, καὶ they. But it-is-necessary to-follow (your leaders), and

... προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὡς ἀν δύνησθε ποιεῖν apply — (your) minds, that 'you may 'be-able to-perform

... τὸ paraγγελλόμενον. the (thing) ordered.

... Ἐπὶ τὸν ταύτ’ ἤγειτο. Δὲ οἱ

... Having-said this he-led (his men forward). And the

... ἡσσεῖς διασπείραμεν ἑφ’ ὅσον cavalry spreading-themselves over as-'much (ground) 'as had (itself)

... καλὸς, ἐκαίον ἦ ἐθάδινον, καὶ safe-and-proper, (and) they-set-fire in-whatever (place) they-went, and

... οἱ πελτασταὶ, ἑπιταριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, the targeteers, moving-abreast-of (them) along the heights,

... ἐκαίον πάντα δοὺς ἑώρων καύσιμα, καὶ ἰδὲ ἦ burned all what they-saw combustible, and also the

... στρατιὰ, εἷς ἐνυγχάνοιεν τινὶ para-army (did the same), if they-found any-thing

... λειπομένῳ: ἤστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόχει left (unhurt); so-that all the place seemed

... αἰθέσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολύ. Ἔπει to-be-on-fire, and the army to-be large. When

... ἐδὲ ἦν ἑρᾶ, κατεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐκβάντες indeed it-was time, they-one-camped having-gone

... ἐπὶ λόφον, καὶ ἑώρων τε τὰ πυρὰ τῶν πολεμίων, on (a) hill, and they-saw also the fires of-the enemy,

... (ἄπειρων ὡς τετταράκοντα σταδίους,) καὶ (for they-were-distant about forty stadia,) and

... αὐτοὶ ἐκαίον πλείστα ὡς ἐδύναντο. Ἔπει they [the Greeks] burned as-much as they-could. When

... ἐδειπνησαν τὰ χειστα, παρηγγέλησα κατασκευ—however they-had-sopped very-speedily, it-was-ordered to-extin-
νῦνα πᾶντα τὰ πυρᾶ. Καὶ µὲν ποιησάµενοι
guish all the fires. And indeed having-stationed
φυλακὰς τὴν νύκτα ἐκαθευδὸν· ἄµα δὲ
sentinels for-the night they-went-to-sleep; at-the-time indeed
τῇ ὕµέρᾳ προσευξάµενοι τοῖς θεῖοι, καὶ συν-
(of) day (light) having-prayed to-the gods, and putting-
ταξάµενοι ὡς εἰς µάχην, ἐπορεύοντο τάχιστα ἦ
themselves-in-order as for battle, they-marched-forth as-speedily as
ἐδύναντο. Τµασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ιππεῖς, ἔχοντες τοὺς
Timation and also the horsemen, having the
ἡγεµόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες, γενόµενοι ἐλάνθανον
guides and riding-on-before, having-got concealed
αἰτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ, ἔνθα οἱ Ἑλληνες
(and unknown to) themselves on the hill, where the Greeks
ἐπολιορκοῦντο. Καὶ ὄρωσιν οὐχ οὔτε φίλον
were-besieged. And see not either (a) friendly
στράτευµα, οὔτε πολέµον, (καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι
army, nor (an) inimical (one), (and they-announce
ταῦτα πρὸς τὸν Ἑνοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευµα,)
these (things) to — Xenophon and the army,)
dὲ καὶ γραίδια γερόντια καὶ ὀλίγα πρόβατα
but only old-women (and) old-men and (a) few sheep
καὶ βοῦς καταλελειµµένους. Καὶ µὲν τὸ πρῶτον
and oxen left-behind. And indeed (at) the first
ἡµ ἡµίµα, τῇ ἑτῃ τὸ γεγενηµένον·
there-was wonder-and-surprise, what-might-be the (thing) having-happened;
ἐπευτα δὲ καὶ ἐπνεῦσαντο τῶν καταλελειµ-
afterwards indeed also they-learned from — (those) left-
µένων, ὅτι οἱ Θρᾴκες µὲν εἰδύς ἀφ’ ἐσπέρας
behind, that the Thracians indeed immediately after night-fall
ἄχοντο ἀπολύντες· δὲ καὶ ἔφασαν τοὺς ᾿Ελλήνας
departed going-away; and also they-said (that) the Greeks
ὁχεσθαι ξωθέν· δὲ ὅπου οἶχ
departed early-in-the-morning; but whither (that they did) not
εἰδέναι.
know.
Δυφι Ἑνοφῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ἔτη ἱστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, after they-had-breakfasted, having-packed-up proceeded (on their march), desiring as soon-as-possible to-have-joined the ἄλλοις εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης. Καὶ πορεύομενοι others at (the) harbour of-Calpe. And proceeding ἐδρὼν τὸν στίθον τῶν Ἀρχάδων καὶ Ἀχαίων they-perceived the track of-the Arcadians and Achaeans κατὰ τὴν οδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο κατὰ τὴν οδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. When indeed they-had-arrived εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ, τε ἰσμενοί εἶδον at the same (spot), (they were) not-only pleased (when) they-saw ἄλληλους, καὶ ἰσπάζοντο ὡς πέρ ἄδελφοις. Καὶ one-another, but-also embraced like brothers. And οἱ Ἀρχάδες ἐπινόοντο τῶν περὶ Ἑνοφῶντα, the Arcadians inquired of—(those with) Xenophon, τί κατασθέσειαν τὰ πυρὰ· γὰρ μὲν ἤμελη, ἐφοσαν, why they-had-put-out the fires; for indeed we, said-they, φόμεθα μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἰμάς, ἐπειδὴ οὐκ thought indeed at—first (that) you, when we-did not ἐφεύρωμεν τὰ πυρὰ, ἰδεῖν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπί τούς 'see the fires, were-coming at—night against the πολεμίου τοῦ (καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, δὲ γε ἐδόθην enemy; (and the enemy also, as at-least it-appeared ἦμιν, δείσαντες τοῦτο ἀπῆλθον· γὰρ σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ to-us, fearing this departed; for nearly about τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν). Δὲ ἔτη οὐκ then that—time they-disappeared). But when you-did not ἀφίκεσθε, δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, φόμεθα ἰμάς, 'arrive, and the time passed-by, we-thought (that) you, πυρεύοντος τὰ παρὰ ἦμιν, φοβησάντας hearing 'the (things) relating to-us, (that) being-alarmed οἱ χεισθαν ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλασσαν· καὶ ἔδοξει you-departed fleeing to (the) sea; and it-seemed
Moreover μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ἦμῶν. Oūτως to-us (that) we-ought not 'to-be-left-behind you. Thus oūν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπορεύθημεν δεῦρο. therefore also we proceeded in-this-direction.

CHAPTER IV.

Οὖν μὲν ταῦτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἡμιλίζοντο therefore indeed that — (same) day they-encamped αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ ἁμένι. Τὸ τούτο there on the shore near the port. — This χωρίον δὲ, ὁ καλεῖται λιμήν Κάλπης, ἔστι place indeed, which is-called (the) harbour of-Calpe, is μὲν ἐν τῷ Ῥήγη τῇ ἐν τῷ 'Ασίᾳ indeed in — Thrace the (Thrace namely) in — Asia; δὲ αὐτή ἡ Ῥήγη ἔστιν ἀρξαμένη ἀπὸ τοῦ and this — Thrace is (in extent) beginning from the στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας, mouth of-the Pontus (Huxinus) just-to Heraclea, ἕπι δὲξιά εἰσπλέοντι εἰς τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ on (the) right (of one) sailing to the Pontus. And μὲν ἑστι τριήρεις κόποις ἐκ Βυζαντίου εἰς indeed it-is 'for (a) galleys with-oars from Byzantium to Ἡρακλείαν μᾶλα μακρὰς ἡμέρας πλοῦς. δὲ ἐν Heraclea (a) very long day’s sail; and in τῷ μέσῳ μὲν οὐδεμία ἄλλη the middle (between these towns there is) indeed no other πόλις οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνὶς, ἄλλὰ Βιζυννοὶ town either friendly or Greek, but Byzantine Θράκες. καὶ οὗτος ἀν λάβωσι τῶν Thracians (occupy it); and whom 'they may 'take of-the Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίστουτον τας ἡ πως ἄλλως λέγονται Greeks cast-abore or in-any other (manner) they-are-said
καλπης κειται εν μεσω μεν εκατερωθεν
of Calpe lies in mid (way) indeed from-both-sides (for those)
πλευτην εξ ηρακλειας και Βυζαντιου, δε εν τη
sailing from Heraclea and Byzantium, and in the
θαλατη έστι χωριον προχειμενον, το
sea there is a-piece-of-land (there) projecting-forward, the (part)
μεν αυτου καθηκον εις την θαλατην αποθέο
indeed of-it reaching-down to the sea (as a) steep
πέτρα, ης οπη ελαχιστον ου μειον είχοσιν
rock, (the) height where (it is) the least not less (than) twenty
όργυιον: δε ο αυχην, δ άνηκον εις την
fathoms; and the neck, — (that namely) extending into the
γην του χωριου, το ειρος μαλποτα
land of-the country, the breadth (of this neck is) at-most
τετταρων πληθρων: 
four plethra (or about four hundred feet); and the place
έντος του αιτχεος ικανων μυριων άνδρων
within the neck is-sufficient for ten-thousand
μεν οικησαι.
men to-inhabit (or quarter on). (The) harbour indeed (is) under this —
πέτρα εχον το αιγιαλον προς έσπεραν.
(same) rock having — (its) shore towards (the) west.
δε χρηνη σηδεος ιδατος και αρδουνος ρεουσα ετη
And (a) spring of-sweet water and copiously flowing near
τη θαλατη αυτη, έπω τη έπιχρατεια του
the sea itself, (is) under the command of — (this)
χωριον.
(ch) μεν πολλα ειλα και αλλα,
much and (of) different
place. And indeed (there is) much wood and (of) different
δε πανυ πολλα και καλα ναυπηγησιμα
(kinds), but especially much and fine (wood) fit-for-ship-building
επι αυτη τη θαλατη.
on this — (same) sea (coast). And the mountain,
εν τω λιμενι, ανηκε μεν εις μεσογαιαν
(that namely) at the harbour, extends indeed to (the) interior
δοσον ἐπὶ εἰκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τούτο γεώδες as-much-as to twenty stadia, and this (part is) earthy καὶ ἀλιεὺς· δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλασσαν, πλέον and clear-of-stones; and the (part) along (the) sea, more ἢ ἐπὶ εἰκοσι σταδίους, δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντο- than about twenty stadia, thick with-many and vari-

δανοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ἔντοις. Δὲ ἡ ἄληλη ἀλλὰ and large trees. And the other (parts of the)

χώρα, καλὴ καὶ πολλὴ· καὶ εἰσὶ πολλαῖς country (were) beautiful and much (in extent); and there were many καὶ οἰκουμέναι κόμαι ἐν αὐτῇ· γὰρ ἡ γῆ and populous villages in this (country); for the land produces — barley, and wheat, and all (kinds of)

δοσίαι, καὶ μελίναις, καὶ σήσμαι, καὶ ἄραιτα

logumes, and millet, and sesame, and abundance (of)

σίκα, καὶ πολλὰς ἀμπέλους καὶ ἱδνοίνους, καὶ figs, and many vines even producing sweet-wine, and πάντα τάλλα πλην ἑλαιῶν. Τοιαῦτη all else except (trees) of oil [the olive tree]. Such μὲν ἢν ἡ χώρα. Ἑσσηνων δὲ indeed was the country. (The Greeks) 'pitched (their) 'tents indeed ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάσσῃ δὲ εἰς τὸ on the shore by the sea; but into the πόλισσα ἄν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐθούλοντο city (that) might have been they 'did not 'wish στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἔδοξε καὶ (to march and) encamp, but it-seemed (that) even τὸ ἑλθείν ἐνταῦθα· εἶναι ἐξ ἐπιστολῆς, | the to-go there [going there] was from design, (as if) τινῶν βουλομένων κατοικίσαι πόλιν. Τὰρ ὅι some (persons) were-wishing to-build (a) city. For the πλείστως τῶν στρατιωτῶν οὐχ ἐκπεπλευκότες ἦσαν most of-the soldiers 'had not 'sailed

σπάνει βιόν ἐπὶ τούτων τῆν (from home) for-want-of subsistence on this (same)
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER IV.

μοσοφοράν, ἄλλ' ἀκούοντες τὴν ἄρετὴν Κύρου,
service, but hearing-of the virtue of Cyrus,
oι μὲν καὶ ἄγοντες ἄνδρας, οἱ καὶ δὲ
— (some) indeed even bringing men. — (others) also indeed
προσανελακτότες χρήματα,
having-in-addition-spent money, (in the cause), and others of these
ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, δὲ
(soldiers) having-send-from (their) fathers and mothers, and
καὶ οἱ καταλιπόντες τέκνα, ὡς κτησιμενοι
also — (some) leaving-behind (their) children, that they-might-acquire
χρήματ' αὐτοῖς, ἠξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ
money for-them, (then) coming back, hearing also
tοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πράτ- (that) — others — (those namely) with Cyrus | were-
τειν πολλά καὶ ἀγαθά.
doing many and good (things) [were acquiring wealth].

Οντες τοιοῦτοι ἐπόδουν σώζεσθαι εἰς τὴν
Being such (men) they-desired | to-be-saved to —
Ελλάδα.
Greece [to return in safety to Greece].

"Επειδὴ δὲ ἵστερα ἡμέρα τῆς συνόδου
When indeed (the) next day of — (their) coming-together
ἐίς ταῦτον ἐγένετο, Ξενοφόν. ἔδυετο ἐπ' in (that) place was, Xenophon sacrificed about (an)
ἐξοδῷ. γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη ἐξάγειν. ἐπὶ τὰ expedition; for it-was necessary to-send-out (the soldiers) for —
ἐπιτήδεια. δὲ καὶ ἔπενοι θάπτειν τοὺς provisions; and also he-was-thinking (about) burying the
νεκροὺς. "Επει δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καὶ dead. When indeed the victims happened (favourably) also
οἱ Ἀρκάδες ἐποντο, καὶ μὲν Ἑθαψαν ἔκαστος the Arcadians accompanied (him), and indeed they-buried each-of
τοὺς νεκροὺς, τοὺς πλείστους, ἐνθαπερ ἐποσσών· the dead, the most, where they-had-fallen;
(γὰρ ἀδη πᾶσαν πεμπταίοι, καὶ for already | they-were five-days'-ones, | they were five days dead,) and
ἔν ἐτι οὖχ οἶνον τε ἁναιρεῖν· δὲ
it was now not possible to take (them) away); and
συνενεγκόντες ἐνίους τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ῥόδων,
having-gathered-together some of (those) from the road,
ἐθάψαν· ὡς κάλλιστα ἐθύναντο ἐκ τῶν
they-buried (them) as becomingly (as) they could from (their)
ὑπαρχόντων· δὲ οὐς μὴ εὑρίσκον
existing (means); but (those) that they did not find
ἐποίησαν μέγα κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπέθεσαν
they-made (a) large cenotaph for them, and placed-on (it)
στεφάνους. Δὲ ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεχόρησαν
stepped (them) as having-performed these (things) they returned
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ μὲν τόστε δειπνήσαντες
to the camp. And indeed then having-supped
τῇ ἀστεραίᾳ δὲ πάντες οἱ στρα-
they-went-to-sleep. On the next-day indeed all the sol-
τιῶται συνήλθον· (δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τὲ
tiota assembled-together; (but chiefly Agasias indeed (the)
Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς συνῆγε· καὶ Ἰερώνυμος
Stymphalian captain assembled (them); and Hieronymus (the)
'Ἡλείος λοχαγὸς, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν
'Elian captain, and others the oldest of the
'Ἀρχάδων). Καὶ ἐποίησαντο δόγμα, εάν τις
'Arcadians). And they-made (a) decree, if any (one)
τοῦ λοιποῦ· μνημοθῇ ποιεῖν τὸ στράτευμα
of the rest (of the time) might-mention to make the army
δίχα αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσαι θανάτῳ, καὶ
divided-into-two (that) he should be punished with death, and (that)
τὸ στράτευμα ἀπείναι κατὰ χώραν, ἤπερ
the army (should) depart to (the) place and order which
ἐλεύχε πρόσδευσιν, καὶ τοὺς πρόσδευσι στρατηγοὺς
it-had before, and (that) the former generals
ἄρχειν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἢδη
should command. And Cheirisophus indeed had already
τετελευτήκει πιῶν φάρμακον, πυρέττων·
died having-drunk (a) medicine, being-in-a-fever
O άνδρες στρατιώται, ως έστε, δήλον μὲν έτι
οι μεν στρατιώται, ως έστε, δήλον μὲν έτι
τήν πορείαν ποιητέον πεζῆν γάρ έστι οὐ πλοίων.
the journey is-to-be-performed on-foot; for there are not ships;
(Ιτ is) necessary now to depart; for there is not —
έπιτέθεια μένονσι. Οὖν μὲν, ἐφη, ἥμείς
food (for us) remaining. Therefore indeed, said-he, we
θυσοῦμεν τε ἵμας δει παρασκευάζεσθαι
will-sacrifice; but you 'it (now) 'becomes to prepare
ὡς μαχομένους, εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.
as-for fighting, if ever even at-any-other-time (it was
γάρ οι πολέμιοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν. 'Εξ
necessary); for the enemy has-recovered-confidence. After
τούτου οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔστεντο, δὲ Ἀρησίων Ἀρησίων
this the generals sacrificed, and Arexion (the) Arcadian
παρῆν μάντις, δὲ ὁ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης
was-present (as) augur; for — Silanus the Ambracian
'χεὶ ἀποδεδράκει μισθωσάμενος πλοίων ἐξ
'had already 'hired' having-hired (a) vessel from
'Ἡρακλείας. Δὲ θυσοῦμεν έστι τῇ ἄφοδῳ τὰ
'Heraclaea. And sacrificing about (their) departure the
ἰερὰν οἷς ἐγίγνετο. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην
victims 'did not 'become (favourable). Therefore indeed on that
τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο.
— (same) day they-desisted (from their intended departure).
Καὶ τινες ἔτολμον λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
And some having-been-bold-enough said that — Xenophon,
βουλόμενος οἰκίσαι τῷ χωρίῳ, πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν
desiring to-colonise the country, had-persuaded the augur
λέγειν ός τα ἰερὰ γίγνεται οὐ ἐπὶ
to-say that the victims were not (favourable) to (a)
ἀφόδω. 'Εν τούτῳ ξενοφόν χηρύξας
departure. Then Xenophon having-made-proclamation (that)
tὸν βουλόμενον παρείναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν
— (he) wishing (it) might-be-present at the sacrifice
τῇ αὔριον, καὶ παραγγείλας εἰ εἶναι τις μάντις
on-the next-day, and having-notified if there-were any augurs
παρείναι δέ συνθεωρώμενον τα ἰερὰ,
(among them) to-be-present as inspecting-with (him) the victims,
ἐδε* καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλοὶ
'the (Xenophon) 'sacrificed; and then many (persons)
παρήγαγ. Δὲ θυσίαν πάλιν εἰς τρίς
were-present. And sacrificing again to (the) third (time)
ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδω τα ἰερὰ ἐγίγνετο οὐκ.
in-respect to-the departure the victims were not (favourable).
'Εκ τούτου οἱ στρατιώται εἰχον χαλεπώς.
[On this the soldiers had (it) uneasily; [the sol-
[diers in consequence of this were distressed;) for even the provi-
δείκτης, θ' ἔχοντες ἔλαιον,
sions, [which having they-came, [which they had when they came,]
ἐπιλαμβάνον, καὶ οὔδεμι αὔρια παρήγα
failed, and no market was-present [provided for them].
'Εκ τούτου ξυναλλάσσων, ξενοφόν πάλιν
On this (the soldiers) assembling, Xenophon again
εἶπε: 'Ο άνδρες, ὡς ὀράτε μὲν, τα ἰερὰ γίγνεται
said: O men, as you-see indeed, the victims are
οὖν τὴν πορείαν. δ' ὡς ὑμᾶς δεομένους
not-yet (favourable) for — (our) journey; and I-see you wanting
τῶν ἐπιτυχείον. οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀνάγκη
— provisions; therefore it-seems to-me to-be necessary
θυσίαν περὶ οὗτος τούτων. Τίς
to-sacrifice respecting this same (thing). Some (one) however
ἀναστάς εἶπε. Καὶ εἰκόνως ἑτα τα ἰερὰ γίγνεται
standing-up said: And with-reason therefore the victims are
διες ἄπο τοῦ πλοίου ἡκοντὸς τοῦ αὐτομάτων, yesterday (who was) from (a) vessel coming (in) — of-itself

ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἄρμοστης ἐκ Βυζαντίου (accidentally), that Cleander the governor of Byzantium

μέλλει ξειν, ἔχων πλοία καὶ τριήρεις. Ἐξ τούτου is-about coming, having vessels and galleys. On this

ἡ ᾗ δὲ ἐδόξη μὲν πᾶσιν ἀναμένειν. ὡς ἦν (account) then it-seemed indeed to-all (proper) to-remain; but it-was

ἀνάγκη ἔζειναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτω necessary to-go-out for — provisions. And about this

πάλιν ἑῳτετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ τὰ ἱέρα it-was again 'sacrificed to three (times), however the victims

ἐγὼντον οὖ. Καὶ ἥδη καὶ ἱέρας were not (favourable). And now even (the soldiers) going

ἐπὶ τὴν σχημὴν Ἑνοφόωντος, ἐλευθερεύοντο τοι τῆν ξοιον to the tent of Xenophon, said that they-had

οὖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δ’ ὁ ἕφη ἤν οἷον no — provisions. And — he-said (that) 'he could not

ἐξαγαγεῖν, τῶν ἱερῶν μὴ γιγνομένων. 'lead' (them) 'out, the victims not being (favourable).

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑπεραίρῃ ἑῳτετο, καὶ σχεδόν And again on-the next-day it-was-sacrificed, and nearly

τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν in-some (manner) all the army on-account-of — it-being-a-solicitude

ἄπασιν, ἐκχυλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερὰ. δὲ τὰ to-every (one), were-crowded-in-a-circle round the victims; but the

θύματα ἐπιλειπότεν. Δὲ τοι στρατηγοὶ μὲν οἷον victims were-deficient. But the generals. indeed 'did not

ἐξέγον, ὅτε συνεκάλεσαν Ἑνοφῶν 'lead-out (the troops), but 'called (them) 'together. Xenophon

οὖν εἶπεν. Ἰσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσί, therefore said: Perhaps the enemy have-been-assembled-together,

καὶ ἄναγκη μάχεσθαι. εἰ οὖν καταληκτόντες and (it is) necessary (that) we-fight; if therefore leaving-behind

37
ta σκιη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς ιοιεν — (our) baggage in the strong places so that we may go
παρεσκευασμένοι εἰς μάχην, ίσως τὰ ἱερὰ ἄν prepared for battle, perhaps the victims may
προχωρήθη ἤμιν. Δ’ οἱ στρατιώται ἀκούσαντες become favourable to us. But the soldiers hearing (this)
ἀνέργαγον ὡς δέοι οἴδην ἀγειν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, cried out that it ought not to lead to the place,
[that he ought not to lead them to such strong place], but to sacrifice
ὡς τάχιστα. — Καὶ μὲν ἦν οἰκέτη πρόβατα, as speedily as possible. And indeed there was no longer sheep,
δὲ πριάμεινοι βοῦς ὑπὸ ἀμάξης ἐξωντός θαλ but buying (an) ox from (a) wagon they sacrificed; and
Ἑνοφῶν ἐδείχθη Κλεάνθος τοῦ Ἀρχάδος προ-
Xenophon besought Cleanor the Arcadian to be-
ἀνευμέναι, εἰ εἰη τι ἐν prompt of mind to act, if there might be anything (encouraging) in
τούτῳ. „Αλλ' ὡς ἔγενετο οἴδε.
this (sacrifice). But even thus there was neither (anything favourable).

Δὲ Νέων μὲν ἦν στρατηγὸς τὸ μέρος
But Neon indeed was (now) general in the place
Χειρισθοῦν· δὲ ἐπελ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνδρόπους, ὡς of Cheirisophus; and when he saw the men, that
eἰχον δεινὸς τῆς εἰνδεία,
they had (it) grievously in (their) want, [that the men were suffer-

βουλόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
ing much from want of food,] wishing to relieve and gratify them,
εὐρὼν τινὰ ἀνδροπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὥς (and) having found (a) certain man (a) Heraclean, who
εἶη εἰδέναι κόμας ἐγγυς, ὧς εἰη said (that) he knew of villages near, whence it might be (possible)

λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκχρυβεῖ τὸν
to procure — provisions, he proclaimed (by a herald that) — (any one)

βουλόμενοι ἔναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἴσομυνος
of those wishing to go for — provisions, that (a) guide
'Εξέρχονται δὴ εἰς would-be (for them). (Then) they-departed indeed to (the number of)
δισχιλίους ἄρδρωπους σὺν δοράτιοις, καὶ ἄσκοις καὶ
two-thousand men with spears, and leather-bags and
Συλάκους, καὶ ἄλλους ἄγγειοις. 'Επειτὸν δὲ ἦσαν
sacks, and other receptacles. When indeed they were
ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ διεστείρωτο, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
in the villages, and were-dispersed, as for the
λαμβάνειν, oĩ ἑπείρησις Φαρναβάζου
taking (of what they wanted), the cavalry of-Parnabazus
πρῶτοι ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς (γὰρ ἦσαν 
first fell-upon them (for they were (some) help-
δυνάμεις τοῖς Βιδυνοῖς) 
Strength (of the) Bithynians)
διέκειται τοῖς Βιδυνοῖς.disiring with the Bithyn-
νοῖς, εἰ δύναντο, ἀποκαλύπτω τοῖς Ἐλλήνας
nians, if they-could, to-prevent the Greeks (that
μὴ ἔλθειν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὐτοὶ οἱ
they might not enter into — Phrygia; these (same)
ἑπείρησις ἄρδρωποι οἱ μεῖον 
cavalry killed not less (than) five-hundred of-the
ἄνδρῶν· οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ἀνέφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Ἐκ
men; the rest indeed fled-away to the mountain. On
τούτοις τοῖς τῶν ἄρδρωποιν ἄπαγγέλλει
this some (one) of — (those) having-fled announced
ταῦτα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
these (things) at the camp. And — Xenophon,
ἐπεί τὰ ἑρᾶ οὖν ἐγεγένητο ταῦτη τῇ
when the victims had not been (favourable) that —
ἡμέρα, λαβὼν βοῦν ἱππὸ ἄμαξης, (γὰρ ἦν οἷς
day, taking (an) ox from (a) wagon, (for there were no
ἄλλα ἱερεῖα,) σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοηθεῖ, καὶ οἱ
other cattle,) having-sacrificed he-went-to-give-help, and the
ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἄπαντες.
others — (those namely) just-to thirty years-of-age all
καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς ἄνδρας
(went with him). And bringing-off — (those) men
λοιποὺς, ἄφικνοντας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
left, they-returned to the camp. And
ηὖ ἦδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
it-was now indeed about sun set; and the Greeks
ἐχοντες μάλιστα ἄθυμως ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο,
being much dejected were-taking (their) 'supper, (when)
καὶ ἐξαπάνης τινες τῶν Βιθυνίων ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς
even suddenly some of the Bithynians fell-upon the
προφύλαξαν διὰ τῶν λασίων, μὲν κατέκαυν αὐν
advanced-guards through the thickets, (and) indeed they-killed
τοὺς, δὲ τοὺς ἐδώκαν μὲχρι εἰς
— (some of the Greeks), and — (others) they-pursued just to
τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης πάντες
the camp. And (a) great-noise arising all
οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐθράμμον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ διώκειν
the Greeks ran to — arms; and to-pursue
μὲν, καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ
indeed, and to-move the camp at-night 'did not
ἐδοξεῖ εἶναι ἀσφαλές· γὰρ τὰ χωρία ἦν ἀσέα·
'seem to-be safe; for the country was full-of-thickets;
δὲ ἐνυκτέρευον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, ἐπισταθμοῦντο
and they-pas-sed-the-night under — arms. guarded
ἰκανοῖς φύλαξι.
by-sufficient sentinels.
Οὔτω μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα. Δὲ ἀμα τῇ

Thus indeed they passed the night. But at the time of —

ἡμέρα, οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἠγούντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν
day (break) the generals went to the strong

χωρίον, δὲ οἱ εἰπόντο, ἀνυλαθόντες τὰ
place, and the (men) followed, bringing with (them) — (their)

όπλα καὶ τὰ σκίνθη. Πρὶν δὲ εἶναι δραν
arms and — (their) baggage. Before indeed it was time (for)

ἄριστον ἀπετάφρευσαν εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἡ ἡ
dinner they had completed a trench at the place at which the

εἴσοδος ἡν, καὶ ἄπλων ἀπεσταύ-
entrance (to it was, and had fenced off (the) whole (place) with-pali-

ρωσαν, καταλιπώντες τρεῖς πύλοις. Καὶ πλοῖον
sades, leaving three gates. And (a) vessel

ἦκεν ἐκ Ἡρακλείας ἄγων ἁλφετα, καὶ ιερεία,
came from Heraclea bringing barley meal, and cattle,

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς πρῳ ἐθύμετο
and wine. And Xenophon having risen early he sacrificed

ἐπεξώθια, καὶ τὰ βαρὰ γίγνεται ἐτὶ for a successful expedition and the victims were (favourable) on

τοῦ πρῶτον ιερείου. Καὶ ἣδη ἔχοντω
the first victim. And already having (made an)

τέλος τῶν ἱερῶν, ὁ μάντις Ἀρτεμιών Пαρράσιος
end of the sacrifices the augur Arxion (the) Parrhasian

ὁρᾷ ἀλίσιον ἀετόν, καὶ κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα
saw (a) lucky eagle and requested — Xenophon

ἡγεῖσαι. Καὶ διαβαίνει τῇ τάφρον
to lead (forth). And (the men) crossing the trench

τιθένταυ τὰ δόρα, καὶ ἐχήρυξαν
ranged themselves (under) — arms, and it was proclaimed by the-

τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀριστήσαντας ἔξενα, heralds (that) the soldiers having dined would march out
σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, ἔπειτα καταλαμβάνειν τὸν ὄχλον
with — (their) arms, but to-leave the crowd
καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ.
(soft camp-followers) and the slaves there (in the camp).
Μὲν δὴ ἡ άλλοι πάντες ἔξησαν, δὲ οὐ Νέων.
Indeed truly the others all marched-out, but not Neon;
γὰρ ἐδόθη κάλλιστον καταλαμβάνειν τούτον
for it-seemed the-best to-leave this-one (namely Neon)
φύλακα τὸν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Ἑπεὶ
(as a) guard of — (what was) in the camp. When
δὲ ὁ λοχαγὸς καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλθαν
indeed the captains and the soldiers had-left
αὐτοὺς, ἀσχολοῦμενοι μὴ ἔφεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων
them, being-ashamed not to-follow the others
ἐξιόντων,
going-out, 'they (then) 'left there — (those) above
κατέληψαν αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ
the wing, they-take the others above
πέντε καὶ τεσσαράκοντα ἔτη. Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν
five and forty years-of-age. And these indeed
ἐμενον, δὲ οἱ άλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Πρὶν δὲ διεληλυ
did not remain, but the others proceeded-forth. Before indeed they-had-
ἔνας πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἤδη ἐνέτυχον
fifteen stadia 'they already met-with
νεκροῖς καὶ ποιησάμενοι τὴν οὐράν τοῦ κέρατος
dead-bodies; and having-placed the rear of-the wing
κατὰ τοὺς πρῶτους νεκροὺς φαίνεται, ἔθαπτον
by the first dead-bodies seen, they-buried
πάντας, ὁπόσους τὸ κέρας ἐπελάμβανε.
(them) all, as-many-as the wing took-in (or covered).
Ἑπεὶ δὲ ἔθαψαν τοὺς πρῶτους, προ-
When indeed they-had-buried — (those) first (found), pro-
αγαγόντες, καὶ αὐτὰς ποιησάμενοι τὴν οὐράν
ceeding-forward, and again having-placed the rear
κατὰ τοὺς πρῶτους τῶν ἄταφων,
along the first of-the unburied (they now met with),
ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὁπόσους ἡ στρατιά
they-buried (in) the same manner, as-many-as the army
ἐπελάμβανεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦκον εἰς τὴν ὁδόν covered. When indeed they-came to the road 
τῇ ἐκ τῶν κοιμῶν, ἐνδα δὲ—(that namely leading) from the villages, where indeed 
ἐκεῖντο ἄρσοι, συνενεγκόντες (the dead) lay close-together, carrying (them) together 
ἐσαψαν αἴτους. 
they-buried them.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦνς τῆς ἡμέρας 
Now indeed beyond having-been-in-the-middle (of) the day 
προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα [it was now past mid-day] having-led-forward the army 
ἐξω τῶν κοιμῶν, ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, beyond the villages, (the men) took — provisions, 
δὲ τις ὄρων, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος. Καὶ whatever any-one saw, within the line. And 
ἐκαίνης ὄρωσι τοὺς πολέμιους ὑπερβάλλεται suddenly they-saw the enemy passing-over (and) 
κατὰ τινὰς λόφους ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, down some hills from the opposite (side before them), 
τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, τε πολλοὺς drawn-up in line, (there being) not-only many 
ἰππεῖς καὶ πεζοῦς· γὰρ καὶ Σπυριδάτης καὶ horsemen but-also foot-soldiers; for also Spithridates and 
Ῥαδίνης ἦκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν Rhaithines had-come from Pharnabazus having — (their) 
δύναμιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι κατείδον τοὺς forces. When indeed the enemy saw the 
Ἔλληνας, ἔστησαν ἄπεχοντες αὐτῶν δοῦν πεντε- Greeks, they-halted being-distant from-them about fif-
καίδεα στάδιον. Ἕκ τοῦτον Ἀρηζίων ὁ μάντις teen stadia. On this Arexion the augur 
τῶν Ἐλλήνων εὐθὺς σφαγίαζεται, καὶ τὰ σφάγια of-the Greeks immediately sacrificed, and the victims 
ἔγενοτο καλα ἐπὶ τοῦ πρῶτου. Ἐνδα δὴ Ξενο-were favourable from the first. Then indeed Xeno-
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

φῶν λέγει: Δοξεὶ μοι, ὡς ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, phon said: It seems to me, O men commanders, (that)
ἐπιτάξασθαι τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους we ought to station behind the (principal) line companies (as)
φίλαχας, ἵνα ποῦν ἄν δέῃ, δοξίν οἱ guards, that where it might be necessary, there may be —
ἐπιθυμήσαντες τῆν φάλαγγαν καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι (those) supporting the line, and the enemy
tεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτοντες εἰς τεταραγμένους καὶ thrown into disorder may fall upon — (those) drawn up in order and
ἀχεραιός. Ταύτα συνεδόξησα πᾶσι. Ἄμεις μὲν the enemy
fresh. This was approved by all. You indeed
tοίνυν, ἐφη, προηγείσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς therefore, said he [Xenophon], advance on the (road) to the
ἐναντίον, ὡς μὴ ἐστηκόμεν, ἐπεὶ (enemy) in front (of us), that we may not stand still, since
ἐγίδομεν καὶ ὑφῆμεν τοὺς πολέμιούς· ἐγὼ δὲ we have seen and have been seen (by) the enemy; I indeed
κατακαρφίσας τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους, will come (after) having stationed — (those) hindmost companies,
ἡ περὶ δοξεῖ ὑμῖν. In the manner which it seemed (good) to you.

"Ἐξ τούτου μὲν οἴ δησινοι προῆγον· ὅ On this indeed — (they) quietly advanced; —
δὲ ἀφελὼν (Xenophon) indeed having taken from (and detached from the main body)
tὰς τρεῖς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ δια — the three hindmost ranks (or companies), about two-
κοσίους ἄνδρας ἐπέτρεψε τὴν μὲν hundred men (each) ordered the (one of them) indeed
tὸν πλέον. to follow on the right, being distant about (a) plenum

Σαμολάς Ἀχαιῶν ἱππεῖ τῆς ταύτης [100 feet]. Samolas (the) Achaean commanded — this
tάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐκώρισεν ἐπεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ division; the (other) indeed he detached to follow at the
μέσω· Πυρρίας ἢρχε ταύτης· δὲ centre; Pyrrhias (the) Arcadian commanded this (division); and
την μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ· Φρασίας the (third) one (was stationed) on the left; Phrasias (the)
'Αθηναῖος ἐφεστηκε ταύτης. Δὲ προϊόντες, ἐπεὶ Athenian commanded it. But proceeding-forward when
οἱ ἄγομενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ — (those) leading (in advance) got to (a) large
νάποι καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἐστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες ei woody-revive and difficult-to-pass, they-halted, not-knowing if
τὸ νάπος εἰπὶ διαβατέον. Καὶ παρεγγυότι the woody-revive might-be passable. And requested
στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ (the) generals and captains to-come-forward to the
ἄγομενον. Καὶ ο Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὅ τι leading (division). And — Xenophon, having-wondered what
ἐν ἰσχον τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ταχῦ ἀκούων τὴν it-might-be detaining the progress, and speedily hearing the
παρεγγυνὴν, ἔλαυνε τάχιστα ἢ ἐδύνατο. announcement, pushes-on (his horse) as-fast as he-could.
Επει δὲ συνήλθον Σοφαινετος ἃν προσῆν— When indeed they-came-together Sophænetus being the-oldest
τατος τῶν στρατηγῶν λέγει, ὅτι εἰπὶ οἷς ἄξιον of-the generals says, that it-was not worthy
βουλῆς, εἰ δὲ τοιοῦτον τὸ νάπος ἐστὶ of-consideration, whether being such — (a) woody-revive it-is
diabatéon.
necessary-to-pass (it).

Καὶ ο Ξενοφῶν σπουδὴ ἵσπολαβών ἔλεγεν· And — Xenophon speedily seizing (an opportunity) said:
'Ἀλλ' μὲν ἵστε με, ὃ ἄνδρες, τω ἅρποισιον But indeed you-know me, O men, (that) 'I never voluntarily
προξενήσαντα οἰδένα κίνδυνον ἤμιν· γὰρ ὅροι brought any danger on-you; for I-see
ἐμάς οὐ δεομένοις. δόξης εἰς ἄνδρειτητα, ἀλλὰ you not wanting reputation for valour, but
σωτηρίας. Δὲ νῦν ἐχει οὖτως ἔστιν οὗ of-safety. But now it-has (itself) so; it-is not μὲν ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδέειν ἀμαχῖ. γὰρ ἂν ἦμεῖς indeed (for us) to-depart hence without-fighting; for if we μὴ ἔμεν ἔτι τοὺς πολεμίους, οὖτοι, ὅποταν do not 'advance against the enemy, these, when ἀπίστω, ἑδοντα καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται ἵμιν. Ὀράτε we-retreat, will-follow and attack us. Consider ἤ γὰρ τὸ τὸν κρείττον ἑτεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας, indeed whether (it is) better to-go against the men, προβαλλομένους τὰ ὀπλα, ἡ μεταβαλ-throwing (our) — arms 'before (us), or 'hurl-
λομένους, θεάσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-
ing (them) back, to-perceive the enemy fol-
όντας οἰκοδεν ἕμων. Ἰστε μέντοι ὅτι μὲν τὸ lowing behind us. Know however that indeed the ἀπιστεῖν ἀπὸ πολεμίων ἔοικε οὐδὲν καλῶ, δὲ fleeing from (an) enemy looks-like nothing honourable, but τὸ ἐφεσται ἐμπορεῖ θάρσος καὶ τοὺς — to-follow 'puts confidence (and courage) even 'into the κακίσι. 'Εγὼ' οὖν ἄν ἦτον cowardly. I-at-least therefore would (as a) more-pleasant (thing)
ἐποίημαι σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἡ ἀπο-
pursue with half (the number of men) (rather) than re-
χωροῖν σὺν δυσπλασίοις. Καὶ τοῦτους treat with double (the number). And (as respects) these
οἶδ ὅτι, ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπιστεῖν, ἦμεῖς οἶδ'(men) I-know that, we indeed attacking, you 'do not ἔλπισεν τοὺς δέξασθαι ἥμας. δὲ ἀπιστών, expect (that) they will-receive us; but retreating,
pάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφεστάωμ. 'we all 'believe that they-will-dare to-follow-after

Δὲ ποιήσασθαι χαλεπὸν νάπος τὸ ὁποδεν (us). But to have-placed (a) difficult ravine in — (our) rear
dιαβαίνωσας, μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι, ἃρ' οἴκη (after) having-crossed (it), being-about to-fight, is-not-this
και ἄξιον ἀρπάσαι; γὰρ μὲν ἐγὼ even (an advantage) worth to-have-seized-on? for indeed I,
toῖς πολεμίοις βουλοῖμην πάντα (as respects) the enemy, wish (that) all (places)
ἄν φαίνεσθαι εὐπορα, ὧςτε ἀποχωρεῖν· δὲ may appear easy-to-pass-through, so-that they-may-retreat; but
καὶ δὲι ἡμᾶς διδάσκεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ even it-is-proper for-us to-learn from (the nature) of-the
χωρίου, ὅτι ἔστι οὐ σωτηρία μὴ vixīsi. place, that there-is no safety unless (our men) conquer.

Δ' ἔγγυες θαυμάζω εὖ τις νομίζῃ καὶ τὸ τοῦτο But I-at-least wonder if any-one thinks' even — this
νάπος εἶναι μᾶλλον φοβερὸν τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων ravine to-be more formidable (than) the other places
doν διαπεπορεύμεθα. Πῶς μὲν γὰρ τὸ πεδίον which we-have-passed-through. How indeed therefore (is) the plain
dιαβάτων, εἰ μὴ νικήσωμεν τοὺς ἵππεας; to-be-passable, if we- do not 'conquer the cavalry?
Πῶς δὲ ὅρη, ἀ διεληλίθω— How indeed (will the) mountains (be passable) which we-have-crossed-
μεν, ἣν τοσοῦτο πελτασταὶ ἐφέσωνται; over, if so-great-a-number-of - targeteers pursue (us)?

Δ' ἦν δὴ καὶ σωθῆμεν ἐπὶ τὰλατταῖν, But if indeed we-are even 'saved (so far as) to (the) sea,
πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἐνθα ὀστε how-great a ravine (will) the Pontus (Euxinus be)? where neither
ἐστὶ πλοῦτα τὰ ἀπάξοντα, ὀστὲ ὁτοὶ ὃ are vessels — for-'carrying (us) 'away, nor provisions by-which
θρεψόμεθα μένοντες· δὲ δεήσει, ἦν we-may-be-nourished (while) remaining; and it-will-be-necessary, if
γενομένα ἑξει θάττων, θάττων ἐξιε- we-get there more-speedily, the-more-speedily (will we have) to-go-
να ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ὡν ὢν κρείττον out for — provisions. (Is it) not therefore better
μάχεσθαι νῦν ἱροτηχότας, ἤ αὖριον ἀναρίστον to-fight now having-breakfasted, than to-morrow without-breakfast?
'Ανδρες, τὰ ἱερὰ τε καλὰ ἡμῖν, οἱ οἰωνοὶ. Men, the sacrifices indeed (are) favourable to us, the omen
tε οἰῶν, τε τὰ σφάγια κάλλιστα. Ιώμεν
likewise suspicious, and the victims most-favourable; let us go
ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδράς. Ὅψιν ἔτι ἐπὶ
against the men (our enemies). It is not moreover 'proper (that)
τούτους, ἐπεὶ πάντως εἴδον ἡμᾶς,
those, since they certainly 'have-seen us, (should be allowed)
δειπνήσαι ἡδοὺς, οὐδὲ σκηνήσαι ὅπου ἄν
to-soup comfortably, or to-encamp where they might
θέλωσι. wish.

'Εντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐκέλευον ἥγεονται, καὶ
Then the captains requested (him) to-lead-on, and
οὐδὲς ἀντέλεγε. Καὶ δὲς ἥγεος, παραγ-
o-no-one objected. And — (he) led-on (the troops), having-
νελας διαβαίνειν, ἦ ἔκαστος
ordered (them) to-cross-over, (in the place) in which each-one
ἐτύγχανε δὲν τῷ νάπους. γὰρ ἐδόξαι
found (himself) being (at) the ravine; for he-thought (that)
tὸ στράτευμα δὲν οὕτω γενέονται πέραν Αἴρουν
the army might thus get over together
θάπτον, ἦ ἔι ἐξεμπυρώντο κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν,
bridge, then if they-defiled over, the bridge,
ἤ ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
which was on the ravine. When indeed they-had-crossed-over,
pαριῶν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἐλεγεν. 'Ανδρες,
going-on along the line he-said: Men,
ἄναμμενήσκεσθε δῶς μάχας, σὺν
remember how-many battles, with (the assistance of)
tοῖς θεοῖς, νενισχυτα ἱόντες
the gods, (you have fought and) conquered (by) coming-to
διόμος, καὶ οἱ οἱ φεῖγοντες πολεμίους
close-quarters, and what — (those) seeing (from the) enemy
πάρχοντος καὶ ἐνισχοῦσατο τούτο, ὅτι ἐσμὲν ἐπὶ
and you-will-reflect-on this, that we-are at
suffer;
ταῖς θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος. Ἄλλος εἶπε δε τῷ
the gates of — Greece. But follow —
Ἑρακλεὶ ἔγεμον, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε ἀλλήλους
Hercules (your) conductor, and exhort one-another
ὁνοματί. Ἡδον τοι νῦν εἰπόντα
by-name. (It is) pleasing indeed (to think, that he) now saying
καὶ ποιήσαντά τι ἄνδρεῖον καὶ καλόν;
and doing any-thing brave and honourable, (that he will)
pαρέχειν μνήμην ἑαυτῷ ἐν οἷς ἐδέλει.
furnish (a) remembrance of himself among (those) whom he-wishes
'Ελέγε ταῖτα παρελαινών, καὶ
(to remember him). He said these (things) riding-along, and
ἄμα ἐφηγείτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ
at the same time he led on in line, and (the generals)
pοιηScalaμενοι τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν
having-formed the targeteers on each (flank)
ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολέμιους. Παρηγγέλλετο
they marched forth against the enemy.
He ordered
δὲ ἔχειν μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξίον
(them) however to have indeed the spears on the right
ἄμοιν, ἐκεῖ οἰκεῖοι τῇ σάλπιγγι ἐκείνα
shoulder, until a signal should be given with the trumpet;
then
δὲ καθένας εἰς προδολὴν ἔπεσεν
indeed having lowered (them) for (a)
βάδην καὶ μηδένα διώκει
charge to follow (their)
leaders in a regular) step and (that) no-one (was) to advance
δρόμω. Ἐξ τούτων σύνημα παρῆκε ΖΕΥΣ
in (a) "run. On this (the) watch-word came JUPITER
ΣΩΤΗΡ, ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣ ΗΓΕΜΩΝ. Οἱ
THE PRESERVER, HERCULES (THE) LEADER. The
πολέμιοι δὲ ἔπεμμενον, νομίζοντες ἔχειν
enemy however remained in place, thinking (that) they had (a)
καλὸν χωρίον. Δ' ἔπει δι' Ἑλληνες ἐπανάσταζον,
fine position. But when the Greeks approached,
pελτασται ἀλαλάξαντες ἔδωκαν ἐπὶ τοὺς
(and their) targeteers having shouted ran against the
πολέμους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν· δ’ οἱ πολέμιοι
enemy before (that) any-one ordered (them); but the enemy
ἀντίοι ὀμησαν, τε οἱ ἰππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος
opposite, rushed-on, not-only the cavalry but also the mass
tῶν Β.Ιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελάστας.
of-the Bithynians; and put-to-flight the targeteers.
'Αλλ’ ἐπει δὴ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἐπηντίαξε
But when the line of the heavy-armed-men came-up.
πορευμένη ταχύ, καὶ ἄμα ἡ σάλπυγξ
advancing quickly, and at-the-same-time the trumpet
ἐφέστηκατο καὶ ἐπαικάνιζον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
sounded and they-sang-the-pan, and after this
ἀπέκρισαν, καὶ ἄμα κακίσθαν τὰ ὃδατα,
they-shouted, and at-the-same-time they-ouched — (their) spears,
ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἐδέχαντο,
then the enemy 'did no-longer (stand or) receive
ἀλλὰ ἐφευγον. Καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων
(all) fled. And Timasion indeed having
τοὺς ἰππεῖς ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὁσοῦς
the cavalry pursued (them), and killed as-many-
περ ἐδύναντο, ὡς ὄντες ὀλίγοι. ἄδε μὲν
as he-could, (as) (they) being (but) few. And indeed
τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν πολέμιων καὶ δ’ οὐ
the left (wing) of the enemy against (that) which the
'Ελληνες ἰππεῖς ἤσαν εἰὼν διεσπάρθη,
Greek cavalry were (opposed to) 'was immediately dispersed,
δὲ τὸ δεξίον, ἄτε οὐ διωχόμενον σφόδρα,
but the right (wing), as not being-followed closely,
συνέστη ἐπὶ λόφου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ 'Ελληνες εἶδον
stood-collected on (a) hill. When indeed the Greeks saw
αὐτοὺς ὑπομενόντας, ἐδόξησαν εἶναι τε
them making-a-stand, it-seemed (to them) to-be not-only
ῥαστῶν καὶ ἀκουσάνωτατον ἐναὶ ἐπὶ αὐτούς.
the-easiest but also the-safest to-go against them.
Πανανισταντες οὖν εἰὼν εἰπεκειντο· δ’
Singing-the-pan, therefore 'they immediately 'attacked (them); but
οἱ οὐχ ἵππειναν. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ
— they did not sustain (an attack). And then the
πελτασταῖ τῆδεων, μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη
— targeters pursued, until the right (wing) was-dispersed;
δὲ οἶλοι άπέδανον· γὰρ τὸ ἑπτάκον φόβον παρείχε,
but few died: for the cavalry fear was-present-to
τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ἐν πολλ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
the cavalry, (the) enemy being numerous. When however
οἱ Ἑλληνες εἶδον τὸ τὸ ἑπτάκον Φαρναβάζου ἐτὶ
the Greeks saw not-only the cavalry of-Pharnabazus still
συνεστινχός, καὶ τοῖς Βιθυνίοις ἵππεας συναδροίζο-
standing-together, and the Bithynian cavalry flock-
μένουσι πρὸς τούτο, καὶ ἀπὸ τινὸς λόφου καταδει-
looking to these, and from (a) certain hill looking-
μένουσι τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπεφηνεσαν μὲν,
down-on the (things) going-on, (though) they-were-tired indeed,
ὅμως δὲ ἐδόξακαὶ εἶναι ἵτεον ἐπὶ
yet however it-seemed even to-be (best and) necessary — (to attack)
τούτως οὕτως ὡς δύναντο, ὡς
them in-as-much as they-might-be-able, that after— they [the enemy]
ἀναπαύσαντο μὴ τεθαρρηκότες.
had—rested (they might) (not become-confident-and-bold.
Συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται.
Being-drawn-up-in-close-order they [the Greeks] indeed ‘advanced.
Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἵππες φεύγοντο κατὰ
Then the hostile cavalry flee down (the hill)
τοῦ πραυνοῦ, ὤμως ἄγγειρ οἱ διωκόμενοι
— precipitately, in-the-same-manner as-if — (they) were-being-pursued
υπὸ ἱππεῶν· γὰρ νάπος ὑπεδέχετο αύτῶς, ὁ
by cavalry, for (a) ravine received them, which
οἱ Ἑλληνες οὖν ἡδεσαν, ἀλλὰ προσεπετρά-
the Greeks did not ‘know (of), as they-had-turned-
ποντο διωκόντες· γὰρ ἦν ὄς. οἷς ἐπανελ-
back (from) pursuing; for it-was late. But return-
βάλλει, ἐνδὴ ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο,
ing (to the place) where the first encounter happened,
στρατάμενοι τρόπαιον, ἀπῆσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν
having-erected (a) trophy, they-went-off towards (the) sea
περὶ ἥλιον δυνάμεις. ὃς ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα στάδιοι
about sun set; and it was about sixty stadia
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
to the camp.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ
Then indeed the enemy had (to do) about the
ἐναντίον, καὶ ἀπῆργοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκεῖους
enemy, and they removed both—(their) families
(affairs) of-themselves, and removed both—(their) families
καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὑποὶ προορισμῷ ἐξήκοντο· οἱ
and—they effects as far-off as they could; the
Ἐλληνες δὲ προεμενοὶ μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ
Greeks however waited indeed for Cleander and
τὰς τρυπές καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἔξοντα·
the galleys and the (transport) vessel that were-about-coming;
δὲ ἔξοντες ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις
and going-out each day with the baggage-cattle
καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδελφὸς πυρόν,
and the slaves they-brought (in) safely wheat,
κριθᾶς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῖκα· γὰρ ἦ ἡ χώρα
barley, wine, legumes, honey, meal; for the country
εἶχεν ἀπαντὰ ἀγαθὰ πλῆθν ἐλαιοῦ.
had abundance (of) good (things) except (the olive) oil (tree).
Kαὶ ὅπωτε τὸ στρατεύμα καταμενοὶ ἀναπαύομενον
And while the army remained resting
ἔξῆν ἦν καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν, καὶ ἔξοντες
it was allowed (the men) to-go after plunder, and going-out
ἐλάμβανον· δὲ ὅπωτε τὸ πᾶν στρατεύμα
they-took (what they could); but when the whole army
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER VI. 449

ἔξοι, εἰ τις ἀπελθὼν χωρίς λάβοι τι went-out, if any-one going-away aside (alone) might-take any-thing
ἔδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. Δὲ ἦν ἦδη ἄφθονιa it-judged (it) to-be public-property. And there-was now abundance
πάντων ἃρα καὶ ἄφθονιτο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων of-all (things); for even there-arrived from the
πόλεων πάντων ἀγοραί, καὶ οἱ Greek
cities every-where (provisions for) markets, and — (those)
παραπλέοντες ἀσμενοὶ κατήγον, ἄχοιντες sailing-by-there-along (the coast) willingly put-in-there, hearing
ὁς πόλις οἰκίζοντο, καὶ λυμήν εἰη that (a) city would-be-built, and (a) harbour be (formed). And
καὶ ἦδη οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ψιγκον πλησίον, also already the enemy, —(those namely) dwelling near,
πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἑρωτώντες, ὃ τι — δεόι is-forming the place, ‘to-a-city,’ inquiring, what it-was-necessary
ἐπεμπὼν πρὸς Ξενόφωντα, ἄχοιντες ὃτι οὐτὸς sent to Xenophon, hearing that he
ποιοῦντας εἶναι φίλους. Δ’ ὁ ἐπεδείκτηνεν (for them) to-be-doing to-be friends. And — he-introduced
αὐτόν τοῖς στρατιώταις.
them to-the soldiers.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἄφθονεῖται, ἔχων δύο And on this Cleander arrived, having two
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἄφθονεῖται, ἔχων δύο

And on this Cleander arrived, having two
galleys, but no (transport) vessels. But the army
ἐτύγχανε ὃν ἔξω, ὅτε ἄφθοετο, καὶ τινὲς οἰκόμενοι happened being-out, when he-came, and some were-going
ἐπὶ λείαν ἄλλοι ἄλλη eis to for plunder | others in-another [some one way, some another,] to the
ὅρος, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πολλά πρόβατα. ὄχνιντες mountain, and had-captured many sheep; fearing
δὲ μὴ ἄφαιρελείεν, λέγοντι Δεξίππῳ, however lest they-might-be-taken-from (them), they-told Dexippus,
δὲ ἄπεδρα ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος ἔχων τὴν πεντή-(he) who fled from Trebisond having the fifty-oared
κόντρον, καὶ κελεύοντι τὰ πρόβατα
galley, and they-request (that) the sheep (might be)
dιασώσαντα αὑτοῖς, αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν
preserved for-themselves, (and that) he indeed (was) to-take
τὰ, δὲ ἀποδοῦνα τὰ σφίσιν.
—a part of them for himself), but to-return the (rest) to-themselves.

Δ’ ἐκεῖνος (Dexippus] immediately drives-off — (those) stand-
eστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ λέγοντας διὰ εἰς
ing-round-of the soldiers, and saying that it was
δημόσια, καὶ ἐλθὼν ποι Ἐκλεάνδρῳ λέγει, διὰ
public-property, and going to Cleander he-says, that
ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἐρπάζειν.
they-endeavour to-seize (them) and-take (them) away.

—

δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν
(Cleander) however ordered (him) to-bring before him the (one)
ἀρπάζοντα,
kai o mεν λαβῶν 
taking ο (the sheep), and — (he) indeed laying-hold-on some-one

ἡγε·

Δ’ Ἀγασίας περιτυχῶν
was-leading (him away); but Agasias | happening-about [meeting him]
ἀφαίρεται·
kai γάρ ὁ ἀγόμενος ἦν
takes-away (the man); for-indeed — (he) being-led-away | was (a)

λοχίτης αὐτῶ.

Δ’ οἱ member to-him [was a private soldier in his company]. And the

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπι-
others — (these namely) being-present-of the soldiers at-
χειροῦσι βάλλειν τοῦ Δέξιππου, ἀνακαλοῦντες
tempted to-throw (stones at) — Dexippus, vociferating
τὸν προδότην. Δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τριμυτῶν
the traitor. And also many of the galley-men

ἐείσαν καὶ ἐφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ Κλέ-
fled and fled towards the sea, and Cle-

ἀνδρὸς δ’ ἐφευγε. Ἐνοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
ander likewise fled. Xenophon and also the other

στρατηγοὶ τε κατεκάλυνον, καὶ ἔλεγον
generals not-only endeavoured-to-stop (their flight), but also told
τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ δῆτε εἰς οἷδὲν πρᾶγμα,
— Cleander | that there was no thing, [that nothing was

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα τοῦ στρατεύματος
the matter,] but (that) the decree of the army

εἰς αὐτὸν ταῦτα γενέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ Κλέ-
was (the) cause (that) these (things) occurred. And — Cle-

ανδρός τε ἀνερεδίζωμενος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξίππου,
ander 'being not-only instigated by — Dexippus,

καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθείς, ὥστε ἐφοβήθη, ἐφη
but also he-himself being vexed, that he had been put in fear, said

ἀποκλευσείσθαι, καὶ κηρύσσειν μηδεμίαν
(that) he would sail off, and proclaim (that) no

πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτοῦς, ὡς πολεμίους.
city should receive them, as (they were public) enemies.

Δὲ τότε οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἦχων πάνων τῶν
For at that time the Lacedaemonians governed all —

Ἐλλήνων. Ἐνταῦθα τὸ πράγμα ἐδοκεὶ πονηρὸν
Greece. Then — (this) affair appeared serious

tοῖς Ἐλλησι, καὶ ἐδέωντο
(and unfortunate) to the Greeks, and they entreated (Cleander)

μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δ’ ὁ ἔφη, ἂν οὐ
not to do these (things). But — he said, (that it) could not

γενέσθαι ἀλλος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσῃ τὸν
be otherwise, (if not) (unless) some one should give up the

ἀρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελέ-
(person) having commenced to throw (stones) and the (one) having-

μενον. Δὲ ὅν ἔξητε ἦν Αγασίας,
released (him). But (he) whom he wanted was Agasia, (the)

φίλος τῷ Ξενοφώντι διὰ τέλους.
friend (of) — Xenophon through (out) (to the) end; [the com-

ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὁ Δεξίππος διεβαλεν
stant friend of Xenophon;) for which even — Dexippus had accused

αὐτὸν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπείδή ἦν ἀπορία,
him. And then after (this) there was perplexity

οἱ ἀρχοντες συνήγαγον τὸ στρατεύμα·
therefore the commanders assembled the army;
και ἐνοι μὲν αἱτῶν ἐποιοῦντο παρ' ὀλίγον
and some indeed of them made — little

τῶν Κλέανδρον, δὲ τῷ Ξενοφώντι
(of the threats of) — Cleander, but to — Xenophon

tὸ πράγμα, οὐκ ἐδοξεί εἶναι φαύλον, ἀλλ’
the affair 'did not 'appear to-be trifling, but

ἀναστὰς ἐλεξεν:
rising-up he-said:

'Ω ἄνδρες στρατιώται, τὸ πράγμα οὗ δὲ
⁴⁰ men soldiers, the affair 'does not indeed

dοξεί ἐμοὶ εἶναι φαύλον, εἰ Κλέανδρος ἔχων τὴν
'seem to-me to-be trifling, if Cleander having — (his)

γνώμην οὕτως ἡμῖν ἀπεισών ὑπερ λέγει.
mind thus (disposed) to-us he-goes-away as he-says.

Γὰρ μὲν αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις εἰσὶ ἑγγὺς.
For indeed the Greek cities are near; (the)

Λακεδαίμονιοι δὲ προεστήκασι τῆς Ἑλλάδος· δὲ
Lacedemonians indeed at-the-head of — Greece; and

eἰσὶ ἰκανοὶ καὶ ἔστατος εἰς Λακεδαίμονίων
it-is competent even (for a) single one 'of (the) 'Lacedemonians

διαπράττεισθαι ὅτι βουλούνται ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν.
to-accomplish whatever (he) wished in — (those) cities.

Εἴ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἀποκλείετι ἡμᾶς
If therefore this (Cleander) first indeed 'shuts us

Βυζαντίου, δ’ ἐπείτα παραγγέλει τοῖς ἄλλοις
'out-of Byzantium, and then should-announce to-the other

ἀρμοστῶν μὴ δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὡς ὄντως
governors, not to-receive (us) into the cities, as being

ἀπαύγωντας Λακεδαίμονίων, καὶ ὄντας ἀνόμους,
disobeying 'to (the) 'Lacedemonians, and being lawless,

δ’ ἐτὶ οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἔξει πρὸς
and moreover-if this — report about us come to

'Ἀναξιβίου τὸν ναύαρχον, ἔσται χαλέπιν
Anaxibius the commander-of-the-fleet, it-will-be difficult (for us)

καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποστελεῖν· καὶ γὰρ τὸν τῶν
both to-remain and to-sail-away; for indeed (at) — (this) present
χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀρχούσι καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ
time (the) Lacedaemomians rule both by — land
καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ. Οὖν οὐκ ὑπὲρ οὐτε
and by — sea. Therefore it is not 'proper, (that) either
ἔνεκα ἐνὸς ἄνδρος οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς
for-the-sake-of one man or of-two (that) we the
ἀλλούς ἀπέκεισαί τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἀλλὰ πειστέ-
rest be-held-back from — Greece, but it-is-necessary-to-
ἐκ τι ἀν κελεύσῃ καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις
on the if they they may 'command; for indeed the cities
ῑμῶν, οὖν ἐσμὲν, πείσονται αὐτοῖς. Ἡγὼ μὲν
of-us, whence we-are, obey them. I indeed
οὖν (καὶ γὰρ ἄχου Ἁδειπτύον λέγειν πρὸς
therefore (for indeed I-hear (that) Dexippus said to
Κλεάνδρον, ὡς Ἀγασίας ἄν οὐκ ἐποίησε ταῦτα,
Cleander, that Agasia would not have-done these (things),
eἰ ἔγω μὴ ἐκέλευσα αὐτῶν), ἔγω μὲν οὖν
if I had not 'requested him), I indeed therefore (say)
ἀπολίω καὶ ἡμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας, καὶ Ἀγασίαν,
I-clear both you of-the blame, and (also) Agasia,
ἀν Ἀγασίας αὐτὸς φήσῃ ἐμέ εἶναι τι αἰτίον
should Agasia himself say (that) I was any cause
τοῦτων, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἔγω
of-these (things), and I-will-condemn myself, if I
ἐξαρχῶ πετροβολίας ἡ τινὸς ἄλλον βιαίον,
am-the-beginner of-stone-throwing or any other violence,
eἶναι ἄξιος τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης, καὶ ἴριξω
that I am worthy of — extreme punishment, and I-will-submit
τῆν δίκην. Δὲ φημι καὶ, εἰ αἰτιᾶται τίνα
the-punishment. And I-say also, if (Dexippus) accuses any
ἄλλον, ἐαυτὸν κρίναι παρασχεῖν
other (person), (that) he ought to-surrender (himself)
Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναι γὰρ οὗτοι ὑμεῖς ἀν εἰστε
to-Cleander to-try (him); for thus you may be
ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας. Ὡς δὲ νῦν
released from — censure. As indeed (the affair) now
κατείς, καλεῖον εἰς οἶκον καὶ ἔπαινον
has (itself), (it is) hard if thinking (that) both applause
καὶ τιμῆς τεῦχος ἐν τῇ Ἕλλαδι,
and honour would-be-prepared (for us) in — Greece, (that)
ἀντὶ δὲ τοῦτων, διὸς ἐσόμεθα ὑμοὶ τοῖς
in-place indeed of-these, we‘will not be equal to-the
ἄλλος, ἀλλὰ εἰργόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἐλληνίδων
other (Greeks), but will-be-excluded from the
πόλεων
Grocian
cities.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας ἀναστάς εἶπεν· Ἡγώ,
After this Agasias rising-up said: I,
ὡς ἄνδρες, ὁμοίως θεοὺς καὶ θείας ἦ μὴν
O men, swear (by all the) gods and goddesses that truly
μὴ λέξῃ Ἐλεθούσα τεῦχος τοῦ ἄνδρα,
neither Xenophon requested me-to-rescue the man,
μὴ τέ μνήμη ἄλλον ὑμῶν· δὲ μοι ἰδόντι ἁγα-
nor (or) no-one else of-you; but I seeing (a) good-
δόν ἄνδρα τῶν ἀμών λοχίτων ἄγομεν ἴπτο
and-brave man of — my company led-off by
Δεξιότητα, διὸ ὅμεις ἐπίστασθε προδότα,
Dexippus, whom you know (as) betraying (you),
ἔδειξεν εἰναι δεινόν· καὶ οἴμοιΧὴ ἀφειλήμουρ.
it-seemed (to me) to-be intolerable; and I-confess (that) I‘took
Καὶ ὅμεις μὲν μὴ ἔδωκέ με, δὲ ἡγὼ
(him) 'away. And you indeed 'do not 'deliver me 'up, for I
ἐμαιητόν, διτερ Ἐλεθοῦν λέγει, παρασκῆνω
myself, as Xenophon recommends, will-surrender (myself)
κλεάνδρῳ κρίναντι, ἀν ποιῆσαι ὦ τι
to-Cleander (that) having-tried (me), 'he may 'do (with me) whatever
βούλησαι· ἐνεκα τοῦτον μὴ δεῖλειτε
he-may-please; on-account of-this 'do not 'contend 'with (the)
Λαχεδαμονίωι, σύχουσθε τε ἁρκάλως,
Lacedemonians, may-you-unharmed indeed (return) safely (to)
ὅπως ἔκαστος θέλει. Μέντοι ἐλόμενοι αὐτῶν
wherever each-one wishes. 'Having indeed 'chosen those
ἐμῶν συμπέμψατε μοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον,
of-yourselves send (them) with me to Cleander,
οἵτινες, ἂν ἐγὼ παραλείπω τι,
who, if I should omit anything, (might) both speak
καὶ λέξουσιν who,
and λέξουσιν say
ἐπέρ ἐμοῦ. Ex genu pl. ἑστρατιὰκαι πράξουσιν ἐπέρ ἐμοῦ. Ex toûtou ἑ στρατιὰ
depér émou. Ex toûtou ἑ στρατιὰ
και πράξουσιν speak
έμοι. Ἐξ τούτου ἑ στρατιὰκαι πράξουσιν speak
and act
for me. On this the army
ἐδώκεν, προσελήμενον ὦ ἄστινας βούλοντο ἔλεγα.
allowed (him), having-chosen whatsoever he-might-wish to-go
Ὁ δὲ προσείλετο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς.
He indeed chose the generals.
Metá ταῦτα Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ, καὶ ὁ After this Agasias and the generals, and the
Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ, καὶ ὁ After this Agasias and the generals, and the
ἀνὴρ ἀφαμεθεῖς ἵππο Ἀγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς
man taken-away by Agasias, proceeded to
Ἀγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς
Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔλεγον.
Cleander. And the generals said:
Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔλεγον.
'Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπεμψειν ἡμᾶς πρὸς σε, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
The army has-sent us to you, O Cleander,
καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἰτε αἰτιά πάντας,
καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἰτε αἰτιά πάντας,
σεαυτόν and . request you, if you-accuse all, you-yourself
κρίναντα ξρῆσατι δὲ τι
having-tried (all) (are) to-treat (them) (in) whatever (manner) 'you
ἄν βούλη, εἰτε αἰτιά τινα ἔνα, ἢ δύο, ἢ καί
when you wish, if you-accuse some one, or two, or even
πλεῖονς, ἀξιοῦσι τοῦτοις παρασχεῖν
more, they-'think (it) 'right (that) these 'deliver
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
themselves 'up to-you for judgment. If therefore you-accuse any-one
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
to-us, we are-present (before) you; if even any other,
ἀπέσταται ὅστις
they 'deliver (so); for no-one shall-be-distant-from (obeying you) who
οὐδεὶς ἀπέσταται ὅστις
οὐδεὶς ἀπέσταται ὅστις
οὐδεὶς ἀπέσταται ὅστις
οὐδεὶς ἀπέσταται ὅστις
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινά
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
εἰς κρίσιν. Εἰτε οὖν αἰτιά τινα
to-obey. After these (things) —
Ἀγασίας παρελθὼν εἶπεν. Ἔγω, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἶμι
Aguasias having-come-forward said: I, O Cleander, am
Aguasias having-come-forward said: I, O Cleander, am
ὅ ἄφελόμενος τῶν ἁνδρά Δέξιτπον ἁγοντος (he) who having-taken-away the man from-Dexippus leading
τοῦτον, καὶ κελεύσας παίειν Δέξιτ- him (away), and (also) having-exorted (the men) to-strike Dexip-
πον. Γὰρ μὲν οἶδα ἁνδρα δύνα ἁγαθον· pus. For indeed I-know (the) man (as) being good-and-brave;
δὲ οἶδα Δέξιτπον αἱρεθέντα ἕπο τῆς στρατιᾶς and I-know (that) Dexippus having-been-choosen by the army
ἀρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντάρα, ἕς θησάμεθα παρὰ to-command the fifty-oar-galley, which we-begged from
Τραπεζοντῶν ἐφ’ ὶτε συλλέγειν πλοῖα (the) Trebizondians | on which to-collect vessels [for the
ὡς σωζόμεθα, καὶ Δέξιτπον purpose of collecting vessels] that we-might-be-saved, and Dexippus
ἀποδόντα καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας, μεθ’ running-away and betraying the soldiers, with
ἀν ἐσώθη. Καὶ τε ἀπεστερηκαμεν Ῥαπε- whom he-had-been-saved. And not-only we-have-deprived (the) people-of-
ζοντιος τῆς πεντηκοντάρον, καὶ δοξούμεν εἰναι Trebizond (of) the fifty-oared-galley, but also we-seem to-be
κακοὶ δια τούτον· αὐτοὶ τε ἀπολαλαμεν dishonest through this (man); we ourselves indeed were-ruined
tὸ ἐπι τούτῳ. Γὰρ ἥκουσε, [the on this [as far as depended on this man]. For he-had-heard,
ὅτερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς εἰν ἄπορον ἀπιόντας πεζῷ as-well-as we, that it-would-be impracticable having-departed on-foot
τα διαβὴν τοὺς ποταμοὺς, καὶ σωζὴν not-only to-cross the rivers, but also to-be-saved [to get
𝑒ἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτον οὖν δύνα safe] to — Greece. (From) this (one) therefore being
τοιούτου ἄφελόμεν. Εἰ δὲ σὺ ἡγεσ, such (a person) I-rescued (the man). If indeed you were-leading
ἡ τίς ἀλλος τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ (him-away), or any-one else of — (those) with you, and not (one)
tῶν ἀποδόντων παρ’ ἥμων, ἵνα εὐ δυν of — (those). deserting from us, know well that 'I would
ἔποίσα αὐτὸν τούτων. Ὁ ποῦ ὁ, ἔνα νῦν
have-done nothing of-these (things). Consider then, if 'you now
ἀποκτείνεσθαι ἐμε, ἀποκτείνων ἀγαθῶν
'kill me, (you) are-putting-to-death (a) brave-and-honourable
ἀνδρά ὁ ἀνδρᾷ τε δειλόν καὶ ποιητῶν.
man (for (a) man not-only (a) coward but-also (a) villain.
Ο Kleaνδρος ἄκοινος ταῦτα εἴπεν ὅτι μὲν
— Cleander having-heard this said that indeed
οὐκ ἐδικεῖτο Δέκτωρ, εἰη
he 'could not 'approve (of the conduct of) Dexippus, if (he)
πεποιημένα ταύτα: οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη, νομίζειν,
has-been-doing these (things); not indeed, said-he, to-consider,
εἰ Δέκτωρ ἦν παμπόντως
[but consider, said he,] (that) if Dexippus were (the) worst-of-villains
οὐδὲ χρὴναι αὐτῶν πάσχειν βιαν, ἄλλα
(that) neither ought he to-suffer violence, but
κριθήναι, (ἀιταὶ καὶ νῦν ἕμεις δειοῦτε,) τυχεῖν
having-been-tried, (as even now you require,) to-have-met-with
τῆς δίκης. Νῦν οὖν μὲν ἄποτε, καταλιπτόντες
— justice. Now therefore indeed retire, leaving-behind
τῶν ὁ ἄνδρα. ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω,
this — man (Agasias); when indeed I shall-call (you),
pάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. Οὔτε δὲ αἰτιῶμαι
be-present at the trial. 'I neither indeed 'accuse
τῆν στρατιάν, οὔτε οἰδένα ἄλλον ἔτι, ἔπει
the army, nor (no-one) (any one) else besides, since
αὐτῶς οὐτός ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. Δὲ
he himself confesses to-have-released the man. But
ὁ ἀφαιρεθεῖσθαι εἴπεν. Ἡγώ, ὁ Kleaνδρος,
—(the man) having-been-taken-away said: I, O Cleander,
eἰ καὶ οὐκ ἐμὲ ἀγέγερσας ἐὰν
if even you-suppose (that) I was-led-away (for) 'doing something
ἀδικοῦντα, οὔτε ἐπαινον οὐδένα, οὔτε
'wrong, (I indeed) neither struck (no-one) (any one), nor
ἐθαλλον, ἄλλο εἰπον ὅτι τὰ πρόθετα εἶπ
threw (stones), but said that the sheep were
δημόσια· γὰρ ἕν δόγμα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, εἰ
public-property; for—it was (a) decree of-the
army, if
τις, ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιάς ἔχει, ἰδία ληφών-
any-one, when the army went-out, 'should privately 'make-any-
tο, τὰ ληφθέντα εἶναι δημόσια. Ταύτα
capture, the (things so) captured to-be public-property. These
εἶπον· καὶ ἐκ τοῦτον λαβὼν με ὅτι
(things) I-said; and on this seizing me this
ἀνεχθέν 
(Dexippus) was-leading (me away), in-order-that no-one 'might —
ὦθέγγυτο, ἀλλ’ αὐτῶς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος
utter (any thing), but he taking — (a) part
διασώσει τὰ κρήματα τούς ληστὰς παρὰ τῆν
might-preserve the things for-the plunderers contrary-to-the
ῥήτραν. Πρὸς ταύτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἡσεὶ
agreement. To this — Cleander said: Since
τοίνυν εἰ τοιοῦτος, κατὰμενε, ἵνα καὶ βουλευόσω-
therefore you-are such-a-person, remain-here, that even I-may-delibe-
μεθα peri σοῦ.
rate about you.

'Εκ τούτον οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ὕριστων·
After this — (those) indeed about Cleander went-to-supper;
δὲ Ξενοφῶν συνήγαγε τὴν στρατιὰν, καὶ συνέθευσιν
and Xenophon assembled the army, and coun-
καὶ οὐρανεύειν τέρμαται πρὸς Κλέανδρον παρατη-
sailed (them) to-send men to Cleander inter-
σμενοὺς peri τῶν ἀνδρῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἐδοξέων
ing for the men. On this it-seemed (good)
αιτοῖς, στρατηγοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς καὶ
to-them, having-sent (the) generals and captains, and
Δρακόλυτον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
Dracontius the Spartan, and (those) of-the others
ὁ ἐδόξος εἶναι ἐπιτήδειοι, δεῖσθαι
who seemed to-be fit (for the occasion), to-entreat
Κλεάνδρον κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τῷ ἀνδρε. 
Cleander by all means to-set-free the-two men.
Xenophon therefore says: You have indeed, O Cleander,
to be both men, and the army allowed you to do what
you wished, both (as) respects these and (as) respects all
enemies: now indeed they entreat and request you
do not to give the two men, and not to put them to death;
give much much in the time past
for they laboured much in the time past
the army. And having obtained
this from you, they promise you in return for these things,
if you wish to lead them, and if the gods may be
propitious, (that they) will show you, both how orderly and well dis-
ei s i a n i o i peisomenoi
ciplined they are and how competent (they are when)
by the commanders, (and) with the assistance of the gods not
fear the enemy. And also they entreat of you
even this, (that) having come and having taken command
and to distribute to each one — (his) merit [and give each one his
"O Cleander, have heard these things said:
"Alla vai to so, tach' toy apotheosomai
But by the twin-gods, I-will-speedily — 'answer
ymin. Kai te didami to andre ymin, kai
you. And not-only I-give the-two men-to-you, but-also
autous par SOSOUMAI, xai yin oie theoi paradothisin,
I-myself will-come (to you); and if the gods
exegyssomai eis tin Hellada. Kai oie oton
I-will-lead (you) to — Greece. And — those
logou eisain telai anastai, h
words (of yours) are much opposed, than [are very different from
obis egw ekoun peri elon ymwn, ws
those] which I heard about some of-you, (namely) that
afostate to strateuma apo Lacedaemonian:
you-were-alienuating the army from (the) Lacedaemonians.

Ek toiton mou oie epainovites atopo
On this indeed — they-applauding (him) departed
exontes to andre. De Kleandros esweto epi
having the-two men. And Cleander sacrificed about
h tis seira, xai xynin filikos Xenofonti, xai
the journey, and he-associated friendly with Xenophon, and
xenobatalo Xenian. De kai epiei
they-joined (intimately in the) bonds-of-hospitality. And also when
eora autous pioynantas eutaxtos to paragygel-
his-saw them doing in-good-order the (things)
com-
lomeon, xai eti mallon epethymi genethlai
manded, and yet more he-desired to-become (the)
ygenwn auton. Estei mengto autw thomenei esti
leader of-them. When however he sacrificing for
treis xineras, ta iera oix egigneto,
three days, the victims 'did not become (favourable),
synkalidesas touc strateugous eise. Ta iera
calling-together the generals he-said: The victims were
oix etelefoudai egeirin:
ot 'brought-to-an-end (so as to be favourable for me) to-lead (you) away;
my adumeite mengto ynera toiston gar ymwn,
be not 'you-discouraged however on-account of-this; for you,
BOOK VI. — CHAPTER VI.

"Εκ τούτων ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι
On this it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers to-give
αὐτῷ τὰ πρόβατα δημόσια: ὦ δὲ
him the sheep (being) public-property; — (he) indeed
dεζάμενος, πάλιν ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς. Καὶ
having-received (them), again returns (the sheep) to-them. And
οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλευ. Οἱ στρατιώται δὲ διαζέμενοι
he indeed set-sail. The soldiers however having-sold
τῶν σιτῶν, δὲν ἴσαν συγκεκομισμένοι, καὶ τὰλα
the corn, which they-had-collected, and the-other
ἄ εἰλήφεσαν, ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βι-
(things) which they-had-captured, departed through — Bi-
Συνῶν. Δὲ ἐπει πορεύομενοι τὴν ὧραν ὅδον ἐνε-
thynia. But when pursuing the straight road they-
τυχον οὐδενί, δείκτε ἔχοντες τι ἔλθειν εἰς τὴν
met-with nothing, so-that having-something to-go to — (a)
φιλίαν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἰπποστρέψαντες
friendly (country), it-seemed (good) to-them
ποταμαῖν ἔλθειν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. Δὲ
having-marched
back-again to-go one day and night. And
πούσαντες τοῦτο, ἔλαθον καὶ πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα
doing this, they-took both many
καὶ πρόβατα: καὶ ἄφικοντο ἐκταῖοι εἰς
slaves
καὶ πρόβατα: καὶ ἄφικοντο ἐκταῖοι εἰς
and sheep (or cattle); and arrived (in) six (days) at
Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἔχει ἤμειναν
Chrysopolis of-the Calchedonians, and there they-remained
ἐπτὰ ἡμέρας λαφυροσωλούντες.
seven days selling-booty.
BOOK VII.

CHAPTER I.

"Οσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἑλλήνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
What indeed truly the Greeks did in the
ἀναβάσει μετὰ Κυροῦ μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
march-up (the country) with Cyrus until the battle,
kai δει ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἔπει Κύρος
and what (they did and experienced) in the journey after Cyrus
ἐπελεύσετε μέχρι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν Πόντον, καὶ
died until they-arrived at the Euxine-Sea, and
δει ἐποίουν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἔξωντος πεζόν,
what they-did from the Euxine, departing on-foot, and
ἐπέλευσον, μέχρι ἔγενοντο ἐξω τοῦ στόματος
sailing-off, until they-got beyond the mouth (thereof)
ἐν Χρυσοπόλει τῆς Ἁσίας, δεδήλωται εἰς τό
at Chrysopolis — (in) Asia, has-been-related in the
πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Ἡ εἰς τοῦτον δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβοῦ-
preceding discourse. On this indeed Pharnabazus fear-
µενος τὸ στράτευμα, μὴ στρατεύσῃ ἐπὶ
ing the (Grecian) army, lest it-might-invade —
τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίδιον τὸν
the country of-himself, having-sent to Anaxibius the
ναύαρχον, (ὁ δ’ ἐν τούτῳ ἕως ἐν Βυζαντίῳ,
(Spartan) admiral, (who indeed happened being in Byzantium,)
ἐδείκτο τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσας ἐκ
he-requested (him) to-have the army transported from
τῆς Ἁσίας, καὶ ἵππον εἰπεὶσθαι αὐτῷ πάντα,
— Asia, and promised to-do for-him all,
δια δέοι. Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς what he-might-require. And Anaxibius sent-for the 
στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν eis generals 
and captains of-the soldiers (to come) to 
Βυζάντιον, καὶ ἵπποντες, εἰ διαβαίνειν, Byzantium, 
and promised, if they-should-come-over (to him), 
ἐσσοῦι μισθοφορίαν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Οἴ (that) there-would-be 
rest (of the officers) indeed truly said (that) after-having-consulted 
ἀπαγγέλειν 
(they-would-announce (to him their determination). But Xeno-
φῶν εἰπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι, ἦν ἁπαλλάξατο ἀπὸ τῆς phon said to-him, that, already about-to-depart from the 
στρατιᾶς καὶ βοῦλοι ἀποπλείν. Δὲ δὲ Ἀναξί-
army, he even wished to-set-sail. But — Anaxi-
βιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοῖν, ἔπευξε συνδιαβάντα 
bius requested him, (that) after having-crossed-over-with 
οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Οὔν έφη 
the others) then to-depart. He therefore said (that he) 
ποιήσειν ταῦτα.
would-do these (things).

Δὲ Σείδης ὁ Ῥωδὴς πέμπει Μηνδοσάδην, καὶ But Seuthes the Thracian sends Mendosades, and 
κελεῖει Ξενοφόντα συμπροσδιομεῖσθαι δώς τὸ requests Xenophon to-join-in-the-effort-with (him) that the 
στράτευμα διαβῇ, καὶ έφη αὐτῷ συμπροσδιομη-
army might-cross-over, and he-said to-him actively-taking-part-
ντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. Δ' ἃ in-the-effort that he-would not repent (it). And — (Xenophon) 
eἰπεν: 'Ἀλλὰ μὲν τὸ στράτευμα διαβῆσεται' said: But indeed the army will-cross-over; 
ἐνεχα τούτον τελείτω μὴ δὲν μὴ ἐμοί, μὴ μὴν by-reason of-this let-him-pay no-one neither me, nor (no-one) 
ἀλλος ἐπειδὰν ἐν διαβῇ, ἐγὼ μὲν (any one) else; when indeed it-may-have-crossed-over, I indeed
ἀπαλλάξομι, προσφερέσθω πρὸς τοὺς δὲ
shall-leave (it), let-him-address-himself to — (those) indeed
διαμένοντας, καὶ δυναῖς ἐπικαρίους, ὡς ἀν δοκή
having-remained, and being opportune, (so) as may seem
αὐτῶι ἀσφαλές,
to-him safe (and not calculated to fail).

'Εξ τούτων πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται διαβαίνοντι
After this all the soldiers cross-over
εἰς τὸ Βυζαντίου. Καὶ ὁ 'Αναξιβιος μὲν οὐκ
to — Byzantium. And — Anaxibius indeed 'did not
ἐδίδον μισθὸν, δὲ ἐκήρυξε τοὺς στρα.
give (them) pay, but made-proclamation (that) the sol-
tiώτας λαβὸντας τὰ ὑπάλλα καὶ τὰ σκευή
diers taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage

ἐξεναῖ,
(should) go-out (of the city), as (if) not-only sending (them) 'away
καὶ ἀμα ποιήσων ἀριζ-(home), but also at-the-same-time (as if) (making) (taking) (their) num-
μὸν. Ἐνταίθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἡχόντο,
ber. Then the soldiers were-distressed, (because) that
ἐλχον οὐκ ἄργυριον ἐπιστικῆς ὤς εἰς τὴν πορείαν,
they-had no money to-get-provisions on the journey,
καὶ ἵναρας συνεσχενάζοντο.
and 'they reluctantly 'packed-up (their) baggage. And —

Εὐνοφῶν, γεγενημένον ξένος Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ
Xenophon, having-become (the) guest-friend to-Cleander the
ἀρμοστῇ, προσελθὼν ἑσπάξετο αὐτῶν
governor, going-to (him) he-kindly-'saluted him 'taking-leave
ὡς ἡδὴ ἀποπλευσούμενος. 'Ο δὲ λέγει
as now about-sailing-away. — (Cleander) indeed said
αὐτῷ. Μὴ ποιήσῃς ταῦτα ἐὰν δὲ μὴ,
to-him: 'Do not 'do this: if indeed not, [for otherwise]
ἐφη, ἐξεῖς αἰτίαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τίνες
said-he, you-will-have (the) blame, since even now some
ἡδὴ αἰτίωνται σὲ ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα οὐ ταχὺ
already blame you that the army 'does not quickly
ἐξέρχεσθαι. Δ' ὃ εἶπεν Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ γε εἰμι
'creep-out. And — (Xenophon) said: But I-at-least am
οὐ μὲν αὐτοῖς τούτοις, δ' οἱ στρατιωταὶ αὐτοὶ
not indeed (the) cause of-this, but the soldiers themselves
δεδομένοι ἐπιστικοῦ, διὰ τοῦτο ἤδη μοῦσι πρὸς
wanting provisions, through this they-are-troubled about
τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἄλλ' ὁμοίως, ἔφη, ἐγώ συμβουλεύω
the departure. But however, said-he, I advise
σοι μὲν ἐξελθεῖν ὡς παρενόμους,
you indeed to-go-out (with them) as (if) about-accompanying (them),
δ' ἔπειδον τὸ στρατευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε
and when the army has-got without (the city), then
ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Τοῖνυν, ἔφη ο Ξενοφῶν,
to-leave (it). (We) therefore, said — Xenophon,
ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξιβοῦ διαπραξόμεθα ταῦτα.
going to Anaxibius will-settle these (things).
Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. Δὲ δὲ
Thus going (to him) they-told (him) these (things). And — (he)
ἐκέλευσεν ποιεῖν οὕτω, καὶ συνέσχεσεν
requested (them) to-do so, and that the soldiers
προσακμέναι ἐξέταις τὴν ταχιστὴν,
'packed-up (their) 'baggage should-go-out in-the quickest (time),
καὶ προσακμέναι, δὲ ἄν μὴ παρῇ
and moreover-to-declare-publicly, (that he) who might not be-present
εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄριστον, ἢτί αὐτοῦ
at the review and at the numbering, that he
αἰτησάσθαι αὐτῶν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ
(would) blame himself. Then the generals
ἐξέσαν πρῶτοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.
went-out first, and the others (after them). And altogether
καὶ ἄρδην
all were out except (some) few, and Eteonicus
ἐστάθησαν παρὰ τὰς πύλας, ὡς, ὅποτε πάντες
stood by the gates, that, when all
γένοιτο ἔξω συνηχεῖσαν τὰς πύλας, καὶ
had-got out (ready for) shutting the gates, and
διμαλὼν τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας
throwing-in the bar. And — Anaxibius having-called-together
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἔλεγε·
the generals and the captains said:
Λαμβάνετε, ἕφη, μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
You may take, said he, indeed — provisions from the Thracian
κωμῶν· (δὲ εἰς αὐτοῖς πολλαὶ χρῆαι καὶ πυριτικὲς,
villages; and there-is there much barley and wheat,
καὶ τὰλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·) δὲ λαβόντες
and other — provisions;) and taking (these things)
pορεύεσθε εἰς Ἐφρονῆσον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίκος
proceed to (the) Chersonesus, where indeed Cynicus
μισθοδοτήσει ἵμην. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν στρατιωτῶν
will give you 'pay. But some of the soldiers
ἡ καὶ τίς τῶν λοχαγῶν ἐπαξιόσαντες ταύτο,
or even some (one) of the captains having-overheard these
dιαγγέλλει eἰς τὸ στρατευμα. Καὶ οἱ
things), communicated (them) to the army. And the
στρατηγοὶ μὲν ἐπινιδάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεῦθου,
generals indeed (also) inquired about — Seuthes,
pότερα εἰς πολέμος ἡ φίλος, καὶ πότερα
whether he-might-be animical or friendly, and whether
dεόν πορεύεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους, ἡ
it was necessary to march over the sacred mountain, or 'in (a)
κύκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Ῥάχης. Δὲ ἐν
'circuit through (the) middle of — Thrace. But during (the time)
ὁ δὲ διέλευσεν ταύτα οἱ στρατιώται
in which they were conversing about these (things) the soldiers
ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θεώσε ὁμοίω πρὸς
having-snatched-up — (their) arms run in-full-speed to
τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰσιώντες eἰς τὸ
the gates, so that again (they were about) entering within the
τεῖχος. Δὲ ὁ Ἑτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
walls. And — Eteonicus and — (those) with him,
ὡς εἶδον τοὺς ὅπλας προσδέωντας συγκλείσωσι
as they saw the heavy-armed-men running-towards (them) shut
tae pilas kai emballouni tov mouklon. De oi the gates and thrust-in the bar. But the
strapitwtau exopton te tae pilas, kai elenon
soldiers knocked indeed at-the gates, and said,
dti paschoien adikwata ekballemeno eis tois
that they-suffered most-unjustly, being-thrown-out to the
polemiou kai ephasan katasthisein tae
enemy; and they-said (that they would) out-down the
pilas, el mhe ekontes anoixousin. 'Allou
gates, if they did not voluntarily open (them). Others
de exeun epi balatatan, kai uperbaionsin eis
indeed ran to (the) sea, and went-over into
tan pilan para tan xelhyn tov teixous de allou
the city along the pier of the wall; but others
ton strapitwon oie tygychan ointes
of-the soldiers (those namely) who happened being
exon, ow orosi ta pragmaata epi
within (the walls), as they-perceived the things (going on) at
tai pilas, diakoptontes ta kleida tais
the gates, cutting-through the bars with — (their)
axias, anapetanvouni tae pilas de oie
axes, they-opened-wide the gates; and — (they all)
eisptotonin.
rush-in.
'O Xenofon de ow eide ta
— Xenophon indeed as he-saw the (things) going-on,
deisaz mou to strapetema traporso eri aretagyn
having-feared lest the army might-turn to plunder, 
kaia andheosta kaxa yenost to pilai, kai eantw, 
and irreparable evil might-happen to-the city, and to-himself, 
kaia tois strapitwtois, exei, kai suneispitai sun 
and to-the army, ran, and rushes-in-together with 
to anchlo eisw ton pilai. Oi Byzantioi de, ow 
the crowd within the gates. The Byzantians indeed, as 
eidov to strapetema eispteton bia feignousin ex 
they-saw the army rushed-in by-force fled from
τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ the market, — (some) indeed to the ships, — (some) indeed
οἴκαδε· δόσι δὲ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἐνδον home; such indeed (who) happened being within (doors)
ἔθεον ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καδείλευο τὰς τριήρεις, ran out, — (some) indeed hauled-down the galleys (into)
ὡς σώζοντο ἐν τοῖς τριήρεσιν· δὲ πάντες the water), that they-might-be-saved in the galleys; but all
οὖντο ἀπολωλέων, ὡς τῆς πόλεως thought (themselves) to-have-been-lost, as (believing) the town
ἐκλωκύνας. Δὲ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος ἀποφεύγει εἰς τὴν having-been-captured. But — Eteonion flies-away to the
ἀχραν. Ὅν Ἀναξίβιος δὲ καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ citadel. — Anaxibius indeed running-down to (the)
θάλασσαν περιέπληκτος τὴν ἰχρὸπολιν ἐν ἔλευ- sea sailed-round to the citadel in (a) fish-
τικῷ πλοῖῳ, καὶ εἰς τὸς μεταπεμπτηταῖον ing boat, and immediately he-sends-for (men) from (the)
φρουροὺς Καλυχεδόνος· γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἰχροπόλει garrison of-Calchedon; for — (those) in the citadel
οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἵκανοι σχεῖν τοὺς ἀνδρας. 'did not appear to-be sufficient to-restrain the men.
Οἱ στρατιώται δὲ δὲ εἰς ἔδον τὸν Ἑξοφύντα, The soldiers however as they-saw — Xenophon,
προσπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ, πολλοῖ, καὶ λέγουσι: rushed-up to-him, (they being) many, and said:
Νῦν ἔξεστι σοι, ὡ Ἑξοφύν, γενέσθαι ἀνδρὶ. Now it-is-allowed you, O Xenophon, to-become (a great) man.
"Εχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις κρήματα, You have (the) city, you have galleys, you have money,
ἔχεις τοσοῦτον ἄνδρας. Νῦν, εἰ βούλω, you have such-a-great-number (of) men. Now, if you-wish,
όν τε ὑμῖν ὑμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς ποιήσαμεν you may not-only profit us, but also we will make
σὲ μέγαν. Δ᾽ ὃ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀλλ᾽ you (a) great (man). And — (Xenophon) replied: But
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER I.

τε λέγετε εὖ, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ 
you not-only say well, but-also I-will-do these (things); if

δὲ ἐπισημεῖτε ταύτων, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα
indeed you-desire these (things), place-yourselves — (under) arms

ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα·
and (in) order as speedily (as possible); (he) wishing:

κατηρεμίσαι αὐτοῖς· καὶ τε αὐτὸς παρηγγύλα
ordered αὐτόκες παρηγγύλα
to-have-tranquilized them; and not-only he-himself ordered

tαῦτα,
these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers):

καὶ ἔκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους
ordered τοὺς ἄλλους
these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers):

παρηγγύλαν τίς ἔσθει τὰ ὄπλα. 
And:

οἱ αὐτοὶ ταττόμενοι ὡς ἀντίτοιχον, τε
they arranging (themselves) on themselves, not-only 'did:

οἱ ὀπλίται ἐγένοντο εἰς ὁπτῶ ἐν
the heavy-armed-men become in (number) eight (deep) in (a)

ὁλίγῳ χρόνῳ, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ παραδεδραμήκεσαν
short time, and the targets had-ran-on-the-side

ἐπὶ τὸ ἐκάτερον κέρας. 
short time, and the targets had-ran-on-the-side

τὸ τὸ χωρίον ἐστὶ
short time, and the targets had-ran-on-the-side

τό τὸ τὶς ὄπλα ἔστι
to — each wing. And the place, (which) is

οἷς κάλλιστον ἔκταξασθαι καλούμενον
such (as is) most-beautiful to-draw-up-in-order (an army), is-called

τὸ Θράκιον, ἔρημον οἰκίων καὶ πεδινών. 
the Thracian, clear of-houses and level. When

δὲ τὰ ὄπλα ἔστι
indeed the arms lay (in place), and (the men) were-some-

μισθησαν, Ξενοφῶν συγκαλεῖ τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ
what-tranquilized, Xenophon assembled the army, and

λέγει τάδε·
speaks thus:

"โอτι μὲν ὄργιζον, ὡς ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ
That indeed you-are-angry, O men soldiers, [and

νομίζετε, ἐξαπατόμενοι, πᾶσχεν δεινά, think, being-deceived, to-suffer greatly, [and think, that

οὐ θαυμάζω.
you have been badly treated, in being thus deceived;] I-am not 'surprised.
Δὲ ἦν χαρίζωμενα τῶ ἐπιμένει, καὶ τιμωρησάμεθα
But if we gratify—(our) anger, and punish
τυχεῖ τὰς Λακεδαιμονίως τοὺς παρόντας,
not-only (the) Lacedæmonians, — (those namely) being-present,
τῆς ἐξαπάτης, καὶ διαπλάσωμεν τὴν πόλιν
(for the) deceit, but-also plunder the city
οὐδέν τὴν αἰτίαν, ἐνδυμάτευσε ὑπὸ ἑσταί
not the cause, [not to blame,] I consider what will-be
ἐντείνεται.
from this [consider what will be the consequences]. We will-be
μὲν ἀποδειγμένοι πολέμου Λακεδαιμονίως
indeed (the) declared enemies (of the) Lacedæmonians
καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. Οἷος δ’ ὁ πόλεμος ἄν
and — (their) allies. What indeed the war may
γένοιτο πάρεστιν ἡ εἰκάζειν, ἑωρακότας καὶ
be it-is-possible indeed to-conjecture, having-seen and
ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ ἄνω ηὕτῃ γεγενεμένα.
remembered | the (things) now recently having-occurred

Γὰρ ἦμεις οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι
[the things that have but recently occurred]. For we — Athenians

ἐγιούσιν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς τοὺς
went into the war — (that namely) with the
Λακεδαιμονίως καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις, ἔχοντες
Lacedæmonians and — (their) allies, having
τρίπτερα, τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάσσῃ, δὲ τὰς ἐν
galleys, — (some) indeed at sea, and — (some) in
τοῖς νεαρίσις, οίκες ἐλαίητος τραχυσίων,
the docks, (together) not less (than) three-hundred,
ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει,
there-being also much money in the city
καὶ προσόδου οὕσης κατ’ ἐναιείν τῷ
[Acropolis], and (the) income being yearly not-only
ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ ἐκ τῆς ἒπερορίας
from the home (revenues) but-also from — (our)

οὐ μείον χιλῶν ταλάντων, ἀρχοντες
(territories) not less (than) a-thousand talents, ruling
BOOK VII.—CHAPTER I.

καὶ τῶν νῆσων, καὶ τὸν Αἴγαλας
also all the islands, and also having many
πόλεις ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, καὶ τὸν Αἴγαλας ἐν τῇ
towns in — Asia, and also many others in —
Εὐρώπης, καὶ ἔχοντες αὐτὸ τούτο τὸ Ὑστάντιον,
Europe, and having this very same — Byzantium,
ὅπου ἔσμεν νῦν, κατεπολεμηθῆμεν
where we are now, (yet) we were warr’d against [the war was car-
ὡς ὑμεῖς πάντες ἐπίστασθε. Δὲ νῦν
.which you all know. But now
δὴ ἄν οἶδες τί παθεῖν. Λακεδαῖοι —
truly 'we may 'think what (we may have) to suffer, (the)
μονίων καὶ μὲν τῶν Ἄχαιῶν ἰσαρχῶν συμ-
momians and indeed the Achæans being al-
μάχων, δὲ Ἀθηναίων, καὶ οὓς ἤσαν τότε
lies, and (the) Athenians, and such (as) were then
·σύμμαχοι ἑκείνοις, πάντων προσγεγενημένων·
allies (of) them, all having become joined to (them);
dὲ Τισσαφέρνους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐπὶ
and Tissaphernes (as) also the other barbarians on (the)
θάντα τῶν ὅτων πολεμῶν ἡμῖν, δὲ
sea (coast) all being enemies to us, but (the)
pολεμωτάτου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω ·
most-inimical (being) this same — king up (in the
·δὲ ἡλίθομεν ἀφαιρησό
·country); whom we went (against the purpose of)
·μενοί τε τὴν ἄρχην καὶ ἀποκτε
·not-only — (his) rule [throne] but also (of) kill-
νοῦτες, εἰ δυναίμεθα. Πάντων τούτων δὴ
·ing (him), if we could. All these truly
·ὅτων ὅμως, ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων, ὡστις
·being alike (against us), is there any one so foolish, who
οἴεται ἡμᾶς ἀν περιγενέσθαι;
·thinks (that) we might get the superiority? Let us not,
·θεόν, μανιάμεθα μηδ’ ἀπολόμεθα
·in the name of the gods, 'not-like-madmen nor
·perish
οὔτε δυνάμει καὶ ταῖς πολέμοις, καὶ τοις ἡμετέροις φίλοις αὐτῶν τε καὶ οἰκείοις.

Γὰρ εἰς πάντες ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς

For they are all in the cities — (those namely that)

στρατευμέναις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, καὶ δικαιῶς, εἰ μὲν

will-be-marching against us, and justly, if indeed

ἡμῶν κατασχεῖν οἰδεμίαν βάρβαρον πόλιν,

we-wished to-take-possession of no barbarian city,

καὶ κρατοῦντες ταῦτα, δὲ πρώτην Ἑλληνιδα

and (we) being-superior-in-force to-these; but (the) first

πόλιν εἰς ἣν ἠλευθερῶν, ταῦτην ἐξαλάπαξομεν.

city to which we-came, that (namely) we-plundered.

'Εγὼ μὲν τοῖς εὐχομαί πρὶν ἐπιδεῖν ταῦτα

I indeed therefore pray (that) before I-behold such

gενόμενα ἰφ' ὕμων, ἐνε μὲ γε γενέσθαι

(things) brought-to-pass by you, (that) I at-least (may) be

μυρίας ἀργυρίας κατὰ γῆς. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν,

a-thousand fathoms under ground. And I-advice you,

δυνατάς Ἑλληνας, πεισόμενος τοῖς προεστη-

being Greeks, (that) yielding-obedience to — (those) standing-at-

κοσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων πείρασκαί τυγχάνειν τοῖς

the-head of the Greeks to-endavour to-obtain —

δικαιῶν. 'Εὰν δέ μη δύνασθε ταῦτα,

justice. If indeed you-are not 'able (to obtain) this,

dεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀδικοῦμενος μὴ γοῦν

lt-in-proper (that) you (though) wronged 'should not therefore

στερεώθαι Ἑλλάδος. Καὶ νῦν δοξεὶ μοι

'deprive-yourselves of-Greece. And now it-seems to-me (that)

πέμπταντας Ἀναξίδιου εἰπεῖν, ὅτι ἡμεῖς παρελημ-

having-sent to-Anaxibius to-say, that we have-on-

ἐμεν εἰς τὰς πόλιν ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλ' θεμελιω
tered into the city about-committing no violence, but

ἔν μὲν δυνάμεθα εὑρίσκεσθαι τι ἄγαθὸν παρ'

if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from

if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from
Books VII. — Chapter I.

ἐμῶν· δὲ εἰ μη, ἀλλὰ δηλώοντες, δὴ της you; but if not, yet (however) showing, that
ἐξερχόμεθα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πεἰσό-
we-go-out not (as) being-deceived, but (as) obey-

καὶ ταῦτα· ἐδοξέ· ing (you).

καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἰερώνυμον τε Ἡλεῖον, and they-sent Hieronymus — (the) Elean,
καὶ Πεθυλόχοι τοίνυν Ἀρκάδα, saying these (things), and-likewise Kurylochus (the) Arcadian,
καὶ Φιλόσιον Ἀχαιόν. Οἱ μὲν ὄχονται and Phileus (the) Achæan. — Ὑ(They) indeed went

καὶ ταῦτα. saying these (things) [they went carrying this message].

Δὲ τῶν στρατιῶτων ἔτι καθημένων Κορη-
But the soldiers being still seated
καὶ τάδες Ἡλεῖος προσέρχεται, (a) Theban came-up (to them), who (though) not
καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, (a) fugitive, went-about — Greece, but wishing-to-be-

eἰς πόλις ἡ ἑαυτὸς δέοιτο στρατηγοῦ. καὶ τότε any city or nation might-require (a) general; and then

προσέλθουν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰς ἐτοίμος ὕπεισαν. αὐτοῖς coming-forward he-said, that he was prepared to-conduct them

eἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Ῥώμης, ἐνθα to the Delta, (so) called of — Thrace, where

πολλὰ καὶ ἀγάδα λίτους. δὲ ἵστε many and good (things) might-be-obtained; and until they

ἐὰν μόλωσιν, ἐφι παρέχειν καὶ σῖτα καὶ should arrive, he-said (that) he would-supply both meat and

ποτά εἰς ἄφθονοιν. Οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούοντι drink in abundance. The soldiers listen-to
ταῦτα, καὶ ἄμα τὰ ἀπαγγέλλομενα these (things), and at-the-same-time the (things) announced

παρὰ Ἀναξίβιον· γὰρ ἀπερίπατο, ὃτι πεισμένοις from Anaxibius; for he-replied, that being-obedient

αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελῆσει, ἀλλὰ ἀπαγγέλλει ταῦτα to him it would not (be) repented, but (that) he-would-

τοῖς τέλεσθι τε ὕλοι, καὶ announce these (things) to the highest-authorities (at) home, and

αὐτός συνεϊσερχόμενος περὶ αὐτῶν ἄγαλμα, he-himself would-consult-and-plan about them (all the) good,

καὶ τὶ δύνατο. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιώται whatever he-might-be-able. On this the soldiers

δέχοντα τινὸς Κορατάδην στρατηγὸν, καὶ receive indeed — Corrades (as their) general, and

ἀπῆλθεν ἓκω τοῦ τείχους. Ὅ Κορατάδης δὲ they-departed without the walls. — Corrades indeed

συνεϊσερχά τοῖς παρεσεόθαι ἐν τῷ στρατεύμα agree with-them to-be-present at the army (the)

ὑστεραίαν, ἔχων καὶ Ιερεία καὶ μάντιν, καὶ next-day, having both victims and (an) augur, and

σῖτα καὶ ποτά τῇ στρατιᾷ. Δὲ ἐκεῖ ἔξηλθεν, meat and drink for the army. But when they-had-gone-out,

ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκλείσε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἐκηρύξεν — Anaxibius shut the gates, and made-proclamation

ὅς ἄν ἄλλος ἔνδον, ἃν τῶν στρα-

(that he) who might be-caught within (the walls), being-of the ar-

τιωτῶν, οἱ πεπράσεως. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ Ko-

my, that he-would-be-sold. But on-the next-day — Cor-

ρατάδης μὲν ἦκε, ἔχων τὰ Ιερεία καὶ τὸν μάντιν, rataedes indeed came, having the victims and the augur,

καὶ εἰκοσιν ἄνδρες εἰσόντο αὐτῷ φέροντες ἄλφατα, and twenty men followed him carrying barley meal,

καὶ ἄλλοι εἰκοσι ὕλοι, καὶ τρεῖς and another twenty (carrying) wine, and three (carrying loads)

ἐλαιῶν, καὶ εἰς ἁνὴρ μέγιστον φορτίον ὅσον of-olives, and one man (carrying) the-greatest load that
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER I.

εδύνατο σκορδών, καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύχων. Δὲ he-could of-garlic, and another of-onions. And καταδέμενος ταῦτα, ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμεναιν, they-having-laid-down these (things), as (if) for distribution, ἔδυναι. he-sacrificed.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἔκε- But Xenophon having-sent-for Cleander re-

λευεν διαπράξαι ὅπως τε εἰσέλθων quested (him) to-obtain (permission for him) that — he-might-enter εἰς τὸ τεῖχος, καὶ ἀποπλεύσας ἐκ Βυζαντίου. 'Ὁ within the walls, and to-sail-away from Byzantium. — Κλέανδρος ὦ ἐλεέων, ἠφι. Ὡς διαπράξαμενος Cleander indeed having-arrived, said: I-come having-obtained μάλα μόλις· γὰρ Ἀναξιβίων λέγειν, (permission with) great difficulty; for (that) Anaxibius says, διὶ εἰ ὑπὸ ἐπιτήδειον τοὺς στρατιώτας μὲν that it-is not proper (that) the soldiers indeed εἶναι πλησίον τοῦ τεῖχος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ (should) be near the walls, Xenophon also (being) ἐνδον· δὲ τοὺς Βυζαντίους στασίαζειν καὶ within; and (that) the Byzantians were-divided-in-factions and εἶναι πονηροὺς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως ὅ, (that) they-were evil-disposed to-one-another; yet-however indeed, ἠφι, ἐκέλευεν εἰς ἔνναυ, εἰ μέλλοις ἐκπλεῖν σὺν he-said, he-requests (you) to-enter, if you-intend to-sail-away with αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς him. — Xenophon indeed truly having-embraced the στρατιώτας ἀπήρει εἰςω τοῦ soldiers [having taken leave of the soldiers] departed within the τεῖχος σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. Ὁ Κοιματάδης δὲ τῇ walls with Cleander. — Coratades indeed on-the μὲν πρῶτη ἡμέρᾳ οὐχ ἐκαλλιέρει, οὐδὲ διε- first day 'had no 'favourable-sacrifice, neither did-

μέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοὺς στρατιώτας. Τῇ he-distribute (nothing) (any thing) to-the soldiers. On-the
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

476

The next day indeed he stood by the altar, and Kioratades, estevenomos, des thvoun, de Ti-
Cerratades, being-crowned, as about-sacrificing; but Ti-
muas an o Dardanews, kai Newn o Asoiastos kai
mission the Dardanian, and Neon the Asinian, and
Kleaneor o Orkomenios, elegov, muh Kiora-
Cleanor the Orchomenian, said (that it was) not for Corn-
tadon oinon, des o unh ygeronmenv t' stratika,
tades to-sacrifice, as (he was) not to-be-leading the
army, ei muh dasei ta episteda. De o xeleuei
unless he-should-give the provisions. And — he-ordered (them)
diamepiosai. 'Evet de evedei autw pollon,
to-be-distributed. When indeed it was wanting to him
dest siton genedai ekastw ton strat-
things), so that food should-be to-each of the sol-
tiwtan hemeras, anavalew t' ierewa apie,
dies 'for (the) day, taking-away the victims he-departed,
uali dipeioin t' stratignaian.
and renouncing the generalship.


CHAPTER II.

De Newn o Asoiastos, kai Phryniskos o Axaio, But Neon the Asinian, and Phryniscus the Achian,
kai Philiesios o Axaio, kai Eanthikijo o Axaio,
and Phileus the Achian, and Xanthicles the Achian,
kai Timasion o Dardanews, epememov eni t' stratika,
and Timasion the Dardanian, remained with the army,
kai proelhontes els kwmaw twn Orhaxon, taws
and proceeding to (some) villages of the Thracians, —
katav Buxantiou, estatopedaionto. Kai
(those namely) opposite Byzantium, they-encamped. And
οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἑστασίαζον, Κλεάνδρῳ μὲν καὶ Φρυ- 

νίσχος Βουλάμενοι ἂγειν πρὸς Σευθήν: (γὰρ, 

wishing to-lead (the army) to Seuthes; (for 

ἐπειδὴ αὐτοῖς, καὶ τῷ 

he-persuaded (and gained) them (over to his interest) and to-the (one) 

μὲν ἐδοξε ἰττόν, δὲ τῷ γυναῖκα: ἐδὲ Νέων 

indeed he-gave (a) horse, but to-the (other α) woman;) and Neon 

eἰς Χέρρονησον· οἰόμενος, εἰ γένοιτο ὑπὸ 

to (the) Chersonesus; thinking, (that) if they-got under (the) 

Λακεδαίμονιοι δὲ προστάναι παντὸς τοῦ 

Lacedæmonians (that) he might 'stand-at-the-head of-all the 

στρατεύματος δὲ Τιμασίων προδυναμεῖτο διαβήται 

army; but Timasion wanted-much to-cross 

πέραν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑσσίαν, οἰόμενος ἄν 

over again into — Asia, thinking (that) he might (thus) 

κατελθεῖν οἴκαδε. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο 

' return home. And the soldiers desired 

ταῦτα. Δὲ τοῦ χρόνου διατριβομένου, πολλοὶ 

this same. But the time 'being (thus) 'consumed, many 

tῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν ἀποδοθέμενοι τὰ 

of-the soldiers, — (some) indeed selling — (their) 

ὀπλα, κατὰ τοὺς χώρους, ἀπέτελεν ὅς 

arms up-and-down the places, sailed-away as (well as) 

ἐδονατο· δὲ οἱ καὶ κατεμεγνύσαντο εἰς 

they-could; but — (others) also mingled-with (the people) in 

tὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξιβιος δὲ ἔχαρε ἀνικῶν ταῦτα, 

the towns. Anaxibius however rejoiced hearing these 

tὸ στρατεύμα 

(for) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and) 

διαφθειρόμενον· γὰρ, τοῦτων γυγνομένων, ἢτο μᾶλλον 

(things), (that) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and) 

dispersed); for, these (things) happening, he-thought most-of-all 

χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ. 

to-gratify Pharnabazus. 

Δὲ Ἀρισταρχὸς διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ ἀρμοστῆς 

But Aristarchus (the) successor of-Cleander (the) governor
Buṣantion συναντά Ἀναξιβίω, ἀποπλέοντι ἐκ of Byzantium met Anaxibius sailing-away from
Buṣantion ἐν Κυζίκῳ. δὲ ἐλέγετο, ὅτι καὶ Πόλος Byzantium at Cyzicus; and he-said, that even Polus
ναύαρχος διάδοχος ὅσον οὐ λίθη (the) admiral, (the) successor (of Anaxibius), | as-much-as not already
παρεῖν ἔις Ἑλλήσποντον. was-present in (the) Hellespont | was expected every instant to
Καὶ Ἀναξιβίως ἐπιστείλει μὲν τῷ enter the Hellespont]. And Anaxibius enjoined-on — —
Ἀριστάρχῳ ἀποδόσει οὖσος ἀν εὑροῦ τῶν Aristarchus to-sell as-many-as 'he might 'and of-the
στρατωτῶν Κύρου ὑπολειμένους ἐν Buṣantίῳ. army of Cyrus remaining-behind in Byzantium.
Ὁ Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐτεπράξει οὐδένα, ἀλλὰ καὶ — Cleander indeed had-sold none, but even
ἔθεράπευς τοὺς κάμποντας, οἰκτείρων, nursed-and-took-care-of — (those) being-sick, commiserating (them),
καὶ ἀναγκαίων δέχεσθαι oἰχία. and obliging (the inhabitants) to-receive (them) 'in (their) 'houses.
Δ' Ἀριστάρχος, ἐπεί ήλθε τάχιστα, ἀπέδοτο οὐκ But Aristarchus, when he-came speedily, sold not
ἐλάττως τετρακοσίων. Ἀναξιβίως δ' παρα- less (than) four-hundred. Anaxibius indeed sail-
πλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρά Φαρνάβαζον ing-along (the coast) to Parium sends to Pharnabazus
κατὰ τὰ συγχείμενα. Δ' ὅ ἐπεί ἴσχετο according-to — agreement. But — (Pharnabazus) when he-heard
Ἀριστάρχον τε ἡκοντα εἰς Buṣantion (that) Aristarchus — had-come to Byzantium (as)
ἀρμοστὴν, καὶ Ἀναξιβίων οἰκετὶ ναυαρχοῦτα, governor and Anaxibius no-longer commanded-the-fleet,
ἐμέλησε Ἀναξιβίων πρὸς Ἀριστάρχον, δὲ διεπράττετο he-neglected Anaxibius for Aristarchus, and practised
τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ Κυρίου
the same (things) about the army of — Cyrus
ἀπερ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.
which (he had) even (done) with Anaxibius.

'Εξ τοῦτον ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, καλέσας Ξενοφόντα,
On this — Anaxibius, having-called Xenophon
κελεύει πάση τέχνη καὶ μηχανῇ πλείσαι
(keléevei passē techné kai mēchane pléisai)
(to him), requests (him) by-every means and contrivance to-sail
ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα,
(epi to stratéuema ows tachistata,)
to the army as speedily (as possible), and not-only
συνέχειν αὐτὸ καὶ συνάδρομεν τῶν διε-
synéchein autō kai synadromen ton die-
to-keep it together, but-also to-collect of-the dis-
σπαρμένων ὡς πλείστους ἀν δύνηται,
persoed (soldiers) as many (as) 'he might 'be-able,
καὶ παραγαγόντα ἐν τὴν Πέρινθον δια-
kai paragagona en tēn Perinthon dia-
and having-led (them) 'along to — Perinthus to-
διδάξειν ἐν τήν Ἀσίαν ὑπὶ τάχιστα;
'didáxein en tēn Asiaen hipi tachistata;
'transport (them) 'across into — Asia as speedily (as)
kai didōsai autō triarchontorop, kai
possible); and he-gave to-him (a) thirty-aged-galley, and (a)
ἐπιστολήν, καὶ συμπέμπει ἄνδρα, κελεύσοντα τοὺς
epistolēn, kai sympempei andra, keleusonta touς
letter, and he-sends (a) man, requesting the
Περινθίους προσπέμψαι Ξενοφόντα τοῖς ἱπποῖς
Perinthious prospémpsa Xenophon ton — horse (back)
ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ ὁ
ωs tachistata epī to stratéuema. Kai o
as speedily (as possible) to the army. And —
Ξενοφόν μὲν διαπλεύσας ἀφηνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ
Xenophon mēn diapleúsaas afheineitai epī to
Xenophon indeed having-sailed-across arrived at the
στρατεύμα. οἱ στρατιώται δὲ ἐδέξαντο ἥδεως,
stratoūtai de edéxan to hdeωs,
army; the soldiers also received (him) with-pleasure,
καὶ ἅσμενοι εἰδός εἰποντο, ὡς διαβροχέοντο
kai hasmenoi eidoς eipontο, ows diabrhocheontο
and they willingly immediately 'followed (him), as crossing-over
ἐκ τῆς Θρᾴκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
ek tēs Thraikēs eis tēn Asiaan.
from — Thrace into — Asia.

'Ο Σευθῆς δὲ, ἄχούσας ζηκοντα πάλιν,
— Seuthes however, having-heard (of him) coming back, (and)
πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν, having-sent Medo sa de to him by sea,
ἐδείτο ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς έαυτόν, he-begged (him) to-bring the army to him,
ὑποσχομένους αὐτῷ, ὅ τι ἢτο λέγων promising him, whatever he-thought mentioning (it) (he
πείσειν. Δ’ ὅ διεχρήματο, might be able) to-persuade (him). But — (Xenophon) answered (him),
ὅτι εἰπ οἶν τε οὑδὲν τούτων γενέσθαι. |that it-was possible for-none of these (things) to-happen [that
Kαι ὃ it was impossible for any thing of the kind to take place]. And — (he)
μὲν ἄκοισας ταίτα ὡκετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ indeed having-heard these (things) departed. When however the
Ἔλληνες ἄφικαντο εἰς Περίνδων, Νέων μὲν Greeks arrived at Perinthus, Neon indeed
ἀποστάσας, ἔστρατοπεδεύσατο having-drawn-off (his troops) from (the rest),
χωρίς, ἔχων ὡς ἐκταχοσίους ἀνθρώπους ὃ ἔπιν apart, having about eight-hundred men; and all
τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα ἦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ the other (troops of the) army were in the same (place)
παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Ἀμφίδων. under the walls — (those namely) of Perinthus.
Metὰ ταύτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἐπραττε περὶ πλοίων, After this Xenophon indeed was-bargaining for ships,
dιὸς ὁτι διαβαίειν τάχιστα. Ἡν so that he-might-cross-over (as) speedily (as possible). At.
τούτω δὲ Ἀριστάρχος, ὁ ἄρμοστὴς ἐκ this (time) however Aristarchus, the governor from.
Βυζαντίου, ἄφικαμενος, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπισ- Byzantium, arriving, having two galleys, having-been-
μένοι ὑπὸ Φαρνάβαζου, ἀπείπε τε τοὺς ναυχέ- persuaded by Phar nab asus, he-forbade indeed the masters-of-the-
ποις μὴ διάγειν, ἔλθων τε ἐπὶ τὸ ships — to-carry-over (the Greeks), (and) having-gone also to the
στράτευμα εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιοῦσαι
army he-told the soldiers not to-go-across
εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ δὲ Ἐξοφόρων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξι-
εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ δὲ Ἐξοφόρων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξι-
into — Asia. But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-
But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-
bias had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this.
bias had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this.

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἔλεγεν. Ἀναξιβίος μὲν
Aristarchus again said: Anaxibius indeed
τούς οἰκέτας ναύαρχος, ἕως ἔρισε αὐτοῦ therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governor
τοῦ οἰκέτας ναύαρχος, ἕως ἔρισε αὐτοῦ therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governor
τῆς τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἡμῶν ἐν τῇ βαλακτρῷ, here; and if I-shall-take any of-you on the
καταδέω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ὁχέτο εἰς τὸ
kata-destroy. Saying these (things) he-departed within the
καταδέω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ὁχέτο εἰς τὸ
I-will-sink (you). Saying these (things) he-departed within the
teîchos. τῇ τῇ ἱστορια μεταπέμπεται τοὺς
teîchos. τῇ τῇ ἱστορια μεταπέμπεται τοὺς
walls. But on the next-day he-sent-for the
captains of the army.

Δὲ οὖν πρὸς τὰ τεῖχα. τίς ἐξαγγέλλει
But being already before the walls, some-one informs

Ἑνοφόρῳ, δόθη, εἰ εἰςεις συλλεκθήσεται, καὶ ἡ
Xenophon, that, if he-entered he-would-be-apprehended, and either

πεῖσται τί αὐτοῦ, ἢ καὶ παραδοθήσεται
would-suffer something there, or even be-delivered-up

Φαρνάδαξ. ὃ
to-Pharnabazus. — (Xenophon) however hearing these (things),

ὁ αὖθις ταῦτα,
indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that

μὲν προσπέμπεται τοὺς, ὅτι αὐτὸς εἶπεν, ὅτι
indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that

βούλητο θύεις
ei or the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the

καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἔσυντο
he-wished to-sacrifice (about) something. And going-away he-sacrificed,

εἰ εἰς τὸ θεὸν παρεῖναι αὐτῷ πειράσον ἄγιον τὸ
if the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the

στράτευμα πρὸς Σεοῦθην. Γὰρ ἐώρα ὅστε ὅν
army to Seuthes. For he-saw (it) neither being

ἀσφαλέας διαβαίνειν
safe to-cross-over (into Asia), — (he) hindering (them)
Kai ὅ μὲν εἶχεν ἀμφί ταῦτ·
And — (he) indeed had (himself) about these (things);
 Kai οἱ στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
[while he was thus engaged;] the generals indeed and captains
 ἤκοντος παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον,
coming (back) from — Aristarchus announced,
ὅτι μὲν κελεύει σφᾶς νῦν μὲν ἀπεναντὶ δὲ
that 'he indeed requests them now indeed to-go-away, but
ἐκεῖν τὴς δείλης ἔνθα καὶ ἡ ἐπιθυμία
to-come (in) the evening; whereby even — (his) design-against (them)
ἐδόξει μᾶλλον δήλη.
appeared more manifest. Therefore — Xenophon when it-seemed
Tacēa εἶναι καλὰ αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στράτεύματι,
(that) the victims were favourable for-him and the army,
λέναι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεῦθου παραλαβῶν Πολυ-κράτην τὸν Ἀθηναίον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
crates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the generals (except from Neōn) (a) man
κράτης τοῦ Ἀθηναίον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
κράτης τοῦ Ἀθηναίον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
crates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the generals (except from Neōn) (a) man
ἐκάστου, ὃ ἐκατότος ἐπίστευσεν, ὦχετο τῆς νυκτὸς
in-whom each-one confided, he-departed (in) the night
ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα Σεῦθου ἔξηκοντα στάδια.
ob the army of-Seuthes (distant) sixty stadia.
Δ' ἔπει δὲ καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἔστη destitute (of sentinels). And indeed at the first he-thought (that) τὸν Σεύθην καὶ, τῶν περὶ Σεύθην κατέμαθεν ὅτι τὰ πῦρα making-signals to one another, he-understood that the ἐξεκαθαρίσαν ἐὰν τῷ Σεύθῃ, πρὸ τὸν νυκτοφυλάκων had-been-kindled by — Seuthes before the night-watches ἐνεκα τοῦτον, ὡς οἱ φύλακες, μὴ ὁρῴατο, by reason of this, that the sentinels 'might not be seen, ἔντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, μὴν ὁπόσοι μὴν ὑπὸν ἔλειν, being in the dark, neither how many nor where they might be, δὲ οἱ προσφόρεται, μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ but — (those) approaching 'might not be concealed, but ἐλευ καταφανεῖς διὰ τὸ φῶς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔστη, might be conspicuous in the light. When indeed he-perceived προσέμει τὸν ἐμπνεῖα ὃν εἰπεκανεν ἐχών, (this), he sends the interpreter whom he happened having καὶ κελεύει εἰπείν Σεύθῃ, ὃτι Ξενοφόν (with him), and requests (him) to tell Seuthes, that Xenophon πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ is-present desiring to have an interview with him. But — ἦρωντο, εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ they-inquired, if (it was) the Athenian, the one from the στρατεύματος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφη εἰναι οὖτος, army. When indeed he-said (that) it was he-himself, ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον jumping-on (their horses) they-departed; and (a) little υἱὸν πελτάσται δόσον διαχώσει παρῆσαν, καὶ after targeteers as many as two hundred were present, and παραλαβόντες Ξενοφόντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ having received Xenophon and — (those) with him.
Ἑγὼν πρὸς Σεύθην. Ὅ τί ἦν ἐν
they-conducted (them) to Seuthes. — (Seuthes) indeed was in

τῷ χεῖρι μᾶλα φιλοττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι ἐγκεκαλι-
(a) tower well guarded, and horses having-been-

νωμένοι ἐνταῦθα κυκλῳ γὰρ διὰ τὸν
already-bridled (stood) round it 'in (a) 'circle; for through —

φόβοι μὲν ἔχιλον τοὺς ἵππους τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας,
fear 'he indeed 'led the horses during—indeed—(the)

δὲ τὰς νύκτας ἐφιλάττετο, ἐγκεκαλιωμένοι.
but during—the nights he—kept—guard, they—being—bridled.

Γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρὸς Ἐνθὶς, ὁ πρόγονος
For indeed it—was—said (that) formerly Teres, the ancestor

τοῦτον, ἱκών πολὺ στρατεύμα ἐν τῷ
of this (Seuthes), having (a) numerous array in —

ταῦτῃ χώρᾳ, παλλοῦς ἀπολέσατο ἐν·
this (same) country, 'he destroyed by

τῶν τούτων ἄνδρῶν, καὶ ἄφαιρε ἔννοια
these men (of this country), and had—been—deprived—of

τὰ σχενοφόρα· δὲ οὕτω ξαν ὘νοῖο,
— (his) 'baggage; and these were (the) Thynians,

λεγόμενοι εἰναὶ πολεμικῶτατοι πάντων, μᾶλλον
said to—be (the) most—warlike of—all, especially

νυκτὸς.
by—night.

'Επεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευσε Σεύθην.
When indeed they—were near, (Seuthes) requested Xenophon
to—enter having two (with him) whom he—might—wish.

'Επειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐνδον, πρώτον μὲν ἐπιταξότον
When indeed they—were within, 'they first indeed 'embraced

ἀλλήλων, καὶ κατὰ τὸν ὸραχίων νόμον πρὸς
one—another, and according—to the Thracian custom they—drank—

νοῦν ἐκείναν οἶνον· (δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης
to—one—another (in) horns of—wine; (and also Medosades

παρῆν τῷ Σεύθῃ, δεξερὰ ἐπρέσβευε τῷ αὐτῷ
'present with — Seuthes, who was—the—ambassador for— him
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER II. 485

πάτοσε). Ἐπειτα δὲ Ἐνοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν: to-all-places. Afterwards indeed Xenophon began to-speak;

"Ω Σεῦθη, ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμὲ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα, You, O Seuthes, 'having-sent to me, at Calchedon,

πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτον, δεόμενος (the) first (time) Medosades this-same-one (here), entreatings

μου συμπροδυμηθῆναι τὸ στράτευμα me to-co-operate-with (you) that the army (might)

διαθῆναι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ἦπεργονεύωντος μοι, be-crossed-over from — Asia, and promising me,

eἰ πράξαμι ταύτα, τοιήσειν if I-should-effect these (things), (that) you-would-do (something)

ev, ὡς Μηδοσάδης οὖντοι ἔφη, good (for me), as Medosades the-same (here present) said.

Εἰπὼν ταύτα, ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ Saying these (things), he-inquired-of — Medosades if

ταύτα ἐν ἀλήθει. 'Ὁ δ' ἔφη. these (things) were true. — 'He indeed 'said (that they were).

Οὖν Μηδοσάδης αὐτής ἑλθε ἐπ'ει ἐγὼ διέβην This Medosades again came (to me) when I went-over

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παριου, ἦπεργονεύων, back to the army from Parium, promising,

εἰ ἄγοιμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σὲ, τάλλα if I-should-lead the army to you, in-other-respects

tε χρήσεσθαι μοι φίλῳ καὶ you- 'would not-only 'treat me 'as (a) friend but-also (a)

ἀδελφῷ, καὶ τὰ χωρία παρὰ τὰ θαλάσσα, brother, and (that) the places along the sea,

ὁν σου κρατεῖς, ἐσεῖσαι παρὰ σοῦ μοι. of-which you are-master, would-be (a present) from you to-me.

'Επὶ τοῦτοις πάλιν ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην, About these (things) he again 'inquired-of — Medosades,

eἰ ἔλεγε ταύτα. 'Ὁ δὲ συνέφη if he-said these (things). — 'He indeed agreed (that he said)

καὶ ταύτα. 'Ιδι νῦν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι even these (things). Go-on now, said (Xenophon) to-relate

41 •
τούτῳ τι ἀπεκρίναμην πρῶτον ἐν Καλχηδόνῳ.

το-θε-σ (Seuthes) what I-answered first in Calchedon.

'Απεκρίνω δι γι τὸ στρατεύμα διαβάσαμε το Ἱεραρχον
You-answered that the army would-cross-over to Byzantion,
καὶ ἕνεκα τούτου δεὶ ὀὔτε σοι
και ἐνέκα τούτου δεὶ οὔτε σοι
tium, and on-account-of this there-would-be need neither for-you
οὔτε ἄλλῳ τελείν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφη θα ἐπει
οὔτε ἄλλῳ τελείν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφη θα ἐπεί
or for-another to-pay; yourself indeed - said (that) when
ὅπερνασ ἐπει, καὶ τούτο ἐξήρησαν ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
ὅπερνασ ἐπει, καὶ τούτο ἐξήρησαν οὐ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
thus it-happened as you have-said. What — (then) did-I-say,
ἔφη, ὅτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἐφηsaid-he, when you-came to Selibria?
ἔφη, ὅτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἐφη said-he, when you-came to Selibria?
You-said (that) εἶναι οὐκ οἶδα τε, ἄλλον εἰς
εἶναι οὐκ οἶδα τε, ἄλλον εἰς
it-was not possible, but (that) (the army) having-gone to
Πέρινδον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν
Πέρινδον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν
Perintens (was) to-cross-over into — Asia. Now
τοῖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἕγὼ καὶ οὕτως Φρο
τοίν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἕγὼ καὶ οὕτως Φρο
therefore, said — Xenophon, and I and-also this Phryvnikos, εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν, καὶ οὕτως Πολύκρατης,
eis tōn stratēgōn, kai oūtōs Polukratēs,
nicos, one of-the generals, and this Polycrates,
eis tōn loχagōn, καὶ ἕγὼ εἰς τὸν πατὸτατος
εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἕγὼ εἰς τὸν πατὸτατος
one of-the exarchs, and without are (the) most-confidential (friends)
ἀπὸ ἑκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πάντας Νέων τῶν
ἀπὸ ἑκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πάντας Νέων τῶν
from each of-the generals, except Neon the
Λακεδαιμοῦ. Εἱ οὖν βούλει τὴν πράξιν εἰναι
Λακεδαιμοῦ. Εἱ οὖν βούλει τὴν πράξιν εἰναι
Lacedemonian. If therefore you-wish the business to-be
πιστοτέραιν, καὶ καλεσαί ἐκείνος.
πιστοτέραιν, καὶ καλεσαί ἐκείνος.
more-trustworthy, even call them (in). And do you,
δὴ Πολυκρατῆς, ἔλθων, εἰπέ δι τῇ ἔγῳ τελείω
δὴ Πολυκρατῆς, ἔλθων, εἰπέ δι τῇ ἔγῳ τελείω
O Polycrates, going, tell (them) that I request (them)
καταλιπεῖν τὰ δίπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπεῖν
καταλιπεῖν τὰ δίπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπεῖν
to-leave-behind — (their) arms; and you-yourself, leaving-behind
ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἰς θεόν,
ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἰς θεόν,
there — (your) sword, come-in.
'Ο Σεύθες ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐπεν, ὡς ἀπε-—Seuthes hearing these (things) said, that he
στήσειν οὐδένι. 'Αθηναίων γὰρ καὶ ὡς would distrust no-one of (the) Athenians; for truly—indeed that (he)
eἴδεναι εἰς συγγενεῖς, καὶ ἐφι νομίζειν knew they were relatives, and said (that) he—considered (them as)
eὖνοις φίλους. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπειδ ἐϊς—kind friends. But after these (things) when (those) em-
ῆλθον οὖς ἐδεῖ, ξενοφόν πρῶτον μὲν ἐπήρετο—entered whom he wanted, Xenophon first indeed inquired of
Σεύθην ὡς τὰ δέοιτο. χρῆσαν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Seuthes in what he might require to use the army.
'Ο δὲ εἰςεν ὡς: Μασάδες ὦν πατὴρ μου,—(Seuthes) indeed spoke thus: Mnasades was father to—me,
δὲ εἰκεῖνον ὥς ἄρχη ἦν and of him was (the) government [and under his government were]
Melaniditai, kai Θυνοι, kai Τρανίσαι. Ἕπει (the) Melandite, and Thynians, and Tranipians. When
τὰ πράγματα. ὁδυσσόν ἐνόσεσέν, ὃ πατὴρ the affairs of (the) Odysseus had declined, — (my) father
ἐκπέσων οὖν ἐκ τῆς ταύτης χώρας, αὐτὸς μὲν being—driven therefrom from — these same countries, he indeed
ἀποδείκνυει νόσοι. τὸ ἐγώ ὁρφανός ἐξετράφην died of (a) disease; and I (an) orphan was brought up
παρὰ Μηδόσῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεί. Ἕπει δὲ ἔγενόμην under Medocus the present king. When indeed I—had—become
νεανίσχος, ἐξυναμήν οὐ χὰν ἀποδέλετον . εἰς (a) young—man, I could not live looking—for (support) to
ἀλλοτρίαν τραπέζαν, καὶ ἐχοἱκεῖον ἐνδιάφορος another's table; and I sat on the same seat
αὐτῷ ἱκετής, δοῦναι μοι ἀπόσους ἄνδρας with him a suppliant, to give me as—many men as
ἐν ὑπάρχοντας, ὅπως ποιοῖς παχῦν, εἰ τι he might—be able, in order—that I might—do evil, if any
δυναμῆν, καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ τὰς I could, even on — (those) expelling us, and might—live
Tí oûn àn dúnavo, ἕφη ὁ Ἑνοφῶν, εἰ

What therefore might you-be-able, said — Xenophon, if

ἐξεισχετο μὲν τῷ (persons) may-announce (it). And — he-promised indeed to-the

στρατιωτῆς Κυσικῆν, δὲ τῷ λοχαγῷ διμοιριαν, soldier

ἐπὶ θαλάσση τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δὲ, ἕφη ὁ near (the) sea having-been-fortified. If indeed, said —

Xenophon, attempting these (things) we-should not —
πράξωμεν, ἄλλα ἡ τις φόβος ἐπὶ Δακο-κεδ, but (that) there—may—be some fear about (the) Laced—
dαμονίαν, έκα τις βούληται ἀπέναι παρά σέ, demonians, if any (of us) may—wish to—depart to you, δεξιή εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ; 'Ο δ' would—you—receive (them) into — (your) country? — 'He indeed εἶπε, Kai γε ποιήσομαι ἀδελφούς, καὶ said, Even 'I at—least 'will—make (them) brothers, and εὐδιερίους, καὶ κοινονίους ἀπάνην, ὃν ἄν table—companions, and sharers of—all, which 'we may δυνάμεω κτάσθαι. Δὲ σοὶ, ὁ Χενοφῶν, δῶσο 'be—able to—acquire. And to—you, O Xenophon, I—will—give καὶ τυγατέρα, καὶ εἰ ἔστι τις θυγατέρα σοι and (my) daughter, and if there—is any daughter to—you ἀνήσουμαι Θρακίων νουμ. καὶ δῶσω I—will—buy (her according) 'to (the) 'Thracian custom; and I—will—give Βίσανθεν οἰκησιν, ὅπερ ἔστι ἐμοί κάλλιστον (you) Bisante (as a) residence, which is to—me the—most—beautiful χώρων τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττη. place of — (those) on (the) sea.

C H A P T E R I I I.

'Ακούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες Having these (things), and giving and taking δεξιὰς ἀπολλαννον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο right—hands they—rode—off; and before day (break) they—got ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ ἑσαστοι ἀπήγγειλαν to the camp, and each reported τοῖς πέμψαν. Δὲ ἐστὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα to — (those) having—sent (them). And when it—was day (light) ὁ 'Αρισταρχος μὲν πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγοῦς — Aristarchus indeed again called—for the generals
καὶ λοχαγοὺς· δ' ἐδοξεῖ τοῖς ἐξαι μὲν τήν
and captains; but it-seemed (best) to—(them) to-omit indeed the
ὁδὸν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ συνιχαλέσατο τὸ
road to Aristarchus, and to-call-together the
στράτευμα. Καὶ πάντες συνήλθον, πλὴν οἱ
army. And all assembled, except the(soldiers)
Νέωνος· οὕτω δὲ ἀπειχὼν δὲ δέχα στάδια.
of-Neon; these indeed were-distant about ten
stadium.
'Επει δὲ συνῆλθον, Χενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε
When indeed they-had-assembled, Xenophon rising-up spoke
τάδε· Ἀνδρες, Ἀρίσταρχος ἤχων τρίηρεις πωλεῖν
thus: Men, Aristarchus having vessels prevents (us)
dιαπλεῖν ἐνδα μὲν βουλήμεθα· ὡστε οἵ
to-sail (there) where indeed we-wish; so-that (it is) not
ἀσφαλεῖς ἐμβαίνεις εἰς πλοία· δὲ οὕτως δὲ
safe to-embark on vessels; but this —(same) —
κελεύει πορεύεσθαι βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους
celevei poroevesdai bia dia tou ierou orous
(man) orders (us) to-proceed by-force over the sacred mountain
eἰς Χερρόνησσον· ἂν δὲ, κρατήσαντες τοῦτον
into (the) Chersonesus; if indeed, having-overcome this
ἐλθομεν ἐκεῖθε, φησιν ὡστε πωλήσειν
we-should-arrive there, he-says (that) he-would neither 'soll
ὑμᾶς ἔτι ἔςσερ εἰν Βυζαντίω, οὕτω ἔτι
you hereafter as (he did) at Byzantium, nor hereafter
ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μοιδών,
deceive you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,
οὕτω ἔτι περιώσεσθαι, ἔςσερ νυν
you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,
οὕτω ἔτι περιώσεσθαι, ἔςσερ νυν
(oor) (and) hereafter he-will-take-care, that-as now you-will (not)
δεσμένοις τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. οὕτως μὲν 'be-wanting — provisions. This (Aristarchus) indeed
λέγει ταῦτα. Δὲ Σεύδης φησίν, ἰν ὑπε
λégete tauta. De xevdeisphisin, in ute
says these (things). But Seuthes says, if you-go
πρὸς ἐκεῖνον, πονησεῖν ὑμᾶς εὗ.
to him, | (that) he-will-make you well [that he will bene-
Νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, ποτέρον μὲνοντες
Now therefore consider, whether remaining
ἐνδάδε βουλεύσεσθε τούτο, ἢ ἐπανελθόντες here you-will-deliberate (about) this, or (after) having-gone-back
εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὖν μὲν δοξεῖ ἔμοι ἔκει for provision. Therefore indeed it-seems to-me (that) since
εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ἐπάνελθόντες εἰς τὰς κόμας, ὅσον οἱ provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the
οὕτως ἔδωκα λαμβάνειν τὰ nor, without money, will-they-allow (us) to-take —
ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κόμας, ὅσον οἱ provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the
ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κόμας, ὅσον εἰ provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the
(Inhabitants being) weaker (than we) will-permit (us) to-take
ἐκεῖ, ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀκούοντας (provisions), there, having — provisions, (and) hearing
ὅτι τις δεῖται ὑμῶν, αἴρεισθαι ὅτι ἄν δοκῇ what any-one asks of-you, to-choose what may seem
ἔλθαι κράτιστον ὑμῖν. Καὶ ἕφη ὅτι ταῦτα to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these
to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these
dοξεῖ ἀράτω τῆν χεῖρα. Ἄπαντες (things) seem (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All
ἀνέτειναν. Ἄπαντες τοίνυν, ἕφη, συσκευ-extended (them) upwards. Going-away therefore, said-he, pack-
άζεσθε, καὶ ἐπείδὰν τις παραγγέλλῃ, 'up (your) 'baggage, and when any-one may-announce (it),
ἐπεσθή τῷ ἡγουμένῳ. follow — (your) leader.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἑξακόσιον μὲν ἴχνειο, ὅ' After these (things) Xenophon indeed led-on, and
οἱ εἴποντο. Δὲ Νέων καὶ ἄλλων παρ' the (soldiers) followed. And Neon and others about
Ἀριστάρχου ἐπειδὸν ἀποτρέπεσθαι. ὅ' οἱ Aristarchus persuaded (them) to-turn-back; but — (they)
οὐχ ὑπῆκονοι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ προελθάτεσαν 'would not 'mind (them). When indeed they-had-advanced
ὁσον τριάκοντα σταδίων, Σείجمهورية (from them).
Kai ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευεν προελάσαι,
And — Xenophon seeing him requested (him) to-ride-up,
ὅπως δὴ ἐξαρκῆν αὐτῷ πλείστων
so that he-might-speak to-him (while) the-greatest-number (were)
ἀκούστων δὲ ἔδοξει συμφέρειν.
listening, (about) what might-seem-to-be-for (their) advantage.
"Εητεὶ δὲ προς ὅλως, Ξενοφῶν ἐπεί. Ἡμεῖς πορευ-When indeed he-came-forward, Xenophon said: We are-pro-
δα, ὅπου τὸ στρατεύμα μέλλει ἔξεστι τροφῆν·
where the army will-be-about to-have food;
δὲ ἔξει ἀκούστων καὶ σοῦ καὶ τού
and where hearing both (the propositions) of you and — (those)
τῶν Λακωνικῶν, αὐρησόμεθα δὲ ἄν δοξῇ ἐναι
of the Lacedaemonians, we-shall-determine what may seem to be
κράτιστα. Ἡν οὖν ἡγήσῃ ἡμῖν, ὅπου
the-best. If therefore you-should-conduct us, where
ἐπιτήδεια ἐστίν πλείστα,
provisions are most (abundant), we-shall-consider (ourselves)
νομισόμεν
ἐξειςεῖσαι ἐφ' σοῦ. Καὶ ὁ Σευθῆς ἔφη·
to-be-hospitably-entertained by you. And — Seuthes said:
'Αλλὰ οἶδα πολλάς κόμας ἄρθρας, καὶ
But I-know (of) many villages (being) close-together, and
ἐχοῦσας πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀπεχοῦσας
having all (kinds of) — provisions, being-distant
ἡμῶν δὲν διελθόντες ἀν ἀριστώτερε
from-us as-much-as having-gone-over (to them) 'you may
dine ἴδεως. Ἡγου τοῖνυ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. "Εητεὶ
plesantly. Conduct (us) therefore, said — Xenophon. When
δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δείλης, οἱ στρα-
indeed they-arrived to them towards-the evening, the sol-
τιῶται συνήλθον, καὶ Σευθῆς εἰτε τοιάδε. "Εγώ,
diers assembled, and Seuthes spoke thus: I,
ὁ ἄνδρες, δένου ἡμῶν στρατευόμεθα σὺν ἐμοί,
0 men, want you to-serve-as-soldiers with me,
καὶ ὑποσχοῦμαι ἡμῖν δῶσει τοις στρατιώταις
and I-promise you to-give to-the soldiers (a)
καλητάον, δε και λογαροις στρα-
cysicene (each month), and also to (the) captains (and) gene-
ναγοις τα νομιζομενοι. έξω δε τουτων
rals — (that) being-right-and-customary; besides indeed these

τιμης τον άξιον. Εξετε σιτα και δε
(things) I-will-honour the deserving. You-shall-have meat and also
ποτα δεπερ και νυν, λαμβανοντες
in drink as even now, taking (them) from the
χωρας. Δ' οποσα αν αλισκηται, αυτος
country. But whatever (spoils) may be-taken, I-myself
αξιωσω εχειν ινα διατιθεμενος ταιτα
shall-claim to-have (it) in-order-that having-disposed-of these (things)

ποριζω τον μισθον υμιν. Και τα μεν
I (may) provide — pay for-you. And — (those) indeed
φευγοντα και αποδιδρασοντα ήμεις εσομεθα εκανοι
fleeing and concealing-themselves we will-be able
dιωξειν και μαστευειν. Αν δε τις ανδιστηται,
to-pursue and to-seek-out. If indeed any-one resists,

σον υμιν πειρασομεθα χειροοδηαι. Ο Ευνοφω
with you we-shall-endeavour to-overcome (him). — Xenophon

ἐπηρετο. Πόσον δε απο θαλαττης αξιωσεις
inquired: How (far) indeed from (the) sea will-you-require
το στρατευμα συνεπεοι σοι; δ ε απεκρινατο,
the army to-accompany you? — 'he indeed replied,
Οιδαμη πλειον έπετα ήμερων, δε πολλαχι
Never more (than) seven days' (march), but often
μειον.

Metα ταυτα εδιδοτο τω θου-
After these (things) (permission) was-given to — (those) wish-
λομενοι λεγειν και πολλοι έλεγον κατα
ing (it) to-speak; and many spoke respecting (and con-
tαυτα, δι Σευδης λεγοι παντος
curring in) these (things), that Seuthes spoke (words) all

αξια: γηρ ειν χειμων,
worthy-of-esteem (and advantageous to them); for it-was winter,
καὶ οὕτε εἰς δυνατὸν τῷ βουλομένῳ τοῦτο
and neither was it possible for—(those) desiring this
ἀπομείναιν οἰκάδε, τε εἰς οἷς οἶον τε διαγενέσθαι,
to-sail-away home, and it was not possible to-stay
ἐν φιλίᾳ, εἰ δὲν ζῆν ὤνομένους,
in (a) friendly (country), if it-might-be-necessary to-live buying
δὲ ἀσφαλέστερον διατρίβειν
(they provisions), but (it would be) safest to-remain
καὶ τρέφονταί ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ μετὰ Σευθήν, and to-be-nourished in (a) hostile (country) with Seuthes,
ἡ μόνος, ὑπὸ τοσοῦτον ἄγαθόν· εἰ δὲ
than alone, there-being so-many advantages; if moreover
προσλήψωντο μυσθὸν ἐδόκει εἰναι
they-should-receive in-addition pay it-would-seem to-be (an unexpected)
εὐρημα. Ἔπι τούτοις Ἑνοφόων εἶπεν·
good-fortune. On these (things) Xenophon said: [Xeno-

Εἰ τις ἀντίλεγει,
phon then said:] If any-one (have anything) to-say-against (this), 'let
λέγετο· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἐπιψηφιζέτω ταῦτα.
(him) 'speak: if however not, 'let (him) 'vote-for these

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντίλεγεν,
(things). When indeed no-one 'said (anything) 'against,
ἐπιψηφίσας, καὶ ἐδόξε ταῦτα.
he 'put (it) to-vote, and it-seemed (that) these (things were good)

Δὲ εὐθὺς εἶπεν ταῦτα
[and it was carried]. And (Xenophon) immediately told these (things)
Σευθήν, ὅτι συστρεφόντο αὐτῷ.
to-Seuthes, (and) that they would-fight-and-join with him (in the expedition).

Μετὰ τούτῳ οἱ ἅλλοι μὲν ἔσκηνησαν
After this the other (soldiers) indeed encamped
κατὰ τάξεις, Σευθῆς ἱχαν
according-to (their) ranks-and-divisions, Seuthes (having) (being in)
πλησίον κόμην, ἐκάλεσε στρατηγοὺς δὲ καὶ
(a) near village, invited (the) generals also
λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δείπνον. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐπὶ
(the) captains to supper. And when they were at (the)
θύραις, ὥς παρίστατες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἢν τις Ἰρα-
doors, as going to supper, there was a certain Hera-
xleídhς Ἰακώβου, ὁ οὗτος προσέρχεται 
clides (a) Maronean; this (person) going-to 
ἔνι, οὗτος ἔστε ἔθει τί δοῦναι Σεῦθη,
one, whom he thought to have anything to give to Seuthes, 
πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τινας Πάρισσος, οἱ παρῆσαν 
first indeed to some Parians, — (who) were-present 
dιαπραξόμενοι φιλιαν πρὸς Μηδοκοῦ, τὸν βασιλέα 
about-to-obtain friendship with Medoces, the king 
'Οδρυσέων, καὶ ἄγνωσε δόρα αὐτῷ τε καί 
of (the) Odrysia, and bringing presents to him and also 
tῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μηδοκοῦ μὲν εἰς ἂνω 
to — (his) wife, he said, that Medoces indeed was up 
δύσεα ἡμερῶν ὄδον ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, 
—in the country twelve days' journey from (the) sea, 
δὲ Σεῦθης, ἔπει ἔληφε τὸ τούτῳ στράτευμα, 
but Seuthes, since he has taken — this army into his 
but Seuthes, since he has taken — this army 
ἔστη ἄρχων ἐπὶ θαλάσσης. Ἡμι ὄψιν 
established master on (the) sea (coast). Being therefore 
γείτων, ἔσται ἰκανώτατος ποιεῖν ὧμᾶς καὶ ἐν 
eighbours, he will be most able to treat you both well 
καὶ κακῶς. Ἡμῖν οὖν σοφρονίστη, δῶσετε τούτῳ 
and ill. If therefore you are wise, give to this 
τί τι ἂν αἰτήσατε, καὶ διακεῖσθαι 
what you may ask for, and it will be disposed of 
ἀμεινον ὑμῖν, ἢ ἔαν δῶτε Μηδόκω τῷ οἰκουντι 
better for you, than if you give (it) to Medoces dwelling 
πρὸσω. Ὀφθαλμὸς μὲν ἔπειδε τούτῳ. Αὔστος δὲ 
far-off. Thus indeed he persuaded them. Afterwards indeed 
προσελθὼν Τιμασίων τῷ Δαρδανεῖ, ἔπει ἡκουσέν 
going-to Timation the Dardanian, since he had heard 
ἐλευκαίν αὐτῷ καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ 
that (there) were to him [that he had] both cups and 
βαρβαρίας ταπίδας, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομιζότο 
barbarian carpets, he said that it was customary 

cups and
whenever Seuthes invited to supper (for) — (those) having
been-invited to give (presents) to him. And this (Seuthes)
had become great here, will be able, both
then; great is his wealth, for he has made
rich our possessions here. In such a manner
did Seuthes keep a feast (for Seuthes), go-
ing to each of the guests. And also advancing to Xenophon
he said: You are also from a very great city,
your name is very great with Seuthes,
in this country you will—perhaps—claim even to-
consider you more generous and able to
olive walled places, as—others of—your
kinsmen, and countrymen have received, and likewise food;
(they will) therefore be
Seuthes proper for you to honour Seuthes even
most magnificently.

And I advise you being (your) well-wisher; for I well know,
that how much the greater may (be the presents) you give
him,
that so much the greater you may persuade of this (person)
benefits. Xenophon hearing these (things),
was perplexed; for indeed he had come over from Parium not having
Επειδή δὲ εἰς ἡλικίαν ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον
When indeed they went in to the supper (the guests consist-
bring) indeed the Thracians, — (those namely being) the-best
τῶν παρόντων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
and most considerable of — (those) present, and the general
καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ εἰ τις πρεσβεία
and the captains of the Greeks, and if any ambassador
παρὴν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν
was present from (a) town, the supper indeed was (for them)
καθήμενοι κύκλῳ
sitting in (a) circle; [they took their supper sitting in a circle;]
ἐπείτα δὲ τρίποδος εἰς ἡλικίαν πάσιν,
afterwards indeed tables with three feet were brought in for all;
οὕτω δὲ ἦσαν μεστοὶ κρεῶν νευεμένους;
these tables indeed were full of (pieces of) meat heaped-
τῶν, καὶ μεγάλοι ζυμωτοὶ ἄρτοι ἦσαν προε-
up, and large leavened (loaves of) bread were at-
πεπερασμένοι πρὸς τοὺς κρέασιν. Δὲ αἱ
tached to the (pieces of) meat. And the
τραπέζαι οἱ μάλιστα ἐτίθησαν κατὰ τοὺς
tables were always in preference placed near the
ξένους γὰρ ἦν νόμος. Καὶ Σεύθης πρῶτος
for this was (their) custom. And Southees first
ἐποίει τούτο. Ἀνελύμενος των ἄρτων παρα-
acted thus: taking up the (loaves of) bread lying-
κειμένοις ἑαυτῷ διέκλα κατὰ μικρόν,
near him he broke (them) into small (pieces), and
διεφύττειν, οἷς ἔδοξει αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ κρέα ἐς-
distributed to whom it pleased him; and the meat in-like-
ἀντικαταληφὼν ἑαυτῷ μόνον ἤσον γεύσασθαι.
manner, leaving for himself only as much as to taste.
Καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ, ἦσαν δὲ τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἐκεῖνον.
And the others indeed, before whom the tables were placed,
ἐποίοις κατὰ ταῖτα. ἰὸς τῆς Ἀρχαίς
according to this same (manner). But a certain Arcadian,
Ἀριστας ὄνομα, δεῦρος φαγεῖν,
eían Aristas by-name, terrible to eat, (a very great eater,) permitted
χαίρειν µὲν τὸ διαρίπτειν,
(himself to say) good by (took no care of) indeed the distributing,
δὲ λαβὼν εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ἄρτον ὅσον
but having taken in — (his) hand (a loaf of) bread (of) as much as
τριχοίναν, καὶ χέρα, θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ
three-chomix, and also meat, having placed (them) on — (his)
γόνατα, ἐδείπνει. 
knees, he ate (his) supper. And they carried about horns
οἶνον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. 
and wine, and all received (some). But — Aristas,
ἐπεὶ οὐκ οἶνοχός ἦσεν παρ’ αὐτὸν φέρον τὸ κέρας,
when the cup bearer came to him bearing the horn,
εἶπεν, ἵδων τὸν Ἑνοφόντα ὡκεῖτι δειπνοῦντα,
he said, seeing — Xenophon no longer supping,
δός, ἐκεῖ, ἐκεῖνῳ γὰρ ἦδη σχολάζει, δὲ ἐγὼ
give (it), said he to him; for now he is at leisure, but I
οὐδέσω. Σεῦδης ἄκοισας τὴν φωνὴν ἱράτα τὸν
no yet. Seuthes hearing the voice asked the
οἶνοχόν τῷ λέγου. 
cup bearer what he might say. And the cup bearer told (him);
γὰρ ἤτιστατο ἐλληνίζειν. Ἐνταῦθα µὲν δὴ
for he knew (how) to speak Greek. Then indeed truly
ἐγένετο γέλας.
there was laughter.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οὐκ οἰκεῖος προὐχόρει, ἄνηρ, Ῥωμᾶς,
When indeed the drinking was going on, (a) man, (a) Thracian,
eἰσήλθεν ἐκον λευκὸν ἵππον καὶ λάβὼν κέρας
entered having (a) white horse; and taking (a) horn
μεστὸν εἶπε: Ἡ δεῖ σου, ὦ Σεῦδη, καὶ
full (of wine) said: I drink to you, O Seuthes, and
διοριεῖαι τὸν τοῦτον ἵππον, ἑῷ οὖ καὶ διόκων present (you) — this-same horse, on which both following ὄν ἀν θέλησις, αἰρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν whom 'you may 'wish you-will-take (him), and retreating you-'will ὦ μὴ δείσῃς τὸν πολέμιον. Ἀλλος εἶςαγαγὼν not — 'fear the enemy. Another leading-in (a) παιδα, οὖτως προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ boy, in-like-manner drinking-to (him) presented (the boy), and ἄλλος ἵματια τῇ γυναικί. Καὶ Τιμασίων προ- another vestments for — (his) wife. And Timasion drink-
πίνων ἐδωρήσατο τε ἀργυρὰν φίαλην καὶ ing-to (him) presented not-only (a) silver cup but also ταπίδα αἴξιαν δέκα μνῶν. Δὲ Γνήσιστος, τις (a) carpet worth ten minae. But Gnesippus, a-certain ᾿Αθηναῖος, ἀναστὰς εἶπεν, δτι ἀρχαῖος νόμος Athenian, rising-up said, that (the) ancient custom eἰν κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ was most-beautiful for — (those) indeed having to-give to-the βασιλεῖ ἔνεκα τιμῆς, δὲ τὸν king | by-reason-of honour, [in order to honour him,] but (that) the βασιλέα διδόναι τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχοντι, ἵνα καὶ king should-give to — (those) indeed not having, therefore even ἐγὼ, ἐφη, σοι ἔχω δωρεῖσθαι 1, said-he, (beg of) you (that) I-may-have (something) to-present καὶ τιμᾶν. Ὁ Ἑνοφῶν δὲ ὑπορεῖτο and to-honour (you). — Xenophon indeed was-perplexed (to know) ὁ τι ποιήσωμεν γὰρ καὶ ἐτύγχανεν καθήμενος ὡς what he-might-do; for even he-happened being-seated as τιμώμενος ἐν διάφω πλησιαιστάτῳ ἑνότητι. (one) honoured in (the) seat the-nearest to-Seuthes.
Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης δὲ ἐξέλευεν τὸν οἰνοχόον ὅρεξαι Heraclides indeed requests the cup-bearer to-present τὸ κέρας αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ἑνοφῶν δὲ (γὰρ ἦδη the cup to-him. — Xenophon however (for already ἐτύγχανεν ὑποπτοπώς) ἀνέστη, θαρρα-
be-happened being-somewhat-exhilarated-by-wine) stood-up, (and) boldly
καὶ εἶπεν: Ἕνω — δὲ, taking the horn, 'he also said: I indeed, ὁ Σεῖθης, δίδω μοι εἰμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς τούτους O Seuthes, give to you myself and — these εἰμοὺς ἑταῖρους, εἶναι πιστοὺς φίλοντες, καὶ οἶδέναι my companions, to-be (your) faithful friends, and none ἄκοιντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἤτι ἐμοῦ βου— being-reluctant, but all more than even myself δολμένους εἶναι φίλοντες. Kαὶ νῦν πάρεισι σίγωρα to-be (your) friends. And now they-are-present προσαυτοῦντες οὐδέν σε, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμεναι asking—for nothing 'more of you, but even 'giving καὶ ἔδελωντες πονεῖν ἵπποι σου (themselves) 'up (to you) and desiring to-labour for you καὶ προκυνδυνεύεισιν: μεδ’ ἄν, ἄν οἱ θεοὶ and also to-incur-danger (for you); with whom, if the gods θέλωσι, ἀπολύσῃ πολλὴν χώραν τὴν will (it), you-will-retain much territory — (that) indeed οὖσαν πατρίδιν, δὲ κτῆσιν τῆν: δὲ being paternal, but also you-will-acquire — (other territory); also κτῆσιν πολλοὺς ἵππους δὲ ἄνδρας, καὶ καλὰς you-will-acquire many horses and men, and handsome γυναῖκας, οὖς οὐ δεῖσαι ληφθέναι, ἄλλη women, whom it—will not be-necessary to-take-by-force, but αὐτοὶ παρέσονται φέροντες δῶρα πρὸς σε. they-themselves will-be-present bringing gifts for you.

'Ὁ Σεῖθης ἀναστάς συνεζήτησε — Seuthes standing-up drank-out—of (the same horn) 'with (him) καὶ μετὰ τούτο συχνατεσχέδασσατο and after this 'with (him) 'poured-out (on himself)

τὸ κέρας. Μετὰ ταῦτα (the contents of) the horn. After these (things) (persons) εἰσῆλθον αἰγλεόντες τε κέρασι, οὖν σημαίνουν— entered playing not-only on-horns, such—as they-make-signals— σαλπίζοντες τε with, but also on-trumpets made-of—raw-hides, blowing not-only
δυσμοίς καὶ οἶλον μαγάδι. Καὶ Σείθης αὐτὸς
regular-tunes but-also as-if 'on (the) 'megadis. And Seuthes himself
ἀνοστὰς τε ἀνέκραγε πολεμικῶν, καὶ
standing-up not-only shouted (a) warlike (cry), but-also
ἐξῆλατο μάλα ἑλαφρῶς, ὡς περ φυλαττόμενος
leaped-away very nimbly, as-if guarding-against (a)
βέλος. Δὲ καὶ γελοτοποιοὶ εἰς ἑσθαν.
missile. And also buffoons entered.

'Ως δ' ἡμοις ἦν ἐπὶ δυσμαις, οἱ Ἑλληνες
As indeed (the) sun was about setting, the Greeks ἀνέστησαν, καὶ εἶπον, ὅτι
stood-up, and said, that (it was) time to-place (the)
vυκτοφύλακας, καὶ παραδίδοναι σύνθερα. Καὶ
night-sentinels, and to-give-out (the) watch-word. And ἐξέλευον Σείθην παραγγείλαν, ὅπως μηδεὶς τῶν
they-requested Seuthes to-announce, that no-one of-the Θρακῶν εἰςεῖσε εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα
Thracians should-enter into the Greek cant. νυκτὸς· γὰρ τε οἱ πολέμιοι ἤμιν Θράκες, καὶ
by-night; for not-only the enemies to-you (are) Thracians, but-also οἱ φίλοι ἤμιν. 'Ως δ' ἑσθαν, ὁ Σείθης
the friends to-us. As indeed they-went-out, — Seuthes συνανέστη συνδέει ἑτε ἑοίκος μεθύνοντι.
stood-up-with (them) not as-yet like (a man) being-intoxicated.

Δ' ἐξείδων, ἀποκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς αὐτούς,
And going-out, having-called-back the generals (by) themselves, εἶπεν: 'Ω ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἠμῶν ous ἱσαί
he-said: O men, the enemies of-us 'do not 'know τω τὴν ἰμετέραν συμμαχίαν. ἦν οὖν ἔλομεν as-yet — (of) our alliance; if therefore we-should-go ἐπὶ αὐτοὺς, πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, ὡς
against them, before (that) they-were-'on (their) 'guard, so-as μὴ ληφθῆναι, ἡ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὡς
not to-be-taken, or prepared (for defence), thus ἀμύνασθαι — ἰν λάθοιμεν μᾶλιστα καὶ
to-arrange-ourselves (if) 'we may 'have-taken the-most both (of)
ἀνδρῶν καὶ χρήματα. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνετήρησαν
men and things. The generals assented to
ταύτα, καὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι. ἐξ’ ὃ εἶπεν
these (things), and requested (him) to lead-on. But—said he:
Having-prepared-yourselves wait-for (me); I indeed when
καρπὸς ἕξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἀναλαθὼν
(the) proper-time may-be will-come to you, and taking
τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἡγησομαι σὺν
the targeteers and you I will-lead (you) with (the assist-
τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ ὁ Ἑνορόδον εἶπε:
ance of) the gods. And—Xenophon said: (We ought)
Σκέψαι τοινυν, εἰπέρ πορευόμεθα νυκτὸς, εἰ
to-consider therefore, if—indeed we-are-to-proceed by-night, whether
ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος ἔχει κάλλιον.
the Grecian custom has (itself) more-beautifully; [is the best;]
γὰρ μὲν ἐν ταῖς πορείαις μεσ’ ἱμέραν,
for indeed on the march during (the) day, (that part) of the
στρατεύματος, ὅποιον ἂν ἄει συμφέρῃ πρὸς τὴν
army, whichever may always be-best-suited to the
χώραν, ἡγεῖται, ἐὰν τε ὀπλιτικὸν, ἐὰν τε πελ-
place, leads, it-may-be heavy-armed-men, — (or) tar-
tαστικὸν, ἐὰν τε ἱππικὸν· δὲ νύκτωρ νόμος
geteers, — (or) cavalry; but by-night (the) custom
ἐστὶ τοῖς Ἑλλησὶν τὸ βραδύτατον ἡγεῖσθαι.
is for the Greeks (for) the slowest (troops) to lead-the-way.
Γὰρ οὕτω τὰ στρατεύματα ἡχιστα διασπάται,
For thus the army will-be least dispersed,
καὶ ἡχιστα ἄποδιδόσκοντες λανδάνουσιν
and there-will-be the-least 'straggling unperceived
ἄλληλους· δὲ οἱ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ
from-one-another; but—(those) having-been-dispersed often both
περιπτυσθείσιν ἄλληλους, καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες ποιοῦσι
fall-foul-of one-another, and not-knowing (it) they-do
καὶ πάσχουσι κακῶς. Οὐν Σεύθης εἶπεν: 'Τε
and suffer ill. Therefore Seuthes said: 'You indeed
λέγετε ὑστὸς, καὶ ἐγὼ πείσομαι τῷ νόμῳ τῷ
'say what-is-right, and I will-conform to the custom —
ὑμετέρῳ. Καὶ δῶς ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας τῶν
(namely) to-yours. And I-will give you indeed guides of-the
πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς
oldest-men — (those namely) best-acquainted with-the
χώρας, δ' αὐτὸς ἐφέσομαι ἔχων τοὺς ἱπποὺς
country, but I-myself will-follow having the cavalry
τελευταῖος: ἀν δὲν γὰρ ταχὺ
last (in the rear); if required I-will — be however speedily
παρέσομαι πρῶτος. Δ' εἶπον σύνθημα
'present first (in front). And they-said (the) watch-word
'Aσηνάλαυ, κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. Εἰπόντες
was) Minerva, on-account-of — (their) relationship. Having-said
ταῦτ' ἀνεπαύοντο.
these (things) they went-to-sleep.

Ἡνία δ' ἦν ἀμφί μέσας νύκτας Σεῦδης
When indeed it was about mid night Seuthes
παρῆν ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας τεθωρακισμένους, καὶ
was present having the cavalry clad-in-corsets, and
τοὺς πελταστὰς σὺν τοῖς ὀπλοῖς. Καὶ ἔπει
the targeters with — (their) arms. And when
παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ ὀπλιταὶ μὲν
he had-delivered the guides, the heavy-armed-men indeed
ἔγοντο, δ' οἱ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, δ' οἱ ἱππεῖς
took-the-lead, and the targeters followed, and the cavalry
ἐπισωδοφυλάξουν. 'Επει δ' ἦν ἡμέρα, ὁ Σεῦδης
brought-up-the-rear. When indeed it was day, — Seuthes
παρῴλωσεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπήγαγε τὸν
rode-up to the front, and praised the
Εὐλυκικὸν νόμον πολλάχις, γὰρ ἐκεῖ αὐτὸς
Greek custom much, for he-said he-himself
νύκταρ, καὶ πορεύομενοι σὺν ὀλίγοις,
at-night, even proceeding with (but) few (men),
ἀποστάσιναι σὺν τοῖς ἱππισὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν.
to-have-been-separated with the cavalry from the infantry.
Δ' νῦν δὲσπερ ἔτι, πάντες φαινόμενα ἡμᾶ
But now as it-ought-to-be 'we all appear at-the-same-time
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἁδρὸι. Ἅλλα ἔμεις μὲν
with-the (break of) day collected-in-a-body. But 'you do indeed
περιμένετε αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ
'remain here, and rest-yourself, I however
σκεψάμενος τι ἢξω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα
having-r.commoited somewhat will-return. Having said these (things)
ἡλαυνε δ' ὄρους λαθῶν τινα ὄδον. Δ' ἐπει
he-rode over (a) mountain taking a-certain road. But when
ἀφίκετο εἰς πολλὴν χιόνα, ἐσκεύατο εἰ
he-had-come to much snow, he-examined if there-might-be
ιχνῇ ἀνδρώπων ἡ ἡγούμενα πρόος ἡ
foot-steps of-men (and) whether leading forward or (the)
ἐναντία. Δ' ἐπει ἐώρα τὴν ὄδον ἀτριβῆ, contrary (way.) But when he-perceived the road untrodden,
ταχὺ ἤκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν: Ἀνδρες, ἔσται
'Suddenly he back and said: Men, it-will-be
καλῶς, ἦν θέος θέλη· γὰρ λήσομεν ἐπιπεδάντες
well, if god (so) wishes; | for we-shall-concealing be-attacking
τοὺς ἀνδρώπους.
the men [for we shall fall upon the men unawares]. But
ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγόσουμαι τοῖς ἴπποις, ὅπως, ἂν ἰδώμεν
I indeed will-lead with-the cavalry, so-that, if we-may-see
τινα μὴ διαφυγῶν σημεύῃ τοῖς πολεμίων·
any-one he-may not fleeing-away 'give-notice to-the enemy;
ὁ δ' ἔμεις ἐπεσεῖς· κἂν λειψῇτε, ἐπεσεῖς
but 'do you 'follow; and-if you-are-left (behind), follow
τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἴππων. Δὲ ἐπερθάντες τὰ
the tracks of-the horses. And having-crossed-over — (those)
ὅρη ἠξομεν εἰς πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαιμονιᾶς
mountains we-shall-come to many and also rich
κόμας.
villages.

Δ' ἥνικα ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, τε ἥδη ἦν ἐπὶ
And when it-was mid-day, and already he-was on
τοὺς ἄκροις, καὶ καταδόν τὰς κώμας, ἦχεν ἐλαινών τοὺς ὁπλίτας καὶ ἐλεψεν. Ἡδὲ μὲν to the heavy-armed-men and said: I—will now indeed 'send-off the cavalry to-run-down to the plain, and ἀφήσω τοὺς ἵππες καταθεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, δὲ the targeteers to the villages. But follow αὐτῶν ἐπεσεῖ οἱ τάχιστα δύνασθε, ὅπως ἔχει τις ῥυστήτωσαι as you-can, so-that if any-one withstand ἀλέξησθε. ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἄκοψας ταῦτα (them) you-may-help (them). — Xenophon having-heard these κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. Καὶ ὁ (things) dismounted from — (his) horse. And — (Seuthes) ἦρετο· Τι καταβαίνεις, ἐπεί δὲι σπεύδειν; inquired: Why do-you-dismount, when it-is-necessary to-hasten? Ὅλα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ δὲ γείμον μόνοι· I-know, said (Xenophon), that you—do not ‘want me alone; δ' οἱ ὁπλίται δραμοῦνται βαθτον καὶ ἡδον, and the heavy-armed-men will-hasten-on more—quickly and agreeably, ἔαν ἐγὼ καὶ ἵγωμαι πεῖζο. Μετὰ ταῦτα if I even lead (them) on-foot. After these (things) ἦρετο, καὶ Τιμασίων μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ὃς (Seuthes) departed, and Timasion with him having about τεταράκοντα ἵππες τῶν Ἑλλήνων· Ξενοφῶν δὲ forty horsemen of the Greeks; Xenophon also παρηγύμησε τοὺς εἰδώλων ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εἰς ordered the active (men) from the companies about τριάκοντα ἐτη παριέναι. Καὶ αὐτὸς thirty (years of) age to-proceed-forward. And he ἐτρόχαζε ἔχων τούτους. Δὲ Κλεάνωρ ἤγειτο ran-on having these (men). And Cleonar led τῶν Ἑλλήνων Ἑλλήνων. Ἐπει θ' ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς the other Greeks. When indeed they—were in the κώμαις, Σεύδης, ἔχων δοσον τριάκοντα ἵππεας, villages, Seuthes, having about thirty horsemen,
προσέλάσασι εἰπε· Τάδε δὴ, ὡς Ξενοφῶν, ἀνθρώποι ἔχονται· σὺ ἔλεγες· οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἔχονται· you told us (are taking place): the men are-held ἀλλὰ γὰρ οἱ μοι ἱππεῖς οἰκονομοὶ (captives); but however — my cavalry are-gone-off destitute διόκων ἄλλος ἄλλη· (of a leader) pursuing (the enemy) | other in-another; [some one way, καὶ δέδουκα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι συντάντες some another;) and I-have-feared lest the enemy assembling ποὺ· ἄνθρωπος ἐγγάζονται τι κακόν· καὶ somewhere collected-in-a-body may-do (us) some injury; and δὲ δὲι τινὰς ἡμῶν καταμένειν ἐν ταῖς also it-is-necessary (that) some of-us should-remain in the κόμαις· γὰρ εἰσὶν μεσταὶ ἄνθρωπων. 'Ἀλλ' ἐγώ villages; for they-are full of-people. But I μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔγω indeed, said — Xenophon, with (those) whom I-have (with me) καταλήψομαι τὰ ἄχρα· δὲ σὺ κέλευε Κλεάνωρα will-take-possession-of the heights; and 'do you 'order Cleanor παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρά- to-stretch — (his) line through the plain by τὰς κόμας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, συνή-the villages. When indeed they-had-done these (things), there-λίσθησαν μὲν ὡς χίλια ἀνθρώπωδα, δὲ δισ-were-collected-together indeed about a-thousand slaves, and two-χίλιοι βοῦς, ἀλλὰ καὶ μῦρα πρόβατα. Τότε μὲν thousand oxen, but also ten-thousand sheep. Then indeed ἦν ηὐλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ. — they-‘quartered there ‘for-the-night.
CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ τῇ ἥστερᾳ ὁ Σεῦθης παντελῶς κατα-
But on-the next-day — Seuthes — having entirely burned-
καύσας τὰς κόμας, καὶ λυπών οὐδεμίαν οἰκίαν,
down the villages, and leaving not (a) house,
διὸς ἐνεῖ δόξων καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις,
in-order ‑that he ‑might ‑strike fear into even the rest, (when
ὁι πείσονται ἂν μὴ πείδωνται,
they saw) what they ‑would ‑suffer if they did not submit,
ἀπῆγε πάλιν. Καὶ ἀπέπεμψε μὲν Ἡρακλείδην
he ‑departed back. And he ‑sent indeed Heraclides
διασίδεσθαι μὲν τὴν λείαν εἰς Πέρινθον, διὸς
to ‑sell indeed the booty at Perinthus, that
πώλει τοῖς στρατιώταις δὲ ἀιτῶς
might be ‑got for ‑the ‑soldiers; but he
καὶ οἱ Ἑλλήνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ πεδιόν
and the Greeks encamped on the plain

Θυνῶν, οἱ ἐκκυκλώντες ἔβεφυγον εἰς
"of (the) Thyniants, — (who) deserting (their houses) fled to
τὰ ὄρη. Ἡν δὲ πολλῇ χιλῶν, καὶ οὔτως
the mountains. There ‑was indeed much snow, and such
ψυχος, ὅτε τὸ ὕδωρ δὲ ἐφεροῦτο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον
cold, that the water which ‑they ‑brought ‑in for supper
ἐπηγγυττὸ, καὶ ὃ οἶνος, ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγει;
was ‑frozen, and also the wine, — (that namely) in the
οῖς, καὶ βίνεις καὶ ὧτα πολλῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
sels, likewise (the) noses and ears ‑of ‑many ‑of ‑the
ἀπεκαίνυτο. Καὶ τότε ἐγένετο δὴλον
Greecs ‑was ‑burnt ‑off [were frozen off]. And thus ‑it ‑becomes evident
οὐ ἐνεχα ὁἱ ὂρακες φοροῦσι τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας
why the Thrucians wear — (their) fox (skin cape)
ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς καὶ τοῖς ὄσι, καὶ
on — (their) heads and — (their) ears, and (have)
κυτώνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις, ἀλλὰ
coats (extending) not only about the breasts, but
καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἱππῶν
also about the thighs, and (why) on — horse (back)
ἐξοισίν πειρᾶς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν, ἀλλὰ
they have wide-upper-garments (reaching) just to the feet, but
οὐ χαλαμύδας. Ὅ Σεύθης ἄφεις δὲ τῶν
not (having) cloaks. — Seuthes letting-go indeed (some) of-the
ἀιχμαλώτων εἰς τὰ ἄρη ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰ μὴ
captives to the mountains he-said, that unless
καταβῆσονται καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαίσει καὶ
they-should-come-down and obey, that he-would-burn-down both
τάς κόμας τούτων, καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται
the villages of-themselves, and the corn, and they-would- perish
τῶ λιμῷ. Ἐξ τοῦτον καὶ γυναικῶς καὶ παιδές
of — hunger. On this both women and children
καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κατέβαινον. Δὲ οἱ νεώτεροι
and-also the old-men descended. But the younger

ηὔλιζοντο ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὕπο τὸ ὄρος.
(persons) quartered in the villages under the mountain.
Καὶ Ὅ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἔκέλευσε τὸν Ἐνο-
And — Seuthes being-informed (of this) requested — Xenophon
φὼντα λαβόντα τοὺς νεωτάτους τῶν ὑπελιτῶν
taking the youngest of-the heavy-armed-men
συνεπιστέσθαι. Καὶ ἀναστάντας τῆς νυκτὸς
to-follow-with (him). And having-risen-up at — night
ἀμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆσαν εἰς τὰς κόμας.
together with-the (break of) day they-were-present at the villages.
Καὶ μὲν οἱ πλείστοι ἔξεφυγον· (γὰρ τὸ ὄρος
And indeed the most (of them) fled-away; (for the mountain

ἡν πλησίον·) δὲ ὅσος Σεύθης ἐλαβε κατηχόντας
was near;) but as-many-as Seuthes took he-speared

ἄφειδος.
without-mercy.

Δὴ ἦν τις Ἑπισθήνης, Ὅλυμπος, παιδε-
And there was a certain Episthines, (an) Olynthian, (a) lover-
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER IV.

ραστῆς, ὃς ἰδὼν καλὸν παιδᾶ ἄρτι ἡθάσχοντα,
of-boys, who seeing (a) handsome youth just arrived-at-the-age-of-
ἐξοντα πέλτην, μέλλοντα ἀποδηνήσειν,
puberty, having (a) shield, about-being put-to-death,
προσδραμὼν Ἐνοφώντα ἰκέτευσε βοηθήσαι
having-run-to Xenophon he-supplicated (him) to-succeed (the)
καλῶ παιδί. Καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύδη,
handsome boy. And who going-up to Seuthes,
deῖται μὴ ἀποκτείναι τὸν παιδᾶ· καὶ δηνείται
requests (him) not to-kill the boy; and relates
τὸν τρόπον τοῦ Ἐπισθενοῦς, καὶ ὃτι πολὺ
the character of — Episthenes, and that once
συνελέσατο λόχον· σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
he-collected (a) company (of soldiers) looking-to nothing (else)
ἡ εἰ ἄνεισκε ὕπολη, καὶ μετὰ τούτων
(or if') (but that) such might-be handsome, and with these
ἡν ἄγαθος ἄγνηρ. Δέ ὁ Σεύδης ἤρετο Καὶ ἦ
he-was (a) brave man. But — Seuthes inquired: And —
ἄνθέλοις, ὃ Ἐπισθενοῖς ἀποδανεῖν ἵππο
would you-be-willing. O Episthenes to-die for
τούτου; ἄνατείνας τὸν
this (youth)? But — (Episthenes) having-stretched-out — (his)
τράχηλον εἰπε· Παίε, ἔφη, εἰ ὁ παῖς κελεύεις,
neck said: Strike, said-he, if the boy requires (it),
kαι μέλλει εἰδέναι χάριν. Ὁ Σεύδης ἐπήρετο
and hereafter-will consider (it as) favour. — Seuthes inquired-of
τὸν παιδᾶ, εἰ παίσειεις αὐτον ἴντ' ἐκεῖνον.
the youth, if he-should-strike him [Episthenes] in-place-of himself.
'O παῖς οὐχ εἰα, ἀλλ' ἵκετευσε κατα-
The youth 'would not permit (this), but requested (him) to-
καίνειν μηδέτερον. Ἐνταῖθα ὃ Ἐπισθενής, περί
kill neither. Then — Episthenes, having-
λαβὼν τὸν παιδᾶ, εἰπε· "Ωρα σοι, ὁ Σεύδης,
embraced the youth, said: (It is) time for-you, O Seuthes,
διαμᾶχεσθαι μοι περὶ τούτων· γὰρ οὐ
to-fight with-me for this (youth); for I-will not
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

μεθῆσω τὸν παιδὰ. Ὁ Σεῦθης δὲ γελῶν, εἰς μὲν
give-up the boy. — Seuthes then laughing, 'let indeed
ταῦτα.

Ταῦτα.

'Εδοξὲ
these (things) 'alone (and the boy's life was spared). It-seemed (best)
dὲ αὐτῷ αἰλισθηναι αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ
indeed to-him to-encamp there, in-order-that — (those) on
τοῦ ὄρους μὴ τρέφοιντο ἐκ τοῖς ὄροις τῶν χωμῶν.
the mountain 'might not 'be-nourished from these — villages.
Καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἵππονεταῖς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
And he indeed having-gone-down-lower in the plain
ἐσκέπτηναι. Δὲ ὁ Ἐνεφόν, ἔχον τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους,
encamped. But — Xenophon, having the select-body-of-men,
ἀναστὰτῳ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, καὶ
(quartered) higher-up in the village under the mountain, and
οἱ ἄλλοι Ἔλληνες κατεσχήνησαν πλησίον ἐν
the other Greeks encamped near-by among
τοῖς καλομένοις τοῖς ὀρείνοις Θρακῶν.
(those) called the mountain Thracians.

'Εξ τούτων οὐ πολλαὶ ὑμέραι διετρίβοντο, καὶ οἱ
After this not many days had-passed, and the
Θρακεῖς ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους, κατασκαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν
Thracians from the mountain, coming-down to —
Σεῦθην, διεπράττοντο περὶ σπουδῶν καὶ ὀχήμων.
Seuthes, negotiated about (a) treaty and hostages.
Καὶ ὁ Ἐνεφόν ἐλθὼν τῷ Σεῦθῃ ἔλεγε, ὅτι
And — Xenophon going to Seuthes' said, that
ἐκνυθεὶς ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
they-were-encamped on dangerous places, and (that) the enemy
ἐλευ πλησίον. τ' ἔφη δὲν Ἰδὼν αὐτίζετο
were near; 'he also 'said 'it would 'be-more-agreeable to-en-
ὅτα ἔτι ἐν εὐρόις χαραίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς
But — (Seuthes)
camp without in strong places rather than in —
στεγνοῖς, ὡςτε ἀπολέσσαι. Δὲ ὁ
covered (places as houses), so-as to-perish. But — (Seuthes)
ἐκέλευε θαρρεῖν, καὶ ἐδεῖξεν ὀμηροὺς πα-
showed (the) hostages | being-
ρόντας αὐτῷ. Δὲ καὶ τινες τῶν present with-him [in his possession]. And also some of — (those)
ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβείνοντες ἔδέντο τοῦ Ἑβρο- from the mountain coming-down begged — Xenon-
φῶντος συμπαράξας σφισὶ τὰς σπονδὰς. phon to-assist them (to obtain) — (a) truce.
"Ὁ δ’ ὁμολόγει, καὶ ἐλέλευς θάρ-— (Xenophon) indeed consented, and requested (them) to-be-in-
καὶ ἤγγατο αἰτότοις πεισεθαμ μνήτην good-spirits, and assured (them that) they should-suffer no
κακὸν πειθομένους Σεύθη. Δὲ ὁ ἄρα ἔλεγον ταῦτ' evil being-obedient to-Sounthas. But — therefore they-said these
ἐνεχα κατασκοπησ. (things) for-the-purpose (of) spying-out (the condition of the Grecians).

Ταῦτα μὲν ἐγένετο τῆς ἡμέρας, δὲ εἰς These (things) indeed happened during-the day, but on
τὴν ἐποικίαν νύχτα οἱ Θυνόι ἔλθοντες ἐκ τοῦ the following night the Thynians coming from the
ὄρους ἐπιτίθενται. Καὶ ὁ δεσπότης ἑκάστης mountain attacked (them). And the master of-each
τῆς οἰκίας ἂν μὲν ἐγεμοῦν γὰρ ἢν χα-— house was indeed (a) leader; for it-would-have-been dif-
λεπὼν ἅλλως ἀνευρίσκειν τὰς οἰκίας ἄντας cult otherwise to-find-out the houses being (in the)
σχότους ἐν ταῖς κόμαις γὰρ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι dark in the villages; for even the houses
περισταύρωντο κύκλῳ μεγάλοις σταυροῖς ἐνεχα were-palisaded "in (a) circle with-large palisades on-account-of
τῶν προβάτων. Δ’ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο κατὰ θύρας the cattle. And when they-got near (the) doors
ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰςκόντιζον, of-each — dwelling, — (some) indeed threw-spears-in,
oi δὲ ἐβάλλον τοῖς σχυτάλοις, ὁ — (others) indeed threw with — (their) clubs, which
ἐφαραν ἔχειν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τὰς λόγχας they-were-said to-have as (for) knocking-off the sharp-iron-heads
τῶν δοράτων, δ’ οἱ ἐνεπίμπρασαν,
of —spears, and (others) set-fire-to (the buildings)
καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενόφωντα ὑνομαστὶ ἐκέλευον
and calling-on Xenophon by-name bade (him)
ἐξίώντα ἀποθῆκειν, ἣ ἐφασαν αὐτῶν κατα-
coming-out to-die, or they-said (that) he would-
καυχήσεσθαι αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἥδη τε πῦρ ἐφαίνετο
be-burnt-up there. And already not-only fire appeared
διὰ τοῦ ὀρφοῦ, καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενόφωντα
through the roofs, but-also — (those) about Xenophon
ἐντεκωραξιμένου ἦσαν ἔνδου, ἔχοντες ἀσπίδας καὶ
having-their-corselets-on were within, having shields and
μαχαίρας καὶ κράτη, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος δὲ
swords and helmets, and Silanus (a) Macedonian being
ἡδη ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἐτῶν σημαίνει τῇ
already about eighteen (years) of-age gives-the-signal with-the
σάλπυγι· καὶ ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ἐξίθνη εὐθὺς
trumpet; and having-drawn — (their) swords they immediately
ἐκπηδῶσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνῶ-
sprang-out, and (also) — (those) from the other quar-
μάτων. Οἱ Θράκες δὲ φεύγουσι, περιβαλλόμενοι
ters. The Thracians indeed flee, throwing-over
τὰς πέλτας ὑποσθεν, ἐξεπερ δὴ
— (their) shields behind (them on their backs), as indeed
πρῶτος ἦν αὐτοίς, καὶ αὐτῶν ὕπεραλλομένων
(the) custom was to-them, and they jumping-over
τοὺς σταυροὺς τινες ἐλήφθησαν κρεμασθέντες,
the palisades some were-caught having-been-suspended,
τῶν πελτῶν ἐνεχομένων τοῖς σταυροῖς καὶ οἱ
the shields holding-fast to-the stakes; and (others)
δὲ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτύντες τῶν ἐξόδων δὲ οἱ
also died missing the outlets; and the
Ἐλλήνες ἔδωκαν ἐξω τῆς κώμης. Τινὲς τῶν
Greeks drove (them) out-of the village. Some of-the
Θυνῶν δὲ ὑποστραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, ἰχώντιον
Thynians however coming-back in the dark, 'threw
eis to φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους τοῦς
(ta) javelins into the light out of the dark at — (those)
parapérountas par' oikían kai oμένην. kai étrousan
running along by (a) house on fire; and wounded
'Ιερώνυμον τε καὶ Εὐδέα, λοχαγόν, καὶ Θεο-
Hieronymus indeed — (the) Euodean, (a) captain, as also Theo-
γένην Δοξόν λοχαγόν. δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀπέθανεν
genes (the) Loecrian captain; but no one died;
μέντοι καὶ ἐσφιξαί καὶ σκείη τινων κατεκαυθή
clothes and baggage of some were burnt.
however even (the) clothes and baggage of some were burnt.
Δὲ Σείΰνης ἦκε βοηθόςων σὺν ἐπτὰ ἱππεῖσι,
But Southes came about helping (them) with seven horsemen,
τοῖς πρῶτοι ἤχον τὸν σαλπιγκτήν τὸν Ἐρα
tois proatoi ekwhov ton salpingkten ton Ero-
the first (assembled) having the trumpeter the Thra-
κιον. Καὶ ἐπείπερ ἡσθετο, ὑσο-
cion (namely). And when he perceived (the state of affairs), as-
περ χρόνον ἐβοηθεῖ,
per long (a) time as he was assisting (them by marching to their aid),
tossoitov kal to kerass ephdegeveto ai'tw. óste
soldiers; and even the horn sounded for him; so that
kal tovto stouparēsche phōbou tois polemiois.
also this noise furnished fear to the enemy.
also this noise furnished fear to the enemy.
'Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν τε ἐδεξιοῦτο καὶ
When however he came he not only shook hands (with them) but also
ἐλεγεν, ὅτι οὐκ οὐρήσευν πολλοὺς τε ἔνεωτας,
said that he thought to find many dead.
also this noise furnished fear to the enemy.
'Ἐξ τούτον ο Ξενοφῶν τε δείται τῶν ὀμήρων,
After this — Xenophon not only asks for the hostages
παραδόθηναι αἰτῶ, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι, εἰ
to be given up to him, but also to march with (him), if
be wished to the mountain; if indeed not to allow him (to go).
τῇ ἰσταριά οὖν ὁ Σείΰνης παραδίδοσι τοὺς
On the next day therefore — Southes gave up to him the
ὅμηρους, ἣν πρεσβυτέρους ἀνδρας, τοὺς κρατίστους,
hostages, already old men, the best,
δε ἐθανατο, τῶν ὀρεινῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἤρχεται
as they-said, of-the mountain (people); and he came
σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. Δὲ ἦδη ὁ Σεῦθης εἶχε καὶ
with — (his) forces. And already — Seuthes had even
τριπλασίαν δύναμιν.
three-times (as large a) force (as he had when the Greeks came);
γὰρ πολλοὶ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἀκούσαντες δὲ ὁ Σεῦθης
many of-the Odrysians, hearing what — Seuthes
πράττοι, κατέβαινον συστρατευόμενοι. Δὲ οἱ
practiced, came-down taking-the-field-with (him). But the
Θυνοὶ ἐπεί εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους μὲν πολλοὺς
Thynians when they-saw from the mountain indeed many
ὀπλίτας, δὲ πολλοὺς πελταστὰς, δὲ πολλοὺς
heavily-armed-men, and many targeteers, and many
ἵππεις, καταβάντες ικέτευον στρεισασθαι.
horsemen, coming-down besought (him) to-make-a-treaty (of peace
καὶ ὄμολόγουν ποιήσειν πάντα,
and promised to-do all (he might require),
καὶ ἐκέλευον λαμβάνειν τὰ πιστὰ.
and requested (him) to-take the pledges (of fidelity from them).
Δὲ ὁ Σεῦθης, καλέσας τὸν Ἑνοφώντα, ἐπεδείκνυεν
But — Seuthes, having-called-on — Xenophon, showed
ἀ λέγομεν, καὶ ἔφη οὖ στρι-
what they-may-have-said, and he-said (that he) 'would not 'treat-
κασθαι, εἰ Ἑνοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοῖς
with-them, if Xenophon might-wish to-punish them
τῆς ἐπιδέσεως. 'Ο δ' εἶπεν: 'Ἀλλ'
(for) — (their) attack. — But (Xenophon) said: But
ἐγὼ ὑπομίκω ἔχειν καὶ νῦν ἰκανὴν δικίουν,
I-at-least consider (that I) have even now sufficient revenge,
eἰ οὕτωι ἐσονταὶ δοῦλοι ἄντι ἐλευθέρων.
if these (people) will-be slaves (having) before (been) free.
Μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ συμβουλεύειν, τὸ λοιπὸν
Moreover said-he to-him (that I) counsel (you), in-future
λαμβάνειν ὄμηρος τοὺς δυνατότατος ποιεῖν
to-take (as) hostages — (those) the-most-able to-do
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER V. 515

τι κακόν, δὲ εἶαν τοὺς γέροντας οἴκου.
(you) any harm, but leave the old-men at-home.

Οὐν μὲν οί ταίτη πάντες δὴ
Therefore indeed the (inhabitants) in-this (country) all truly

προσωμολόγουν.
submitted (to him).

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ ὑπερβάλλουσι τοὺς Θρᾴκας ἵππει Βυζαντίον
And they-cross-over to-the Thracians above Byzantium,

ἐἰς τὸ Δῆλτα καλούμενον αὐτή ὅ ἦν οὐκέτι
into the Delta so-called; this (country) indeed was not

ἄρχη Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους
(a part of the) dominion of-Massades, but (it belonged to) Theres

tοῦ ὸδρίσου, τινὸς ἄρχαῖον.
the (son) of-Odrys, some ancient (king).

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
And here

ὁ Ἡρακλείδης παρῆν Ἐχὼν τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας.
-Heraclides was-present having the price-of-the spoils.

Καὶ Σευθῆς ἐξαγαγὼν τρία ζεύγη ἡμοικὰ (γὰρ
And Seuthes selecting three pair (of) mules (for

ἡν οὐ πλεῖω) δὲ τὰ ἄλλα βοῖνα, καλέσας
there were no more) and the others oxen, having-called-for

Ξενοφῶντα, ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν,
Xenophon, he-requested (him) to-take (the mules for himself), but

διανεῖμαι τὰ ἄλλα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
to-distribute the rest (namely the oxen) to-the generals

καὶ λοχαγοίς. Δὲ Ξενοφὼν εἶπεν ὁ Ἑμοὶ μὲν
and captains. But Xenophon said: For-myself indeed

tοίνυν ἄρξει καὶ αὐθίς λαβεῖν,
therefore it-is-sufficient even hereafter to-take (something); but

δῶρον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς,
make-a-present (of them) to-the generals and captains,
oĩ sún ēmoi ἰκάλολοίχαν. Kai Timasion
— (those who) with me have-accompanied (you). And Timasion
ô Darðaneús λαμβάνε μὲν ἐν τῶν γένγων, ἐν δὲ
the Dardanean took indeed one of the pair, one also
Kléanor ô Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἐν Φρυνίκος ὁ Ἀχαῖος.
Cleander the Orchomenian, and one Phrynichus the Achaeans;
dὲ τὰ ζεύγη βοῖκα κατεμεριζότη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς.
but the yokes (of) oxen were-distributed to the captains.
Δὲ ἀποδίδομε τὸν μισθὸν μόνον
He [Seuthes] indeed paid the wages only (for)
ἐκσοὶ ἡμερῶν, τοῦ μηνός ἡ ἦ ἔξεληλυθότος.
twenty days, the month having already elapsed;
γὰρ ὁ Ἰρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ ἐμπολύκαι
for Heraclides said that he could not sell
πλεῖον. Οὐν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀχέσετεἰς ἐπομό-
more. Therefore Xenophon being-distressed (at this) having-impre-
σας εἶτε. Φοινεῖς μοι, οἱ Ἰρακλείδης,
sailed said: It seems to me, O Heraclides, (that you do) not take-care
Σεῦδον ὡς δὲι. γὰρ ἐι ἔξηδου,
Sceuson as you ought to be; for if you had taken-care
( of the affairs) of Seuthes as they ought to be; for if you had taken-care
ηὔες ἀν φέρων τόν πλήρη μισθόν, καὶ
you would have-come bringing the full pay, even
προδανεισάμενος, εἰ ἔδυνω μὴ ἄλλως, καὶ ἀπο-
having-borrowed (it), if you could not otherwise, and having-
δόμενος τὰ ἱμάτια σαυτοῦ.
sold the clothes of yourself.
Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἰρακλείδης τῷ ἀχέσετεῖς,
Then Heraclides was not only grievously vexed,
καὶ ἔδεισε, μὴ ἔκλησεν ἐκ τῆς φυλίας τῆς
but also feared, lest he might be deprived of the friendship of—
Σεῦδον καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας ὃ τι
Seuson and from that—day (in) whatever
ἐδυνατο διεβάλλει Ξενοφῶντα πρὸς Σεῦδην. Οἰ
he could he-culminated Xenophon to Seuthes. The
στρατίωται μὲν δὴ ἐνεκαλοῦν Ἕπειρωντι, ὅτι εἶχον
soldiers indeed truly blamed Xenophon, that they had
οὐ τὸν μισθὸν· δὲ Σευθῆς ἠχῆτο αὐτῷ, not—(their) pay; and Seuthes was—much—displeased with him,
ὅτι ἐντόνως ἀπήτευ τὸν μισθὸν τοῖς (because) that he—had strenuously requested the pay—for the
στρατιώταις. Καὶ τέως μὲν ἀκείμην—soldiers. And until—then indeed he—had—continually men-
το, ὡς ἐπειδὰν ἀπέλθη ἐπὶ θάλασσαν παρα-
tioned, that when they—should—arrive at (the) sea he—would-
δώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τεῖχος· give him Bisantine and Ganos and Neontichus;
δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου ἐμέμνημο ἐτι οὗδεν ὁ—but from that — time he—mentioned afterwards none
τούτων. Γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ διεθέσθηκε of—these (places). For — Heraclides also insinuated
τούτο, ὡς εἰπ ὁδικὸς παραδίδοναι τείχη this, that it was not safe to—give—over fortresses 'to (a)
ἀνδρὶ ἔχοντι δύναμιν.
'man having (an) army.

Ἐξ τούτου ὁ Ἑνοφῶν μὲν ἐβουλεύετο On this (account) — Xenophon indeed counselled—with—himself
τι χρὴν ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ στρατευέσθαι ἐτι what it—was—necessary to—do | about the to—march—with—the—army yet
ἀνω. Δ' ὁ (farther) up [about the expedition farther up the country]. But —
Ἡρακλείδης εἰςαγαγὼν τοὺς ἅλλους στρατηγοὺς Heraclides was—bringing—forward the other generals
πρὸς Σευθῆν, τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοῖς λέγειν, ὅτι to Seuthes, also he—requested them to—say, that
σφεῖς ἄν ἀνάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν οὗτον ἤττον they could lead the army not less
ἡ Ἑνοφῶν, τε ὑποχνείτο αὐτοῖς τὸν (effectively) than Xenophon, and promised them (that) the
μισθὸν ἐκπλεόν δυοῖν μηνοῖν παρέστωσαι pay (in) full (for) two months would—be—present (for them)
ἀλήγων ἡμέρῶν, καὶ ἐκέλευε συστρατεύειν—(in (a) 'few days, and he—requested (them) to—continue—in—the-ser-

44
Καί ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν οὐδ’, ἓν μελλὴ εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months’
μισθός, ἓν στρατευσάμην ἀνευ Ἑξοφόρωντος. Καί pay, would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. And
ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συναγωλοῦσιν τῷ — Pryniscus and — Cleaner agreed-with —
Τιμασίων.
Τιμασίων.

Ἐντεύθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,
Then — Seuthes reprehended — Heraclides,
ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ἑξοφόρωτα. Δ' ἐκ that he—had not called-in also Xenophon. And on
τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' ὅ this they-call—for him alone. But — (Xenophon)
γνώσας τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ὅτι knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that
βουλοῦτο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the
ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, παρέρχεται λαβών other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only
πάντας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς. all the generals, but—also the captains.
Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν συνεστρα—And when all had—been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they—
teύνοντο,
καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον joined (him) ‘in—an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea
ἐν δεξίᾳ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησόν, on (their) right they—arrived at — Salmydessus,
διὰ τῶν Ὁρακῶν καλουμένων Μελινω—through the (country) ‘of (the) ‘Thracians called Melinow—
φάγον· ἐνδὰ πολλαὶ τῶν νεῖν πλεονεκῶν εἰς τὸν phagi; here many-of—the vessels sailing into the
Πόντον ὑελλοῦσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι: γάρ ἐστι Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there—is (a)—
Τέναγος πάμπολυ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλαττῆς.
shoal (there) stretching very-far (out) into the sea.
Kai οἱ Θρᾴκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,
And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there;
ὁρισάμενοι στήλας,
having-set-up pillars to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each
ληφώντας τὰ ἐπιπτόντα καὶ αὐτοὺς
plunder the (things) cast (on-shore) on those
δὲ ἔλεγον τέως πρὶν
(t'reir own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)
ὁρίσασθαι,
having-subdued these (people), they-departed back.
ἐνταῦθα εἰρήσασθαι
by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found
μὲν πολλὰς κλίνας, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλὰς
indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many
γεγραµµέναι βιβλίοι, καὶ πολλὰ τάλλα, ὅσα
written books, and many other (things), such-as
ναυάρχοι ἔγοναν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεῦχοι.
seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then
καταστρεφόµενοι ταῦτα,
having-subdued these (people), they-departed back.
"Ενθα δὴ Σεῦδης εἰχε στράτευμα ἥδη πλέον
Then truly Southes had (an) army already more
τού Ἑλληνικοῦ. Γὰρ τε πολὺ ἔτι
of the Grecian. For not-only many yet
πλείους ὁδρυσὼν καταβεβήκεσαν,
umerous of-(the) Odysse had-come-down (to him), but-also —
δὲ πείδομενοι συνεστρατεύ-
(those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) joined
οντο. ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
(his) army. And they-encamped on the plain
ἐπερ Ἐλυσίας, ἀπέχοντες δὲν τρίακοντα στα-
above Selibus, being-distant about thirty sta-
δίσιον τῆς θαλαττῆς. Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν
dia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed
CHAPTER VI.

"Ευ τούτο τῷ χρόνῳ, ὄντων ἡδή σχεδὸν δύο
At this — time, being already nearly two

μηνῶν, Χαρμίνος τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος
months, Charmus indeed the Lacedaemonian and Polynices

ἀφικοῦνται παρὰ Θιβρόνος, καὶ λέγουσιν, ὅτι
arrived from Thibron, and they said, that
dochei

Δασεδαμώνιοι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ
Lacedaemonians to take the field against

Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θιβρόν ἔπεπλευσεν ὡς πολε-
Tissaphernes, and Thibron had set sail as about-

μῆνων, καὶ δεῖται τούτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
months, and it is seen of this army, and

λέγει, ὅτι δαρεικός τοῦ μηνὸς ἔσται μισθὸς
he says that (a) the month would be (the) pay

ἔκαστῳ, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμορία, δὲ τοῖς
to each (soldier), and to the captains twice as much, but to the

στρατηγοῖς τετραμορία. "Επει δ’ οἱ Δασε-
the generals four times as much. When indeed — (these) Laced-

δαμώνιοι ἡλθον, εἰδώς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πυθόμενος
demonians came, immediately — Heracleides, hearing
ὅτι ἔκοιναι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατευμα, λέγει τῷ Σέυδη, that they-came for the army, says to — Seuđēs, ὅτι γεγένηται κάλλιστον: γὰρ μὲν οἱ Λακεδαι— that it-had-happened luckily; for indeed the Lacedae-
μόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ σὲ οὐκέτε monions wanted the army, but you no-longer 
δὲ ἀποδίδους τὸ στράτευμα χαριεί αὐτοῖς; want (it); giving up the army you-will-gratify them, 
δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθὸν σε, and they—will no-more 'demand — (their) pay of-you, 
ἀλλ’ ἀπαλλάξοντα ἐκ τῆς χώρας. 'Ο Σέυδης but will-depart from the country. — Sεuđēs 
ἀκουσάς ταῦτα xellevei parágeinen' hearing 
καὶ ἔπει εἶπον, ὅτι ἔκοιναι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατευμα, και ἔπει εἶπον, that they-come for the army, 
καὶ ὅτι ἀποδίδοσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and 
ἐξηγεῖν, ὅτι ἀποδίδοσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and 
εἶναι φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος τε καλεῖ αὐτοῖς to-be (their) friend — and ally; and he-invited them 
ἐπὶ ξενία, καὶ ἔξενείτε μεγαλοπρεπῶς. on terms-of-hospitality, and he-enterained (them) magnificently. 
Δὲ οὐκ ἔκαλει ξενοφώντα ὁδὲ οἴδενα τῶν But he—did not 'invite Xenophon nor (now) (any) of-the 
εἶναι ἄνηρ ξενοφῶν εἶν, ἀπεχρίνατο, quired, what (kind of) man Xenophon might-be, he-replied, 
ὅτι μὲν τὰ ἄλλα εἶν οὐ κακός, δὲ that indeed in — other (respects) he-was not (a) bad (man), 
χαλαστήτως καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐστιν χεῖρον (was a) friend-of-the-soldiers; and through this it-is worse 
αἰτῶ. Καὶ ο Εἶπον. 'Αλλ’ ἥ ὁ ἄνηρ δημα— to the worse 
γιγαντίας ἰδέας; Καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης himself-popular (with) the men? And — Haraclidēs
κρη, Οὖν μὲν πάνω. "Αρ' οὖν, ἐφασαν, said, Therefore indeed altogether (so). — Therefore, said—θε, 
μὴ καὶ ἀναντίωσεται ἦμιν περὶ τῆς ἀπαγω-
will—the not even oppose us about the leading-
γῆς; Ἀλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, away (of the army)? But if you, said — Heraclides,
συλλέξαντες αὐτούς, ὑποσχῆσθε τῶν μισθῶν,
assembling them, promise the pay,
προσεχόντες ὁλίγον ἐκείνω, ἄποδραμοῦνται paying little attention to—him, they—will—return
σὺν ἦμιν. Πῶς οὖν, ἐφασαν, ἄν συλλεγεῖτε with you. How therefore, said—they, may (they) assemble
ἡμῖν; Ἀφρον πρῶς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, ἄξομεν for—us? To—morrow early, said — Heraclides. we—will—conduct
ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν you to them; and I—know, said—he, that when
δοκεῖν ὑμᾶς, ἄμενοι συνδραμοῦνται. they—see you, they—will willingly足迹 round (you).
Αὕτη ἤ ἡμέρα μὲν ἔληξε οὖν 
This — day indeed closed thus.

Δὲ τῇ ἑσπεραίᾳ Σεῦθες τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης
And on—the next—day Seuthes and also Heraclides
ἀγοσθή οὗς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα, καὶ conducted the Lacedaemonians to the army, and
ἡ στρατιὰ συλλέγεται. Δὲ τῷ Λάκωνε ἑλεγέτην, the army aggregated. And the—two Lacedaemonians said,
ὅτι δοκεῖ Ἀλκεδαμονίους πολεμεῖν Τισσα—
that it—seemed (good) to (the) Lacedaemonians to—go—to—war with—Tissa—
φέρειν, τῷ ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἦν οὖν ὅτε σῦν phernes, — (he) having—injured you; if therefore you—go with
ἡμῖν, τε τιμωρήσασθε τῶν ἐχθρῶν, καὶ us, you—will not—only revenge—yourselves—on—the enemy, but—also
ἐξαστος ὑμῶν οὐκ ἔρει δαρεικόν τοῦ μνῆς, δὲ each of you will—receive (a) daric the month, and (a)
λοχαγὸς τῷ διπλοῦν, δὲ στρατηγὸς τῷ τετρα-
captain the double, and (a) general the qua—
πλούν. Καὶ οἱ στρατιώται τε ἀσμενοὶ ἥκουσαν, druplo. And the soldiers not-only willingly listened,
καὶ τίς τῶν Ἀρκάδων εἰδοὺς ἀνίσταται but also some-one of the Argolidians immediately rising-up
κατηγορήσων τοῦ Ξενοφόντος. Δὲ καὶ Σεῦδης denouncing — Xenophon. But also Seuthes
παρῆν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραξῆσαι was-present, desiring to-know how the-affair-would-be-conducted;
καὶ εἰστήκει ἐν ἐπηκών, ἔχων ἐρυμένα· and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter;
καὶ εἰστήκει ἐν ἐπηκών, ἔχων ἐρυμένα· and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter;
dὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔννειε τὰ πλείστα έλληνιστὶ. and also he-himself understood — most (things) in-Greek.
'Ευθα δὴ ὁ Ἀρκάς λέγει: 'Αλλ' ἦμεις μὲν, Then indeed the Arcadian speaks: But we indeed,
ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἄν ἦμεν παρ' ἵμιν, O Lacedaemonians, even long-ago would have-been with you,
εἰ Ξενοφόνν πείςας ἦμας μη ἀπηγαγεν if Xenophon having-persuaded us 'had not 'lied (us)
ἀνείπο, ἔνθα δὴ ἦμεις μὲν στρατευόμενοι τὸν hither, where truly we indeed performing-military-duty (through) —
δεινὸν χειμῶνα πεπαιμεδα οὐδὲν καὶ νύκτα most-severe cold-weather we-rested neither — night
καὶ ὠμέραν· δὲ ὃ ἔχει τοὺς ἑμετέρους — (or) day; but — (he) has (the fruits of) — our
πῶνους· καὶ Σεῦδης μὲν πεπλουτίκευεν ἐκεῖνον ιδία, — our
labour; and Seuthes indeed has-enriched him personally,
δὲ ἀποστερεῖ ἦμας τὸν μισθὸν. Ωςτε δὲ but defrauded us (of) — (our) pay. So-that (I) who
γε λέγων πρῶτος ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ ἱδομὶ τοῦτον 'am at-least 'speaking first I indeed if I-saw this
καταλευσθεντά, καὶ δόντα δίχαν [Xenophon] stoned-to-death, [and giving justice [and thus
τὸν ἰδρύσει ἦμας, be punished] of-which he-has-'dragged us 'about, [for having so
καὶ ἄν δοκῶ μοι ἔχειν τὸν dragged us about,] and I would 'seem to-myself to-have — (my)
μισθῶν, καὶ οὖν ἀχέσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονη-
pay, and neither to-be-aggrieved at — (what I) had-under-
μένοις. Μετὰ τούτων ἄλλος ἀνέστη καὶ
gone. After this (one) another stood-up and
κόνως ἄλλοις. Ἐξ τούτων δὲ Ἐνοφῶν ἐλέξεν
likewise another. After this indeed Xenophon spoke
where:
thus:

'Αλλὰ μὲν ἄρα δεῖ ἀνθρώποι
But indeed therefore it-is-necessary (that) (a) man
ὄντα προσδοκάν πάντα,
being to-expect all, [one must expect all kinds of fate]
ὅπωτε γε καὶ νῦν ἔχω αἰτίας ὑφ' ἰμῶν, ἐν
since at-least even now I-have accusations from you, in
ὁ δὲ δοκῶ συνειδέναι γε ἐμαυτῷ
(the thing) which I-seem to-be-conscious at-least-to-myself (of)
παρεσχημένος πλείστην προδυμίαν περὶ ἵμας.
having-shown (the) most seal for you.

Μὲν γε ἀπεταλάμεν ἡδη ὁμημένος
'I indeed at-least 'turned-back 'having already 'set-out
οἶκας, οὐ μᾶ τὸν Δία ὅτι πυνθανόμενος
for-home, no by — Jupiter not-indeed hearing
ὑμᾶς πράττειν εὗ ἄλλα μᾶλλον ἀκούν
you (were) doing well; but rather hearing (that)
ἐίναι ἐν ἀπόροις, ὡς ὁφελήσων, εἰ τί
(you) were in difficulties, as being-about-helping (you) if in-any-thing
δυναίμεν. Ἐπει δὲ ήλθον, τούτων Σεῦδου
I-might-be-able. When indeed I-came, this-here Suthes
πέμποντος πολλούς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ
sending many messengers to me, and
ὑποχυμομένου πολλὰ μοι, εἰ πείσαμι ἰμάς
promising many (things) to-me, if I-would-persuade you
ἔλθειν πρὸς αὐτὸν, οὖν μὲν ἐπεχειρησά ποιεῖν
to-go to him, I-'did not indeed 'attempt to-do
τούτῳ, ὡς ἰμαῖς αὐτῷ ἐπιστασθεὶς δὲ ἦγο
this, as you yourselves know; but I-led (you to
δὲν ὁμέν ἐν τάχιστα διαβητεῖαι a place) whence I-thought (that you) might the-most-speedily cross-over εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ταῦτα εἶναι into — Asia. For I-thought this to-be βέλτιστα ἵματα, καὶ ἵππεα ἵματα βουλομένοις. ἐλάχιστα, for-you, and I-knew you desiring (it). But ἐπεὶ Ἀρισταρχος, ἔλαβεν σὺν τριήμερον, ἐκώλυς when Aristarchus, coming with galleys, prohibited ἵματα διακλείειν, ἐν τοίτου, ὅπερ ἦν ἐντὸ ἑικός, us to-sail-across, on this, as was certainly proper, συνέλεξεν ἵματα, ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα δὲ τι I-assembled you, in-order-that we-might-consult-together what κρῆνα ποιεῖν. "Τιμεῖς οἴξ οὖν, ἀκού- it-might-be-necessary to-do. (Did) you not therefore, hear-καίτες μὲν Ἀριστάρχος ἐπιτάγγοντος ἵματον pereív- ing indeed Aristarchus commanding you to-pro-

eοδούς εἰς Χερσόνησον, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πε- ceed to (the) Chersonesus, hearing also Seuthes per-

δοντος ἔναντι συστρατεύεσθαι, μὲν πάντες suading yourselves to-enter-into-his-service, (did you not) indeed ' all ἐλέγετε ἵναι σὺν Σεύθῃ, δὲ say (that you would) go with Seuthes, and (did you not) πάντες ἐφησάσασθε ταῦτα; ὅτι οὖν ἐγὼ all vote-for these (things)? How therefore 'did I ἐνταῦθα ἔδιηκσα, ἀγαγών ἵματι ἐδόκει then 'wrong (you), leading you there-where it-seemed ἵματι πάσιν; Ἔπει γε Σεύθης μὲν ήρεμον (good) for-you all (to go)? Since at-least Seuthes indeed began μετέδοσαν περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ to-deceive about the pay, if indeed I-should-praise αὐτὸν, δὲν δικαίως καὶ αἰτίως καὶ μισοῖσθε· him, 'you would justly both 'accuse and detest (me); εἰ δὲ δὲν πρὸς ὑμᾶς μάλιστα πάντων φίλος, if however being formerly most of-all (his) friend, νῦν πάντων εἰμι διαφοροποιότατος, πῶς now of-all (men) I-am the-most-at-variance (with him), how
ἀν αἰροῦμενος ἤμας ἀντὶ Σεῦδου, ἢτι δικαίως
can 'I, preferring you before Seuthes, as-yet justly
ἐξομι αἰτίαν ἃφ᾽ ἤμῶν περὶ ὄν δια-
have censure from you about (those things in) which I-am-
φέρομαι πρὸς τοὺς; Ἄλλ᾽ ἄν εἴπωτε, δι᾽
at-variance with this [Seuthes]? But 'you may 'say, that
ἐξει ἔχοντα ἐμέτερα παρὰ Σεῦδου
it-is (possible that) 'I, having your (money) from Seuthes
tεχνάζειν. Ὅτι οὖν τούτῳ γε ἤλειον, ἢτι,
'tam-practising-artifice. 'Is not therefore this at-least 'evident, that,
εἰπερ Σεῦδης ἐτέλει τι ἐμοί, οὗ ἤλειον
if Seuthes paid anything to-me, he-'did not certainly
ἐτέλει ὀντῶς, ὡς τε στεροῦτο ὃν
'pay (it) for-the-purpose, that not-only he-might-be deprived-of what
δοῖν ἐμοί, Ἄλλα καὶ ἀποτίσειεν ἤμιν; Ἄλλ᾽ οἴμαι,
he-gave me, but also to-repay you? But I-think,
εἰ εἴδουν, ἄν εἴδου ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
if he-gave (me anything) 'he may 'have-given (it) for this (purpose),
ὅπως δοῦσι, μειών. μὴ ἀποδώῃ ἤμιν
that having-given (a) less (sum) he-'might not 'pay you
τὸ πλείον. Εἰ τοῖνυν οἶσεις ἔχειν
the greater (sum). If therefore you-think (the affair) to-have (itself)
ἀντί καὶ ἀποτίσειεν ταύτην
thus, it-is-allowed you very speedily to-make this
τὴν πράξειν ματαιὰν ἀμφότερος ἤμιν, ἐὰν πράτ-
— transaction useless for-both (of) us, if you-
τῆτε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. Γὰρ δῆλον, ὅτι
exact (from) him the money. For (it is) evident, that
Σεῦδης, εἰ ἔχω ὑπ᾽ ἀντίκας ἀπαιτήσει,
Seuthes, if I-have (received) anything from him, will-'demand
με, καὶ μέντοι ἀπαιτήσαι δικαίως, ἐὰν
(it) 'back (of) me, and moreover will-'demand (it) justly, if
μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πράξειν αὐτῷ ἐφ᾽ ὧν ἐδοκα-
I-'do not 'confirm the transaction to-him for which I-received-
δόχουν. Ἀλλὰ δοξᾶ τοῦ δεῖν πολλοὺ
gifts (from him). But I-seem to-myself to-want much (of)
ἔχειν τὰ ἵμετρα· γὰρ ὄνυν ἦμιν ἀπαντᾷς
having — your (money); for I-swear to-you by-all

θεοὺς καὶ πάσας ἔχειν μηδὲ
(the) gods and (by) all (the goddesses) (that I) have never-Indeed

ἄ Σειλῆς ὑπέσχετο ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ
(received) what Σειλῆς promised me (as my own) proper (pay);

δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς πάρεστι, καὶ ἄχοιον σύνοιδέ μοι, εἰ
and also he-himself is-present, and hearing knows with-me, if

ἐπιορκῶ. Ἡνά δὲ μᾶλλον βανάμάστη,
I-perjure-myself. That indeed you-may—be yet-more "surprised,

συνεπόμενῳ μηδὲ εἰληφέναι α ν ῦ
I-swear (that) I-have not-Indeed "received what the

ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μὴ τοίνυν μηδὲ ὅσα
other generals received, no moreover not-Indeed as-much-as

ἐνιοὶ τὸν λοχαγῶν. Καὶ τί ἐποίοιν ταῦτ';
some of-the captains. And why did I-do this?

"Ω ἄνδρες, δοσι μᾶλλον συμφέρομι
O men, (I thought that) how-much the-more I-endured-with

τούτω τότε τὴν πενίαν, τοσοῦτῳ μᾶλλον
this (man) while in — poverty, so-much the-more

ποιήσωσιν αὐτὸν φίλον ὅπως δυνασθεῖν. Δὲ
I-would-make him (a) friend whenever he-might-be-able. But

ἐγὼ ἀμα ὅ ό ὁ αὐτὸν πράττοντα εἶ,
I at-the-present-time not-only see him doing well,

καὶ δὴ γιγνώσκω τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ. Τις
but also truly know the disposition of-him. Some-one

δὴ ἂν εἰποὶ· οὐχ οὐν αἰσχύνῃ οὔτω
indeed may say: are—YOU not therefore 'ashamed (at) 'being thus

μωρῶς ἐξαπατώμενος; Ναὶ μὰ Δία μὲντοι
foolishly 'deceived? Certainly, by Jupiter, I—would indeed

ἡσυχύμεν, εἰ ἐξαπατήθην ὑπὸ γε ὅντος
'have-been-ashamed, if I-had-been-deceived by (one) at-least being (an)

πολεμίου· δὲ δὲντι φίλῳ δοξεὶ μοι αἰσχον
enemy; but being (a) friend it-seems to-me more-shameful

ἐξαπατᾶν ἢ ἐξαπατᾶν ὑπὸ. Ἡπει, εἰ γε
to-deceive than to-be-deceived. Since if at-least (the)
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

φυλακή ἐστὶ πρὸς φίλους, οἶδα ὡμᾶς φυλαξάμενος
guard is-to-be against friends, I know you guarding
πᾶσαν, ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τοῦτο
all, so as not to give this [Seutheus] (a)
πρόφασιν
pretext,
(that he might) not pay us what
ὑπέσχετο· γὰρ οὔτε ἦδικήσαμεν τοῦτον
he promised; for we have neither injured this [Seutheus]
οὔδεν,
no thing
οὔτε κατεδιλάμασαμεν τὰ
nor neglected the (affairs)
τούτου,
of this (man), or indeed did we cowardly shrink — (from any
ἐφ' ὦ τι οὖντος παρεξάλεσεν ἤμᾶς. Ἄλλα, thing) to which he called us. But, you
ἄν φαίητε, ἐδει τὸτε λαβεῖν τὰ
come, it ought (to be, that I should) then have taken —
ἐνέχυρα, ὡς εἰ ἐθούλετο
so that if he wished he could not indeed be able to-
ἐδύνατο ἐξαπλοῦσιν, so that if he wished he could not indeed be able to-
πατᾶν. Πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσατε, ὁ ἐγὼ
deceive. As respects these (things) indeed hear, what I
ἄν οὔχ εἰπον ἐναντίον τοῦτο, εἰ should 'at no time have mentioned before this [Seutheus], if
μὴ ἐδοξεῖτε
you had not shown (yourselves) to me to be altogether
ἀγνώμονες,
she was a disgrace to us you are. For
λίαν ἀχάριστοι εἰς ἐμὲ. Γὰρ destitute of intelligence, or very ungrateful towards me, so
ἀναμνήσθητε ἐν πολιτείᾳ πράγμασιν ἐτυγχάνετε recollect in what any things you happened
ὅντες
being [for recollect in what kind of circumstances you were placed] out of
ὅν ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον ὡμᾶς πρὸς Σεύθην. which I (extricated you and) led you up to Seuthes.

Οὔχ μὲν Πέρινδων προσῆγε εἰς πόλιν,
(Was it) not indeed (at) Perinthus you went to (the) city,
δ' Ἀρισταρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀποκλείσας τὰς but Aristarchus the Lacedaemonian having-shut the
πύλας οὐκ εἰς ἤμας εἰς ἱναία; Δ' ἡστραγ- 

gates he did not 'let you go-in? And did 'you (not) 'en-

τοπεδεύετε ἡγω ὑπαίριοι; Ἡν δὲ μέσος camp without in-the-open-air? Was it (not) indeed (the) middle

χειμῶν; Ἐχρῆσε διώρη,

(of) winter? Had 'you (not) 'to-make-use-of (a) market, [had you

ὁρῶντες μὲν σπάνια τὰ δινα, not to buy your provisions,] seeing indeed (a) scarcity (of) — saleable

δ' εἰκονεσε σπάνια ὅτων. ὡνῆσεσθε; (things), and having (a) scarcity of any (things that) you-may-buy

Δὲ ἦν ἀνάγχη μὲν εἰς τὴν Θρᾴκην. (with)? And was there (not a) necessity to remain in Thrace;

(γὰρ τριήρεις ἐφορμοῦσα ἐκάλυπτον διαπλείν.) (for)
galleys having-been-anchored hindered (us) to-sail-over:

εἰ δὲ τις μένοι εῖναι ἐν πολεμία, — if indeed any one stayed (it was) to be in (a) hostile (country),

ἐνδα μὲν ἦσαν πολλοί ἵππεις ἐναντίοι, δὲ where indeed there were many horsemen opposed (to you), as-likewise

πολλοί πελτασταί; Δὲ μὲν ἦν ὀπλιτικοὶ many targeteers? And indeed there was (a) heavy-armed

ὕμην, ἢ, ἴστες μὲν ἄνθρωποι ἐπὶ τὰς (corps) for-us, with-which, going indeed 'in (a) 'body to the

κόμας, ἵσως ἄν εὐναμενὰς λαμβάνειν σῖτον villages, perhaps 'we might 'be-able to take food

οὐδὲν τι ἄφθονον. δὲ διώκοντες ὅτω ἡν (but) not any abundance; and following 'we might

κατελαμβάνομεν ἡ ἀνδράποδα ἡ πρόβατα, 'capture neither slaves or cattle; (for the

ἡν οὖν ἦμην. Γὰρ ἐγὼ κατελαβον οὕτε proper troops) were not to-us. For 'I found neither

ἱππικὸν οὗτε πελταστικὸν συνεστηκός παρ' ἦμην. cavalry nor targeteers constituted-in-a-body among you.

Εἴ οὖν, ἢμοιν ὄντων ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγχη, μυδὲ If therefore, you being in this difficulty, not indeed

προσαύτησας ὄντων μισθον, having-asked-in-addition (for any thing) whatever (as) pay,
580 THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

προσέλαβον Σειήνην σύμμαχον ἕμιν, ἔκοντα
I-had-acquired Senteles (as an) ally for-you, (he) having
καὶ ἰππεῖς καὶ πελταστάς, ὅν ἰμεῖσ προσέδεισθε,
both cavalry and targeteers, which you were-in-want-of,
Ἠ ἄν ἐδόξουν ὑμῖν βεβολεύσθαι κακῶς;
would I-have-seemed to-you to-have-consulted ill (for you)?
Γὰρ δὴ πολιωνήσαντες τούτων,
For certainly having-shared (in the advantages) of-those
καὶ εὑρίσκετε ἀφδονώτερον σῖτον
(kinds of troops), 'you both 'found more-abundant provisions
ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, διὰ τοὺς Θρᾴκες τὸ ἀναγκαῖον
in the villages, on-account-of the Thracians — being-
ζεσθαι φεύγειν κατὰ μάλλον σπουδῆν, καὶ
forced to-flee with greater speed, and you-'had (a)
μᾶλλον μετέσχετε προδῶτον καὶ ἀνδραπόδαν. Καὶ
greater 'share of-cattle and of-slaves. And
ἐσωμεν οἰδένα πολέμιον οὐκέτι, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἵππικον
we-saw no enemy no-more, after the cavalry
προσέγενετο ὑμῖν, δὲ τέως οἱ πολέμιοι θαρράλεος
were-joined to-us, but at-this-time the enemy boldly
ἀφείποντο ὑμῖν καὶ ἵππικῷ καὶ πελταστικῷ,
pursued us both cavalry and targeteers,
καυλόντες ὑμᾶς ἀποσκεδασμένους κατ' ὄλγους
hindering us (from) being-dispersed in small
μηδαμὴ πορίζοις ἄφθονοτερα τὰ ἐπι-
(parties) every-where to-procure more-abundant — pro-
tήδεια.

visions.

Δὲ εἰ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν
But if truly (he) — (who) presenting you this —
ἀσφαλείαν μὴ προσέτελει πάνω πολύν
security 'did not 'pay (you) 'in-addition very great
μισῶν τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον
wages for-the security, (is) this indeed the shocking
πάθημα; καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἴεσθε
suffering (you complain of)'? and on-account-of this do-you-think
χρῆναι οὐδαμὴν ἀνεῖναι ἐμὲ ἱοντα;
(that) it-is-necessary not to-send me away alive?

Δὲ νῦν δὴ τῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; Ὡς διαχειμᾶ
But now truly how do-you-depart? (Is it) not after-having-passed-the-

σαντες ἐν ἀρσόνωι τοῖς ἐπιτηδειοῖς, δὲ ἱοντες
winter in abundant — provisions, and having

περιττὸν τούτο εἰ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ
moreover-in-addition that, if any, (which) you-received from

Σεῦδου; Γὰρ ἐδαπανάτε τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.
Sustenae? For you-consumed the (things) of-the enemy.

Καὶ πράττοντες ταῦτα οὔτε
[And performing these (things) [and faring thus] | 'you neither

ἐπείδητε ἄνδρας ἰμῶν ἀποδανόντας αὐτῶν,
'beheld (the) men of-you having-died from-them, [you

οὔτε ἀνεβάλετε ἱοντας.
'neither saw any of your men killed,] nor have-you-lost (any) living.

Εἰ δὲ τι καλὸν ἐπέπραξε τίμιν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ
If indeed any-thing glorious has-been-performed by-you in — Asia

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους, καὶ οἵκ ἐκεῖνο σῶν,
against the barbarians, and have-you not 'that safe,

καὶ πρὸς ἐκεῖνοις προσειλήφατε νῦν ἄλλην
and to these have-you (not) 'added now another

ἐκκλείαν, καὶ πρατέσαντες τοὺς Ὀρακᾶς ἐν Εὐρώπῃ,
'called they, and having-subdued the Thracians in Europe,

ἐφ' οὗ ἐστρατεύσασθε; Ἔγώ μὲν ἂν δικαίως
against whom you-marched? I indeed may justly

φημὶ ἰμᾶς ᾧν χαλεπαίνετε ἐμοὶ,
say (to) you (the things) for-which you-are-angry with-me,

τοῦτον εἰδέναι καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς ὡς
for-these (we ought) to-consider (as a) favour from-the gods as

ἀγαθῶν. Καὶ μὲν δὴ τοιαύτα
(for so many) good-things. And indeed truly such (is the state of)

τὰ ὑμέτερα. Ἀγετε δὲ πρὸς
— our (affairs). Lead indeed [well then] for (the sake)

θεῶν, σκέψασθε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ὡς
of (the) 'gods, | consider also — my (affairs) as (how they)
have (themselves) [consider my condition]. For I when indeed

'Επεμφανύθηκαν υπό τον Ελλήναν των άλλων Ελλήνων,
they appeared under the renown of the other Greeks.

ἔχων πολλάν επαίνον πρὸς ίμάς, ἔχων δὲ τον ἐμας
having much praise from you, having also through you

καὶ εὐχετεῖαν ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ελλήνων.
even glory (and renown) with the other Greeks.

Δὲ ἔποιησεν μοι ὁ Λακεδαίμονιος γὰρ
And I was-trusted by (the) Lacedaemonians; for they

ὅτῳ ἐπεμφανύθηκαν με πάλιν πρὸς ίμας. Νῦν δὲ
would not have-sent me back to you. Now indeed

ἀπεφίληται διαβεβλημένος ὑπὸ τῶν μεν πρὸς
I-depart exculminated by you indeed to (the)

Λακεδαίμονιοι, δὲ ἀπηχείημένος Σένηδος ὑπὲρ
Lacedaemonians, and having-offended Seneis by (reason of)

τοῦτον, δὲ ἠλπίζον ποιήσας εὐ
you, whom I-hoped | having-made (it) well [having served him effect-

μεδί ίμας, και καταθέσειν καλὴν
me with, and to-have-procured (with him an) honourable

ἀποστροφήν και εἰμοί και παῖς, εἰ γένοντο.
retreat both for-myself and (my) children, if there-should-be

Δὲ ἴμεις ὑπὲρ δὲν ἔγω τε ἄπηχειμαί
(by) you for whom I not-only have-incurred

πλεῖονα, και ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττωσαν
the-most hatred, but also this (from those) much better

ἔμανεν, τε οὐδὲ παρά ποιήματι πραγμα-
than myself, and neither not-even now do-I- cease labouring-to-

τενύομεν ὃ τι ἀγάδων δύναμαν ἐμών, ἔχομεν
effect whatever good I-can for-you, who-have

τοιαύτην γνώμην περί ἐμοί. Ἀλλ' μὲν ἔχομεν
such (an) opinion respecting me. But indeed you have

οὗτε λαβόντες φεύγοντα, οὗτε
me (in your power). neither having-taken (me) fleeing-away, nor

ἀποδιδόμενον τοῦτον τὸν καὶ λέγετε, οὗτε,
about-running-away; if indeed you-will-do what you-say, know,
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER VI.

ὅτι ἐσεῦδε κατασχανόντες ἀνδρα ἀγρυπνήσαντα
that you-will-be killing (a) man  having-watched
μεν δὴ πολλὰ πρὸ ὑμῶν, δὲ ποιήσαντα καὶ
indeed truly much for you, and having-laboured (much) and
κινδυνεύσαντα πολλὰ σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἐν τῷ
encountered many ' dangers with you, both in —
μέρει καὶ παρὰ τῷ μέρος, δὲ θεῶν ὑμῶν
(his) share and beyond — (his) share, and (the) gods being
ἐλεων πολλὰ τρῆσαι δὴ βαρβάρων στηρι-
propitious many trophies truly 'over (the) "barbarians have-
σάμενον σὺν ὑμῖν" διατεινάμενον πρὸς ὑμᾶς πάν
been-erected with you; having-exerted-myself for you (in) all
ἀυς καὶ ἔδυνάμην, ὅπως δὲ γένοις ἡ πολέμιοι
as-much-as I-was-able, that indeed you-might-become inimical
γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Γὰρ καὶ οὖν νῦν
at-least to-none of the Greeks. For even therefore now
ἐξεστίν ὑμῖν ἀνεπιλήστατος πορεύεσθαι, διὰ τοῦ ἂν
it-is-allowed you blamelessly to-proceed, where you may
ἐληγοῦ, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
"have-desired, both by land and by sea.
Δὲ ὑμεῖς, δότε πολλὴ εὐπορία φαίνεται ὑμῖν, καὶ
And you, when great abundance shows-itself to you, and
πλεῖτε ἐνδα δὴ πάλαι ἐπεδυμείτε, τε
about-to-sail where indeed heretofore you-have-desired-to-be, and
δέονται ὑμῶν οἱ
those-desire you — (those, namely, who are considered as) "being
μέγιστον ὑνάμενοι, δὲ μισθὸς φαίνεται,
the-most 'able (and powerful), and pay appears
de Δακεδαιμόνων, οἱ
[and pay is offered to you,] and Lacedaemonians, — (those, namely,
νομίζομενοι κράτιστοι ἡγεμόνες ἥκουσι,
who) being-considered the-best leaders come (for you),
νῦν δὴ δοξεῖ ὑμῖν εἶναι καιρὸς κατα-
"does-it now indeed seem to-you to-be (a) proper (time) to-
κανεῖν ἐμὲ ὡς τάξιστα;
kill me as speedily (as possible)? (You had) no (such
μὴν γε ὅτε ἦμεν ἐν τοῖς ἄνθρωποις,
intentions) certainly at-least when we were in — difficulties,
ὅ μεν μνημονικῶτατο πάντων· ἄλλα καὶ ἐκαλείτε
0 (men) having-memories of-all; but even you-called
ἐμὲ πατέρα, καὶ ἑπισχεῖσθε ἄει μεμνημόθαι ὡς
me father, and you-promised always to-remember (me) as (a)
ἐνεργεῖτον. Μέντοι οὐτοὶ, οἱ
benefactor. However those, (those namely) now some
ἐφ’ ὑμᾶς, εἰσίν οὐ ὑδὲ ἀγνώμονες· ἡστε, ὡς
for you, are not either (so) ignorant; so-that, as
ἐγὼ οὖμα, ὑδὲ δοξεῖτε βελτίωνες τούτοις,
I think, you’will neither seem better to-these
ὅτες τοιοῦτοι περὶ ἐμὲ. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ’
(persons), being such as-respects me. Having-said these
ἐπαίσχατο.
(things) he ceased.

Δὲ Χαρίμνος ὁ Λαξεδαιμώνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν·
And Charminos the Lacedaemonian standing-up said:
Ἄλλῳ οὖ τῷ σῶ, μέντοι δοξεῖτε ἐμοί, ὡς ἄνδρες,
'Allo' to the twin-gods, however you seem to-me, 0 men,
χαλεπαίνειν τῷ τούτῳ ἄνδρι οὐ δικαίως· γὰρ
to-be-dispelled with — this man not justly; for
καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχω μαρτυρήσαι αὐτῷ. Γὰρ Σεύθης
even I-myself have to-bear-witness to-him. For Seuthes
ἐρωτώντος ἐμοὶ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ἑυρόφωντος,
inquiring of-me and Polyneices about Xenophon,
τίς ἄνηρ εἶν, εἰκε μὲν οὐδὲν
what-kind (of a) man he might-be, (he said) he had indeed nothing
ἀλλὰ μέμνησθαι, δὲ ἐκώ αὐτὸν εἶναι
else to-accuse (him) of, but he-said (that) he was

φιλοστρατιώτην· διὸ εἶναι χείρον αὐτῷ
(a) friend-of-the-soldiers; wherefore (that it) was worse for-him
τε πρὸς ἦμων τῶν Λαξεδαιμονίων, καὶ πρὸς
not-only with us the Lacedaemonians, but also with
αὐτῶν. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Ἐυρύλοχος Λουσιάτης
himself. After this-one Eurylochus (the) Lusian (an)
'Αρχάς ἀναστάς εἶπε· Καὶ δοκεῖ γε μοι, Λακεδαι-
µονιοι ἄνδρες, ἡµᾶς στρατηγοῦσαι πρῶτον
τούτῳ ἀναπρᾶξαι παρὰ Σείνθου ἦµίν τὸν
θεσθείς αὐτὸν — (οὗτος) πευκόντος, ἢ ἄχοντος,
καὶ μὴ πρώτερον
either willingly, or unwillingly, and not before (this was done)
ἀπαγαγεῖν ἡµᾶς. Πολυκράτης δὲ ὢν 
Athenian
ἀναστάς εἶπεν ὑπὲρ Ξενοφοντος· Γε µην ὀρῷ,
rising-up spoke for Xenophon: 'I at-least certainly 
ἐφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδης παρόντα ἑνταῦθα,
said-he, O men, even Heracles being-present here,
ὅς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα, ἢ ἴµεις ἐπονήσασεν,
who having-received the things, which we
ἐπόδµονον ταύτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γυν嗵
laboured
ταύτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γυνählt
(to obtain), having-sold these (things) gave the pro-
µενα οὔτε Σείνθῃ οὔτε ἦµῖν, ἀλλὰ αὐτὸς κλέψας,
ceeds neither to Seuthes nor to-us, but he having-stolen
πέπαται. ὧν οὖν σωφρονῶν
(pasted).

(Them), keeps-possession (of them). If therefore we-are-wise
ἐξόµενα αὐτοῦ. Πάρ, ἐφη, οὕτος δὴ
we-will-hold of-him. For, said-he, this (person) indeed
ἐστιν οὗ γε Ὀρφῆς, ἀλλὰ ὃν ὁ Ἑλλην
is not-at-least (a) Thracian, but being (a) Greek 'treats

Ἑλληνας ἔδειξεν.

(Thrac) Greeks 'unjustly.

'Ο Ἡρακλείδης ἄκουσας ταύτα 
— Heracles hearing these (things), 'was more
ἐξεπλάγην· καὶ προελθὼν τῷ Σείνθῃ λέγειν·
alarmed (than before); and proceeding to — Seuthes he-says:

'Ἡν σωφρονῶµεν ἄµην ἑντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς
If we-are-wise 'we (will) 'depart hence from the
ἐπικρατείας τούτων. Καὶ ἄναβάντως ἐπὶ τοὺς
power of-these (men). And mounting on — (their)
ἵππους ὄχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον
horses they-departed riding-off to the
καὶ ἔντειθεν Σεῦθης πέμπει Ἀβροξέλεμπην
unto-themselves. And thence, Senteēs sends
෴ptions έκαντο πρὸς Ξένοφωντα, καὶ κηλεύει
the interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requests
αὐτὸν καταμείναι παρ’ ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα θάλισσα
him to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand
ὅπλαθα, καὶ ἅπασχειται ἀποδόσειν αὐτῷ τις heavy-armed-men, and promised
τὰ χώρα τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάσσην, καὶ the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and
τὰλλα ἤ ἅπασχέτο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the
ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἄχικος Πο-communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-
λυνικοῦ, ὡς, εἶ ἔσται ἅπασχείρος. Λακεδαι-
λυnicos, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands of (the) 'Lacedae-
μονίως, σαφῶς ἀποδάνοιτο ἵππῳ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And
καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ἔνο-
also others communicated these (things) to Ξένο-
φώντι, ὡς εἰ ἰδαἰβαλλημένος, καὶ δέοι φυλάττεσθαι. phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.
Δὲ δ’ ἄχοιον ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ἰερεῖα, But (he) hearing these (things), having-taken two victims,
ἀσύν τῷ Διῷ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ποτέρα εἰς λῶν sacrificed to — Jupiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς and better to-remain with Senteēs on (the terms) which
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεῦθη ἐφ’ οἷς
καὶ ἅμεινον μένειν παρὰ ΣεUFFIX HERE
CHAPTER VII.

Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐντεῦθεν προσωτέρω. δὲ ὁ Ἑλληνες ἐσοχήνθησαν εἰς κώμας, farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages, διὰ ἐμελλον, ἐπιστισόμενοι. whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-
στα, ἤχειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἰ αὐτοῖ κώμαι δὲ fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed ἦσαν δεδομέναι Μηδοσάδη ὑπὸ Σεύθου. Οὖν ο̣ had been-given to Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore — Μηδοσάδης ὅρων τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς Medosades seeing the (things) of-him [his property] in the κώμαις δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλληνων, καλε-
villages consumed by the Greeks, he was grievous-
πῶς ἐκερκαὶ καὶ λαβὼν ὁ Ὀδρυσην ἄνδρα δυνα-
ly 'excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-
τῶτατον τῶν καταπεληκτῶν ἄνωθεν,
powerful of — (those) having-come-down [from-above, from the καὶ ἰστεάς ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he went καὶ προσκαλείτα Ξενοφώντα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν and called-out Xenophon from the Grecian στρατεύματος. Καὶ ὅς λαβὼν τινας τῶν λοχαγῶν camp. And who taking some of the captains καὶ ἅλλως τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. and others of the proper (men) went-to-meet (him).

Ἐνθα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει: Ἀδίκειτε, ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,
πορθοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we-warn ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου, καὶ οὐδὲ ὁ ἄνηρ, you, I not-only for Seuthes, but-also this — man,
"Συν παρὰ Μηθόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,
coming from Medoacus the king [of the upper

ἀπιέναι τής χώρας· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
country,] to-leave — (these) places; but if (you do) not,

οἴε ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ’ ἐὰν ποιῆτε
we—shall not 'permit' you (to do so), but if you do

κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεθα
harm — our territory, we—shall—defend (ourselves against

ὡς πολεμίους.
you) as enemies.

'Ο Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν*
— Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:

'Αλλὰ μὲν σοι λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί—
But indeed to—you saying such (things) even to-an-

νασθαν χαλεπῶς· δὲ ἑνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανισκοῦ
swer (is) painful; but on—account—of this — young—man

λέγω, ἵνα εἴδη τε οἶοι ὑμεῖς
I—shall—reply, that he—may—know, not—only what—sort (of people) you

ἐστε, καὶ οἶοι ὑμεῖς. Γὰρ ὑμεῖς μὲν, ἕφη,
are, but—also what—sort we (are). For we indeed, said—he,

πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορεύομεθα διὰ
before (that we) became friends to—you, marched through

ταύτης τῆς χώρας, διότι ἐβουλόμεθα, πορεύσασθε
this — country, wherever we—wished, laying—waste

ἡν μὲν ἐκελομένην, δὲ καίοντες ἥν ἐκελομένη.
what indeed we—wished, and burning what we—wished. And

οὐ ὅπως ἔλθοι ὑμᾶς προσβείνων, ἡμῖν θέτε
you when you—came to—us acting—as—an—ambassador, encamped then

παρ’ ὑμῖν, φυλοῦμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ
by us, fearing none of the enemy; but

ὑμεῖς οὖν· ἤτε εἰς τὴν χώραν, ἢ, εἰ
you 'did not 'come into this — country, or, if

ποτὲ ἔλθοντε ηὐλίζεσθε τοῖς ἱπποῖς
at—any—time you—may—have—came you—encamped with — (your) horses

ἐγκεχαλικωμένοις ὡς ἐν χώρᾳ ἄρειττοις.
ready—bridled as in (a) country (of people) — better
Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένεσθε φίλοι
(or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends

ημίν, καὶ δὲ ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε

to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have

tῆνε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε

(possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel

ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆς τῆς χώρας, ἣν ἔχοντων παρελάβετε

us from this — country, which having you-received

παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτῶς

from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-your-selves

οἶσθα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἢσαν οὐκ ἵκανοι ἐξελαύνειν

know, the enemy were not able to 'drive

ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἄξιοις ἀποτέμψασαι ἡμᾶς

us out. And you-think-proper to 'send us 'away

ὅπως οὐ δοὺς δώρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,

so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well

ἄνδρ' ὅν ἐπαθές εὖ, ἄλλῳ

(to us), in-place-of (that) which you-received benefits (from us), but

ἀποκεκορεμένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς οὖν ἐναυλισθῆναι,

about-departing, you-would-permit us neither to 'sojourn,

ὅσον δύνασαι. Καὶ λέγων ταῦτα

(in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these

οὔτε αἰσχύνῃ θεοῖς, οὔτε τῶν τῶν

(things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —

ἄνδρα, δὲ νῦν μὲν ὡρὰ σὲ πλούτοιστα, δὲ πρὶν

man, who now indeed sees you being-rich, but before

γενέσθαι φίλων ἡμῖν ἔχοντα

(that you) became (a) friend to-us (he saw you) (having)

τῶν βίων ἀπὸ ληστείες, δὲ αὐτῶς

(supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-your-selves

ἐφησα. Ἀτὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς

have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to

ἐμε; ἐφη· γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἐτὶ ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ

me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)

Δακεδαμώνων, οἵς ἡμείς, ὃ παμμαστότατοι,

Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men),
παρεδόξασε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγγέλω, οἰδὲν 'gave the army up to-have-led (it) away, not παρακαλέσαντες, ὅπως, ὡς ἂν ἔλθῃ δάνομην αὐτοῖς, having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them, δι' ἡγον πρὸς ἰμάς, οὕτω καὶ νῦν χαρισαίμην as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify ἀποδιδόντως. (them) having-restored (it).

Ἔπει δὲ ὁ Ὀδρύσης ἠκουσά ταῦτα, εἶθεν '
When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said:

Ἔγώ μὲν, ὁ Μηδοσάδης, ἀκούσα παῦτα
I indeed, O Medosades, -hearing these (things), (feel)
καταδύσαμαι κατὰ τῆς γῆς ἐπὶ αἰσχύνης. Καὶ myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And εἰ μὲν ὁπιστάμην πρόθεσην, ἀν οὐδ' συνήκο-
if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not have-aecom-
λοῦσα σοι' καὶ νῦν ἁπειμ. Γὰρ Μηδοσάδης οδ
panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the
βασιλεὺς ἀν οὐδ' ἐπισαυνοῖ με, εἰ ἐξελαύνομη τοὺς
king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)
ἐιρεγέτας. Εἴπων ταῦτ', ἄναβας ἐπὶ τὸν
benefactora. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)
iπόνον ἀπελλαυνε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀσπειραί, horse he-rides-off, and with him the other horsemen,
πλὴν τεττάρων ἔπεντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ
except four or five. But — Medosades, (for
ἡ χώρα πορφομεμεν ἐλύτει αὐτῶν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν
the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —
Ξενοφώντα καλέσατι τῷ Λαξεδαιμονίῳ. Καὶ ὁς
Xenophon to-call-on the-two Laecedemonians. And whe
λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,
taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),
προσήλθε τῷ Χαρίμνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ; καὶ ἔλεξεν,
he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicus, and said,
ὅτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτοῖς, προερόθ ἀπερ
that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) as
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER VII.  

αὐτῶ διπέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. "Ἀν οὖν (he had done) himself to-depart from the country. 'I should therefore οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν 'think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the μισθὸν ὄφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἴποιτε ὅτι pay due to-the army, 'if you-were-to-say that ἡ στρατιὰ δεδένται ὑμῶν συναναπήκαι τὸν the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your) μισθὸν Σεύθου ἡ παρ' ἐκόντος ἡ παρ' ἄχοντος, pay of-Southes either — willing or — unwilling, καὶ ὅτι φασὶ τυχόντες τούτων ἄν προδύ- and that they-say having-obtained these (things) 'they would cheer-μος· συνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν fully 'follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς (the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised them τότε ἀπέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιώται ἔχοσι τὰ then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their) δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀχούσαντες τάυτα, just (demands). The Laconians hearing these (things), ἔφασαν ἔρειν, καὶ ἄλλα said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things) ὅποια ἄν δίνωνται κράτιστα· as-that they might. 'be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage); καὶ εἰ ᾗς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς and immediately they-proceeded having all the ἐπιχαιρίους. 'Ελθοῦν. δὲ Χαριμίνος ἔλεξε· 'Ει μὲν proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charmins said: If indeed, ο Μηδόσαδης, σὺ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ὑμᾶς· O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us δὲ εἰ μή, ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν πρὸς σὲ. (say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you. 'Ο Μηδόσαδης δὲ μάλα ἐφειμένως ἔφη. 'Αλλ' ἐγὼ — Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σεύθς τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν indeed say, and Southes (says) the same, that we-consider

46
τοὺς γεγενημένους φίλους ἰμῶν
(it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)
μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ἰμῶν. γὰρ ὃ τι δὲν
not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever 'you may
ποιῆτε κακῶς τοῦτοις, ποιῆτε ἰδή ἰμᾶς.
do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;
γὰρ εἰσιν ἱμέτεροι. Ἦμεις τούτων, ἔφασαν οἱ
for they-are ours. We therefore, said the
Λάχωνες, ἂν αἰτίωμεν, ὅποτε οἱ καταπράξαντες
Lacedemonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed
ταῦτα ἰμῖν ἔχοιν τὸν μισθὸν· εἰ δὲ μὴ,
these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,
ἔρχομεδα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες
we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)
tοῦτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ ἱδίκη
these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged
σαν τοῦτοις παρὰ τοὺς ὀρχοὺς. Δὲ ἦν
these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if:
δὴ καὶ ἰμεῖς ἴτε τοῦτοι, ἐνθένθε
indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (from-here)
ἀρξόμεθα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὅ Ξενοφῶν
(of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon
δὲ εἰπεν· Δ' ἔσελυτε, ὦ Μηδοσάδες, ἂν
(then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —
ἐπιτρέψαι τοῦτοις, ἐπειδὴ ἐφατε
to-leave (it) —to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)
eἶναι φίλους ἰμῶν), ἐν δὲ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,
are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)
ἄν ψηφίσωμεν ὁπότερα, εἰδ' προσῆξεν ἰμὰς ἀπείναι
might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were-fit for-you to-depart
ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἰτε ἰμᾶς; Δὲ ὃ ἐφη
from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)
οὐ μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτὸ
not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two
τώ Λάχωνε ἐλέειν παρὰ Σείθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,
— Lacedemonians to-go to Southes about the pay,
καὶ οἶδεν δὲν πείσαι Σεύδην. ἐστὶν (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but
ἐὰν μὴ, πέμπειν Ἑνοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῶ, καὶ ῥυπο- if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-
χειτίον συμπάξειν. Ἐδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn
τὰς κώμας.

τὰς κώμας.

ἀντειθένειν πέμπονσι Ἑνοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῶ
Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him
ὁ ἐδόχοις εἶναι ἐπιτηδειότατοι. Ὁ
(those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)
δὲ ἐξών λέγει πρὸς Σεύδην· Πάρεμι,
indeed having-some speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,
ὁ Σεύδης, οὐδὲν ἀπαγόμεν, ἀλλὰ
Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but
διδάξων, ἢν δυνώμαι, ὡς οὗ teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-are not
δικαιῶς ἠχέοντις μοι, ὅτι προδότως ἀπήτων
justly 'displeased with-me, because I earnestly 'entreated
ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιώτων, ἄ ἐπέσκυχον
you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised
αὐτοῖς· γὰρ ἐγὼ ἐνομίζων οἰχ ἐναί ἦττον
you for I-at-least thought (it would) not be less
ὑπέρ οὐς ἀποδοῦναι, ἥ ἀπολαβέων
advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive
ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τούς
(11) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the
θεοὺς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ
gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)
φανερῶν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλεά
conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king
πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἄνδρῶν· δετε οἰχ
of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not
οἶνῳ τε λαυνᾶνειν σοι,
possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if
ποιήσες τί καλόν, οὔτε ἤν τί αἰσχρόν.
you-do anything good, or if anything shameful. 'To (a)

'Ανδρὶ δὲ δυντὶ τοιοῦτῳ ἔδοξε Μὲν εἰναὶ
'man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be

μου μέγα μὴ δοξεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-
to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to seem to-have-sent-

θαὶ ἄχαρίστως ἄνδρας εἰςρήτας, μέγα
away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)

dὲ εὖ ἄκουειν ἵπτω ἐξασκηκῦλων ἄνδρῶν
indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men:

dὲ τὸ μέγιστὸν καταστήναι
and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)

σαντὰν μηδαμῶς ἁπίστον δὲ τὶ λέγοις.
you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say.

Γὰρ ὅρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἁπίστων πλανω-
For I-see the words indeed of-those unworthy-of-belief wander-

μένους καταίγοντο καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους. δὴ
ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but

οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἱ δὲν δῶσαν φανεροὶ ἀσχούντες
the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating

ἀληθεῖαν, ἦν δὲνωνται τί, δύνανται οὐδὲν μείον
truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less

ἀνύσωσθαι, ἢ θεία ἄλλων. ἦν τε βού-)
to-effect (it), than the force of-others (men); if also they-

λωνταί σφρονίζειν τινας, γιγνώσκω τάς
wish to-bring any-one 'to-reason, I-know the

ἀπειλάς τούτων οὐχ ἦττον σφρονίζοισας,
threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,

ἡ τὰς ἤδη κολάσεις ἄλλων· ἦν τε οἶ
than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —

τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες ἐπισχύονται τῷ τι δια-
such men promise — (any one) anything they-

πράττονται οὐδὲν μείον, ἢ ἄλλοι διδόντες παρα-
accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-

χρήσα. Δὲ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σὺ, τὶ προτελέσας
instant. And also recollect yourself, what you-advanced
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER VII.

ἡμῖν ἐλαθεῖς ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἶον' ὦτι to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)
oi'dέν. ἀλλὰ πιστευ&deis ἀληθεύειν, ἡ ἐλαθεῖς,
nothing; but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,
ἐπιθήρας [but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced
tοσούτους ἀνδρώπους τε συστατεύεσθαι τε καὶ such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but also
συγκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οἷα μονόν ἄξιαν to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth
tριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα. σετο ὅιονται thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)
deίν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἡ ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασιάον. ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οἶον οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τούτο τῷ πιστεύεσθαι σε, (Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,
tο καὶ καταργασάμενον [the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which)
σοι τῆς βασιλείας πυράσκεται ὑπὸ σοι τούτων for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this
τῶν χρημάτων. Ἡδι δὴ ἀναμυνθήσετι, πῶς μέγα — money. Well-then truly re-collect, how great
τότε ἤγον καταπράξασθαι ἣ you then 'considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which
νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεφάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ᾽ εὖ, now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well
ὅτι εὔξω ἄν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα that 'you would 'have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished
μᾶλλον καταπράξῆναι σοι, ἡ πολλαπλάσια rather to-be-affected for-you, than (for) many-times
τῶν τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore
ἐμοὶ δοξεῖ εἶναι μείζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχρον μή to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not
νῦν κατασχεῖν τὸ τὰῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

46 *
λαβεῖν, δοκότερον ἀλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίων

to-have-acquired (them), as (it is) more-grieved from (the) rich

gενέσθαι πέντε, ἢ μὴ πλουτήσαι ὃ

to-become poor, | than not-to-have-been-rich if (from the)

ἀρχὴν,

καὶ δοῦ

beginning, [than not to have been rich at all] and in as-much-as (it is)

λυπηρότερον φανήσαι ἰδιώτην ἐκ

more-distressing to-appear (a) private (person) from (having been a)

βασιλέως, ἢ μὴ βασιλεύσαι ἢ ἀρχην.

king, than not to-have-reigned | if (from the) beginning [at all].

Οἶκ οὖν μὲν ἐπιστάσαι ὦτὶ οἱ γενόμενοι

Do-'you not therefore indeed 'know that — (those) 'having

νῦν ὑπήκοοι σοι ἐπείσθησαν οὐ τῇ

now 'become subject to-you 'have not 'submitted [(for) —

σῇ φιλίᾳ ἀρχεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀλλ'

your 'love [through love of you] to-be-governed by 'you, but

ἀνάγκη, καὶ ὦτὶ ἄν ἐπικεραίως ἐπάλλη

through-necessity, and that they would 'endeavour again

γίγνεσθαι ἔλεισθεγοφ, εἰ μὴ τίς φόβος

to-become free, if (there were) not some fear (that)

κατέχοι; Ποτέρως οὖν οἰες αὐτοὺς

might-restrain (them)? Whether therefore do-you-think (that) they

ἄν τε μᾶλλον φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ σωφρονεῖν

would also 'be more 'restrained-by-fear, and 'conduct (them-

τὰ πρὸς σὲ,

selves more) 'discreetly (and obediently) in-the (affairs) concerning you,

εἰ ὅρωεν τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους σοι,

if they-should-see the soldiers so disposed to-you,

ὡς νῦν τε μένοντας, εἰ σὺ ἄν κελεύεις, τῷ ἄν

as now also remaining, if you would request (it), and —

ἐλθοντας αὐτίς ταχὺ, εἰ δέοι, τε ἄλλους

having-come back speedily, if it-is-required, also (that) others

ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ τούτων

hearing much good (concerning you) of-those (soldiers

περὶ σοῦ, ἄν παραγερέσθαι

who have been in service) with you, would 'join (you)
(Book VII. — Chapter VII.

παρ' ὅποτε βούλευσθε, ἢ εἰ κατα- immediately when you—might—wish (it); or if they—should—form—an-un-
δοξάσειαν ἄλλοις ἡ μὴ εἰλθεῖν σοι, favourable-opinion (of you, that) others would not go to—you,
dι' ἀποστάσεαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενή-
through distrust (arising) from the (things that) now have-hap-
μένων, τε τούτων εἰναι εὐνοοῦστέρους αὐτοῖς pened, also (that) these (Greeks) are better—affected to-them
η σοι; Ἀλλὰ μή (namely, your unconquered subjects,) than to-yourself? But certainly

ὑπεικάζων σοι οίδε γε λειψάντε +(that these people) submitted to—you not at—least (as) deficient
πληθυντὶ ζημῶν, ἄλλα ἀπορία προστατῶν. (as) in—number (to) us, but (as being) in—want of—leaders.

Οὐκ οὖν καὶ τούτῳ κίνδυνως, μὴ λάβωσι (Is there) not therefore even this (as a) danger, lest they—take
προστάτας τινασ αὐτῶν τοῦτων, οἱ νομίζουσι (as) leaders some of—those same, who consider
αἵτινς θείου τούτων, (themselves) wronged by you, or even the Lace-
δαιμονίων κρείττονας τούτων, demonians better (and more powerful than) those,
ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιώται ὑπενθύνται συστρατεύεσθαι if indeed the soldiers promise to—serve—i—in—the—army
αὐτοῖς προδυνάμετρον ἄν νῦν ἀναπάξωσι τὰ with—them more—spiritedly (if) they would now exact the
παρὰ σοῦ, δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι συναινέσωσιν (money) from you, and the Lacedaemonians should—agree—with
αὐτοῖς ταύτα διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς them (about) these (things) through the to—want [want] of—the
στρατιάς; Ὡστε γε μὴν οἱ Θρᾴκες γενόμενοι army? That at—least certainly the Thracians having—become
ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄν πολύ προδυνάμετρον ίομεν under you [subjugated by you] would much more—promptly go
ἐπὶ σὲ ἢ σὺν σοι, οὐκ ἀδηλοῦν ὡς μὲν σοῦ against you than with you, (is) not doubtful; for indeed you
κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάχει αὐτοῖς, δὲ σοῦ κρατου-
μένου, ἔλευθερία. Δὲ καὶ εἰ ἦδη δεῖ προσ
κυραμένη, ἄμεσα ἄρα, ὡς οὗτος σής, ποτέρως
vide something for-the country, as being yours, whether

ἄν οἱ οἱ αὐτήν εἰναι μᾶλλον ἅπαση ἄπαση, κακῶν,
you may 'think it to-be more free-from evil,

εἰ αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἃ
if they the soldiers having-received (from you) what

ἐγκαλοῦσιν καταληκτόντες εἰρήνην σιχοῦστο, ἢ εἰ
they-claim leaving peace should-depart, or if

οὗτοι τε μένοις ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
these (soldiers should) also remain as in (a) hostile (country),

σὺ τε πειρᾶο ἑχων ἄλλους πλείονας
you also should-endavour having other (soldiers) more-numerous (than)

τούτων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύσαν, δεσμένους τῶν
these to-encamp-over-against (them), wanting —

ἐπιτηδείων; Δὲ ποτέρως πλείον ἁργύριον ἄν
provisions? And whether more money might

ἀναλοίθηκη, εἰ τούτῳ τὸ ὁφειλόμενον ἀποδοθήκη,
be-spent, if that — (which) is-due should-be-paid,

ἡ εἰ τε ταύτα ὁφείλομεν, τε δέοι
than if also this (money were left) due, and it-were-necessary

σε μισοῦσθαι ἄλλους πρεστόνας τούτων;
(that) you should-hire other (troops) better (than) these?

'Αλλὰ γὰρ Ἦρακλείδης, ὡς ἔδηλον πρὸς ἐμὲ, τοῦτο
But — Heracles, as he-declared to me, this

tὸ ἁργύριον δοξεῖ εἶναι πάμπολυ. 'Η μὴν ἐστι
money seems to-be very-great. — Certainly it-is

γε πολὺ ἐλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ
at-least (a) much smaller (or easier affair) now for-you both

λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τοῦτο, ἢ, πρὶν
to-take this and pay this, than, before (that)

ὑμᾶς ἔλαθεν πρὸς σε, δέχατον μέρος
we came to you, (to take or pay the) tenth part
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER VII. 549

τούτου. Γὰρ ἐστιν οὗ ἄριστος ὁ ὀρι- of it. For it is not (the) number (or amount) — (that) de-
ζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις termites the much and the little, but the power
tε τοῦ ἀυτοδίδοντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος. not-only of — paying but also of — taking (and
Δὲ νῦν ἡ πρόσοδος σοι κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν receiving). But now the income to you for (the) year
ἔσται πλεῖον, ἡ ἐμπροσθεν τὰ πάντα ἀ ἐκέκ-
will be more, than before — all which you had pos-
τησο. Ἑγὼ μὲν, ὁ Σείδη, προενοικημεν ταῦτα sessed. I indeed, O Seuthes, have considered these (things)
ἀς ὀντος φίλου σου, ὡς τε συ δοξοις ἄξιος as being (a) friend of you, so that also you may appear worthy
ὅν ἄγαθων οἱ θεοὶ ἔδωκαν σου, ἐγὼ of the good things — (that the) gods have given you, | (and) I
τε μὴ διαφθαρεῖν ἐν τῷ στρατιᾷ. also (that) I might not be ruined in the army

Γαρ ἵσθι εὖ, [and that I might not lose all credit in the army]. For know well,
ὅτι ἐγὼ νῦν οὐτ' βουλόμενος ἄν δυνηθεὶν ποιῆσαι that I now neither wishing could I be-able to do
κακῶς σὺν ταύτῃ-τῇ στρατιᾷ, οὔτ' εἰ ἄν πάλιν narm with this — army, nor if I might again
βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἄν γενοίμην ικανός. desire to assist (you), might I be able.
Γαρ οὔτω ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειτα πρὸς ἐμὲ. Καίτοι For thus the army (is) disposed to me. And certainly
For thus the army (is) disposed to me. And certainly
ποιοῦμαι αὐτῶν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοίς εἰδότων, I make you yourself to give witness with (the) gods knowing,

οὔτε [and I call on you and the gods, knowing the truth, to witness,] that 'I
οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοι οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιῶταις, — 'have from you nothing for the soldiers,
οὔτε πώποτε ἂν τὸ ἵδον nor have. 'I ever 'asked (of you) for — (my) private (use)
ἐκεῖνων, οὔτε ἀπήτυχα ἂ
the (things belonging to) them, nor have-I-asked-for (that) which
ιπέσχον μοι. Ἤμινυ σου δὲ ἀποδίδοντος
you-promised me. I-swear to-you indeed (that) offering
ἀν μηδὲ δέξασθαι, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρα-
pay to me) 'I would not 'have-received (it), unless also the sol-
τιῶται ἐμελλον συναπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαυ-
diers were-about to-receive-together-with (me) the (pay) of-them-
τῶν. Γὰρ ἦν αἰσχρὸν διαπεράχθαι μὲν
selvies. For it-would-have-been disgraceful to-have-accomplished indeed
τὰ ἐμὰ, δὲ ἐμῇ περιδείν τὰ—
my-own (affairs), but (for) me to-have-neglected the (affairs)
ἐκεῖνων ἔχοντα κακῶς,
of-them having (themselves) ill, [but for me to neglect their
ἀλλαξε τε καὶ τιμῶ-
affairs when in an unsatisfactory condition[,] otherwise also even hon-
μενον ὑπ' ἐκεῖνων. Καίτοι Ἡρακλείδη γε
oured by them. Though-indeed to-Heraclides at-least
πάντα δοξεί εἶναι λήρος, πρὸς ἐκεῖν ὑπὸ
all seems to-be (a) trite, — (compared) to-having —
ἀγόριον ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου. ἔγὼ δὲ, ὁ Σειύθη,
money by all means. I indeed, O Seuthes,
νομίζω οὖν κτήμα εἶναι κάλλιον οὔδε λαμ-
think (that) no possession to-be more-beautiful or more-
προτερον ἄνδρι, ἄλλαξ τε καὶ
illustrious ‘in (a) ‘man, | otherwise also even [especially] 'in (a)
ἀρχοντει, ἄρετῆσ καὶ δικαίοσύνης καὶ γεγονου-
ruled, (than) virtue and justice and gene-
tῆς. Γὰρ ὃ ἐξων ταῦτα πλουτεῖ μὲν
rosity. For — (he) having these (things) is-rich indeed
ἄντων πολλῶν φίλων, δὲ καὶ πλουτεῖ
(being) (having) many friends, and also rich (in)
ἄλλων βουλομένω γενέσθαι,
others wishing to-become (his friends), and indeed (when)
πράττων εὐ ἐξει τοὺς συνησθησομένους,
doing well he-has — (those) rejoicing-with (him),
ἐὰν δὲ σφαλὲν τι, σπάνιζει
[if indeed he-falls (in) any-thing, [in reverse of fortune,] he-wants]
οὔ τών βοηθησόντων. Ἄλλα γὰρ
not — (those) helping (him). But (enough) for
εἰ μὴ δι’ κατέμαθες ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν ἔργων,
if you—have neither ‘learned from — my actions,
ὅτι ὦν φίλος σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς,
that I-was (a) friend to-you from — mind, [at heart,] nor
μὴ τῷ δύνασαι γνῶναι τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
that you have-been-able to-have-known this from — my
λόγων, Ἄλλα κατανόησον πάντως τοὺς λόγους τῶν
words, but—yet consider by-all-means the words of-the
στρατιωτῶν γὰρ παρῆσαν, καὶ ἔχοντες ἄ
soldiers; for you-were-present, and you-heard, what
ἔλεγον οἱ βουλόμενοι ζέγειν ἐμὲ. Γὰρ κατη-
they-said, (those) wishing to-nisperse me. For they-
γόρον μου μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαίμονίους, ὡς ποιοίμην
accused me indeed to (the) Lacedaemonians, that I-made
πλείονος περὶ σὲ ἢ Λακεδαίμονίους. δ’
more — (of) you than (of the) Lacedaemonians; and
αὐτοὶ ἐνεχάλουν ἐμοί, ὡς μᾶλλον μέλοι μοι,
they charged me, that it—was more (a) ‘care to-me,
ὅπως τὰ σὰ ἔχοι καλῶς
[that — your (affairs) might-have (themselves) well] [that your
ἡ ὅπως τὰ ἐκαντῶν ἐφασαν
affairs might prosper] or than the (affairs) of-them; they-said
δὲ μὲ καὶ ἔχειν δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ. Καίτοι
indeed (that) I even had presents from you. And—yet
πότερον οὐει αὐτοὺς ἐνιδόντας μοι τινα
whether do-you-think (that) they having-seen in-me some
κακόνουν πρὸς σὲ, αἰτιῶσαί με ἔχειν τὰ ταύτα
ill-will toward you, accused me of-having — these
δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ, ἢ κατανοήσαντος πολλῆν
presents from you, or perceiving (in me) much
προσφυμιὰν περὶ σε; Ἀγὼ μὲν οἷμαι ἀνδρῶπος
zeal for you? I indeed think (that) men
νομίζειν, ἐνοιαν δεῖν ἄποψεσθαι τοῦτο
consider (that) gratitude ought to-be-laid-up for-those (persons)
παρ’ οὗ τις δορὰς ἀν λαμβάνῃ. Δὲ σὺ πρὶν μὲν
from whom any gift may be-received. But you before indeed
ἐμὲ ἵππομέναι σοι τι, ἐδέξασθαι ἡδεῖν καὶ
I had-done you any service, gave favourably —
δόμασι καὶ φῶνῃ καὶ ἔνιοις, καὶ οὐκ
looks and words and gifts-of-hospitality, and had not
ἐνεπιμέλασον [and did not satisfy yourself] promising
ὁσα ἐσοντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας
how-great would-be (my rewards); when indeed you had-accomplished
ἄρα ἐθούλον, καὶ γεγένησαι μέγιστος ὅσον
what you-wished, and (that you) have-become as-great as
ἤγω ἐνυνάμην, τολμᾶς περιο-
I was-able (to assist you to become), can-you-bear to-see-with-
ῥάν νῦν μὲ δντα οὐτω ἄτιμον ἐν τοῖς στρα-
now me being thus dishonoured among the so-
τιώτας; Ἀλλὰ μὴν, πιστεύω ὅτι καὶ τὸν χρόνον
time surely, I-trust that even — time
dιδάσκεις σε δόξει σοι ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ σε
will-teach you (that) it-will-seem (best) to-you to-pay-the-debt, and you
αὐτὸν γε οὐχὶ ἄνεξηθαί ὑσαντά τοὺς
yourself at-least will not bear seeing — (those)
προεμένους εὑρεσιάν σοι ἐγκαλοῖς τας
freely-bestowing benefits on-you accusing (and reproaching)
sοι. Οὗν δεῖοι σοῦ, ἵσταν ἀποδιδός, προκαταστάς
you. Therefore I-entreat you, when you-pay, you-will-study
ποιήσατε ἐμὲ τοιούτον παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώτας ὑσαντὰ
to-make me the-same with the soldiers as- altogether
καὶ παρέλαβες.
even (when) you-received (me into your service).

Ὁ Σεύθης ἄροίσας ταῦτα κατηράσατο
— Seuthes hearing these (things) uttered-imprecaions-against
τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόθας τὸν μισθὸν;
the author of — not long-since paying the wages;
(καὶ πάντες ἵπποςευσαν τοῦτον εἶναι Ἡρα-
κλείδην) ἤκρ. ἐγώ, ἔφη, οὕτε ἀντιονήθη
εἶδε; ἢ I, ἦτο, [Seuthes,] never intended
πάντοτε ἀποδοτῆσαι, τέ ἀποδῶσα.
at-any-time to-deprive (the men of their pay), and I-will-pay (it).

'Ὁ Ἑνοφῶν ἔνεσθεθεν πάλιν εἶπεν. Ἐπεὶ τοίχον
— Xenophon then again said: Since therefore
διανοοῦ ἀποδιδόναυ, νῦν ἐγώ δέομαι σου ἀποδιδόνα
you-are-resolved to-pay, now I entreat you to-pay
δι' ἐμοῦ, καὶ μὴ περιοδεύει με διὰ σὲ
(then) through me, and not to-neglect me through you
ἐχοντα ἀνυσικεῖς νῦν τε ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ
having (myself) differently now also in the army
καὶ ὁτε ἄφηκεμένα πρὸς σὲ. Ὁ δὲ
— (than) when we-came to you. — (Seuthes) indeed
εἶπεν. Ἀλλὰ οὕτω ἐσφα ἀπιστὸτερος τοῖς
said: But you-will not be more-dishonoured among-the
στρατιῶτας δι' ἐμὲ, ἄν τε μὲν χραντὶς παρ' ἐμοί,
soldiers through me, should also you-remain with me,
ἐχων μόνος χαλίος ὀπλίτας, ἐγώ τε
having only a-thousand heavy-armed-men, I will also
ἀποδώσαμεν οἱ τὰ χωρία, καὶ τὰλλα ἄ
I-give you — (strong) places, and the-other (things) which
ὑπεσχόμεν. Δὲ δὲ πάλιν εἶπεν.
I-promised (you). But — (Xenophon) again said: (That)
Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὕτως οὐκ
these (things) indeed (should) have (themselves) so (is) not
οἶν τε. δὲ ἀποτελεῖτε ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη
possible; but 'send us 'away. And certainly, said
Σευθῆς γε οἶδα δὲν καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον σοι
Seuthes 'I at-least 'know (it is) being even safer for-you
μὲνειν ἐμοὶ ἢ ἀπείναι. Ὁ δὲ πάλιν
to-remain with-me than to-depart. — (Xenophon) indeed again
εἶπεν. Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ τὴν σὴν πρόνοιαν.
said: But indeed I-praise —. your forethought.
"Εμοι δὲ μένειν οὐχ ὁλὼν τε. Δ’ ὅπως ἐγὼ
For-me indeed to-remain (is) not possible. But wherever I
ἀν ἦν ἐνεμότερος, ὑμῖν καὶ τούτῳ ἐσσιΔαὐ
give more-honoured, know (that) even this will-be (a)
ἀγαθὸν σοι. Ἦπειρεθεν Σεύδης λέγει:
good (thing) for-you. Then" Seuthes says;
’Ἀργύριον μὲν ἔχω οἶχ, ἀλλ’ ἦ τι μικρόν,
Money indeed I-have not, but really-only some little,
καὶ τούτῳ δίδωμι σοι, τάλαντων.
and this I-will-give you, (namely a) talent; (I have) however
ἐξακοσίους βοῦς, καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακυκλία,
six-hundred oxen, and sheep about four-thousand,
καὶ ἀνδρόποδα εἰς ἐκατόν καὶ εἰκοσι.
and slaves to (the number of a) hundred and twenty.
Λαβὼν ταῦτα, καὶ τοὺς ὀμήρους τῶν ἀδικη-
Having-taken these, and the hostages of — (those) acting-
σάντων σε, προσλαβὼν, ἀπιν. ὁ Ἑνοφῶν
unjustly to-you, (and) having-received (them) depart. — Xenophon
γελάσας εἶπεν. Ἡν οὖν ταῦτα μὴ
having-laughed said: If therefore these (things) 'do not
ἐχειν τάλαντον;
not have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even
όν ἃρ’, ἐπειδὴ καὶ
(that I) have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even
ἐπικινδύνων ἐστι μοι, ἀμεινοὺν ἀποινά γε φυλά-
danger is to-me, better going-away at-least to-guard-
tεσσαὶ πέτρους; 
these stones? 'You indeed 'heard the threats.
Τότε δ’ μὲν ἔμεινε αὐτοῦ.
Then truly indeed he-remained there (that day).

"Δὲ τῇ υστεραίᾳ τε ἀνέδωκε αὐτοῖς δ’ ὑπέ-
But on-the next-day 'he also 'gave to-them what he-had-
σχέτο, καὶ συνέπεμψε τοὺς ἐλάσσοντας
driving promised, and he-sent-with (them) — (those) driving
ταῦτα. Οἱ στρατιώται δὲ τέως μὲν
those (cattle). The soldiers however in-the-mean-time indeed
BOOK VII. — CHAPTER VII.

Εἶλεγον, ὅς Χενοφῶν ὀίχοιτο ὣς Σεύθην οἰκήσων said, that Xenophon was-gone to Seuthes, dwelling
καὶ ἀποληψόμενος ἃ ἵπεσκετο αὐτῷ: (with him) and having-received what he-promised him;
δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν ἥξοντα but when they-saw him coming they—were not-only delighted
τε ἥξοντας καὶ προεύθεντο. Δὲ Χενοφῶν ἐπεὶ εἰδέ Χαρ—
but-also ran-to (him). But Xenophon when he-saw Char—
μίν τε καὶ Πολύνικον. Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ minus as also Polynicus: These (things), said-he, 'have even
dὲ ὑμᾶς σέσωσται τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα— through you 'been-saved-for-the army, and I de—
δίδομεν αὐτὰ ὑμῖν: ὑμεῖς δὲ διαδέχεσθε δια— deliver them to-you; you indeed having-disposed-of (them) dis—
δοῦτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οἶον οὖν μὲν; tribute (the proceeds) to-the soldiers. — (Those) therefore indeed,
παραλαθόντες καὶ καταστήσαντες λαφυρο— having-received (the things) and having-appointed booty—
πόλεις, ἐπολούν, καὶ εἴχον πολλὴν αἰτίαν. sellers, sold (the things), and they-had much blame.
Δὲ Χενοφῶν οὐ προσέχει, ἀλλὰ ἤν φανερὸς But Xenophon 'did not 'go-near (them), but was openly
παρασκευοῦμενος οἰκάδε· γὰρ ποι ψῆφος preparing for-home; for-as-yet (a) vote (or sentence)
ἢ ἐπίκετο αὐτῷ Ἄθηρης περὶ φυγῆς. was not 'proposed against-him at-Athens respecting banishment.

Δὲ οἱ ἐπιτεθεῖσιν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ προσέλθοντες But — (his) friends in the camp going-to
καὶ παραδόντες Ἰθρών. lead-off the army, and deliver (it) to-Thibron.
CHAPTER VIII.

Τὴν εἶτε蜓 διέπλευσαν εἰς Δάμφικον ταῖς they-sailed-across to Lampseas; and 

Εὐκλείδης μᾶντις, Φιλάσιος, ο ὁιὸς Κλεαγρόσων, Euclides (the) augur, (a) Phliasian, the son of Cleagorus, 

τοῦ γεγραφότος τὰ ἑνώνεια ἐν Λυκείῳ, ἀπευθεῖ the (one) having-written the dreams in (the) Lyceum, came-to-meet 

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. Οὗτος συνήκει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, — Xenophon. This (person) congratulated — Xenophon, 

ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἤνωτα αὐτῶν πόσον χρυσόν that he-had-been-saved, and inquired-of him how-much gold 

ἐξεί. Ὁ δ' ἐπιμόνεσεν αὐτῷ εἶπεν, he-has. — (Xenophon) indeed having-taken-an-oath to-him said, 

ἡ μῆν ἱερεῖα μηδὲ ἱκανὸν ἐφόδιον (that) there-was certainly to-be not sufficient travelling-expenses 

ἀποτόμῃ οἰκαδε, εἰ μὴ ἀνμόδωτο τὸν ἐπονον καὶ departing for-home, unless he-sold — (his) horse and 

οἱ εἶχεν ἀµφὶ αὐτῶν. Δ' ὁ οὐκ ἐπὶ-what he-had about him. But — (Euclides) 'did not 'be- 

στενευν αἱτῶ. Δ' ἐπεί Δάμφικον ἔπεμψαν lrieve him. But when (the) Lampseaeans had-sent 

ἐξένα τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἔσω τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι gifts-of-hospitality to — Xenophon, and he-sacrificed to — Apollo, 

λων, παρεστήσατο τῶν Εὐκλείδην. ο Εὐκλείδης he-placed-beside (him) — Euclides; — Euclides 

δὲ ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι πείδοιτο αὐτῷ indeed seeing the victims said, that he-believed him 

μὴ εἴναι χρήματα. Ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἡπι, ὅτι not to-be [not to have] riches. But I-know, said-he, that 

καν' ποτὲ μέλλῃ ἱερεῖαι. τι even-if (money) at-any-time should-be-about to-be (yours) some 

ἔμποδιον φαίνεται, ἵνα μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ, impediment shows-itself, if - no other, you yourself.
"Ο Ξενοφόνων συνωμολογεῖ ταῦτα. Ο
— Xenophon assents to these (things). — (Euclides)
dὲ εἶπε· Γὰρ ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιος ἦστι
indeed said: — (However) — Jupiter — Melichius is (a)
ἐμπόδιον καὶ ἐπήρετο, εἰ ποτὲ ἦδη
hindrance: and inquired, if ever now (that he) sacrificed,
δισπερ ὠίκου, ἐφι, ἐγώ εἰδοθεῖν θύεσθαι καὶ
the same as at-home, said he, I was accustomed to sacrifice and
ὁλοχαυτεῖν ὑμῖν. Δὲ ὅ ἐφη, ἔξ ὄστον
offer-holocausts for you. But — (Xenophon) said, from whatever
ἀπεδήμησε οὗ τεῦξενα τῷ τοῦτῳ
(time) he left home (that he) 'had not 'sacrificed to — this
θεῷ. Οὖν συνεβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθαρ
god. Therefore he advised him to sacrifice as
εἰδοθεί, καὶ ἐφη, συνοίσεων
he had been accustomed, and, said he, (I think that) it will contribute
ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραῖν ὁ Ξενοφόν προ-
for the better. And on the next day — Xenophon pro-
eλάθου εἰς 'Οφρυνίῳ εἴδετο, καὶ ὁλοχαυτεῖ χοίρους
ceeding to Ophrynium sacrificed, and burned up hogs
τῷ νόμῳ πατρίω, καὶ ἐχαλλιέρει.
in the manner of his country, and he found the entrails favourable.
Καὶ ταῦτα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Βιτῶν ἀφικεῖτα καὶ
And on that — (same) day Biton arrived also
ἀμα. Εὐκλείδης δώσοντες χρήματα τῷ στρατεύ-
together with Euclides having given money to the army;
ματί. καὶ Ξενοφόντα τῷ
[with pay for the army:] and they were hospitably entertained by —
Ξενοφόντα, καὶ λυσάμενοι ἵππον, δὲ ἀπέδεικτο ἐν
Xenophon, and having redeemed (the) horse, which he sold in
Λαμψάκῳ πεντῆκοντα δαρεῖων, ὑποτεύωντες
Lampsacus for fifty daries, suspecting, (that)
αὐτὸν πεπραχεῖνα δὴ ἐνδεικν, ὅτι
he had sold (it) through want, (because) that
ἡχοῦν αὐτὸν θύεσθαι τῷ ὕππῳ, ἀπέ-
they had heard (that) he was fond of the horse, they—
dosan kai Ἡθέλον oux ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν
restored (it to him) and they-would not receive the
τιμήν.
price (from him).

'Εντεύθεν ἔπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρούδας, καὶ
Thence they-proceeded through — Troas, and
ὑπερβάντες τὴν Ἰδην ἄφθινονται πρῶτον εἰς Ἀυ-
crossing-over — Ida they-arrived first at An-
ταύρον· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλασσαν
tandum; afterwards proceeding along (the) sea (they arrived)
eis πεδίον Θήβης τῆς Λυκίας. 'Εντεύθεν
on (the) plain of Thebe — (in) Lydia. Thence
οδεύοντες δὲ Ἀτραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ παρ'
journeying through Atramyttium and Certonium by
Ἀταρνεία ἐλθόντες εἰς πεδίον Καίκου κατα-
λαμβάνοντι Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.
reached Pergamus — (in) Mysia.

'Ενταῦθα δὲ Ἑνοφόν εὐνοῦται παρ'
Here indeed Xenophon was-entertained-hospitalably by
Ελλαδεὶ, γυναικὶ τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἑρατρίως,
Hellas, (the) wife of — Gongylus the Eristrian,
καὶ μητρὶ Γογγύλου καὶ Γογγύλου. Αὐτὴ
and (the) mother of-Gorgion and Gongylus. This (Hellas)
de φράζει αὐτῷ, διὶ ἐστίν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ Πέργας
indeed mentions to-him, that there-was in the plain (a) Persian
ἀνώρ 'Ασιδάτης τοῦτον ἐφη αὐτῷ,
man (called) Asidates; this (person) she-said (that) he, [Xenophon,]
ei ἐλθον τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίων ἀνδράσι,
if he-would-go at — night with three-hundred men,
ἀν ἀπολαέει καὶ αὐτῷ, καὶ γυναικα, καὶ παιδας,
might capture — him, and (his) wife, and children,
καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά.
and — (his) property; (and that this) was indeed much,
'Επεμψε δὲ τῷ τόν ἄνευν αὐτῆς καὶ Δαφνα-
She-ends indeed also the cousin of-herself and Daphna-
γόραν, δι’ εποίείτο πλείστον, καθηγησομένους
goras, whom she—made much of, acting-as-guides (in)
taíta. Ὅ Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔχω τούτους
these (things). — Xenophon therefore having these (men)
παρ’ εαντῷ ἔσωτε. Καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἡλείως,
with himself sacrificed. And Basias the Elian, (an)
μάντις παρών, εἴτεν, ὅτι τὰ ἵερὰ εἴη κάλλιστα
augur being-present, said, that the victims were most-favourable
αὐτῶ, καὶ ὁ ἄνηρ εἴη ἄλωσιμος. Λειτυῆσας οὖν
to—him, and the man might—be easily—captured. Having—supped therefore
ἐπορεύετο τε λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς
he—proceeded—forth also taking the captains — (those namely
μάλιστα φίλους, καὶ γεγενημένους πιστούς διὰ
his) greatest friends, and having—been faithful through
παντὸς, ὅπως ποιήσαι εὖ αὐτούς. Δὲ καὶ
all, in—order—that he—might—do good to—them. And also
ἄλλοι συνεξέρχονται αὐτῷ βιασάμενοι
others joined him having—forced—themselves (on him)
eἰς ἕξακοσίους. δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλαυνον,
to (the number of) six—hundred; but the captains 'drove
τὰ μὴ μεταδοθέν τὸ μέρος
(them) 'back, that they—might not 'share (in) the part
χρημάτων ὃς δὴ ἑτοίμων.
of—things as really ready (to be taken).

"Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄφιξαντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ
When however they—arrived (there) about mid—night, the
ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὄντα περὶ τῆς τύρσιος καὶ τὰ
slaves indeed being about the castle and the
πλείστα ἁρματα ἀπεδρα αὐτούς, παραμέ—
most (of the) things escaped them, having—
λούντας, ὡς λάβοιεν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν καὶ
neglected (them), that they—might—take Asirates himself and
τὰ ἑκείνου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πυργωμαχοῦντες
the (property) of—him. But when assailing they—were
οὐχ ἐδόναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν, (γὰρ ἦν ὑψηλή,
not able to—take the castle, (for it—was high,
καὶ μεγάλη, καὶ ἔχονσα προμαχωνας καὶ πολλοὺς καὶ μακίμους ἄνδρας,) ἐπεχείρησαν διορύσσειν καὶ λεῖψιν τοῦ πύργου. Ο θάνατος ἔστι ἐκ τῶν ὕδατον τοῦ εὐρός. Ἀμα δὲ earthen bricks (in) the breadth. At the same time however τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρύσσετο καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον with the break of day it was dug through; and as the first διεφάνη τῷ ένδοτε βουτόρῳ θελίσκῳ (opening) appeared some one from within with (an) ox piercing spit ἐπέταξε τοῦ εὐγυνατῶν διαμπερῆς τὸν μηρόν. δὲ struck the nearest entirely through the thigh; and τὸ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν (for) the rest [and afterwards] shooting arrows they made (it) μὴ δὲ ἐπὶ εἶναι ἀσφαλές παρίεναι. δὲ αὐτῶν no longer to be safe to approach. But they πεκραγότων καὶ πυρσευντῶν, Ἴταμβελεσίς μεν shouting and giving signals by torches, Itambelasis indeed ἔχον τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ Κομανίας ἐκ ὑπάλληλοι having the force of himself from Comania and heavy armed Ἄσσυριοι καὶ Τρακάνιοι ἵππεῖς, ἡς ὑγιότατα, (men) Assyrians and Hyrcanian cavalry, about eighty, καὶ οὕτως μισθοφόροι βασιλέως, καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ these mercenaries of (the) king, and other πελτασταί εἰς ὀχταοκούντα, ἐκ ὑποδοὺς targeteers to (the number of) eight hundred, came to (their) ἐξ ἄλλοι ἐκ Παρθενίου, ἐξ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς. δ' ἄλλοι assistance; and (also) others from Parthenium, and others ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων, from Apollonia and from the near places, καὶ ἵππεῖς. likewise cavalry.

'Ενταῦθα δὴ ἦν ὡρα σχοπειν, τῶς ἦν ἄφοδος Now truly it was time to consider, how the retreat
ΚΩΣΤΑΙ· ΚΑΙ ΛΑΘΟΝΤΕΣ, ΩΣΟI ΗΣΑΝ ΒΩΣΙ ΚΑΙ
WOULD-BE; AND TAKING, AS-MANY-AS THERE-WERE OXEN AND
ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ, ΗΛΑΥΝΟΝ, ΚΑΙ ΠΟΙΗΣΑΜΕΝΟΙ
SHEEP, THEY-'DROVE (THEM) 'OFF, AND HAVING-PLACED (THE)
ΑΝΔΡΑΠΟΔΑ ΕΝΤΟΣ ΠΛΑΙΣΙΟΝ· ΟΥ ΟΥΤΩ ΠΡΟΣΕΧΟΝΤΕΣ
SLAVES WITHIN (THE) SQUARE; NOT SO-MUCH AS-APPLYING
ΤΟΝ ΨΩΝ ΤΟΙς ΧΡΗΜΑΣΙΝ, ΑΛΛΑ Ή ἈΦΟΔΟΣ
THE MIND TO — (THESE) THINGS, BUT (THAT) THE RETREAT
ΜΗ ΕΙΝΗ ΦΥΓΗ, ΕΙ ΚΑΤΑΛΙΠΟΝΤΕΣ ΤΑ ΧΡΗΜΑΤΑ
MIGHT NOT 'BE (LIKE A) FLIGHT, IF LEAVING-BEHIND THE THINGS
ΑΠΙΟΕΝ, ΚΑΙ ΤΕ ΟΙ ΠΟΛΕΜΙΟΙ ΕΙΕΠ ΘΡΑΣΙΤΕΡΟΙ,
THEY-SHOULD-DEPART, AND ALSO THE ENEMY MIGHT-BECOME MORE-BOULD,
ΚΑΙ ΟΙ ΣΤΡΑΤΙΩΤΑΙ ΑΘΥΜΟΤΕΡΟΙ· ΔΕ ΨΩΝ ΑΠΗΓΕ΢ΑΝ ΔΕΣ
AND THE SOLDIERS DISCOURAGED; BUT NOW THEY-RETRATED AS
ΜΑΧΟΥΜΕΝΟΙ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΝ ΧΡΗΜΑΤΩΝ. ΔΕ ΕΠΕΙ
FIGHTING ABOUT THE THINGS (CAPTURED). BUT WHEN
ΓΟΡΓΥΛΟΣ ΕΙΔΑ ΤΟΙς ἘΛΛΗΝΑΣ ὈΛΥΓΟΙΣ ΜΕΝ,
GORGYLUS SAW THE GREEKS (TO BE) FEW INDEED,
ΔΕ ΤΟΙς ΕΠΙΧΕΙΜΕΝΟΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ, ΚΑΙ ΑΥΤΟΣ
BUT — (THOSE) PRESSING-ON (THEM) MANY, — HE
ΕΞΕΡΧΕΤΑΙ ΒΙΑ ΤΗΣ ΜΗΤΡΟΣ, ΕΧΩΝ ΤΗΝ ΔΥΝΑΜΗΝ
SALLIED-FORTH DESPITE — (HIS) MOTHER, HAVING THE FORCE
ΕΑΥΤΟΥ, ΒΟΥΛΟΜΕΝΟΣ ΣΩΜ-
OF-HIMSELF, [HAVING HIS OWN FORCE WITH HIM,] WISHING TO-PAR-
ΜΕΤΑΣΧΕΙΝ ΤΟΥ ΕΡΓΟΥ· ΔΕ ΚΑΙ ΠΡΟΧΛΗΣ ΣΥΝΕΒΟΙΔΕΙ
PARTICIPATE (IN) THE ACTION; BUT ALSO PROILES CAME-TO
ΕΞ 'ΑΛΙΣΑΡΗΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΕΥΘΡΑΝΙΑΣ,
THEIR 'ASSISTANCE FROM HALLISARNE — AND (LIKEWISE) TEUTHRANIAS,
ΔΕ ΑΠΟ ΔΑΜΑΡΑΝΤΟΥ. ΟΙ ΔΕ ΠΕΡΙ
(HE) WHO (WAS DESCENDED) FROM DAMARATUS. THE (MEN) INDEED WITH
ΕΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΑ ΕΠΕΙ ΗΝΙ ΠΑΝΥ ἘΠΙΕΞΟΝΤΟ ὡΠΟ ΤΟΝ
XENOPHON WHEN ALREADY MUCH OPPRESSED BY THE
ΤΟΞΕΥΜΑΤΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΣΦΕΝΔΟΝΩΝ, ΠΟΡΕΥΟΜΕΝΟΙ
ARROWS AND SLINGS, (WHILE) MARCHING-FORWARD 'IN (A)
ΧΥΛΑ, ΩΣΟς ΕΧΟΙΕΝ ΤΑ ΔΡΛΑ ΠΡΟ
"CIRCLE," SO THAT THEY MIGHT HAVE — (THEIR) SHIELDS (AS A DEFENCE) AGAINST
The Anabasis of Xenophon.

τῶν τοξευμάτων, μάλις διαβαίνοις τὸν ποταμόν
the arrows, 'they with-difficulty' crossed-over the river

Κάθεν, ἐγγὺς οἱ ὑμίσεις τετρωμένοι. Καὶ
Calcus, near the half (of them) being-wounded. And

ἐνταῦθα Ἀγασίας Ἀσιαῖας Ἀγασίας (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was-
here Agasias (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was-

σχέται, μαχόμενος τὸν πάντα χρόνον πρὸς τοὺς
wounded, fighting the whole time against the the whole time against the

πολεμίους. Καὶ διασώζεται, ἔχοντες ὡς διαχώσια enemy. And they were saved, having about two-hundred

ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα δοσὺν 
slaves and cattle as much as (was) required for the sacrifices.

θύματα.

Δὲ τῇ ἑστεραιᾳ ὁ Ἑνεφόδων θυσάμενος, ἔζηγε
But the next day — Xenophon having-sacrificed, lead-out

τὸ πᾶν στρατεύμα νυκτῷ, ὡς δὲν ἔλθει 
the whole army at night, in order that he might go (a)

μακροτάτην τῆς Λυδίας εἰς τὸ 
very-long (way) through — Lydia for the purpose that the

μὴ φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐγγὺς,
Persian) 'might not be alarmed; through the to-be near, [by

ἀλλ' ἀφιλακτεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀσιω- his proximity, but be off (his) guard. But — Asi-

δάτῆς ἀχούσας, ὅτι Ἑνεφόδων εἶν τετυμένος πάλιν
dates hearing, that Xenophon has been sacrificing again

ἐν' αὐτῶν, καὶ ἤξοι (about marching) against him, and (that) he would come (back)

παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἔξαυλιζεται εἰς with all the army, 'he [the Persian] went out to

κώμας ἔχουσας ἵππω ὑπὸ τὸ πόλισμα Παρθένων
villages having themselves under the town (of) Parthenium.

'Ενταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ἑνεφόδων συντυγχάνουσιν Here (those) with Xenophon come upon

αὐτῷ, καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ him, and captured him, and (his) wife, and

παιδὰς, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ πάντα τὰ (his) children, and — (his) horses, and all the
καὶ οὖτω τὰ πρῶτα
— being (his); [and all his property;] and thus the first
ἱερὰ ἀπέβην. 'Επειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται
sacrifices happened (truly). Afterwards they again arrived
εἰς Πέργαμον. 'Ενταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐχ
at Pergamus. Here — Xenophon 'could not not
φασάσατο τῶν θεῶν· γὰρ καὶ οἱ Δάκωνες, καὶ
complain (of) the god; for also the Lacedaemonians, and
οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ, καὶ οἱ στρα-
the captains and the other generals, and the sol-
τιῶται, συνέπραξαν δὲ ταῖς Λαμβάνειν ἔξαιρετα
diers, agreed that he-should-take select-portions
καὶ ἵππους, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ τάλλα· δὲκτε
(namely) horses, and yokes-of-oxen, and other-things; so-that
ἐίναι ἣν ἱκανὸν καὶ ποιεῖν εἰς ἄλλουν.
he was now able even to-do good to-another.

'Εν τούτῳ Θίθρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
After this Thibron having-arrived he-received the
στρατεύμα καὶ συμμίσχια τῶ ἄλλω Ελληνικῷ,
army and having-mixed (it) with-the other Grecian
ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.
(force), he-made-war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.

Οἶδε ἄρχοντες δὲ τῆς χώρας βασιλέως,
Those governors indeed-of the territories 'of (the)
δόσην ἐπῆλθομεν· Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας·
as-much-as we-pas-sed-through (were these): of-Lydia, Artimas;
Φρυγίας Ἀρταχάμας· Λυκανογας καὶ Καππαδοχίας
of-Phrygia, Artacamas; of-Lycaonia and Cappadocia,
Μιδριδάτης· Κυλλίας Συνένσεις· Φοινίκης καὶ
Mithridates· Kilikias Synneseis· Phoinixς καὶ
Μιθριδάτης· Κυλλίας Συνένσεις· Φοινίκης καὶ
Mithridates· Kilikias Synneseis· Phoinixς καὶ
Ἀραβίας Δέρνης· Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσις·
Arabia, Dernes; of-Syria and Assyria Belesis;
Βαβυλῶνος Ρωπάρας· Μυδίας Ἀρβάκας· Φασια-
Babylones Ruparas· Mydias Arbakaς· Phasia-
of-Babylon, Rhoparas; of-Media, Arbacas; of-the-Pha-
νῶν καὶ Ἑσπερίτων Τιριβάζος· (δὲ Καρδοὺχοι,
sians and the-Hesperites, Tiribazus; (for the) Cardouchi,
THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες
and also (the) Chalybes and (the) Chaldæans and (the) Macrones
καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ
and (the) Colchians and (the) Mosyncæi and (the) Tibarenii
αὐτόνομοι;) Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας;
(were) independent-nations;) of Paphlogonia, Corylas; 'of (the)
Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος ὑπὸν Ὑρώπη
'Bithynians Pharnabæus; of — (those) Thracians in Europe,
Σεύθης. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς συμπάθεις ὅθου τῆς
'Seuthes. (The) enumeration indeed of the entire route of the
ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως διαχόριοι δεκα-
ascend and descent (is) two-hundred (and) fifteen
πέντε σταδίων, χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πεντάκοντα τενν
five days'-march, one-thousand one-hundred (and)
πέντε παρασάγγαι, τρισαμία τετρακεχίλια
five parasangs, thirty-thousand (and) four-thousand
ἐξακοσία πεντάκοντα στάδια. Πλῆθος
(five) stadia. (The) amount-of
χρόνου τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως
(time (spent in) the ascent and descent (being)
ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.
a-year and three months.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Signature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JAN 20 1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APR 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY 18 1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUN 9 1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUN 9 1917</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY 3 1920</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY 25 1920</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY 27 1926</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building